



# Cumulus Linux 3.1.2

## User Guide

---

# Table of Contents

<b>Welcome to Cumulus Networks .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1 .....</b>	<b>6</b>
What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.2 .....	6
What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.1 .....	6
What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.0 .....	6
<b>Quick Start Guide .....</b>	<b>8</b>
Contents .....	8
What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.2 .....	8
Open Source Contributions .....	8
Prerequisites .....	9
Hardware Compatibility List .....	9
Installing Cumulus Linux .....	9
Upgrading Cumulus Linux .....	10
Configuring Cumulus Linux .....	10
Configuring 4x10G Port Configuration (Splitter Cables) .....	13
Testing Cable Connectivity .....	13
Configuring Switch Ports .....	14
Configuring a Loopback Interface .....	16
<b>Installation, Upgrading and Package Management .....</b>	<b>18</b>
Managing Cumulus Linux Disk Images .....	18
Adding and Updating Packages .....	47
Zero Touch Provisioning - ZTP .....	54
<b>System Management .....</b>	<b>66</b>
Setting Date and Time .....	66
Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting .....	69
Netfilter - ACLs .....	98
Managing Application Daemons .....	134
Configuring switchd .....	139
Power over Ethernet - PoE .....	142
Configuring a Global Proxy .....	151
<b>Configuring and Managing Network Interfaces .....</b>	<b>153</b>
Contents .....	153
Commands .....	153
Man Pages .....	154
Configuration Files .....	154
Basic Commands .....	154

ifupdown2 Interface Classes .....	155
Configuring a Loopback Interface .....	157
ifupdown2 Interface Dependencies .....	158
Configuring IP Addresses .....	162
Specifying User Commands .....	164
Sourcing Interface File Snippets .....	165
Using Globs for Port Lists .....	165
Using Templates .....	166
Adding Descriptions to Interfaces .....	167
Caveats and Errata .....	167
Useful Links .....	168
Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes .....	168
Buffer and Queue Management .....	181
Configuring DHCP Relays and Servers .....	190
Network Command Line Utility .....	196
<b>Layer 1 and Layer 2 Features .....</b>	<b>203</b>
Spanning Tree and Rapid Spanning Tree .....	203
Link Layer Discovery Protocol .....	223
Prescriptive Topology Manager - PTM .....	229
Bonding - Link Aggregation .....	241
Ethernet Bridging - VLANs .....	244
Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation - MLAG .....	273
LACP Bypass .....	293
Virtual Router Redundancy - VRR .....	295
Network Virtualization .....	300
IGMP and MLD Snooping .....	419
<b>Layer 3 Features .....</b>	<b>425</b>
Routing .....	425
Introduction to Routing Protocols .....	432
Network Topology .....	434
Quagga Overview .....	436
Configuring Quagga .....	438
Open Shortest Path First - OSPF - Protocol .....	451
Open Shortest Path First v3 - OSPFv3 - Protocol .....	466
Border Gateway Protocol - BGP .....	469
Bidirectional Forwarding Detection - BFD .....	502
Equal Cost Multipath Load Sharing - Hardware ECMP .....	507
Redistribute Neighbor .....	515
Virtual Routing and Forwarding - VRF .....	525
Management VRF .....	544
Protocol Independent Multicast - PIM .....	552
<b>Monitoring and Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>555</b>

Contents .....	555
Commands .....	555
Using the Serial Console .....	555
Diagnostics Using cl-support .....	557
Sending Log Files to a syslog Server .....	558
Next Steps .....	561
Single User Mode - Boot Recovery .....	561
Resource Diagnostics Using cl-resource-query .....	563
Monitoring System Hardware .....	565
Monitoring Virtual Device Counters .....	570
Understanding and Decoding the cl-support Output File .....	574
Troubleshooting Network Interfaces .....	591
Network Troubleshooting .....	600
SNMP Monitoring .....	630
Monitoring Best Practices .....	656
<b>Network Solutions .....</b>	<b>678</b>
Data Center Host to ToR Architecture .....	678
Cumulus Networks Services Demos .....	695
Docker on Cumulus Linux .....	697
OpenStack Neutron ML2 and Cumulus Linux .....	699
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>703</b>

# Welcome to Cumulus Networks

We are transforming networking with Cumulus Linux, the industry's first, full-featured Linux operating system for networking hardware. Cumulus Linux is a complete network operating system, based on [Debian Jessie](#) and Linux kernel 4.1. Unlike traditional embedded platforms, Cumulus Linux provides a complete environment pre-installed with scripting languages, server utilities, and monitoring tools. Management tasks are accomplished via SSH using standard Linux commands or over a serial console connection.



This documentation is current as of November 7, 2016 for version 3.1.2. Please visit the [Cumulus Networks Web site](#) for the most up to date documentation.

- [Release Notes for Cumulus Linux 3.1.2](#)
- [What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.2 \(see page 6\)](#)
- [Quick Start Guide \(see page 8\)](#)
- [Installation, Upgrading and Package Management \(see page 18\)](#)
- [System Management \(see page 66\)](#)
- [Configuring and Managing Network Interfaces \(see page 153\)](#)
- [Layer 1 and Layer 2 Features \(see page 203\)](#)
- [Layer 3 Features \(see page 425\)](#)
- [Monitoring and Troubleshooting \(see page 555\)](#)
- [Network Solutions \(see page 678\)](#)

# What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1

## What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.2

Cumulus Linux 3.1.2 includes bug fixes as well as the following [early access feature](#).

- Edge-Core 5812-54X

## What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.1

Cumulus Linux 3.1.1 contains bug fixes and the following [early access features](#).

- Priority flow control ([see page 98](#)) (PFC) — Mellanox switches only
- Explicit congestion notification (ECN) — Mellanox switches only
- Ethernet virtual private networks ([see page 404](#)) (EVPN) — Broadcom switches only

No special steps are needed to enable PFC and ECN, and you do not need to enable the Early Access repository to use them. You need to install the `cumulus-evpn` metapackage to use EVPN; read the [EVPN chapter](#) ([see page 404](#)) for instructions.

## What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.0

Cumulus Linux 3.1.0 includes many new features and platforms. In addition to this chapter, please read the [release notes](#) to learn about known issues with this release.

- Mellanox platform enhancements:
  - ACL ([see page 98](#)) — 512 ACLs, line rate: 128 byte
  - LACP Bypass ([see page 293](#))
  - sFlow ([see page 619](#)) — 32G sampling rate
  - VRF ([see page 525](#))
- PoE+ ([see page 142](#)) (Power over Ethernet)
- VXLAN with VLAN-aware bridges ([see page 272](#)) (Broadcom switches only)
- Forwarding table profiles ([see page 430](#))

New platforms include:

- 100G platforms:
  - Edge-Core AS 7712
  - HPE 6960
  - Mellanox SN2100
- 40G platforms:
  - Dell S6010
  - Mellanox SN2100B
- 25G platforms:
  - Mellanox SN2410

- 10G platforms:
  - HPE 6921T
  - Mellanox SN2410B

## ***Early Access Features***

The following [early access features](#) are included in Cumulus Linux 3.1.0:

- [Netq](#) (see page 622)
- [Network command line utility](#) (see page 196)
- [OpenStack ML2](#) (see page 699)
- [PIM-SM](#) (see page 552)
- [TACACS+](#) (see page 89)

# Quick Start Guide

This chapter helps you get up and running with Cumulus Linux quickly and easily.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.2 (see page 8)
- Open Source Contributions (see page 8)
- Prerequisites (see page 9)
- Hardware Compatibility List (see page 9)
- Installing Cumulus Linux (see page 9)
- Upgrading Cumulus Linux (see page 10)
- Configuring Cumulus Linux (see page 10)
  - Login Credentials (see page 10)
  - Serial Console Management (see page 11)
  - Wired Ethernet Management (see page 11)
  - Configuring the Hostname and Time Zone (see page 11)
  - Installing the License (see page 12)
- Configuring 4x10G Port Configuration (Splitter Cables) (see page 13)
- Testing Cable Connectivity (see page 13)
- Configuring Switch Ports (see page 14)
  - Layer 2 Port Configuration (see page 14)
  - Layer 3 Port Configuration (see page 15)
- Configuring a Loopback Interface (see page 16)

## What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.1.2

Cumulus Linux 3.1.2 contains bugs fixes and an early access platform. The [release notes](#) contain information about the release as well as the fixed and known issues.

## Open Source Contributions

Cumulus Networks has forked various software projects, like CFEngine, Netdev and some Puppet Labs packages in order to implement various Cumulus Linux features. The forked code resides in the Cumulus Networks [GitHub repository](#).

Cumulus Networks developed and released as open source some new applications as well.

The list of open source projects is on the [open source software](#) page.

## Prerequisites

Prior intermediate Linux knowledge is assumed for this guide. You should be familiar with basic text editing, Unix file permissions, and process monitoring. A variety of text editors are pre-installed, including `vi` and `nano`.

You must have access to a Linux or UNIX shell. If you are running Windows, you should use a Linux environment like [Cygwin](#) as your command line tool for interacting with Cumulus Linux.



- If you're a networking engineer but are unfamiliar with Linux concepts, use [this reference guide](#) to see examples of the Cumulus Linux CLI and configuration options, and their equivalent Cisco Nexus 3000 NX-OS commands and settings for comparison. You can also [watch a series of short videos](#) introducing you to Linux in general and some Cumulus Linux-specific concepts in particular.

## Hardware Compatibility List

You can find the most up to date hardware compatibility list (HCL) [here](#). Use the HCL to confirm that your switch model is supported by Cumulus Networks. The HCL is updated regularly, listing products by port configuration, manufacturer, and SKU part number.

## Installing Cumulus Linux

This quick start guide walks you through the steps necessary for getting Cumulus Linux up and running on your switch, which includes:

1. Powering on the switch and entering ONIE, the Open Network Install Environment.
2. Installing Cumulus Linux on the switch via ONIE.
3. Booting into Cumulus Linux and installing the license.
4. Configuring switch ports and a loopback interface.

To install Cumulus Linux, you use [ONIE](#) (Open Network Install Environment), an extension to the traditional U-Boot software that allows for automatic discovery of a network installer image. This facilitates the ecosystem model of procuring switches, with a user's own choice of operating system loaded, such as Cumulus Linux.



- If Cumulus Linux 3.0.0 or later is already installed on your switch, and you need to upgrade the software only, you can skip to [Upgrading Cumulus Linux \(see page 10\)](#) below.

The easiest way to install Cumulus Linux with ONIE is via local HTTP discovery:

1. If your host (like a laptop or server) is IPv6-enabled, make sure it is running a Web server.  
If the host is IPv4-enabled, make sure it is running DHCP as well as a Web server.
2. [Download](#) the Cumulus Linux installation file to the root directory of the Web server. Rename this file `onie-installer`.

3. Connect your host via Ethernet cable to the management Ethernet port of the switch.
4. Power on the switch. The switch downloads the ONIE image installer and boots it. You can watch the progress of the install in your terminal. After the installation finishes, the Cumulus Linux login prompt appears in the terminal window.



These steps describe a flexible unattended installation method. You should not need a console cable. A fresh install via ONIE using a local Web server should generally complete in less than 10 minutes.

You have more options for installing Cumulus Linux with ONIE. Read [Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image \(see page 23\)](#) to install Cumulus Linux using ONIE in the following ways:

- DHCP/Web server with and without DHCP options
- Web server without DHCP
- FTP or TFTP without a Web server
- Local file
- USB

ONIE supports many other discovery mechanisms using USB (copy the installer to the root of the drive), DHCPv6 and DHCPv4, and image copy methods including HTTP, FTP, and TFTP. For more information on these discovery methods, refer to the [ONIE documentation](#).

After installing Cumulus Linux, you are ready to:

- Log in to Cumulus Linux on the switch.
- Install the Cumulus Linux license.
- Configure Cumulus Linux. This quick start guide provides instructions on configuring switch ports and a loopback interface.

## Upgrading Cumulus Linux

To install Cumulus Linux 3.0.0 or later and you're running a version earlier than 3.0.0, you must perform a complete install, as [described above \(see page 9\)](#). If you already have Cumulus Linux 3.0.0 or later installed on your switch, read [Upgrading Cumulus Linux \(see page 18\)](#) for considerations before start the process.

## Configuring Cumulus Linux

When bringing up Cumulus Linux for the first time, the management port makes a DHCPv4 request. To determine the IP address of the switch, you can cross reference the MAC address of the switch with your DHCP server. The MAC address should be located on the side of the switch or on the box in which the unit was shipped.

### Login Credentials

The default installation includes one system account, *root*, with full system privileges, and one user account, *cumulus*, with *sudo* privileges. The *root* account password is set to null by default (which prohibits login), while the *cumulus* account is configured with this default password:

CumulusLinux!

In this quick start guide, you will use the *cumulus* account to configure Cumulus Linux.



For best security, you should change the default password (using the `passwd` command) before you configure Cumulus Linux on the switch.

All accounts except `root` are permitted remote SSH login; `sudo` may be used to grant a non-root account root-level access. Commands which change the system configuration require this elevated level of access.

For more information about sudo, read [Using sudo to Delegate Privileges \(see page 73\)](#).

## Serial Console Management

Users are encouraged to perform management and configuration over the network, [either in band or out of band \(see page 38\)](#). Use of the serial console is fully supported; however, many customers prefer the convenience of network-based management.

Typically, switches will ship from the manufacturer with a mating DB9 serial cable. Switches with ONIE are always set to a 115200 baud rate.

## Wired Ethernet Management

Switches supported in Cumulus Linux always contain at least one dedicated Ethernet management port, which is named `eth0`. This interface is geared specifically for out-of-band management use. The management interface uses DHCPv4 for addressing by default. You can set a static IP address in the [/etc/network/interfaces](#) file:

```
auto eth0
iface eth0
    address 192.0.2.42/24
    gateway 192.0.2.1
```

## Configuring the Hostname and Time Zone

To change the hostname, modify the `/etc/hostname` and `/etc/hosts` files with the desired hostname and reboot the switch. First, edit `/etc/hostname`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vi /etc/hostname
```

Then replace the 127.0.1.1 IP address in `/etc/hosts` with the new hostname:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vi /etc/hosts
```

Reboot the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo reboot
```

To update the time zone, update the `/etc/timezone` file with the [correct timezone](#), run `dpkg-reconfigure --frontend noninteractive tzdata`, then reboot the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vi /etc/timezone
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo dpkg-reconfigure --frontend noninteractive
tzdata
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo reboot
```



It is possible to change the hostname without a reboot via a script available on [Cumulus Networks GitHub site](#).

## Installing the License

Cumulus Linux is licensed on a per-instance basis. Each network system is fully operational, enabling any capability to be utilized on the switch with the exception of forwarding on switch panel ports. Only eth0 and console ports are activated on an unlicensed instance of Cumulus Linux. Enabling front panel ports requires a license.

You should have received a license key from Cumulus Networks or an authorized reseller. Here is a sample license key:

```
user@company.com|thequickbrownfoxjumpsoverthelazydog312
```

There are three ways to install the license onto the switch:

- Copy it from a local server. Create a text file with the license and copy it to a server accessible from the switch. On the switch, use the following command to transfer the file directly on the switch, then install the license file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ scp user@my_server:/home/user/my_license_file.txt .
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-license -i my_license_file.txt
```

- Copy the file to an HTTP server (not HTTPS), then reference the URL when you run `cl-license`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-license -i <URL>
```

- Copy and paste the license key into the `cl-license -i` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-license -i  
<paste license key>  
^d
```



You no longer have to reboot the switch to activate the switch ports. Once you install the license, all front panel ports will be active and will show up as `swp1`, `swp2`, and so forth.

## Configuring 4x10G Port Configuration (Splitter Cables)

If you are using 4x10G DAC or AOC cables, edit the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` to enable support for these cables then [restart the `switchd` service \(see page 141\)](#) using the `sudo systemctl restart switchd.service` command. For more details, see [Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes \(see page 168\)](#).

## Testing Cable Connectivity

By default, all data plane ports (every Ethernet port except the management interface, `eth0`) are disabled. To test cable connectivity, administratively enable a port using `ip link set <interface> up`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link set swp1 up
```

Run the following bash script, as root, to administratively enable all physical ports:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo su -  
cumulus@switch:~$ for i in /sys/class/net/*; do iface=`basename $i`; if [[ $iface == swp* ]]; then ip link set $iface up; fi done
```

To view link status, use `ip link show`. The following examples show the output of a port in "admin down", "down" and "up" mode, respectively:

```
# Administratively Down
swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state DOWN mode
DEFAULT qlen 1000

# Administratively Up but Layer 2 protocol is Down
swp1: <NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
state DOWN mode DEFAULT qlen 500

# Administratively Up, Layer 2 protocol is Up
swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
```

## Configuring Switch Ports

### ***Layer 2 Port Configuration***

Cumulus Linux does not put all ports into a bridge by default. To configure a front panel port or create a bridge, edit the /etc/network/interfaces file. After saving the file, to activate the change, use the ifup command.

### ***Examples***

In the following configuration example, the front panel port swp1 is placed into a bridge called br0:

```
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports swp1
    bridge-stp on
```

To put a range of ports into a bridge, use the glob keyword. For example, add swp1 through swp10, swp12, and swp14 through swp20 to br0:

```
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports glob swp1-10 swp12 glob swp14-20
    bridge-stp on
```

To activate or apply the configuration to the kernel:

```
# First, check for typos:  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery -a  
  
# Then activate the change if no errors are found:  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup -a
```

To view the changes in the kernel, use the brctl command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl show  
bridge name      bridge id          STP enabled    interfaces  
br0              8000.089e01cedcc2    yes           swp1
```



A script is available to generate a configuration that [places all physical ports in a single bridge](#).

## **Layer 3 Port Configuration**

To configure a front panel port or bridge interface as a Layer 3 port, edit the /etc/network/interfaces file.

In the following configuration example, the front panel port swp1 is configured a Layer 3 access port:

```
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
  address 10.1.1.1/30
```

To add an IP address to a bridge interface, include the address under the iface configuration in /etc/network/interfaces:

```
auto br0  
iface br0  
  address 10.2.2.1/24  
  bridge-ports glob swp1-10 swp12 glob swp14-20  
  bridge-stp on
```

To activate or apply the configuration to the kernel:

```
# First check for typos:  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery -a  
  
# Then activate the change if no errors are found:  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup -a
```

To view the changes in the kernel use the `ip addr show` command:

```
br0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP
link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:28 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
inet 10.2.2.1/24 scope global br0

swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP
link/ether 44:38:39:00:6e:fe brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
inet 10.1.1.1/30 scope global swp1
```

## Configuring a Loopback Interface

Cumulus Linux has a loopback preconfigured in `/etc/network/interfaces`. When the switch boots up, it has a loopback interface, called `lo`, which is up and assigned an IP address of 127.0.0.1.

- ✓ The loopback interface `lo` must always be specified in `/etc/network/interfaces` and must always be up.

To see the status of the loopback interface (`lo`), use the `ip addr show lo` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip addr show lo
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 16436 qdisc noqueue state UNKNOWN
  link/loopback 00:00:00:00:00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00
  inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope host lo
    inet6 ::1/128 scope host
      valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

Note that the loopback is up and is assigned an IP address of 127.0.0.1.

To add an IP address to a loopback interface, add it directly under the `iface lo inet loopback` definition in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.1.1.1
```

- ⚠ If an IP address is configured without a mask, as shown above, the IP address becomes a /32. So, in the above case, 10.1.1.1 is actually 10.1.1.1/32.

Multiple loopback addresses can be configured by adding additional `address` lines:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.1.1.1
    address 172.16.2.1/24
```

# Installation, Upgrading and Package Management

A Cumulus Linux switch can have only one image of the operating system installed. This section discusses installing new and updating existing Cumulus Linux disk images, and configuring those images with additional applications (via packages) if desired.

Zero touch provisioning is a way to quickly deploy and configure new switches in a large-scale environment.

## Managing Cumulus Linux Disk Images

The Cumulus Linux operating system resides on a switch as a *disk image*. This section discusses how to manage the image, including installation and upgrading.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 18)
- Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image (see page 18)
- Upgrading Cumulus Linux (see page 18)
- x86 vs ARM Switches (see page 19)
- Reprovisioning the System (Restart Installer) (see page 19)
- Uninstalling All Images and Removing the Configuration (see page 20)
- Booting into Rescue Mode (see page 20)
- Inspecting Image File Contents (see page 21)
- Useful Links (see page 23)

### Commands

- apt-get
- onie-select

### Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image

For details, read the chapter, [Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image \(see page 23\)](#).

### Upgrading Cumulus Linux

There are two ways you can upgrade Cumulus Linux:

- Upgrading only the changed packages, using `apt-get update` and `apt-get upgrade`. **This is the preferred method.**
- Perform a binary (full image) install of the new version, using [ONIE](#). This is used when moving between major versions or if you want to install a clean image.

The entire upgrade process is described in [Upgrading Cumulus Linux \(see page 35\)](#).

## x86 vs ARM Switches

You can easily determine whether your switch is on an x86 or ARM platform by using the `uname -m` command.

For example, on an x86 platform, `uname -m` outputs `x86_64`:

```
cumulus@x86switch$ uname -m  
x86_64
```

While on an ARM platform, `uname -m` outputs `armv7l`:

```
cumulus@ARMswitch$ uname -m  
armv7l
```

You can also visit the HCL ([hardware compatibility list](#)) to look at your hardware to determine the processor type.

## Reprovisioning the System (Restart Installer)

You can reprovision the system, wiping out the contents of the whole switch.

To initiate the provisioning and installation process, use `onie-select -i`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -i  
WARNING:  
WARNING: Operating System install requested.  
WARNING: This will wipe out all system data.  
WARNING:  
Are you sure (y/N)? y  
Enabling install at next reboot...done.  
Reboot required to take effect.
```



A reboot is required for the reinstall to begin.

- ✓ If you change your mind, you can cancel a pending reinstall operation by using `onie-select -c`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -c  
Cancelling pending install at next reboot...done.
```

## ***Uninstalling All Images and Removing the Configuration***

To remove all installed images and configurations, returning the switch to its factory defaults, use `onie-select -k`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -k  
WARNING:  
WARNING: Operating System uninstall requested.  
WARNING: This will wipe out all system data.  
WARNING:  
Are you sure (y/N)? y  
Enabling uninstall at next reboot...done.  
Reboot required to take effect.
```

- ⚠ A reboot is required for the uninstall to begin.
- ✓ If you change your mind you can cancel a pending uninstall operation by using `onie-select -c`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -c  
Cancelling pending uninstall at next reboot...done.
```

## ***Booting into Rescue Mode***

If your system becomes broken in some way, you may be able to correct things by booting into ONIE rescue mode. In rescue mode, the file systems are unmounted and you can use various Cumulus Linux utilities to try and fix the problem.

To reboot the system into the ONIE rescue mode, use `onie-select -r`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -r
WARNING:
WARNING: Rescue boot requested.
WARNING:
Are you sure (y/N)? y
Enabling rescue at next reboot...done.
Reboot required to take effect.
```



A reboot is required to boot into rescue mode.



If you change your mind you can cancel a pending rescue boot operation by using `onie-select -c`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -c
Cancelling pending rescue at next reboot...done.
```

## Inspecting Image File Contents

The Cumulus Linux installation disk image file is executable. From a running switch, you can display the contents of the Cumulus Linux image file by passing the `info` option to the image file. For example, if the image file is called `onie-installer` and is located in `/var/lib/cumulus/installer`, you can get information about the disk image by running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo /var/lib/cumulus/installer/onie-installer info
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
Control File Contents
=====
Description: Cumulus Linux
OS-Release: 2.1.0-0556262-201406101128-NB
Architecture: amd64
Date: Tue, 10 Jun 2014 11:44:28 -0700
Installer-Version: 1.2
Platforms: im_n29xx_t40n mlx_sx1400_i73612 dell_s6000_s1220
Homepage: http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/

Data Archive Contents
=====
128 2014-06-10 18:44:26 file.list
44 2014-06-10 18:44:27 file.list.sha1
104276331 2014-06-10 18:44:27 sysroot-internal.tar.gz
44 2014-06-10 18:44:27 sysroot-internal.tar.gz.sha1
5391348 2014-06-10 18:44:26 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz
44 2014-06-10 18:44:27 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.sha1
cumulus@switch:~$
```

You can also extract the contents of the image file by passing the `extract` option to the image file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo /var/lib/cumulus/installer/onie-installer
extract PATH
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
file.list
file.list.sha1
sysroot-internal.tar.gz
sysroot-internal.tar.gz.sha1
vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz
vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.sha1
Success: Image files extracted OK.
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ls -l
total 107120
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000 128 Jun 10 18:44 file.list
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000 44 Jun 10 18:44 file.list.sha1
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000 104276331 Jun 10 18:44 sysroot-internal.tar.gz
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000 44 Jun 10 18:44 sysroot-internal.tar.gz.
sha1
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000 5391348 Jun 10 18:44 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000 44 Jun 10 18:44 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.
sha1
```

Finally, you can verify the contents of the image file by passing the `verify` option to the image file:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo /var/lib/cumulus/installer/onie-installer
verify
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
file.list
file.list.sha1
sysroot-internal.tar.gz
sysroot-internal.tar.gz.sha1
vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz
vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.sha1
Success: Image files extracted OK.
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ls -l
total 107120
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      128 Jun 10 18:44 file.list
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      44 Jun 10 18:44 file.list.sha1
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000 104276331 Jun 10 18:44 sysroot-internal.tar.gz
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      44 Jun 10 18:44 sysroot-internal.tar.gz.
sha1
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000  5391348 Jun 10 18:44 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      44 Jun 10 18:44 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.
sha1

```

## Useful Links

- Open Network Install Environment (ONIE) Home Page

## Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image

Before you install Cumulus Linux, the switch can be in two different states:

- The switch has no image on it (so the switch is only running **ONIE**) or you desire or require a clean installation. In this case, you can install Cumulus Linux in one of the following ways, using:
  - DHCP/a Web server with DHCP options (see page 24)
  - DHCP/a Web server without DHCP options (see page 25)
  - A Web server with no DHCP (see page 25)
  - FTP or TFTP without a Web server (see page 26)
  - Local file installation (see page 26)
  - USB (see page 27)
- The switch already has Cumulus Linux installed on it, so you only need to **upgrade** it (see page 35)



ONIE is an open source project, equivalent to PXE on servers, that enables the installation of network operating systems (NOS) on bare metal switches.

## ***Understanding these Examples***

The sections in this chapter are ordered from the most repeatable to the least repeatable methods. For instance, DHCP can scale to hundreds of switch installs with zero manual input, compared to something like USB installs. Installing via USB is fine for a single switch here and there but is not scalable.

- You can name your Cumulus Linux installer binary using any of the [ONIE naming schemes mentioned here](#).
- In the examples below, [PLATFORM] can be any supported Cumulus Linux platform, such as `x86_64`, or `arm`.

## **Contents**

This chapter covers ...

- Understanding these Examples (see page 23)
- Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method with DHCP Options (see page 24)
- Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method without DHCP Options (see page 25)
- Installing via a Web Server with no DHCP (see page 25)
- Installing via FTP or TFTP without a Web Server (see page 26)
- Installing via a Local File (see page 26)
- Installing via USB (see page 27)
  - Preparing for USB Installation (see page 27)
  - Instructions for x86 Platforms (see page 29)
  - Instructions for ARM Platforms (see page 32)
- Installing a New Image when Cumulus Linux Is already Installed (see page 35)

## ***Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method with DHCP Options***

Installing Cumulus Linux in this manner is as simple as setting up a DHCP/Web server on your laptop and connecting the eth0 management port of the switch to your laptop.

Once you connect the cable, the installation proceeds as follows:

1. The bare metal switch boots up and asks for an address (DHCP request).
2. The DHCP server acknowledges and responds with DHCP option 114 and the location of the installation image.
3. ONIE downloads the Cumulus Linux binary, installs and reboots.
4. Success! You are now running Cumulus Linux.





The most common method is for you to send DHCP option 114 with the entire URL to the Web server (this could be the same system). However, there are many other ways to use DHCP even if you don't have full control over DHCP. [See the ONIE user guide](#) for help.

Here's an example DHCP configuration with an [ISC DHCP server](#):

```
subnet 172.0.24.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 172.0.24.20 172.0.24.200;
    option www-server = "http://172.0.24.14/onie-installer-[PLATFORM]";
}
```

Here's an example DHCP configuration with [dnsmasq](#) (static address assignment):

```
dhcp-host=sw4,192.168.100.14,6c:64:1a:00:03:ba,set:sw4
dhcp-option>tag:sw4,114,"http://roz.rtplab.test/onie-installer-
[PLATFORM]"
```

Don't have a Web server? There is a [free Apache example](#) you can utilize.

## ***Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method without DHCP Options***

If you have a laptop on same network and the switch can pull DHCP from the corporate network, but you cannot modify DHCP options (maybe it's controlled by another team), do the following:

1. Place the Cumulus Linux binary in a directory on the Web server.
2. Run the `onie-nos-install` command manually, since DHCP options can't be modified:

```
ONIE:/ #onie-nos-install http://10.0.1.251/path/to/cumulus-
install-[PLATFORM].bin
```

## ***Installing via a Web Server with no DHCP***

Use the following method if your laptop is on the same network as the switch eth0 interface but no DHCP server is available.

One thing to note is ONIE is in [discovery mode](#), so if you are setting a static IPv4 address for the eth0 management port, you need to disable discovery mode or else ONIE may get confused.

1. To disable discovery mode, run:

```
onie# onie-discovery-stop
```

or, on older ONIE versions if that command isn't supported:

```
onie# /etc/init.d/discover.sh stop
```

2. Assign a static address to eth0 via ONIE (using ip addr add):

```
ONIE:/ #ip addr add 10.0.1.252/24 dev eth0
```

3. Place the Cumulus Linux installer image in a directory on your Web server.
4. Run the onie-nos-install command manually since there are no DHCP options:

```
ONIE:/ #onie-nos-install http://10.0.1.251/path/to/cumulus-
install-[PLATFORM].bin
```

## ***Installing via FTP or TFTP without a Web Server***

1. Set up DHCP or static addressing for eth0, as in the examples above.
2. If you are utilizing static addressing, disable ONIE discovery mode.
3. Place the Cumulus Linux installer image into a TFTP or FTP directory.
4. If you are not utilizing DHCP options, run one of the following commands (tftp for TFTP or ftp for FTP):

```
ONIE# onie-nos-install ftp://local-ftp-server/cumulus-install-
[PLATFORM].bin
```

```
ONIE# onie-nos-install tftp://local-tftp-server/cumulus-install-
[PLATFORM].bin
```

## ***Installing via a Local File***

1. Set up DHCP or static addressing for eth0, as in the examples above.
2. If you are utilizing static addressing, disable ONIE discovery mode.
3. Use `scp` to copy the Cumulus Linux binary to the switch.  
**Note:** Windows users can use [WinScp](#).

- Run the following command:

```
ONIE# onie-nos-install /path/to/local/file/cumulus-install-[PLATFORM].bin
```

## Installing via USB

Following the steps below produces a clean installation of Cumulus Linux. This wipes out all pre-existing configuration files that may be present on the switch. Instructions are offered for x86 and ARM platforms, and also cover the installation of a license after the software installation.



Make sure to [back up \(see page 35\)](#) any important configuration files that you may need to restore the configuration of your switch after the installation finishes.

### Preparing for USB Installation

- Download the appropriate Cumulus Linux image for your x86 or ARM platform from the [Cumulus Networks Downloads page](#).
- Prepare your flash drive by formatting in one of the supported formats: FAT32, vFAT or EXT2.

Optional: Preparing a USB Drive inside Cumulus Linux



It is possible that you could severely damage your system with the following utilities, so please use caution when performing the actions below!

- a. Insert your flash drive into the USB port on the switch running Cumulus Linux and log in to the switch.
- b. Determine and note at which device your flash drive can be found by using output from `cat /proc/partitions` and `sudo fdisk -l [device]`. For example, `sudo fdisk -l /dev/sdb`.



These instructions assume your USB drive is the `/dev/sdb` device, which is typical if the USB stick was inserted after the machine was already booted. However, if the USB stick was plugged in during the boot process, it is possible the device could be `/dev/sda`. Make sure to modify the commands below to use the proper device for your USB drive!

- c. Create a new partition table on the device:

```
sudo parted /dev/sdb mklabel msdos
```



The `parted` utility should already be installed. However, if it is not, install it with:  
`sudo apt-get install parted`

- d. Create a new partition on the device:

```
sudo parted /dev/sdb -a optimal mkpart primary 0% 100%
```

- e. Format the partition to your filesystem of choice using ONE of the examples below:

```
sudo mkfs.ext2 /dev/sdb1
sudo mkfs.msdos -F 32 /dev/sdb1
sudo mkfs.vfat /dev/sdb1
```



To use `mkfs.msdos` or `mkfs.vfat`, you need to install the `dosfstools` package from the [Debian software repositories](#) (step 3 here shows you how to add repositories from Debian), as they are not included by default.

- f. To continue installing Cumulus Linux, mount the USB drive in order to move files to it.

```
sudo mkdir /mnt/usb
sudo mount /dev/sdb1 /mnt/usb
```

3. Copy the image and license files over to the flash drive and rename the image file to:

- `onie-installer-x86_64`, if installing on an x86 platform
- `onie-installer-arm`, if installing on an ARM platform



You can also use any of the ONIE naming schemes mentioned here.



When using a Mac or Windows computer to rename the installation file the file extension may still be present. Make sure to remove the file extension otherwise ONIE will not be able to detect the file!

4. Insert the USB stick into the switch, then continue with the appropriate instructions below for your x86 or ARM platform.

## ***Instructions for x86 Platforms***

Click to expand x86 instructions...

1. Prepare the switch for installation:

- If the switch is offline, connect to the console and power on the switch.
- If the switch is already online in Cumulus Linux, connect to the console and reboot the switch into the ONIE environment with the `sudo onie-select -i` command, followed by `sudo reboot`. Then skip to step 4 below.
- If the switch is already online in ONIE, use the `reboot` command.



SSH sessions to the switch get dropped after this step. To complete the remaining instructions, connect to the console of the switch. Cumulus Linux switches display their boot process to the console, so you need to monitor the console specifically to complete the next step.

2. Monitor the console and select the ONIE option from the first GRUB screen shown below.



GNU GRUB version 1.99-27+deb7u2

```
+-----+
| Cumulus Linux 2.5.3a-3b46bef-201509041633-build - slot 1
| Cumulus Linux 2.5.3a-3b46bef-201509041633-build - slot 1 (recovery mode)
| Cumulus Linux 2.5.3a-3b46bef-201509041633-build - slot 2
| Cumulus Linux 2.5.3a-3b46bef-201509041633-build - slot 2 (recovery mode)
| ONIE
+-----+
```

Use the ^ and v keys to select which entry is highlighted.  
Press enter to boot the selected OS, 'e' to edit the commands  
before booting or 'c' for a command-line.

3. Cumulus Linux on x86 uses GRUB chainloading to present a second GRUB menu specific to the ONIE partition. No action is necessary in this menu to select the default option *ONIE: Install OS*.



GNU GRUB version 2.02~beta2+e4a1fe391

```
+-----+
| *ONIE: Install OS
| ONIE: Rescue
| ONIE: Uninstall OS
| ONIE: Update ONIE
| ONIE: Embed ONIE
+-----+
```

Use the ^ and v keys to select which entry is highlighted.  
Press enter to boot the selected OS, 'e' to edit the commands  
before booting or 'c' for a command-line.

- At this point, the USB drive should be automatically recognized and mounted. The image file should be located and automatic installation of Cumulus Linux should begin. Here is some sample output:

```

ONIE: OS Install Mode ...
Version : quanta_common_rangeley-2014.05.05-6919d98-201410171013
Build Date: 2014-10-17T10:13+0800
Info: Mounting kernel filesystems... done.
Info: Mounting LABEL=ONIE-BOOT on /mnt/onie-boot ...
initializing eth0...
scsi 6:0:0:0: Direct-Access SanDisk Cruzer Facet 1.26 PQ: 0
ANSI: 6
sd 6:0:0:0: [sdb] 31266816 512-byte logical blocks: (16.0 GB/14.9
    GiB)
sd 6:0:0:0: [sdb] Write Protect is off
sd 6:0:0:0: [sdb] Write cache: disabled, read cache: enabled,
doesn't support DPO or FUA
sd 6:0:0:0: [sdb] Attached SCSI disk
<...snip...>
ONIE: Executing installer: file://dev/sdb1/onie-installer-x86_64
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
Dumping image info...
Control File Contents
=====
Description: Cumulus Linux
OS-Release: 3.0.0-3b46bef-201509041633-build
Architecture: amd64
Date: Fri, 27 May 2016 17:10:30 -0700
Installer-Version: 1.2
Platforms: accton_as5712_54x accton_as6712_32x
mlx_sx1400_i73612 dell_s6000_s1220 dell_s4000_c2338
dell_s3000_c2338 cel_redstone_xp cel_smallstone_xp cel_pebble
quanta_panther quanta_ly8_rangeley quanta_ly6_rangeley
quanta_ly9_rangeley
Homepage: http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/

```

- After installation completes, the switch automatically reboots into the newly installed instance of Cumulus Linux.
- Determine and note at which device your flash drive can be found by using output from `cat /proc/partitions` and `sudo fdisk -l [device]`. For example, `sudo fdisk -l /dev/sdb`.



These instructions assume your USB drive is the `/dev/sdb` device, which is typical if the USB stick was inserted after the machine was already booted. However, if the USB stick was plugged in during the boot process, it is possible the device could be `/dev/sda`. Make sure to modify the commands below to use the proper device for your USB drive!

7. Create a mount point to mount the USB drive to:

```
sudo mkdir /mnt/mountpoint
```

8. Mount the USB drive to the newly created mount point:

```
sudo mount /dev/sdb1 /mnt/mountpoint
```

9. Install your license file with the `cl-license` command:

```
sudo cl-license -i /mnt/mountpoint/license.txt
```

10. Check that your license is installed with the `cl-license` command.

11. Reboot the switch to utilize the new license.

```
sudo reboot
```

## Instructions for ARM Platforms

Click to expand ARM instructions...

1. Prepare the switch for installation:

- If the switch is offline, connect to the console and power on the switch.
- If the switch is already online in Cumulus Linux, connect to the console and reboot the switch into the ONIE environment with the `sudo onie-select -i` command, followed by `sudo reboot`. Then skip to step 4 below.
- If the switch is already online in ONIE, use the `reboot` command.



SSH sessions to the switch get dropped after this step. To complete the remaining instructions, connect to the console of the switch. Cumulus Linux switches display their boot process to the console, so you need to monitor the console specifically to complete the next step.

2. Interrupt the normal boot process before the countdown (shown below) completes. Press any key to stop the autobooting.

```
U-Boot 2013.01-00016-gd6bf4a9-dirty (Feb 14 2014 - 16:30:46)
Accton: 1.4.0.5
CPU0: P2020, Version: 2.1, (0x80e20021)
Core: E500, Version: 5.1, (0x80211051)
Clock Configuration:
    CPU0:1200 MHz, CPU1:1200 MHz,
    CCB:600 MHz,
    DDR:400 MHz (800 MT/s data rate) (Asynchronous), LBC:37.500 MHz
L1: D-cache 32 kB enabled
    I-cache 32 kB enabled
<...snip...
USB: USB2513 hub OK
Hit any key to stop autoboot: 0
```

3. A command prompt appears, so you can run commands. Execute the following command:

```
run onie_bootcmd
```

4. At this point the USB drive should be automatically recognized and mounted. The image file should be located and automatic installation of Cumulus Linux should begin. Here is some sample output:

```
Loading Open Network Install Environment ...
Platform: arm-as4610_54p-r0
Version : 1.6.1.3
WARNING: adjusting available memory to 30000000
## Booting kernel from Legacy Image at ec040000 ...
    Image Name:    as6701_32x.1.6.1.3
    Image Type:    ARM Linux Multi-File Image (gzip compressed)
    Data Size:    4456555 Bytes = 4.3 MiB
    Load Address: 00000000
    Entry Point:  00000000
    Contents:
        Image 0: 3738543 Bytes = 3.6 MiB
        Image 1: 706440 Bytes = 689.9 KiB
        Image 2: 11555 Bytes = 11.3 KiB
    Verifying Checksum ... OK
## Loading init Ramdisk from multi component Legacy Image at
ec040000 ...
## Flattened Device Tree from multi component Image at EC040000
    Booting using the fdt at 0xec47d388
    Uncompressing Multi-File Image ... OK
    Loading Ramdisk to 2ff53000, end 2ffff788 ... OK
    Loading Device Tree to 03ffa000, end 03ffd22 ... OK
<...snip...
ONIE: Starting ONIE Service Discovery
ONIE: Executing installer: file://dev/sdb1/onie-installer-arm
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
Dumping image info...
Control File Contents
=====
Description: Cumulus Linux
OS-Release: 3.0.0-3b46bef-201509041633-build
Architecture: arm
Date: Fri, 27 May 2016 17:08:35 -0700
Installer-Version: 1.2
Platforms: accton_as4600_54t, accton_as6701_32x, accton_5652,
accton_as5610_52x, dni_6448, dni_7448, dni_c7448n, cel_kennisis,
cel_redstone, cel_smallstone, cumulus_p2020, quanta_lb9,
quanta_ly2, quanta_ly2r, quanta_ly6_p2020
Homepage: http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/
```

5. After installation completes, the switch automatically reboots into the newly installed instance of Cumulus Linux.

6. Determine and note at which device your flash drive can be found by using output from `cat /proc/partitions` and `sudo fdisk -l [device]`. For example, `sudo fdisk -l /dev/sdb`.



These instructions assume your USB drive is the `/dev/sdb` device, which is typical if the USB stick was inserted after the machine was already booted. However, if the USB stick was plugged in during the boot process, it is possible the device could be `/dev/sda`. Make sure to modify the commands below to use the proper device for your USB drive!

7. Create a mount point to mount the USB drive to:

```
sudo mkdir /mnt/mountpoint
```

8. Mount the USB drive to the newly created mount point:

```
sudo mount /dev/sdb1 /mnt/mountpoint
```

9. Install your license file with the `cl-license` command:

```
sudo cl-license -i /mnt/mountpoint/license.txt
```

10. Check that your license is installed with the `cl-license` command.

11. Reboot the switch to utilize the new license.

```
sudo reboot
```

## ***Installing a New Image when Cumulus Linux Is already Installed***

Follow these upgrade steps for both major and minor releases, where:

- A major release upgrade is 2.X.X to 3.X.X (e.g. 1.5.1 to 2.5.0)
- A minor release upgrade is X.2.X to X.3.X (e.g. 2.2.0 to 2.5.5)

For more information, see [Upgrading Cumulus Linux \(see page 44\)](#).

## ***Upgrading Cumulus Linux***

Cumulus Networks software melds the Linux host world with the networking devices world. Each world comes with its own paradigm on how to upgrade software. Before we discuss the various ways to upgrade Cumulus Linux switches, let's review the general considerations and strategies used to upgrade network devices and Linux hosts.

## ***Contents***

This chapter covers ...

- Upgrades: Comparing the Network Device Worldview vs. the Linux Host Worldview (see page 36)
  - Manual vs. Automated Configuration (see page 36)
  - Pre-deployment Testing of Production Environments (see page 36)
  - Locations of Configuration Data vs. Executables (see page 37)
  - Upgrade Procedure (see page 37)
  - Rollback Procedure (see page 37)
  - Third Party Packages (see page 38)
- Upgrading Cumulus Linux Devices: Strategies and Processes (see page 38)
  - Automated Configuration Is Preferred over Manual Configuration (see page 38)
  - Out-of-Band Management Is Worth the Investment (see page 38)
  - Pre-Deployment Testing of New Releases Is Advised and Enabled (see page 39)
  - Understanding the Locations of Configuration Data is Required for Successful Upgrades, Migration, and Backup (see page 39)
  - Upgrading Switches in an MLAG Pair (see page 42)
- Upgrading Cumulus Linux: Choosing between a Binary Install vs. Package Upgrade (see page 43)
  - Upgrading Using Package Installs (`apt-get update && apt-get upgrade`) (see page 43)
  - Upgrading via Binary Install (ONIE) (see page 44)
- Rolling Back a Cumulus Linux Installation (see page 45)
- Third Party Package Considerations (see page 45)
- Installation and Upgrade Workflow in Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later (see page 46)
- Caveats When Migrating Configuration Files Between Cumulus Linux 2.5.z and 3.0 and Later (see page 46)
- Using the Config File Migration Script to Identify and Move Files to Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later (see page 46)
- Using Automation Tools to Back Up 2.5.z Configurations (see page 47)

## ***Upgrades: Comparing the Network Device Worldview vs. the Linux Host Worldview***

### ***Manual vs. Automated Configuration***

Historically, *network devices* were configured in place, and most network devices required customized configurations, which led predominantly to configuring the hardware manually. A lack of standardization between vendors, device types, and device roles hampered the development of APIs and automation tools. However, in the case of very large data centers, configurations became uniform and repeatable, and therefore scriptable. Some larger enterprises had to develop their own custom scripts to roll out data center network configurations. Virtually no industry-standard provisioning tools existed.

In contrast to data center network devices, *Linux hosts* in the data center number in the thousands and tend to have similar configurations. This increased scale led Linux sysadmins long ago to move to common tools to automate installation and configuration, since manually installing and configuring hosts did not work at the scale of a data center. Nearly all tasks are done via commonly available provisioning and orchestration tools.

## Pre-deployment Testing of Production Environments

Historically, the cost of *network device* testing has been hampered by the cost of a single device. Setting up an appropriately sized lab topology can be very expensive. As a result, it is difficult to do comprehensive topology-based testing of a release before deploying it. Thus, many network admins cannot or will not do comprehensive system testing of a new release before deploying it.

Alternatively, the cost of a *Linux host* is cheap (or nearly free when using virtualization), so rigorous testing of a release before deploying it is not encumbered by budgeting concerns. Most sysadmins extensively test new releases in the complete application environment.

## Locations of Configuration Data vs. Executables

*Network devices* generally separate configuration data from the executable code. On bootup, the executable code looks into a different file system and retrieves the configuration file or files, parses the text and uses that data to configure the software options for each software subsystem. The model is very centralized, with the executables generally being packaged together, and the configuration data following a set of rules that can be read by a centralized parser. Each vendor controls the configuration format for the entire box, since each vendor generally supports only their own software. This made sense since the platform was designed as an application-specific appliance.

Since a *Linux host* is a general purpose platform, with applications running on top of it, the locations of the files are much more distributed. Applications install and read their configuration data from text files usually stored in the /etc directory tree. Executables are generally stored in one of several *bin* directories, but the bin and etc directories are often on the same physical device. Since each *module* (application or executable) was often developed by a different organization and shared with the world, each module was responsible for its own configuration data format. Most applications are community supported, and while there are some generally accepted guiding principles on how their configuration data is formatted, no central authority exists to control or ensure compliance.

## Upgrade Procedure

Both network admins and sysadmins generally plan upgrades only to gain new functionality or to get bug fixes when the workarounds become too onerous. The goal is to reduce the number of upgrades as much as possible.

The *network device* upgrade paradigm is to leave the configuration data in place, and *replace the executable files* either all at once from a single binary image or in large chunks (subsystems). A full release upgrade comes with risk due to unexpected behavior changes in subsystems where the admin did not anticipate or need changes.

The *Linux host* upgrade paradigm is to independently *upgrade a small list of packages* while leaving most of the OS untouched. Changing a small list of packages reduces the risk of unintended consequences. Usually upgrades are a "forward only" paradigm, where the sysadmins generally plan to move to the latest code within the same major release when needed. Every few years, when a new kernel train is released, a major upgrade is planned. A major upgrade involves wiping and replacing the entire OS and migrating configuration data.

## Rollback Procedure

Even the most well planned and tested upgrades can result in unforeseen problems, and sometimes the best solution to new problems is to roll back to the previous state.

Since *network devices* clearly separate data and executables, generally the process is to *overwrite the new release executable* with the previously running executable. If the configuration was changed by the newer release, then you either have to manually back out or repair the changes, or restore from an already backed up configuration.

The *Linux host* scenario can be more complicated. There are three main approaches:

- Back out individual packages: If the problematic package is identified, the sysadmin can downgrade the affected package directly. In rare cases the configuration files may have to be restored from backup, or edited to back out any changes that were automatically made by the upgrade package.
- Flatten and rebuild: If the OS becomes unusable, you can use orchestration tools to reinstall the previous OS release from scratch and then automatically rebuild the configuration.
- Backup and restore: Another common strategy is to restore to a previous state via a backup captured before the upgrade.

## **Third Party Packages**

Third party packages are rare in the *network device* world. Because the network OS is usually proprietary, third party packages are usually packaged by the network device vendor and upgrades of those packages is handled by the network device upgrade system.

Third party packages in *Linux host* world often use the same package system as the distribution into which it is to be installed (for example, Debian uses `apt-get`). Or the package may be compiled and installed by the sysadmin. Configuration and executable files generally follow the same filesystem hierarchy standards as other applications.

## ***Upgrading Cumulus Linux Devices: Strategies and Processes***

Because Cumulus Linux is both Linux *and* a network device, it has characteristics of both paradigms. The following describes the Cumulus Linux paradigm with respect to upgrade planning and execution.

### ***Automated Configuration Is Preferred over Manual Configuration***

Because Cumulus Linux *is* Linux, Cumulus Networks recommends that even with small networks or test labs, network admins should make the jump to deploy, provision, configure, and upgrade switches using automation from the very beginning. The small up front investment of time spent learning an orchestration tool, even to provision a small number of Cumulus Linux devices, will pay back dividends for a long time. The biggest gain is realized during the upgrade process, where the network admin can quickly upgrade dozens of devices in a repeatable manner.

Switches, like servers, should be treated like *cattle, not pets*.

### ***Out-of-Band Management Is Worth the Investment***

Because network devices are reachable via the IP addresses on the front panel ports, many network admins of small-to-medium sized networks use *in-band* networks to manage their switches. In this design, management traffic like SSH, SNMP, and console server connections use the same networks that regular network traffic traverses — there is no separation between the *management plane* and the *data plane*. Larger data centers create a separate *out-of-band* network with a completely separate subnet and reachability path to attach to the management ports — that is accessible via eth0 and the serial console.

This is a situation where smaller companies should learn from the big companies. A separate management network isn't free, but it is relatively cheap. With an inexpensive **Cumulus RMP** management switch, an inexpensive console server, and a separate cable path, up to 48 devices can be completely controlled via the out-of-band network in the case of a network emergency.

There are many scenarios where in-band networking can fail and leave the network admin waiting for someone to drive to the data center or remote site to connect directly to the console of a misconfigured or failing device. The cost of one outage would usually more than pay for the investment in a separate network. For even more security, attach remote-controllable power distribution units (PDUs) in each rack to the management network, so you can have complete control to remote power cycle every device in that rack.



However, if an out-of-band network is not available for you to upgrade, you can use [the dtach tool](#) instead to upgrade in band.

## ***Pre-Deployment Testing of New Releases Is Advised and Enabled***

White box switches and virtualization (Cumulus VX) bring the cost of networking devices down, so the ability for network admins to test their own procedures, configurations, applications, and network topology in an appropriately-sized lab topology becomes extremely affordable.

## ***Understanding the Locations of Configuration Data is Required for Successful Upgrades, Migration, and Backup***

As with other Linux distributions, the `/etc` directory is the primary location for all configuration data in Cumulus Linux. The following list is a likely set of files that should be backed up and migrated to a new release, but any file that has been changed would need to be examined. Cumulus Networks recommends you consider making the following files and directories part of a backup strategy.

### ***Network Configuration Files***

File Name and Location	Explanation	Cumulus Linux Documentation	Debian Documentation
<code>/etc/network/</code>	Network configuration files, most notably <code>/etc/network/interfaces</code> and <code>/etc/network/interfaces.d/</code>	<a href="#">Configuring and Managing Network Interfaces (see page 153)</a>	<a href="#">wiki.debian.org/NetworkConfiguration</a>
<code>/etc/resolv.conf</code>	DNS resolution	Not unique to Cumulus Linux: <a href="#">wiki.debian.org/NetworkConfiguration#The_resolv.conf_configuration_file</a>	<a href="#">www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch05.en.html</a>
<code>/etc/quagga/</code>		<a href="#">Quagga Overview (see page 436)</a>	<a href="#">packages.debian.org/wheezy/quagga</a>

File Name and Location	Explanation	Cumulus Linux Documentation	Debian Documentation
	Routing application (responsible for BGP and OSPF)		
/etc/hostname	Configuration file for the hostname of the switch	Quick Start Guide#ConfiguringtheHostnameandTimeZone (see page 11)	<a href="http://wiki.debian.org/HowTo/ChangeHostname">wiki.debian.org/HowTo/ChangeHostname</a>
/etc/cumulus/ports.conf	Breakout cable configuration file	Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes#ConfiguringBreakoutPorts (see page )	N/A; please read the guide on breakout cables
/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf	Switchd configuration	Configuring switchd (see page 139)	N/A; please read the guide on switchd configuration

## Additional Commonly Used Files

File Name and Location	Explanation	Cumulus Linux Documentation	Debian Documentation
/etc/motd	Message of the day	Not unique to Cumulus Linux	<a href="http://wiki.debian.org/motd#Wheezy">wiki.debian.org/motd#Wheezy</a>
/etc/passwd	User account information	Not unique to Cumulus Linux	<a href="http://www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html">www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html</a>
/etc/shadow	Secure user account information	Not unique to Cumulus Linux	<a href="http://www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html">www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html</a>
/etc/group	Defines user groups on the switch	Not unique to Cumulus Linux	<a href="http://www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html">www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html</a>
/etc/llpd.conf	Link Layer Discover Protocol (LLDP) daemon configuration	Link Layer Discovery Protocol (see page 223)	<a href="http://packages.debian.org/wheezy/llpd">packages.debian.org/wheezy/llpd</a>

File Name and Location	Explanation	Cumulus Linux Documentation	Debian Documentation
/etc/lldpd.d/	Configuration directory for lldpd	Link Layer Discovery Protocol (see page 223)	<a href="http://packages.debian.org/wheezy/lldpd">packages.debian.org/wheezy/lldpd</a>
/etc/nsswitch.conf	Name Service Switch (NSS) configuration file	LDAP Authentication and Authorization (see page 80)	<a href="http://wiki.debian.org/LDAP/NSS">wiki.debian.org/LDAP/NSS</a>
/etc/ssh/	SSH configuration files	SSH for Remote Access (see page 69)	<a href="http://wiki.debian.org/SSH">wiki.debian.org/SSH</a>
/etc/ldap/ldap.conf	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol configuration file	LDAP Authentication and Authorization (see page 80)	<a href="http://www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html">www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html</a>

- If you are using the root user account, consider including `/root/`.
- If you have custom user accounts, consider including `/home/<username>/`.

## Files That Should Never Be Migrated Between Versions or Boxes

File Name and Location	Explanation
/etc/adjtime	System clock adjustment data. NTP manages this automatically. It is incorrect when the switch hardware is replaced. Do not copy.
/etc/bcm.d/	Per-platform hardware configuration directory, created on first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/mlx/	Per-platform hardware configuration directory, created on first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/blkid.tab	Partition table. It should not be modified manually. Do not copy.
/etc/blkid.tab.old	A previous partition table; it should not be modified manually. Do not copy.
/etc/cumulus/init	Platform hardware-specific files. Do not copy.
/etc/default/clagd	Created and managed by <code>ifupdown2</code> . Do not copy.
/etc/default/grub	Grub <code>init</code> table; it should not be modified manually.

File Name and Location	Explanation
/etc/default/hwclock	Platform hardware-specific file. Created during first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/init	Platform initialization files. Do not copy.
/etc/init.d/	Platform initialization files. Do not copy.
/etc/fstab	Static info on filesystem. Do not copy.
/etc/image-release	System version data. Do not copy.
/etc/os-release	System version data. Do not copy.
/etc/lsb-release	System version data. Do not copy.
/etc/lvm/archive	Filesystem files. Do not copy.
/etc/lvm/backup	Filesystem files. Do not copy.
/etc/modules	Created during first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/modules-load.d/	Created during first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/sensors.d	Platform-specific sensor data. Created during first boot. Do not copy.
/root/.ansible	Ansible tmp files. Do not copy.
/home/cumulus/.ansible	Ansible tmp files. Do not copy.

## Upgrading Switches in an MLAG Pair

If you have a pair of Cumulus Linux switches as part of an [MLAG \(multi-chassis link aggregation\) pair](#) (see page 273), you should only upgrade each switch when it is in the *secondary role*. The upgrade path is as follows:

1. Upgrade Cumulus Linux on the switch already in the secondary role. This is the switch with the higher `c1agd-priority` value.
2. Set the switch in the secondary role into the primary role by setting its `c1agd-priority` to a value lower than the `c1agd-priority` setting on the switch in the primary role.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo clagctl priority VALUE
```

3. Upgrade the switch that just took on the secondary role.
4. Put that switch into the primary role again, if you so choose.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo clagctl priority VALUE
```

For more information about setting the priority, see [Understanding Switch Roles \(see page 277\)](#).



If you are upgrading from Cumulus Linux 2.y.z to Cumulus Linux 3.y.z, during the time when one switch in the pair is on Cumulus Linux 3.y.z and the other switch in the pair is on Cumulus Linux 2.y.z, a complete outage occurs on these switches and their associated network segments.

## ***Upgrading Cumulus Linux: Choosing between a Binary Install vs. Package Upgrade***

Network admins have two ways to upgrade Cumulus Linux:

- Upgrading only the changed packages, using `apt-get update` and `apt-get upgrade`. **This is the preferred method.**
- Performing a binary (full image) install of the new version, using ONIE. This is used when moving between major versions or if you want to install a clean image.

There are advantages and disadvantages to using these methods, which are outlined below.

### ***Upgrading Using Package Installs (`apt-get update && apt-get upgrade`)***

Pros:

- Configuration data stays in place while the binaries are upgraded.
- Third-party apps stay in place.

Cons:

- This method works only if you are upgrading to a later minor release (like 3.0.x to 3.1.y) or a later maintenance release (like 3.0.0 to 3.0.1) from an earlier release in the same major release family **only** (like 2.5.2 to 2.5.5 or 3.0.0 to 3.0.1).
- Rollback is quite difficult and tedious.
- You can't choose the exact release version that you want to run.
- When you upgrade, you upgrade all packages to the latest available version.
- The upgrade process takes a while to complete, and various switch functions may be intermittently available during the upgrade.
- Some upgrade operations will terminate SSH sessions on the in-band (front panel) ports, leaving the user unable to monitor the upgrade process. As a workaround, use the [dtach tool](#).
- Just like the binary install method, you may have to reboot after the upgrade, lengthening the downtime.

- After you upgrade, user names and group names created by packages may be different on different switches, depending the configuration and package installation history.

To upgrade the switch by updating the packages:

1. Back up the configurations off the switch.
2. Fetch the latest update meta-data from the repository.

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo apt-get update
```

3. Upgrade all the packages to the latest distribution.

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo apt-get upgrade
```

4. Reboot the switch if you are notified by the upgrade messages that a System restart is required.

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo apt-get upgrade  
... upgrade messages here ...  
  
*** System restart required ***  
  
cumulus@switch$ sudo reboot
```

5. Verify correct operation with the old configurations on new version.



If you are curious about which packages will be upgraded, use `apt-get upgrade --dry-run`. This will display the list of packages that will be upgraded without upgrading anything.



After you successfully upgrade Cumulus Linux, you may notice some results that you may or may not have expected:

- `apt-get upgrade` always updates the operating system to the most current version, so if you are currently running Cumulus Linux 3.0.1 and run `apt-get upgrade` on that switch, the packages will get upgraded to the latest versions contained in the latest 3.y.z release.
- When you run `cat /etc/image-release`, the output still shows the version of Cumulus Linux from the last binary install. So if you installed Cumulus Linux 3.0.0 as a full image install and then upgraded to 3.1.0 using `apt-get upgrade`, the output from `/etc/image-release` still shows: `IMAGE_RELEASE=3.0.0`. To see the current version of all the Cumulus Linux packages running on the switch, use `dpkg --list` or `dpkg -l`.

## Upgrading via Binary Install (ONIE)

Pros:

- You choose the exact version that you want to upgrade to.
- This is the only method for upgrading to a new major (X.0) version. For example, when you are upgrading from 2.5.5 to 3.0.

Cons:

- Configuration data must be moved to the new OS via ZTP while the OS is first booted, or soon afterwards via out-of-band management.
- Moving the configuration file can go wrong in various ways:
  - Identifying all the locations of config data is not always an easy task. See section above on [Understanding the Locations of Configuration Data \(see page 39\)](#).
  - Config file changes in the new version may cause merge conflicts that go undetected.
- If config files aren't restored correctly, the user may be unable to attach to the switch from in-band management. Hence, out-of-band connectivity (eth0 or console) is recommended.
- The installer takes a while to complete.
- Third-party apps must be reinstalled and reconfigured afterwards.

To upgrade the switch by running a binary install:

1. Back up the configurations off the switch.
2. Install the binary image, following the instructions at [Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image \(see page 23\)](#).
3. Restore the configuration files to the new version — ideally via automation.
4. Verify correct operation with the old configurations on the new version.
5. Reinstall third party apps and associated configurations.

## ***Rolling Back a Cumulus Linux Installation***

Rolling back to an earlier release after upgrading the packages on the switch follows the same procedure as described for the Linux host OS rollback above. There are three main strategies, and all require detailed planning and execution:

- Back out individual packages: If the problematic package is identified, the network admin can downgrade the affected package directly. In rare cases the configuration files may have to be restored from backup, or edited to back out any changes that were automatically made by the upgrade package.
- Flatten and rebuild: If the OS becomes unusable, you can use orchestration tools to reinstall the previous OS release from scratch and then automatically rebuild the configuration.
- Backup and restore: Another common strategy is to restore to a previous state via a backup captured before the upgrade.

Which method you employ is specific to your deployment strategy, so providing detailed steps for each scenario is outside the scope of this document.

## ***Third Party Package Considerations***

Note that if you install any third party apps on a Cumulus Linux switch, any configuration data will likely be installed into the /etc directory, but it is not guaranteed. It is the responsibility of the network admin to understand the behavior and config file information of any third party packages installed on a Cumulus Linux switch.

After you upgrade the OS using a full binary install, you will need to reinstall any third party packages or any Cumulus Linux add-on packages, such as `vxsnd` or `vxrd`.

## **Installation and Upgrade Workflow in Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later**

Beginning with version 3.0, Cumulus Linux completely embraces the Linux and Debian upgrade workflow. In this paradigm, a base image is installed using an installer, then any upgrades within that release train (major version, like 3.y.z) are done using `apt-get update && apt-get upgrade`. Any packages that have been changed since the base install get upgraded in place from the repository.

The huge advantage of this approach is that all switch configuration files remain untouched, or in rare cases merged (using the Debian merge function) during the package upgrade.

However, when upgrading a switch from a previous release train — for example, Cumulus Linux 2.5 — a mechanism is required to migrate the configuration files over to the new installation. This is the perfect opportunity to use automation and orchestration tools to backup the configuration files, examine them to verify correctness with the new version, and then to redeploy the configuration files on the new installation.

## **Caveats When Migrating Configuration Files Between Cumulus Linux 2.5.z and 3.0 and Later**

Generally, the configuration files in Cumulus Linux 2.5.z should be able to migrate to version 3.0 or later without any problems, but there are some known issues listed below and there may be additional issues with a customer's particular setup.

Known caveats when migrating files from version 2.x to 3.0 or later:

- Some configuration files should never be migrated between versions or while replacing hardware. The [Files that Should Never be Migrated](#) (see page 41) table above contains a list of files that should never be migrated.
- `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/shadow` should not be migrated to the new version directly. The example below and the ansible script included with [Config File Migration Script](#) explicitly excludes these two files from the backup archive. The default password for the `cumulus` user must be changed, and any locally created users should be added to the new installation after the upgrade completes.
- `/etc/apt/sources.list` must be completely updated with a new 3.0 or later repository and repository structure. Repositories from Cumulus Linux 2.5 must be removed. If there are any custom repositories on the switch, they need to be migrated into the new `sources.list` file or the `sources.d/` directory.

## **Using the Config File Migration Script to Identify and Move Files to Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later**

You can use the [Config File Migration Script](#) with the `--backup` option to create a backup archive of configuration files in version 2.5, copy them off the box, then install them on the new version switch. Note that you need to follow the previous section about caveats when migrating configuration files.



You **cannot** use the Config File Migration Script to upgrade from Cumulus Linux 3.0.0 to 3.0.1. Use `apt-get` instead, as documented in the [release notes](#).

The following example excludes `/etc/apt`, `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/shadow` from the backup archive.

1. Back up the version 2.5.z files.

**Optional:** Use the Ansible playbook included with the [Config File Migration](#) script to automate the backup of all your Cumulus Linux 2.5 switches. See the section below on [Using Automation Tools to Backup Configurations](#) (see page 47) for more details.

```
# Make a temp dir  
loc=$(mktemp -d)  
# Create a backup archive to the temp dir  
sudo ./config_file_changes --backup --backup_dir $loc --exclude  
/etc/apt,/etc/passwd,/etc/shadow  
# Copy the archive and log file to an external server  
sudo scp -r $loc/* user@my_external_server:.
```

2. Install Cumulus Linux 3.0 or later onto the switch using ONIE (see page 23).
3. Reinstall the files from the config file archive to the newly installed switch.

```
# On the switch, copy the config file archive back from the  
server:  
scp user@my_external_server:PATH/SWITCHNAME-config-archive-  
DATE_TIME.tar.gz .  
# Untar the archive to the root of the box  
sudo tar -C / -xvf SWITCHNAME-config-archive-DATE_TIME.tar.gz
```



Be aware that version 2.5.z configurations are not guaranteed to work in Cumulus Linux 3.0 or later. You should test the restoration and proper operation of the Cumulus Linux 2.5.z configuration in Cumulus Linux 3.0 or later on a non-production switch or in a Cumulus VX image, since every deployment is unique.

## Using Automation Tools to Back Up 2.5.z Configurations

Adopting the use of orchestration tools like Ansible, Chef or Puppet for configuration management greatly increases the speed and accuracy of the next major upgrade; they also enable the quick swap of failed switch hardware. Included with the [Config Migration Script](#) is an Ansible playbook that can be used to create a backup archive of Cumulus Linux 2.5.z switch configuration files and to retrieve them to a central server — automating step 1 of the previous section for all deployed Cumulus Linux 2.5.z switches. This is a quick start on the road to setting up automated configuration and control for your deployment. For more details on integrating automation into your Cumulus Linux deployment, see the [Automation Solutions section](#) on [cumulusnetworks.com](http://cumulusnetworks.com).

## Adding and Updating Packages

You use the Advanced Packaging Tool (APT) to manage additional applications (in the form of packages) and to install the latest updates.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 48)
- Updating the Package Cache (see page 48)
- Listing Available Packages (see page 49)
- Adding a Package (see page 50)
- Listing Installed Packages (see page 51)
- Upgrading to Newer Versions of Installed Packages (see page 52)
  - Upgrading a Single Package (see page 52)
  - Upgrading All Packages (see page 52)
- Adding Packages from Another Repository (see page 52)
- Configuration Files (see page 53)
- Useful Links (see page 53)

## Commands

- apt-get
- apt-cache
- dpkg

## Updating the Package Cache

To work properly, APT relies on a local cache of the available packages. You must populate the cache initially, and then periodically update it with `apt-get update`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get update
Get:1 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3 InRelease
[7,624 B]
Get:2 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-
updates InRelease [7,555 B]
Get:3 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates
InRelease [7,660 B]
Get:4 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/cumulus Sources
[20 B]
Get:5 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/upstream
Sources [20 B]
Get:6 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/cumulus amd64
Packages [38.4 kB]
Get:7 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/upstream amd64
Packages [445 kB]
Get:8 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates
/cumulus Sources [20 B]
Get:9 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates
/upstream Sources [11.8 kB]
```

```

Get:10 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-
updates/cumulus amd64 Packages [20 B]
Get:11 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-
updates/upstream amd64 Packages [8,941 B]
Get:12 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates
/cumulus Sources [20 B]
Get:13 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates
/upstream Sources [776 B]
Get:14 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates
/cumulus amd64 Packages [38.4 kB]
Get:15 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates
/upstream amd64 Packages [444 kB]
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/cumulus
Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/cumulus
Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/upstream
Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/upstream
Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates
/cumulus Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates
/cumulus Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates
/upstream Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates
/upstream Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/cumulus
Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/cumulus
Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/upstream
Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/upstream
Translation-en
Fetched 1,011 kB in 1s (797 kB/s)
Reading package lists... Done

```

## ***Listing Available Packages***

Once the cache is populated, use `apt-cache` to search the cache to find the packages you are interested in or to get information about an available package. Here are examples of the `search` and `show` sub-commands:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ apt-cache search tcp
socat - multipurpose relay for bidirectional data transfer
quagga-doc - documentation files for quagga
fakeroot - tool for simulating superuser privileges

```

```

quagga - BGP/OSPF/RIP routing daemon
tcpdump - command-line network traffic analyzer
openssh-server - secure shell (SSH) server, for secure access from
remote machines
openssh-sftp-server - secure shell (SSH) sftp server module, for SFTP
access from remote machines
python-dpkt - Python packet creation / parsing module
libfakeroot - tool for simulating superuser privileges - shared
libraries
openssh-client - secure shell (SSH) client, for secure access to
remote machines
rsyslog - reliable system and kernel logging daemon
libwrap0 - Wietse Venema's TCP wrappers library
netbase - Basic TCP/IP networking system
  
```

```

cumulus@switch:~$ apt-cache show tcpdump
Package: tcpdump
Status: install ok installed
Priority: optional
Section: net
Installed-Size: 1092
Maintainer: Romain Francoise <rfrancoise@debian.org>
Architecture: amd64
Multi-Arch: foreign
Version: 4.6.2-5+deb8u1
Depends: libc6 (>= 2.14), libpcap0.8 (>= 1.5.1), libssl1.0.0 (>= 1.0.0
)
Description: command-line network traffic analyzer
  This program allows you to dump the traffic on a network. tcpdump
  is able to examine IPv4, ICMPv4, IPv6, ICMPv6, UDP, TCP, SNMP, AFS
  BGP, RIP, PIM, DVMRP, IGMP, SMB, OSPF, NFS and many other packet
  types.

  .
  It can be used to print out the headers of packets on a network
interface, filter packets that match a certain expression. You can
use this tool to track down network problems, to detect attacks
or to monitor network activities.
Description-md5: f01841bfda357d116d7ff7b7a47e8782
Homepage: http://www.tcpdump.org/
cumulus@switch:~$
```



The search commands look for the search terms not only in the package name but in other parts of the package information. Consequently, it will match on more packages than you would expect.

## **Adding a Package**

In order to add a new package, first ensure the package is not already installed in the system:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ dpkg -l | grep {name of package}
```

If the package is installed already, ensure it's the version you need. If it's an older version, then update the package from the Cumulus Linux repository:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get update
```

If the package is not already on the system, add it by running `apt-get install`. This retrieves the package from the Cumulus Linux repository and installs it on your system together with any other packages that this package might depend on.

For example, the following adds the package `tcpreplay` to the system:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install tcpreplay
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
The following NEW packages will be installed:
tcpreplay
0 upgraded, 1 newly installed, 0 to remove and 1 not upgraded.
Need to get 436 kB of archives.
After this operation, 1008 kB of additional disk space will be used.
Get:1 https://repo.cumulusnetworks.com/ CumulusLinux-1.5/main
tcpreplay amd64 4.6.2-5+deb8u1 [436 kB]
Fetched 436 kB in 0s (1501 kB/s)
Selecting previously unselected package tcpreplay.
(Reading database ... 15930 files and directories currently
installed.)
Unpacking tcpreplay (from .../tcpreplay_4.6.2-5+deb8u1_amd64.deb) ...
Processing triggers for man-db ...
Setting up tcpreplay (4.6.2-5+deb8u1) ...
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## ***Listing Installed Packages***

The APT cache contains information about all the packages available on the repository. To see which packages are actually installed on your system, use `dpkg`. The following example lists all the packages on the system that have "tcp" in their package names:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ dpkg -l \*tcp\*
Desired=Unknown/Install/Remove/Purge/Hold
| Status=Not/Inst/Conf-files/Unpacked/half-conf/Half-inst/trig-aWait
/Trig-pend
| / Err?=(none)/Reinst-required (Status,Err: uppercase=bad)
|| / Name                           Version
Architecture          Description
```

```
=====
=====
un  tcpd              <none>
<none>          (no description available)
ii  tcpdump           4.6.2-5+deb8u1
amd64          command-line network traffic analyzer
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## Upgrading to Newer Versions of Installed Packages

### Upgrading a Single Package

A single package can be upgraded by simply installing that package again with `apt-get install`. You should perform an update first so that the APT cache is populated with the latest information about the packages.

To see if a package needs to be upgraded, use `apt-cache show <pkgname>` to show the latest version number of the package. Use `dpkg -l <pkgname>` to show the version number of the installed package.

### Upgrading All Packages

You can update all packages on the system by running `apt-get update`, then `apt-get upgrade`. This upgrades all installed versions with their latest versions but will not install any new packages.

### Adding Packages from Another Repository

As shipped, Cumulus Linux searches the Cumulus Linux repository for available packages. You can add additional repositories to search by adding them to the list of sources that `apt-get` consults. See `man sources.list` for more information.



For several packages, Cumulus Networks has added features or made bug fixes and these packages must not be replaced with versions from other repositories. Cumulus Linux has been configured to ensure that the packages from the Cumulus Linux repository are always preferred over packages from other repositories.

If you want to install packages that are not in the Cumulus Linux repository, the procedure is the same as above with one additional step.



Packages not part of the Cumulus Linux Repository have generally not been tested, and may not be supported by Cumulus Linux support.

Installing packages outside of the Cumulus Linux repository requires the use of `apt-get`, but, depending on the package, `easy-install` and other commands can also be used.

To install a new package, please complete the following steps:

1. First, ensure package is not already installed in the system. Use the `dpkg` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ dpkg -l | grep {name of package}
```

2. If the package is installed already, ensure it's the version you need. If it's an older version, then update the package from the Cumulus Linux repository:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install {name of package}
```

3. If the package is not on the system, then most likely the package source location is also **not** in the /etc/apt/sources.list file. If the source for the new package is **not** in sources.list, please edit and add the appropriate source to the file. For example, add the following if you wanted a package from the Debian repository that is **not** in the Cumulus Linux repository:

```
deb http://http.us.debian.org/debian jessie main
deb http://security.debian.org/ jessie/updates main
```

Otherwise, the repository may be listed in /etc/apt/sources.list but is commented out, as can be the case with the early-access repository:

```
#deb http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com/repo CumulusLinux-3-early-
access cumulus
```

To uncomment the repository, remove the # at the start of the line, then save the file:

```
deb http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com/repo CumulusLinux-3-early-
access cumulus
```

4. Run apt-get update then install the package:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install {name of package}
```

## Configuration Files

- /etc/apt/apt.conf
- /etc/apt/preferences
- /etc/apt/sources.list

## Useful Links

- [Debian GNU/Linux FAQ, Ch 8 Package management tools](#)
- [man pages for apt-get, dpkg, sources.list, apt\\_preferences](#)

## Zero Touch Provisioning - ZTP

*Zero touch provisioning* (ZTP) enables network devices to be quickly deployed in large-scale environments. Data center engineers only need to rack and stack the switch, connect it to the management network, then install Cumulus Linux via ONIE; the initial configuration gets invoked via ZTP. Alternatively, you can insert a USB stick with the configuration so the provisioning process can start automatically.

The provisioning framework allows for a one-time, user-provided script to be executed. This script can be used to add the switch to a configuration management (CM) platform such as [Puppet](#), [Chef](#), [CFEngine](#) or even a custom, home-grown tool.

In addition, you can use the `ztp` command in Cumulus Linux to manually invoke your provisioning script.

ZTP in Cumulus Linux can occur automatically in one of the following ways, in this order:

- Via a local file
- Using a USB drive inserted into the switch (ZTP-USB)
- Via DHCP

Each method is discussed in greater detail below.



The standard Cumulus Linux license requires you to page through the license file before accepting the terms, which can hinder an unattended installation like zero touch provisioning. To request a license without the EULA, email [licensing@cumulusnetworks.com](mailto:licensing@cumulusnetworks.com).

## Contents

Click to expand...

- Commands (see page 54)
- Zero Touch Provisioning Using a Local File (see page 54)
- Zero Touch Provisioning Using USB (ZTP-USB) (see page 55)
- Zero Touch Provisioning over DHCP (see page 56)
  - Triggering ZTP over DHCP (see page 56)
  - Configuring The DHCP Server (see page 56)
  - Detailed Look at HTTP Headers (see page 57)
- Writing ZTP Scripts (see page 57)
  - Example ZTP Scripts (see page 58)
- Testing and Debugging ZTP Scripts (see page 60)
- Manually Using the `ztp` Command (see page 63)
- Notes (see page 65)

## Commands

- `ztp`

## Zero Touch Provisioning Using a Local File

ZTP only looks once for a ZTP script on the local file system when the switch boots. ZTP searches for an install script that matches an [ONIE-style waterfall](#) in `/var/lib/cumulus/ztp`, looking for the most specific name first, and ending at the most generic:

- `'cumulus-ztp-' + architecture + '-' + vendor + '_' + model + '-r' + revision`
- `'cumulus-ztp-' + architecture + '-' + vendor + '_' + model`
- `'cumulus-ztp-' + vendor + '_' + model`
- `'cumulus-ztp-' + architecture`
- `'cumulus-ztp'`

For example:

```
cumulus-ztp-amd64-cel_pebble-rUNKNOWN
cumulus-ztp-amd64-cel_pebble
cumulus-ztp-cel_pebble
cumulus-ztp-amd64
cumulus-ztp
```

You can also trigger the ZTP process manually by running the `ztp --run <URL>` command, where the URL is the path to the ZTP script.

## Zero Touch Provisioning Using USB (ZTP-USB)



This feature has been tested only with "thumb" drives, not an actual external large USB hard drive.

If the `ztp` process did not discover a local script, it tries once to locate an inserted but unmounted USB drive. If it discovers one, it begins the ZTP process.

Cumulus Linux supports the use of a FAT32, FAT16, or VFAT-formatted USB drive as an installation source for ZTP scripts. You must plug in the USB stick **before** you power up the switch.

At minimum, the script should:

- Install the Cumulus Linux operating system and license.
- Copy over a basic configuration to the switch.
- Restart the switch or the relevant server to get `switchd` up and running with that configuration.

Follow these steps to perform zero touch provisioning using USB:

1. Copy the Cumulus Linux license and installation image to the USB stick.
2. The `ztp` process searches the root filesystem of the newly mounted device for filenames matching an [ONIE-style waterfall](#) (see the patterns and examples above), looking for the most specific name first, and ending at the most generic.
3. The script's contents are parsed to ensure it contains the `CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING` flag (see [example scripts \(see page 58\)](#)).



The USB device is mounted to a temporary directory under `/tmp` (for example, `/tmp/tmpigGgjf/`). In order to reference files on the USB, use the environment variable `ZTP_USB_MOUNTPOINT` to refer to the USB root partition.

## Zero Touch Provisioning over DHCP

If the `ztp` process did not discover a local/ONIE script or applicable USB drive, it checks DHCP every 10 seconds for up to 5 minutes for the presence of a ZTP URL specified in `/var/run/ztp.dhcp`. The URL can be any of HTTP, HTTPS, FTP or TFTP.

For ZTP using DHCP, provisioning initially takes place over the management network and is initiated via a DHCP hook. A DHCP option is used to specify a configuration script. This script is then requested from the Web server and executed locally on the switch.

The zero touch provisioning process over DHCP follows these steps:

1. The first time you boot Cumulus Linux, `eth0` is configured for DHCP and makes a DHCP request.
2. The DHCP server offers a lease to the switch.
3. If option 239 is present in the response, the zero touch provisioning process itself will start.
4. The zero touch provisioning process requests the contents of the script from the URL, sending additional [HTTP headers \(see page 57\)](#) containing details about the switch.
5. The script's contents are parsed to ensure it contains the `CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING` flag ([see example scripts \(see page 58\)](#)).
6. If provisioning is necessary, then the script executes locally on the switch with root privileges.
7. The return code of the script gets examined. If it is 0, then the provisioning state is marked as complete in the autoprovioning configuration file.

## Triggering ZTP over DHCP

If provisioning has not already occurred, it is possible to trigger the zero touch provisioning process over DHCP when `eth0` is set to use DHCP and one of the following events occur:

- Booting the switch
- Plugging a cable into or unplugging it from the `eth0` port
- Disconnecting then reconnecting the switch's power cord

You can also run the `ztp --run <URL>` command, where the URL is the path to the ZTP script.

## Configuring The DHCP Server

During the DHCP process over `eth0`, Cumulus Linux will request DHCP option 239. This option is used to specify the custom provisioning script.

For example, the `/etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf` file for an ISC DHCP server would look like:

```
option cumulus-provision-url code 239 = text;

subnet 192.0.2.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
  range 192.0.2.100 192.168.0.200;
```

```
option cumulus-provision-url "http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh";
}
```

Additionally, the hostname of the switch can be specified via the `host-name` option:

```
subnet 192.168.0.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 192.168.0.100 192.168.0.200;
    option cumulus-provision-url "http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh";
    host dcl-tor-swl { hardware ethernet 44:38:39:00:1a:6b; fixed-
        address 192.168.0.101; option host-name "dcl-tor-swl"; }
}
```

## Detailed Look at HTTP Headers

The following HTTP headers are sent in the request to the webserver to retrieve the provisioning script:

Header	Value	Example
-----	-----	-----
User-Agent		CumulusLinux-
AutoProvision/0.4		
CUMULUS-ARCH	CPU architecture	x86_64
CUMULUS-BUILD		3.0.0-5c6829a-2013
09251712-final		
CUMULUS-LICENSE-INSTALLED	Either 0 or 1	1
CUMULUS-MANUFACTURER		odm
CUMULUS-PRODUCTNAME		switch_model
CUMULUS-SERIAL		XYZ123004
CUMULUS-VERSION		3.0.0
CUMULUS-PROV-COUNT		0
CUMULUS-PROV-MAX		32

## Writing ZTP Scripts



Remember to include the following line in any of the supported scripts which are expected to be run via the autoprovisioning framework.

```
# CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
```

This line is required somewhere in the script file in order for execution to occur.

The script must contain the `CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING` flag. This can be in a comment or remark and does not need to be echoed or written to `stdout`.

The script can be written in any language currently supported by Cumulus Linux, such as:

- Perl
- Python
- Ruby
- Shell

The script must return an exit code of 0 upon success, as this triggers the autoprovisioning process to be marked as complete in the autoprovisioning configuration file.

## Example ZTP Scripts

The following script install Cumulus Linux and its license from USB and applies a configuration:

```
#!/bin/bash
function error() {
    echo -e "\e[0;33mERROR: The Zero Touch Provisioning script failed
while running the command $BASH_COMMAND at line $BASH_LINENO.\e[0m" >&
2
    exit 1
}

# Log all output from this script
exec >/var/log/autoprovision 2>&1

trap error ERR

#Add Debian Repositories
echo "deb http://http.us.debian.org/debian jessie main" >> /etc/apt
/sources.list
echo "deb http://security.debian.org/ jessie/updates main" >> /etc/apt
/sources.list

#Update Package Cache
apt-get update -y

#Install netshow diagnostics commands
apt-get install -y netshow htop nmap

#Load interface config from usb
cp ${ZTP_USB_MOUNTPOINT}/interfaces /etc/network/interfaces

#Load port config from usb
#  (if breakout cables are used for certain interfaces)
cp ${ZTP_USB_MOUNTPOINT}/ports.conf /etc/cumulus/ports.conf

#Install a License from usb and restart switchd
cl-license -i ${ZTP_USB_MOUNTPOINT}/license.txt && systemctl restart
switchd.service

#Reload interfaces to apply loaded config
ifreload -a
```

```
#Output state of interfaces
netshow interface

# CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
exit 0
```

Here is a simple script to install puppet:

```
#!/bin/bash
function error() {
    echo -e "\e[0;33mERROR: The Zero Touch Provisioning script failed
while running the command $BASH_COMMAND at line $BASH_lineno.\e[0m" >&
2
    exit 1
}
trap error ERR
apt-get update -y
apt-get upgrade -y
apt-get install puppet -y
sed -i /etc/default/puppet -e 's/START=no/START=yes/'
sed -i /etc/puppet/puppet.conf -e 's/\\[main\\]\\/[main\\]
\npluginsync=true/'
systemctl restart puppet.service
# CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
exit 0
```

This script illustrates how to specify an internal APT mirror and puppet master:

```
#!/bin/bash
function error() {
    echo -e "\e[0;33mERROR: The Zero Touch Provisioning script failed
while running the command $BASH_COMMAND at line $BASH_lineno.\e[0m" >&
2
    exit 1
}
trap error ERR
sed -i /etc/apt/sources.list -e 's/repo.cumulusnetworks.com/labrepo.
mycompany.com/'
apt-get update -y
apt-get upgrade -y
apt-get install puppet -y
sed -i /etc/default/puppet -e 's/START=no/START=yes/'
sed -i /etc/puppet/puppet.conf -e 's/\\[main\\]\\/[main\\]
\npluginsync=true/'
sed -i /etc/puppet/puppet.conf -e 's/\\[main\\]\\/[main\\]
\nserver=labpuppet.mycompany.com/'
systemctl restart puppet.service
# CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
```

```
exit 0
```

Now puppet can take over management of the switch, configuration authentication, changing the default root password, and setting up interfaces and routing protocols.

Several ZTP example scripts are available in the [Cumulus GitHub repository](#).

## **Testing and Debugging ZTP Scripts**

There are a few commands you can use to test and debug your ZTP scripts.

You can use verbose mode to debug your script and see where your script failed. Include the `-v` option when you run `ztp`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -v -r http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
Attempting to provision via ZTP Manual from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh

Broadcast message from root@dell-s6000-01 (ttyS0) (Tue May 10 22:44:17
2016):

ZTP: Attempting to provision via ZTP Manual from http://192.0.2.1
/demo.sh
ZTP Manual: URL response code 200
ZTP Manual: Found Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
ZTP Manual: Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
error: ZTP Manual: Payload returned code 1
error: Script returned failure
```

You can also run `ztp -s` to get more information about the current state of ZTP.

ZTP INFO:	
State	enabled
Version	1.0
Result	Script Failure
Date	Tue May 10 22:42:09 2016 UTC
Method	ZTP DHCP
URL	http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh

If ZTP ran when the switch booted and not manually, you can run the `sudo systemctl -l status ztp.service` then `journalctl -l -u ztp.service` to see if any failures occur:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl -l status ztp.service
ztp.service - Cumulus Linux ZTP
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/ztp.service; enabled)
   Active: failed (Result: exit-code) since Wed 2016-05-11 16:38:45
             UTC; 1min 47s ago
     Docs: man:ztp(8)
```

```

Process: 400 ExecStart=/usr/sbin/ztp -b (code=exited, status=1/FAILURE)
Main PID: 400 (code=exited, status=1/FAILURE)

May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Device not found
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Looking for
or ZTP Script provided by DHCP
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: Attempting to
provision via ZTP DHCP from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: URL
response code 200
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Found
Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP:
Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Payload
returned code 1
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: Script returned
failure
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 systemd[1]: ztp.service: main process
exited, code=exited, status=1/FAILURE
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 systemd[1]: Unit ztp.service entered
failed state.
cumulus@switch:~$ 
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo journalctl -l -u ztp.service --no-pager
-- Logs begin at Wed 2016-05-11 16:37:42 UTC, end at Wed 2016-05-11 16
:40:39 UTC. --
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: /var/lib/cumulus/ztp:
State Directory does not exist. Creating it...
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: /var/run/ztp.lock: Lock
File does not exist. Creating it...
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: /var/lib/cumulus/ztp
/ztp_state.log: State File does not exist. Creating it...
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Looking for
ZTP local Script
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-dell_s6000_s1220-
rUNKNOWN
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-dell_s6000_s1220
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-dell
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Looking for
unmounted USB devices
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Parsing
partitions
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Device not found

```

```

May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Looking f
or ZTP Script provided by DHCP
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: Attempting to
provision via ZTP DHCP from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: URL
response code 200
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Found
Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP:
Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Payload
returned code 1
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: Script returned
failure
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 systemd[1]: ztp.service: main process
exited, code=exited, status=1/FAILURE
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 systemd[1]: Unit ztp.service entered
failed state.

```

Instead of running journalctl, you can see the log history by running:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ cat /var/log/syslog | grep ztp
2016-05-11T16:37:45.132583+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: /var/lib/cumulus
/ztp: State Directory does not exist. Creating it...
2016-05-11T16:37:45.134081+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: /var/run/ztp.
lock: Lock File does not exist. Creating it...
2016-05-11T16:37:45.135360+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: /var/lib/cumulus
/ztp/ztp_state.log: State File does not exist. Creating it...
2016-05-11T16:37:45.185598+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Looking for ZTP local Script
2016-05-11T16:37:45.485084+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-
dell_s6000_s1220-rUNKNOWN
2016-05-11T16:37:45.486394+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-
dell_s6000_s1220
2016-05-11T16:37:45.488385+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-dell
2016-05-11T16:37:45.489665+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64
2016-05-11T16:37:45.490854+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp
2016-05-11T16:37:45.492296+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Looking f
or unmounted USB devices
2016-05-11T16:37:45.493525+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Parsing
partitions
2016-05-11T16:37:45.636422+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Device
not found
2016-05-11T16:38:43.372857+00:00 cumulus ztp [1805]: Found ZTP DHCP
Request

```

```

2016-05-11T16:38:45.696562+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Looking
for ZTP Script provided by DHCP
2016-05-11T16:38:45.698598+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: Attempting to
provision via ZTP DHCP from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
2016-05-11T16:38:45.816275+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: URL
response code 200
2016-05-11T16:38:45.817446+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Found
Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
2016-05-11T16:38:45.818402+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP:
Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
2016-05-11T16:38:45.834240+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Payload
returned code 1
2016-05-11T16:38:45.835488+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: Script returned
failure
2016-05-11T16:38:45.876334+00:00 cumulus systemd[1]: ztp.service:
main process exited, code=exited, status=1/FAILURE
2016-05-11T16:38:45.879410+00:00 cumulus systemd[1]: Unit ztp.service
entered failed state.

```

If you see that the issue is a script failure, you can modify the script and then run `ztp` manually using `ztp -v -r <URL/path to that script>`, as above.

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -v -r http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
Attempting to provision via ZTP Manual from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh

Broadcast message from root@dell-s6000-01 (ttyS0) (Tue May 10 22:44:17
2016):

ZTP: Attempting to provision via ZTP Manual from http://192.0.2.1
/demo.sh
ZTP Manual: URL response code 200
ZTP Manual: Found Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
ZTP Manual: Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
error: ZTP Manual: Payload returned code 1
error: Script returned failure
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -s
State      enabled
Version    1.0
Result     Script Failure
Date       Tue May 10 22:44:17 2016 UTC
Method     ZTP Manual
URL       http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh

```

## ***Manually Using the ztp Command***

To enable zero touch provisioning, use the `-e` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -e
```



Enabling `ztp` means that `ztp` will try to occur the next time the switch boots. However, if ZTP already occurred on a previous boot up or if a manual configuration has been found, ZTP will just exit without trying to look for any script.

ZTP checks for these manual configurations during bootup:

- Password changes
- Users and groups changes
- Packages changes
- Interfaces changes
- The presence of an installed license

When the switch is booted for the very first time, ZTP records the state of some important files that are most likely going to be modified after that the switch is configured. If ZTP is still enabled after a reboot, ZTP will compare the recorded state to the current state of these files. If they do not match, ZTP considers that the switch has already been provisioned and exits. These files are only erased after a reset.

To reset `ztp` to its original state, use the `-R` option. This removes the `ztp` directory and `ztp` runs the next time the switch reboots.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -R
```

To disable zero touch provisioning, use the `-d` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -d
```

To force provisioning to occur and ignore the status listed in the configuration file use the `-r` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -r cumulus-ztp.sh
```

To see the current `ztp` state, use the `-s` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -s
ZTP INFO:
State disabled
Version 1.0
Result success
Date Thu May 5 16:49:33 2016 UTC
Method Switch manually configured
URL None
```

## Notes

- During the development of a provisioning script, the switch may need to be reset.
- You can use the Cumulus Linux `onie-select -i` command to cause the switch to reprovision itself and install a network operating system again using ONIE.

# System Management

## Setting Date and Time

Setting the time zone, date and time requires root privileges; use `sudo`.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 66)
- Setting the Time Zone (see page 66)
  - Alternative: Use the Guided Wizard to Find and Apply a Time Zone (see page 67)
- Setting the Date and Time (see page 67)
- Setting Time Using NTP (see page 68)
- Specifying the NTP Source Interface (see page 69)
- Configuration Files (see page 69)
- Useful Links (see page 69)

### Commands

- `date`
- `dpkg-reconfigure tzdata`
- `hwclock`
- `ntpd` (daemon)
- `ntpq`

### Setting the Time Zone

To see the current time zone, list the contents of `/etc/timezone`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/timezone
US/Eastern
```

Edit the file to add your desired time zone. A list of valid time zones can be found at the following [link](#).

Use the following command to apply the new time zone immediately.

```
dpkg-reconfigure --frontend noninteractive tzdata
```

## Alternative: Use the Guided Wizard to Find and Apply a Time Zone

To set the time zone, run `dpkg-reconfigure tzdata` as root:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo dpkg-reconfigure tzdata
```

Then navigate the menus to enable the time zone you want. The following example selects the US/Pacific time zone:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo dpkg-reconfigure tzdata

Configuring tzdata
-----
Please select the geographic area in which you live. Subsequent
configuration
questions will narrow this down by presenting a list of cities,
representing
the time zones in which they are located.

 1. Africa      4. Australia   7. Atlantic   10. Pacific   13. Etc
 2. America     5. Arctic       8. Europe     11. SystemV
 3. Antarctica  6. Asia        9. Indian     12. US

Geographic area: 12

Please select the city or region corresponding to your time zone.

 1. Alaska      4. Central     7. Indiana-Starke 10. Pacific
 2. Aleutian    5. Eastern     8. Michigan      11. Pacific-New
 3. Arizona     6. Hawaii      9. Mountain     12. Samoa

Time zone: 10

Current default time zone: 'US/Pacific'
Local time is now:      Mon Jun 17 09:27:45 PDT 2013.
Universal Time is now:  Mon Jun 17 16:27:45 UTC 2013.
```

For more info see the [Debian System Administrator's Manual – Time](#).

## Setting the Date and Time

The switch contains a battery backed hardware clock that maintains the time while the switch is powered off and in between reboots. When the switch is running, the Cumulus Linux operating system maintains its own software clock.

During boot up, the time from the hardware clock is copied into the operating system's software clock. The software clock is then used for all timekeeping responsibilities. During system shutdown the software clock is copied back to the battery backed hardware clock.

You can set the date and time on the software clock using the `date` command. First, determine your current time zone:

```
cumulus@switch$ date +%Z
```



If you need to reconfigure the current time zone, refer to the instructions above.

Then, to set the system clock according to the time zone configured:

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo date -s "Tue Jan 12 00:37:13 2016"
```

See `man date(1)` for if you need more information.

You can write the current value of the system (software) clock to the hardware clock using the `hwclock` command:

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo hwclock -w
```

See `man hwclock(8)` if you need more information.

You can find a good overview of the software and hardware clocks in the Debian [System Administrator's Manual – Time](#), specifically the section [Setting and showing hardware clock](#).

## Setting Time Using NTP

The `ntpd` daemon running on the switch implements the NTP protocol. It synchronizes the system time with time servers listed in `/etc/ntp.conf`. It is started at boot by default. See `man ntpd(8)` for `ntpd` details.

By default, `/etc/ntp.conf` contains some default time servers. Edit `/etc/ntp.conf` to add or update time server information. See `man ntp.conf(5)` for details on configuring `ntpd` using `ntp.conf`.

To set the initial date and time via NTP before starting the `ntpd` daemon, use `ntpd -q` (This is same as `ntpdate`, which is to be retired and not available).



`ntpd -q` can hang if the time servers are not reachable.

To verify that `ntpd` is running on the system:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ps -ef | grep ntp
ntp        4074      1  0 Jun20 ?          00:00:33 /usr/sbin/ntpd -p /var
/run/ntpd.pid -g -u 101:102
```

To check the NTP peer status:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ntpq -p

      remote          refid      st t when poll reach   delay
offset jitter
=====
=====
*level1f.cs.unc. .PPS.          1 u  225 1024  377   92.505  -1.296
    1.139
+ip.tcp.lv       193.11.166.8    2 u   29 1024  377  192.701   2.424
    1.227
-host-86.3.217.2 131.107.13.100  2 u 1024 1024   367  240.622  11.250
    7.785
+li290-38.member 128.138.141.172  2 u   553 1024  377   38.944  -0.810
    1.139
```

## ***Specifying the NTP Source Interface***

You can change the source interface that NTP uses if you want to use something other than the default of eth0. Edit `ntp.conf` and edit the entry under the **# Specify interfaces** comment:

```
# Specify interfaces
interface listen bridge10
```

## ***Configuration Files***

- /etc/default/ntp — `ntpd init.d` configuration variables
- /etc/ntp.conf — default NTP configuration file

## ***Useful Links***

- Debian System Administrator's Manual – Time
- [www.ntp.org](http://www.ntp.org)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Network\\_Time\\_Protocol](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Network_Time_Protocol)
- [wiki.debian.org/NTP](http://wiki.debian.org/NTP)

## ***Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting***

- SSH for Remote Access (see page 69)
- User Accounts (see page 72)
- Using sudo to Delegate Privileges (see page 73)
- PAM and NSS (see page 80)
- TACACS+ (see page 89)

## SSH for Remote Access

Authentication keys can be generated for securely accessing a Cumulus Linux switch with the ssh-keygen component of the Secure Shell (SSH) protocol. Cumulus Linux uses the OpenSSH package to provide this functionality. The section below covers how to generate a SSH key pair.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Generate an SSH Key Pair (see page 70)
- Useful Links (see page 71)

## Generate an SSH Key Pair

1. Run the `ssh-keygen` command, and follow the prompts, to generate the key pair:

### ⓘ Configure a Passwordless System

To configure a completely passwordless system, do not enter a passphrase when prompted in the following step.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ ssh-keygen
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa):
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
Enter same passphrase again:
Your identification has been saved in /home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa.
Your public key has been saved in /home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
5a:b4:16:a0:f9:14:6b:51:f6:f6:c0:76:1a:35:2b:bb cumulus@leaf04
The key's randomart image is:
+--[RSA 2048]----+
|      +.o   o    |
|      o * o . o  |
|      o + o O o  |
|      + . = O    |
|      . S o .    |
|      + .       |
|      . E       |
+-----+
```

2. Run the `ssh-copy-id` command, and follow the prompts, to copy the generated public key to the desired location:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ ssh-copy-id -i /home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa.pub
cumulus@leaf02
The authenticity of host 'leaf02 (192.168.0.11)' can't be
established.
ECDSA key fingerprint is b1:ce:b7:6a:20:f4:06:3a:09:3c:d9:42:de:9
9:66:6e.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
/usr/bin/ssh-copy-id: INFO: attempting to log in with the new key
(s), to filter out any that are already installed
/usr/bin/ssh-copy-id: INFO: 1 key(s) remain to be installed -- if
you are prompted now it is to install the new keys
cumulus@leaf01's password:

Number of key(s) added: 1
```

**!** ssh-copy-id will not work if the username on the remote switch is different to the local switch. To work around this issue, use the scp command instead:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ scp .ssh/id_rsa.pub cumulus@leaf02:.ssh
/authorized_keys
Enter passphrase for key '/home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa':
id_rsa.pub
```

3. Connect to the remote switch to confirm the authentication keys are in place:

```
cumulus@leaf04:~$ ssh cumulus@leaf02

Welcome to Cumulus VX (TM)

Cumulus VX (TM) is a community supported virtual appliance
designed for
experiencing, testing and prototyping Cumulus Networks' latest
technology.
For any questions or technical support, visit our community site
at:
http://community.cumulusnetworks.com

The registered trademark Linux (R) is used pursuant to a
sublicense from LMI,
the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the mark on a
world-wide
basis.
Last login: Thu Sep 29 16:56:54 2016
```

## Useful Links

- Debian Documentation - Password-less logins with OpenSSH
- Wikipedia - Secure Shell (SSH)

## User Accounts

By default, Cumulus Linux has two user accounts: *cumulus* and *root*.

The *cumulus* account:

- Default password is *CumulusLinux!*
- Is a user account in the *sudo* group with sudo privileges
- User can log in to the system via all the usual channels like console and SSH (see page 69)

The *root* account:

- Default password is disabled by default
- Has the standard Linux root user access to everything on the switch
- Disabled password prohibits login to the switch by SSH, telnet, FTP, and so forth

For best security, you should change the default password (using the `passwd` command) before you configure Cumulus Linux on the switch.

You can add more user accounts as needed. Like the *cumulus* account, these accounts must use `sudo` to execute privileged commands (see page 73), so be sure to include them in the *sudo* group.

To access the switch without any password requires booting into a single shell/user mode (see page 561).

## Enabling Remote Access for the root User

As mentioned above, the *root* user does not have a password set for it, and it cannot log in to a switch via SSH. This default account behavior is consistent with Debian. In order to connect to a switch using the *root* account, you can do one of two things for the account:

- Generate an SSH key
- Set a password

## Generating an SSH Key for the root Account

1. First, in a terminal on your host system (not the switch), check to see if a key already exists:

```
$ ls -al ~/.ssh/
```

The key is named something like `id_dsa.pub`, `id_rsa.pub` or `id_ecdsa.pub`.

2. If a key doesn't exist, generate a new one by first creating the RSA key pair:

```
$ ssh-keygen -t rsa
```

3. A prompt appears, asking you to *Enter file in which to save the key (/root/.ssh/id\_rsa)*: Press Enter to use the *root* user's home directory, or else provide a different destination.

4. You are prompted to *Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase)*: This is optional but it does provide an extra layer of security.
5. The public key is now located in `/root/.ssh/id_rsa.pub`. The private key (identification) is now located in `/root/.ssh/id_rsa`.
6. Copy the public key to the switch. SSH to the switch as the `cumulus` user, then run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mkdir -p /root/.ssh
cumulus@switch:~$ echo <SSH public key string> | sudo tee -a
/root/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

## **Setting the root User Password**

1. Run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo passwd root
```

2. Change the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file's `PermitRootLogin` setting from *without-password* to *yes*

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config

...
# Authentication:
LoginGraceTime 120
PermitRootLogin yes
StrictModes yes

...
```

3. Restart the `ssh` service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl reload ssh.service
```

## **Using sudo to Delegate Privileges**

By default, Cumulus Linux has two user accounts: `root` and `cumulus`. The `cumulus` account is a normal user and is in the group `sudo`.

You can add more user accounts as needed. Like the `cumulus` account, these accounts must use `sudo` to execute privileged commands.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 74)
- Using sudo (see page 74)
- sudoers Examples (see page 75)
- Configuration Files (see page 79)
- Useful Links (see page 79)

## Commands

- sudo
- visudo

## Using sudo

`sudo` allows you to execute a command as superuser or another user as specified by the security policy. See `man sudo(8)` for details.

The default security policy is `sudoers`, which is configured using `/etc/sudoers`. Use `/etc/sudoers.d/` to add to the default `sudoers` policy. See `man sudoers(5)` for details.



Use `visudo` only to edit the `sudoers` file; do not use another editor like `vi` or `emacs`. See `man visudo(8)` for details.

Errors in the `sudoers` file can result in losing the ability to elevate privileges to root. You can fix this issue only by power cycling the switch and booting into single user mode. Before modifying `sudoers`, enable the root user by setting a password for the root user.

By default, users in the `sudo` group can use `sudo` to execute privileged commands. To add users to the `sudo` group, use the `useradd(8)` or `usermod(8)` command. To see which users belong to the `sudo` group, see `/etc/group` (`man group(5)`).

Any command can be run as `sudo`, including `su`. A password is required.

The example below shows how to use `sudo` as a non-privileged user *cumulus* to bring up an interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast master br0
state DOWN mode DEFAULT qlen 500
link/ether 44:38:39:00:27:9f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff

cumulus@switch:~$ ip link set dev swp1 up
RTNETLINK answers: Operation not permitted

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link set dev swp1 up
Password:
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    master br0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:27:9f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

## ***sudoers Examples***

The following examples show how you grant as few privileges as necessary to a user or group of users to allow them to perform the required task. For each example, the system group *noc* is used; groups are prefixed with an %.

When executed by an unprivileged user, the example commands below must be prefixed with `sudo`.

Category	Privilege	Example Command	<i>sudoers</i> Entry
Monitoring	Switch port info	<code>ethtool -m swp1</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/sbin/ethtool</code>
Monitoring	System diagnostics	<code>cl-support</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/cumulus/bin/cl-support</code>
Monitoring	Routing diagnostics	<code>cl-resource-query</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/cumulus/bin/cl-resource-query</code>
Image management	Install images	<code>onie-select http://lab/install.bin</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/cumulus/bin/onie-select</code>
Package management	Any apt-get command	<code>apt-get update</code> <code>or apt-get install</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/bin/apt-get</code>

Category	Privilege	Example Command	sudoers Entry
Package management	Just apt-get update	apt-get update	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/bin/apt-get update
Package management	Install packages	apt-get install mtr-tiny	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/bin/apt-get install *
Package management	Upgrading	apt-get upgrade	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/bin/apt-get upgrade
Netfilter	Install ACL policies	cl-acltool -i	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/cumulus/bin/cl-acltool
Netfilter	List iptables rules	iptables -L	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/sbin/iptables
L1 + 2 features	Any LLDP command	lldpcli show neighbors / configure	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/sbin/lldpcli
L1 + 2 features	Just show neighbors	lldpcli show neighbors	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/sbin/lldpcli show neighbours*

Category	Privilege	Example Command	sudoers Entry
Interfaces	Modify any interface	<pre>ip link set dev swp1 {up down}</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ip link set *</pre>
Interfaces	Up any interface	<pre>ifup swp1</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ifup</pre>
Interfaces	Down any interface	<pre>ifdown swp1</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ifdown</pre>
Interfaces	Up/down only swp2	<pre>ifup swp2 / ifdown swp2</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ifup swp2,/sbin /ifdown swp2</pre>
Interfaces	Any IP address chg	<pre>ip addr {add del} 192.0.2.1/30 dev swp1</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ip addr *</pre>
Interfaces	Only set IP address	<pre>ip addr add 192.0.2.1/30 dev swp1</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ip addr add *</pre>
Ethernet bridging	Any bridge command		

Category	Privilege	Example Command	sudoers Entry
		<pre>brctl addbr br0 / brctl delif br0 swp1</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/brctl</pre>
Ethernet bridging	Add bridges and ints	<pre>brctl addbr br0 / brctl addif br0 swp1</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/brctl addbr *,/sbin /brctl addif *</pre>
Spanning tree	Set STP properties	<pre>mstpctl setmaxage br2 20</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/mstpctl</pre>
Troubleshooting	Restart switchd	<pre>systemctl restart switchd. service</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr /sbin/service switchd *</pre>
Troubleshooting	Restart any service	<pre>systemctl cron switchd.service</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr /sbin/service</pre>
Troubleshooting	Packet capture	<pre>tcpdump</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr /sbin/tcpdump</pre>
L3	Add static routes		<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/bin /ip route add *</pre>

Category	Privilege	Example Command	sudoers Entry
		<pre>ip route add 10.2.0.0/16 via 10.0.0.1</pre>	
L3	Delete static routes	<pre>ip route del 10.2.0.0/16 via 10.0.0.1</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/bin /ip route del *</pre>
L3	Any static route chg	<pre>ip route *</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/bin /ip route *</pre>
L3	Any iproute command	<pre>ip *</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/bin /ip</pre>
L3	Non-modal OSPF	<pre>cl-ospf area 0.0.0.1 range 10.0.0.0/24</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr /bin/cl-ospf</pre>

## Configuration Files

- /etc/sudoers - default security policy
- /etc/sudoers.d/ - default security policy

## Useful Links

- sudo
- Adding Yourself to sudoers

## LDAP Authentication and Authorization

Cumulus Linux uses Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) and Name Service Switch (NSS) for user authentication.

NSS specifies the order of information sources used to resolve names for each service. Using this with authentication and authorization, it provides the order and location used for user lookup and group mapping on the system. PAM handles the interaction between the user and the system, providing login handling, session setup, authentication of users and authorization of a user actions.

NSS enables PAM to use LDAP for providing user authentication, group mapping and information for other services on the system.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring LDAP Authentication (see page 80)
- Installing libnss-ldapd (see page 81)
- Configuring nslcd.conf (see page 82)
  - Connection (see page 82)
  - Search Function (see page 82)
  - Search Filters (see page 83)
  - Attribute Mapping (see page 83)
  - Example Configuration (see page 83)
- Troubleshooting (see page 83)
  - Using nslcd Debug Mode (see page 83)
  - Common Problems (see page 85)
- Configuring LDAP Authorization (see page 86)
- Active Directory Configuration (see page 86)
- LDAP Verification Tools (see page 86)
  - Identifying a User with the id Command (see page 87)
  - Using getent (see page 87)
  - Using LDAP search (see page 87)
  - LDAP Browsers (see page 88)
- References (see page 89)

## Configuring LDAP Authentication

There are 3 common ways of configuring LDAP authentication on Linux:

- libnss-ldap
- libnss-ldapd
- libnss-sss

This chapter covers using `libnss-ldapd` only. From internal testing, this library worked best with Cumulus Linux and was the easiest to configure, automate and troubleshoot.

## Installing libnss-ldapd



The `libnss-ldapd` and `ldap-utils` packages are not available in the Cumulus Networks repository. You must install them from the Debian repository. You need to configure the switch to reference the Debian repository. To do so, edit the `/etc/apt/sources.list` file and adding the following line:

```
deb http://ftp.us.debian.org/debian/ jessie main
```

If *nested group support* is required, `libnss-ldapd` must be version 0.9 or higher. For Cumulus Linux 3.x, you should add the `jessie-backports` repo instead of the Jessie repo:

```
deb http://ftp.us.debian.org/debian/ jessie-backports main
```

Then run `apt-get update` to sync with the Debian repo.

Once you reference the Debian repository, install `libnss-ldapd`, `libpam-ldapd` and `ldap-utils`. Run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install libnss-ldapd libpam-ldapd ldap-utils
```

This brings up an interactive prompt asking questions about the LDAP URI, search base distinguished name (DN) and services that should have LDAP lookups enabled. This creates a very basic LDAP configuration, using anonymous bind, and initiating the search for a user under the base DN specified.



Alternatively, these parameters can be pre-seeded using the `debconf-utils`. To use this method, run `apt-get install debconf-utils` and create the pre-seeded parameters using `debconf-set-selections` with the appropriate answers. Run `debconf-show <pkg>` to check the settings. Here is an [example of how to preseed answers to the installer questions using `debconf-set-selections`](#).

Once the install is complete, the *name service LDAP caching daemon* (`ns1cd`) will be running. This is the service that handles all of the LDAP protocol interactions, and caches the information returned from the LDAP server. In `/etc/nsswitch.conf`, `ldap` has been appended and is the secondary information source for `passwd`, `group` and `shadow`. The local files (`/etc/passwd`, `/etc/groups` and `/etc/shadow`) are used first, as specified by the `compat` source.

```
passwd: compat ldap
group: compat ldap
shadow: compat ldap
```



You are strongly advised to keep `compat` as the first source in NSS for `passwd`, `group` and `shadow`. This prevents you from getting locked out of the system.

## Configuring `nslcd.conf`

You need to update the main configuration file (`/etc/nslcd.conf`) after installation to accommodate the expected LDAP server settings. The [nslcd.conf man page](#) details all the available configuration options. Some of the more important options are related to security and how the queries are handled.

### Connection

The LDAP client starts a session by connecting to the LDAP server, by default, on TCP and UDP port 389, or on port 636 for LDAPS. Depending on the configuration, this connection may be unauthenticated (anonymous bind); otherwise, the client must provide a bind user and password. The variables used to define the connection to the LDAP server are the URI and bind credentials.

The URI is mandatory, and specifies the LDAP server location using the FQDN or IP address. It also designates whether to use `ldap://` for clear text transport, or `ldaps://` for SSL/TLS encrypted transport. Optionally, an alternate port may also be specified in the URI. Typically, in production environments, it is best to utilize the LDAPS protocol. Otherwise all communications are clear text and not secure.

After the connection to the server is complete, the BIND operation authenticates the session. The BIND credentials are optional, and if not specified, an anonymous bind is assumed. This is typically not allowed in most production environments. Configure authenticated (Simple) BIND by specifying the user (`binddn`) and password (`bindpw`) in the configuration. Another option is to use SASL (Simple Authentication and Security Layer) BIND, which provides authentication services using other mechanisms, like Kerberos. Contact your LDAP server administrator for this information since it depends on the configuration of the LDAP server and what credentials are created for the client device.

```
# The location at which the LDAP server(s) should be reachable.
uri ldaps://ldap.example.com
# The DN to bind with for normal lookups.
binddn cn=CLswitch,ou=infra,dc=example,dc=com
bindpw CuMuLuS
```

### Search Function

When an LDAP client requests information about a resource, it must connect and bind to the server. Then it performs one or more resource queries depending on what it is looking up. All search queries sent to the LDAP server are created using the configured search `base`, `filter`, and the desired entry (`uid=myuser`) being searched for. If the LDAP directory is large, this search may take a significant amount of time. It is a good idea to define a more specific search base for the common `maps` (`passwd` and `group`).

```
# The search base that will be used for all queries.
base dc=example,dc=com
# Mapped search bases to speed up common queries.
base passwd ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
base group ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
```

## Search Filters

It is also common to use search filters to specify criteria used when searching for objects within the directory. This is used to limit the search scope when authenticating users. The default filters applied are:

```
filter passwd (objectClass=posixAccount)
filter group (objectClass=posixGroup)
```

## Attribute Mapping

The *map* configuration allows for overriding the attributes pushed from LDAP. To override an attribute for a given *map*\*<sup>\*</sup>, specify the attribute name and the new value. One example of how this is useful is ensuring the shell is *bash* and the home directory is */home/cumulus*:

```
map      passwd homeDirectory "/home/cumulus"
map      passwd shell "/bin/bash"
```



\*In LDAP, the **map** refers to one of the supported maps specified in the manpage for *ns1cd.conf* (such as *passwd* or *group*).

## Example Configuration

Here is an **example configuration** using Cumulus Linux.

## Troubleshooting

### Using ns1cd Debug Mode

When setting up LDAP authentication for the first time, Cumulus Networks recommends you turn off this service using `sudo systemctl stop ns1cd.service` and run it in debug mode. Debug mode works whether you are using LDAP over SSL (port 636) or an unencrypted LDAP connection (port 389).

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop ns1cd.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ns1cd -d
```

Once you enable debug mode, run the following command to test LDAP queries:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo getent myuser
```

If LDAP is configured correctly, the following messages appear after you run the `getent` command:

```

nslcd: DEBUG: accept() failed (ignored): Resource temporarily
unavailable
nslcd: [8elf29] DEBUG: connection from pid=11766 uid=0 gid=0
nslcd: [8elf29] <passwd(all)> DEBUG: myldap_search(base="dc=example,
dc=com", filter="(objectClass posixAccount)")
nslcd: [8elf29] <passwd(all)> DEBUG: ldap_result(): uid=myuser,
ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
nslcd: [8elf29] <passwd(all)> DEBUG: ldap_result(): ... 152 more
results
nslcd: [8elf29] <passwd(all)> DEBUG: ldap_result(): end of results (16
2 total)

```

In the output above, `<passwd(all)>` indicates that the entire directory structure was queried.

A specific user can be queried using the command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo getent passwd myuser
```

You can replace `myuser` with any username on the switch. The following debug output indicates that user `myuser` exists:

```

nslcd: DEBUG: add_uri(ldap://10.50.21.101)
nslcd: version 0.8.10 starting
nslcd: DEBUG: unlink() of /var/run/nslcd/socket failed (ignored): No
such file or directory
nslcd: DEBUG: setgroups(0,NULL) done
nslcd: DEBUG: setgid(110) done
nslcd: DEBUG: setuid(107) done
nslcd: accepting connections
nslcd: DEBUG: accept() failed (ignored): Resource temporarily
unavailable
nslcd: [8b4567] DEBUG: connection from pid=11369 uid=0 gid=0
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: myldap_search(base="dc=cumulu
snetworks,dc=com", filter="(&(objectClass posixAccount)(uid=myuser))")
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_initialize(ldap://<ip_ad
dress>)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_rebind_proc()
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_PROTOCOL_VERSION, 3)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_DEREF, 0)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_TIMELIMIT, 0)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_TIMEOUT, 0)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_NETWORK_TIMEOUT, 0)

```

```

nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_REFERRALS,LDAP_OPT_ON)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_RESTART,LDAP_OPT_ON)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_simple_bind_s(NULL,
NULL) (uri="ldap://<ip_address>")
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_result(): end of
results (0 total)

```

Notice how the <passwd="myuser"> shows that the specific *myuser* user was queried.

## Common Problems

### SSL/TLS

- The FQDN of the LDAP server URI does not match the FQDN in the CA-signed server certificate exactly.
- `nslcd` cannot read the SSL certificate, and will report a "Permission denied" error in the debug during server connection negotiation. Check the permission on each directory in the path of the root SSL certificate. Ensure that it is readable by the `nslcd` user.

### NSCD

- If the `nsqd cache` daemon is also enabled and you make some changes to the user from LDAP, you may want to clear the cache using the commands:

```

nsqd --invalidate = passwd
nsqd --invalidate = group

```

- The `nsqd` package works with `nslcd` to cache name entries returned from the LDAP server. This may cause authentication failures. To work around these issues:

1. Disable `nsqd` by running:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nsqd -K

```

2. Restart the `nslcd` service:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart nslcd.service

```

3. Try the authentication again.

### LDAP

- The search filter returns wrong results. Check for typos in the search filter. Use `ldapsearch` to test your filter.

- Optionally, configure the basic LDAP connection and search parameters in `/etc/ldap/ldap.conf`

```
# ldapsearch -D 'cn=CLadmin' -w 'CuMuLuS' "(&
(ObjectClass=inetOrgUser)(uid=myuser))"
```

- When a local username also exists in the LDAP database, the order of the information sources in `/etc/nsswitch.conf` can be updated to query LDAP before the local user database. This is generally not recommended. For example, the configuration below ensures that LDAP is queried before the local database.

```
# /etc/nsswitch.conf
passwd:      ldap  compat
```

## Configuring LDAP Authorization

Linux uses the `sudo` command to allow non-administrator users — like the default *cumulus* user account — to perform privileged operations. To control the users authorized to use `sudo`, the `/etc/sudoers` file and files located in the `/etc/sudoers.d/` directory have a series of rules defined. Typically, the rules are based on groups, but can also be defined for specific users. Therefore, `sudo` rules can be added using the group names from LDAP. For example, if a group of users were associated with the group *netadmin*, a rule can be added to give those users `sudo` privileges. Refer to the `sudoers` manual (`man sudoers`) for a complete usage description. Here's an illustration of this in `/etc/sudoers`:

```
# The basic structure of a user specification is "who where =
(as_whom) what".
%sudo ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
%netadmin ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

## Active Directory Configuration

Active Directory (AD) is a fully featured LDAP-based NIS server created by Microsoft. It offers unique features that classic OpenLDAP servers lack. Therefore, it can be more complicated to configure on the client and each version of AD is a little different in how it works with Linux-based LDAP clients. Some more advanced configuration examples, from testing LDAP clients on Cumulus Linux with Active Directory (AD/LDAP), are available in our [knowledge base](#).

## LDAP Verification Tools

Typically, password and group information is retrieved from LDAP and cached by the LDAP client daemon. To test the LDAP interaction, these command line tools can be used to trigger an LDAP query from the device. This helps to create the best filters and verify the information sent back from the LDAP server.

## Identifying a User with the id Command

The `id` command performs a username lookup by following the lookup information sources in NSS for the `passwd` service. This simply returns the user ID, group ID and the group list retrieved from the information source. In the following example, the user `cumulus` is locally defined in `/etc/passwd`, and `myuser` is on LDAP. The NSS configuration has the `passwd` map configured with the sources `compat ldap`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ id cumulus
uid=1000(cumulus) gid=1000(cumulus) groups=1000(cumulus),4(adm),27(sudo)
cumulus@switch:~$ id myuser
uid=1230(myuser) gid=3000(Development) groups=3000(Development),500(Employees),27(sudo)
```

## Using getent

The `getent` command retrieves all records found via NSS for a given map. It can also get a specific entry under that map. Tests can be done with the `passwd`, `group`, `shadow` or any other map configured in `/etc/nsswitch.conf`. The output from this command is formatted according to the map requested. Thus, for the `passwd` service, the structure of the output is the same as the entries in `/etc/passwd`. The same can be said for the `group` map will output the same as `/etc/group`. In this example, looking up a specific user in the `passwd` map, the user `cumulus` is locally defined in `/etc/passwd`, and `myuser` is only in LDAP.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ getent passwd cumulus
cumulus:x:1000:1000::/home/cumulus:/bin/bash
cumulus@switch:~$ getent passwd myuser
myuser:x:1230:3000:My Test User:/home/myuser:/bin/bash
```

In the next example, looking up a specific group in the `group` service, the group `cumulus` is locally defined in `/etc/groups`, and `netadmin` is on LDAP.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ getent group cumulus
cumulus:x:1000:
cumulus@switch:~$ getent group netadmin
netadmin:*:502:larry,moe,curly,shemp
```

Running the command `getent passwd` or `getent group` without a specific request, returns **all** local and LDAP entries for the `passwd` and `group` maps, respectively.

## Using LDAP search

The `ldapsearch` command performs LDAP operations directly on the LDAP server. This does not interact with NSS. This command helps display what the LDAP daemon process is receiving back from the server. The command has many options. The simplest uses anonymous bind to the host and specifies the search DN and what attribute to lookup.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ldapsearch -H ldap://ldap.example.com -b dc=example,  
dc=com -x uid=myuser
```

Click to expand the command output ...

```
# extended LDIF  
#  
# LDAPv3  
# base <dc=example,dc=com> with scope subtree  
# filter: uid=myuser  
# requesting: ALL  
#  
# myuser, people, example.com  
dn: uid=myuser,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com  
cn: My User  
displayName: My User  
gecos: myuser  
gidNumber: 3000  
givenName: My  
homeDirectory: /home/myuser  
initials: MU  
loginShell: /bin/bash  
mail: myuser@example.com  
objectClass: inetOrgPerson  
objectClass: posixAccount  
objectClass: shadowAccount  
objectClass: top  
shadowExpire: -1  
shadowFlag: 0  
shadowMax: 999999  
shadowMin: 8  
shadowWarning: 7  
sn: User  
uid: myuser  
uidNumber: 1234  
# search result  
search: 2  
result: 0 Success  
# numResponses: 2  
# numEntries: 1
```

## LDAP Browsers

There are some GUI LDAP clients that help to work with LDAP servers. These are free tools to help graphically show the structure of the LDAP database.

- Apache Directory Studio

- LDAPManager

## References

- [wiki.debian.org/LDAP/PAM](http://wiki.debian.org/LDAP/PAM)
- [raw.githubusercontent.com/arthurdejong/nss-pam-ldapd/master/nsLCD.conf](http://raw.githubusercontent.com/arthurdejong/nss-pam-ldapd/master/nsLCD.conf)
- [backports.debian.org/Instructions/](http://backports.debian.org/Instructions/)

## TACACS+

### ⚠ Early Access Feature

TACACS+ is an **early access feature** in Cumulus Linux 3.1. Before you can install TACACS+, you must enable the Early Access repository. For more information about the Cumulus Linux repository, read [this knowledge base article](#).

Cumulus Linux 3.1 has implemented TACACS+ client authentication (including login, su, sudo, and ssh) and command accounting. These packages enable TACACS+ users in a transparent manner, similar to LDAP or local accounts.

Command accounting occurs in addition to session accounting, at the start and stop of the server, via the exec() system call family.

By default, TACACS+ privilege 15 users are allowed to run any command with sudo via the /etc/sudoers.d/tacplus file that is installed by the libtacplus-map1 package.



All sudo commands generate accounting records against the original login.



TACACS+ users at privilege levels other than 15 are not allowed to run sudo commands by default, and are limited to commands that can be run with standard Linux user permissions.



Cumulus Linux 3.x provides a new library to map TACACS+ users by their privilege level to the tacacs\* users in the local password file, and from those local users to the TACACS+ users. These users are created with the adduser command after the libtacplus-map1 package is installed.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Package Dependencies \(see page \)](#)
- [Installing and Removing the TACACS+ Client Packages \(see page \)](#)
- [TACACS+ Authentication \(see page \)](#)
- [NSS Plugin \(see page \)](#)
- [TACACS+ Accounting \(see page \)](#)

- TACACS+ Configuration (see page )
- Troubleshooting TACACS+ (see page )
- Limitations (see page )

## Package Dependencies

TACACS+ requires the following packages to be installed on Cumulus Linux:

Package Name	Description
audisp-tacplus_1.0.0-1_amd64.deb	This package uses auditing data from <code>auditd</code> to send accounting records to the TACACS+ server.
libtac2_1.3.9-1_amd64.deb	Basic TACACS+ server utility and communications routines.
libnss-tacplus_1.0.1-1_amd64.deb	Provides an interface between <code>libc</code> username lookups, the mapping functions, and the TACACS+ server.
libtac2-bin_1.3.9-1_amd64.deb	Provides the “tacc” testing program and TACACS+ man page.
libpam-tacplus_1.4.0-1_amd64.deb	A modified version of the standard Debian package.
libtacplus-map1_1.0.0-1_amd64.deb	The mapping functionality between local and TACACS+ users on the server. Sets the immutable <code>sessionid</code> and auditing UID to ensure the original user can be tracked through multiple processes and privilege changes. Sets the auditing <code>loginuid</code> as immutable if supported. Creates and maintains a status database in <code>/run/tacacs_client_map</code> to manage and lookup mappings.
libsimple-tacct1_1.0.0-1_amd64.deb	Provides an interface for programs to send accounting records to the TACACS+ server. Used by <code>audisp-tacplus</code> .
sudo_1.8.10_p3-cl3u1_amd64.deb	A modified version of the standard Debian package, adding TACACS+ authenticated user /password lookup functionality. This package is installed by default.

## Installing and Removing the TACACS+ Client Packages

To install the `tacplus-client` package, on a switch, follow the instructions in the [Cumulus Linux 3.1 release notes](#).

To remove all of the TACACS+ client packages, use the following commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get remove tacplus-client  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get autoremove
```

To remove the TACACS+ client configuration files as well as the packages (recommended), use this command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get autoremove --purge
```

## TACACS+ Authentication

The initial authentication configuration is done through the PAM modules, and an updated version of the `libpam-tacplus` package. When the package is installed, the PAM configuration is updated in `/etc/pam.d` with the `pam-auth-update` command.

### NSS Plugin

When used with `pam_tacplus`, TACACS+ authenticated users can log in without a local account on the system by using the NSS plugin that comes with the `tacplus_nss` package. The plugin uses the mapped `tacplus` information if the user is not found in the local password file, provides the `getpwnam()` entry point, and uses the TACACS+ authentication and accounting functions.

The plugin asks the TACACS+ server if the user is known, and then for relevant attributes to determine the user's privilege level. When the `libnss_tacplus` package is installed, `nsswitch.conf` can be modified to set `tacplus` as the first lookup method for `passwd`, though it works in any position.

If the user is not found, a mapped lookup is performed using the `libtacplus_map.so` exported functions. The privilege level is appended to "tacacs", and the lookup searches for the name in the local password file. For example, privilege level 15 will search for the `tacacs15` user. If the user is found, the password structure is filled in with the user's information.

If it is not found, the privilege level is decremented and checked again, until `tacacs0` is reached.



The `pw_name` attribute is not filled in with the user information; rather, with the original login name.



This allows for a configuration setup containing only two tacacs users: `tacacs0` and `tacacs15`.

## TACACS+ Accounting

TACACS+ accounting is implemented with the `audisp` module, with an additional plugin for `auditd/audisp`. The plugin maps the `aid` in the accounting record to a tacacs login, based on the `aid` and `sessionid`. The `audisp` module requires `libnss_tacplus`, and uses the `libtacplus_map.so` library interfaces as part of the modified `lipam_tacplus` package.

Communication with the TACACS+ servers is done via the `libsimple-tacact1` library, via `dlopen()`. A maximum of 240 bytes of command name and arguments will be sent in the accounting record, due to the TACACS+ field length limitation of 255 bytes.

The IP address and encryption key of the server should be configured in the `/etc/tacplus_servers` file. Minimal configuration to `auditd` and `audisp` is necessary to enable the audit records necessary for accounting. These records are installed as part of the package.

`Audisp-tacplus` installs the audit rules for command accounting. Modifying the configuration files is not usually necessary.

Below are the configuration files for `auditd/audisp`:

Filename	Description
<code>/etc/audisp/plugins.d/audisp-tacplus.conf</code>	<code>audisp</code> plugin configuration file. In general, no modifications are required.
<code>/etc/audisp/audisp-tac_plus.conf</code>	TACACS+ server configuration file. In general, no modifications are required.
<code>/etc/audit/rules.d/audisp-tacplus.rules</code>	The <code>auditd</code> rules file.
<code>/etc/audit/audit.rules</code>	Audit rules file generated during <code>auditd</code> installation.



Filenames can be altered in the `/etc/audisp/audisp-tacplus.conf` file.

## TACACS+ Configuration

Post-installation TACACS+ configuration is done in the following configuration files:

Filename	Description
<code>/etc/tacplus_servers</code>	This is the primary file that requires configuration post-installation.
<code>/etc/nsswitch.conf</code>	When the <code>libnss_tacplus</code> package is installed, this file is configured to enable tacplus lookups via <code>libnss_tacplus</code> .

Filename	Description
/etc/tacplus_nss.conf	This file sets the basic parameters for <code>libnss_tacplus</code> . It includes a debug variable for debugging NSS lookups.
/usr/share/pam-configs/tacplus	Configuration file for <code>pam-auth-update</code> .
/etc/pam.d/common-*	Most of the <code>/etc/pam.d/common-*</code> files are updated for <code>tacplus</code> authentication. The files are updated with <code>pam-auth-update</code> , when <code>libpam-tacplus</code> is installed.
/etc/sudoers.d/tacplus	This file allows TACACS+ privilege level 15 users to run commands with <code>sudo</code> .

The minimum required configuration involves setting the IP address of the TACACS+ server and the shared encryption key, in the `/etc/tacplus_servers` file. The TACACS shared encryption key is an ASCII phrase that is used to encrypt TACACS messages between the client and TACACS server. Below is an example of the configuration file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cat /etc/tacplus_servers
# This is a common file used by audisp-tacplus, libpam_tacplus, and
# libtacplus_map config files as shipped.
#
# Any tac_plus client config can go here that is common to all users
of this
# file, but typically it's just the TACACS+ server IP address(es) and
shared
# secret(s)
#
# This file should normally be mode 600, if you care about the
security
# of your secret key. When set to mode 600 NSS lookups for TACACS
users
# will only work for tacacs users that are logged in, via the local
mapping.
# For root, lookups will work for any tacacs users, logged in or not.
secret=tacacskey
server=192.168.0.30
```

Additional TACACS servers can be configured in `/etc/tacplus_nss.conf`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/tacplus_nss.conf
#%NSS_TACPLUS-1.0
# Install this file as /etc/tacplus_nss.conf
# Edit /etc/nsswitch.conf to add tacplus to the passwd lookup,
similar to this
```

```

# where tacplus precede compat (or files), and depending on local
policy can
# follow or precede ldap, nis, etc.
#      passwd: tacplus compat
# The server keyword should follow the secret keyword, and may be
# given fewer times than the server keyword, if all servers have the
same
# shared secret.
# is matched up with first secret line, etc. You can use any of the
# following orders, or most other orders you can think of. There
must be at
# least as many secret lines as there are server lines. This file
should be
# kept as permissions 644, owned by root, since it must be readable by
arbitrary
# processes, even though the secret for the TACACS+ server is present
as clear
# text.
# Servers are tried in the order listed, and once a server
# replies, no other servers are attempted in a given process
instantiation
#
# This configuration is similar to the libpam_tacplus configuration,
but
# is maintained as a configuration file, since nsswitch.conf doesn't
# support passing parameters. Parameters must start in the first
# column, and parsing stops at the first whitespace
# if set, errors and other issues are logged with syslog
# debug=1
# The include keyword allows centralizing the tacacs+ server
information
# including the IP address and shared secret
include=/etc/tacplus_servers
# The server IP address can be optionally followed by a ':' and a
port
# number (server=1.1.1.1:49).
secret=SECRET1
server=192.168.0.60
secret=SECRET2
server=192.168.0.90

```

Once the `tacplus_client` package is installed, the `tacplus` option is added the `passwd` function in the `nsswitch` config. Below is the default example:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/nsswitch.conf
# /etc/nsswitch.conf
#
# Example configuration of GNU Name Service Switch functionality.
# If you have the 'glibc-doc-reference' and 'info' packages
installed, try:

```

```
# `info libc "Name Service Switch"' for information about this file.
passwd:          tacplus compat
group:           compat
shadow:          compat
gshadow:         files
hosts:           files dns
networks:        files
protocols:       db files
services:        db files
ethers:          db files
rpc:             db files
netgroup:        nis
```

At this point, the Cumulus Linux switch should be able to query the TACACS server.



The `/etc/tacplus_servers` file permissions should be set to mode 600 to keep the shared key secure. When editing this file, auditing must be restarted before accounting will see the changes. To restart `auditd`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart auditd
```



If you overwrite the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file, `tacplus` must be added to the `passwd` line, preceding `compat`.



The `/etc/pam.d/common-*` files can be edited manually. However, if `pam-auth-update` is run again after the changes are made, the update will fail. Configuration should be done in `/usr/share/pam-configs/tacplus` instead, followed by running `pam-auth-update`.

The recognized configuration options are the same as the `libpam_tacplus` command line arguments; not all `pam_tacplus` options are supported, however. The table below describes the configuration options available:

Configuration Option	Management Group	Description
debug	ALL	<p>Output debugging information via <code>syslog(3)</code>.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #f0e68c; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Debugging is heavy, including passwords.       </div>
secret=STRING	ALL	Secret key used to encrypt/decrypt packets sent to/received from the server. Can be specified more than once.

server=HOSTNAME server=IP_ADDR	auth, session	Adds a TACACS+ server to the servers list. Servers will be queried in turn until a match is found, or no servers remain in the list. Can be specified more than once.
		 When sending accounting records, the record is sent to all servers in the list.
timeout=SECONDS		TACACS+ server(s) communication timeout. The default value is 5 seconds.
login=STRING		TACACS+ authentication service (pap, chap, or login). The default value is <i>pap</i> .
acct_all=1		Configuration option for <code>audisp_tacplus</code> and <code>pam_tacplus</code> sending accounting records to all supplied servers (1), or the first server to respond (0). The default value is 1.
service		TACACS+ accounting and authorization service. Examples include shell, pap, raccess, ppp, and slip. The default value is <i>shell</i> .
protocol		TACACS+ protocol field. This option is use dependent. PAM uses the SSH protocol.

For more information, refer to the `audisp.8` and `auditd.8` man pages.

## Troubleshooting TACACS+

The `getent` command can be used to determine whether TACACS+ is configured correctly, and the local password is stored in the configuration files. In the example commands below, the `cumulus` user represents the local user, while `cumulusTAC` represents the TACACS user.

To look up the username within all NSS methods:

```
cumulus@switch:~# getent password cumulusTAC
cumulusTAC:x:1016:1001:TACACS+ mapped user at privilege level 15,,
/home/tacacs15:/bin/bash
```

To look up the user within the local database only:

```
cumulus@switch:~# getent -s compat passwd cumulus
cumulus:x:1000:1000:cumulus,,,:/home/cumulus:/bin/bash
```



Running this command with the cumulusTAC user should return nothing.

To look up the user within the TACACS+ database only:

```
cumulus@switch:~# getent -s tacplus passwd cumulusTAC
cumulusTAC:x:1016:1001:TACACS+ mapped user at privilege level 15,,,:
/home/tacacs15:/bin/bash
```



Running this command with the cumulus user should return nothing.

If TACACS does not appear to be working correctly, the following configuration files should be debugged with `debug=1`:

- `/etc/tacplus_servers`
- `/etc/tacplus_nss.conf`



`debug=1` can also be added to individual `pam_tacplus` lines in `/etc/pam.d/common*`.

All logs are stored in `/var/log/syslog`.

## Limitations

If two or more TACACS+ users are logged in simultaneously, with the same privilege level, while the accounting records are maintained correctly, a lookup on either name will match both users, while a UID lookup will only return the user that logged in first.

This means that any processes run by either user will be attributed to both, and all files created by either user will be attributed to the first name matched. This is similar to adding two local users to the password file with the same UID and GID, and is an inherent limitation of using the UID for the base user from the password file.



The current algorithm returns the first name matching the UID from the mapping file; this could be the first or second user that logged in.

To workaround this issue, the switch's audit log or the TACACS server accounting logs can be used to determine which processes and files were created by each user.

- For commands that do not execute other commands (for example, changes to configurations in an editor, or actions with tools like `clagctl` and `vtysh`), no additional accounting is done.
- Per-command authorization is not implemented in this release except at the most basic level (commands are permitted or denied based on the standard Linux user permissions for the local TACACS users, and only privilege level 15 users can run `sudo` commands by default).

The Linux `auditd` system does not generate audit events for processes when terminated with a signal (via the `kill` system call or internal errors such as `SIGSEGV`). As a result, processes that exit on a signal that isn't caught and handled may not generate a STOP accounting record.

## Netfilter - ACLs

`Netfilter` is the packet filtering framework in Cumulus Linux as well as most other Linux distributions. `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables` are userspace tools in Linux to administer filtering rules for IPv4 packets, IPv6 packets and Ethernet frames (layer 2 using MAC addresses) respectively. `cl-acltool` is the userspace tool to administer filtering rules on Cumulus Linux, and is the only tool for configuring ACLs in Cumulus Linux.

`cl-acltool` operates on a series of configuration files, and uses `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables` to install rules into the kernel. In addition to programming rules in the kernel, `cl-acltool` programs rules in hardware for interfaces involving switch port interfaces, which `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables` cannot do on their own.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 99)
- Files (see page 99)
- Understanding Traffic Rules In Cumulus Linux (see page 99)
  - Understanding Chains (see page 99)
  - Understanding Tables (see page 100)
  - Understanding Rules (see page 102)
  - How Rules Are Parsed and Applied (see page 103)
  - Rule Placement in Memory (see page 104)
  - Enabling Nonatomic Updates (see page 104)
  - Using `iptables`/`ip6tables`/`ebtables` Directly (see page 105)
  - Estimating the Number of Rules (see page 106)
- Installing and Managing ACL Rules with `cl-acltool` (see page 106)
  - Installing Packet Filtering (ACL) Rules (see page 107)
  - Specifying which Policy Files to Install (see page 110)
  - Hardware Limitations on Number of Rules (see page 110)
- Supported Rule Types (see page 112)
  - `iptables`/`ip6tables` Rule Support (see page 112)
  - `ebtables` Rule Support (see page 113)
  - Other Unsupported Rules (see page 114)
- Common Examples (see page 114)
  - Policing Control Plane and Data Plane Traffic (see page 114)
  - Setting DSCP on Transit Traffic (see page 115)

- Verifying DSCP Values on Transit Traffic (see page 116)
- Checking the Packet and Byte Counters for ACL Rules (see page 116)
- Filtering Specific TCP Flags (see page 118)
- Example Scenario (see page 119)
  - Switch 1 Configuration (see page 119)
  - Switch 2 Configuration (see page 120)
  - Egress Rule (see page 121)
  - Ingress Rule (see page 121)
  - Input Rule (see page 121)
  - Output Rule (see page 121)
  - Combined Rules (see page 121)
  - Layer 2-only Rules/ebtables (see page 122)
  - Useful Links (see page 122)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 122)
  - Not All Rules Supported (see page 122)
  - Bridge Traffic Limitations (see page 122)
  - Log Actions Cannot Be Forwarded (see page 122)
  - Tomahawk Hardware Limitations (see page 122)
  - iptables Interactions with cl-acltool (see page 123)
  - Where to Assign Rules (see page 123)
  - Generic Error Message Displayed after ACL Rule Installation Failure (see page 124)
  - Dell S3048-ON Supports only 24K MAC Addresses (see page 124)

## Commands

- cl-acltool
- ebtables
- iptables
- ip6tables

## Files

- /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf
- /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/

## Understanding Traffic Rules In Cumulus Linux

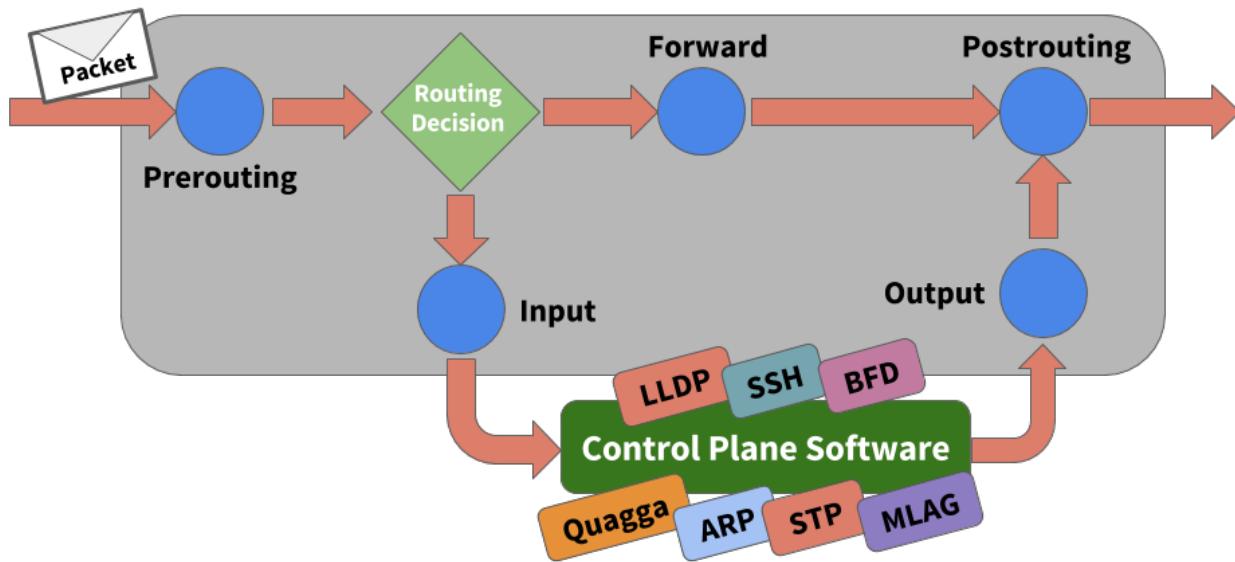
### Understanding Chains

Netfilter describes the mechanism for which packets are classified and controlled in the Linux kernel. Cumulus Linux uses the Netfilter framework to control the flow of traffic to, from and across the switch. Netfilter does not require a separate software daemon to run because it is part of the Linux kernel itself.

Netfilter asserts policies at layers 2, 3 and 4 of the [OSI model](#) by inspecting packet and frame headers based on a list of rules. Rules are defined using syntax provided by the `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables` userspace applications.

The rules created by these programs inspect or operate on packets at several points in the life of the packet through the system. These five points are known as *chains* and are shown here:

## Traffic Inspection Points (aka Chains)



The chains and their uses are:

- **PREROUTING:** Touches packets before they are routed
- **INPUT:** Touches packets once they are determined to be destined for the local system but before they are received by the control plane software
- **FORWARD:** Touches transit traffic as it moves through the box
- **OUTPUT:** Touches packets that are sourced by the control plane software before they are put on the wire
- **POSTROUTING:** Touches packets immediately before they are put on the wire but after the routing decision has been made

## **Understanding Tables**

When building rules to affect the flow of traffic, the individual chains can be accessed by *tables*. Linux provides three tables by default:

- **Filter:** Classifies traffic or filters traffic
- **NAT:** Applies Network Address Translation rules

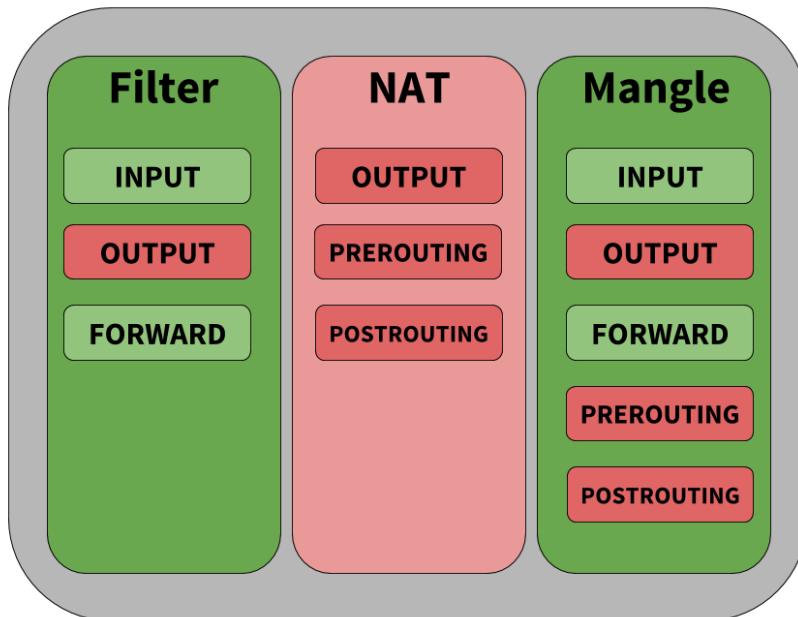


Cumulus Linux does not support NAT.

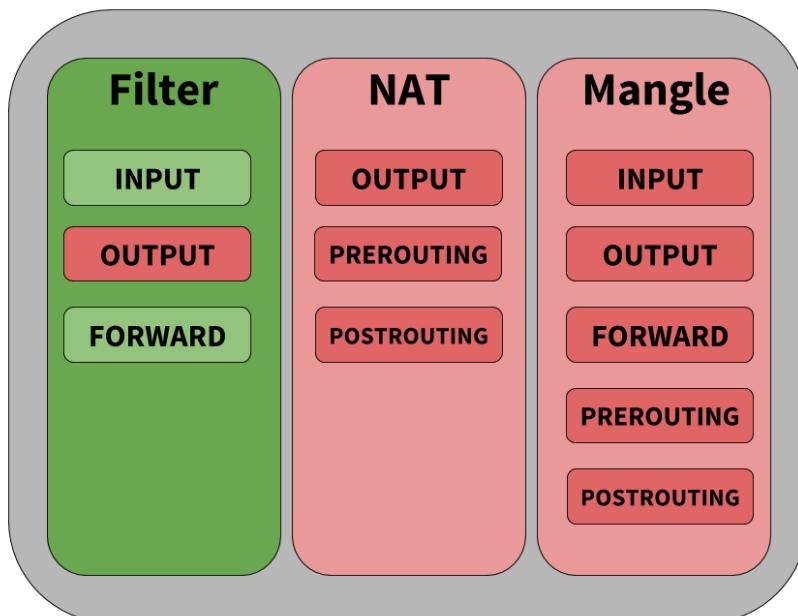
- **Mangle:** Alters packets as they move through the switch

Each table has a set of default chains that can be used to modify or inspect packets at different points of the path through the switch. Chains contain the individual rules to influence traffic. Each table and the default chains they support are shown below. Tables and chains in green are supported by Cumulus Linux, those in red are not supported (that is, they are not hardware accelerated) at this time.

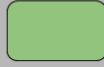
## IPTables/IP6tables Table Support



## EBtables Table Support



## Legend



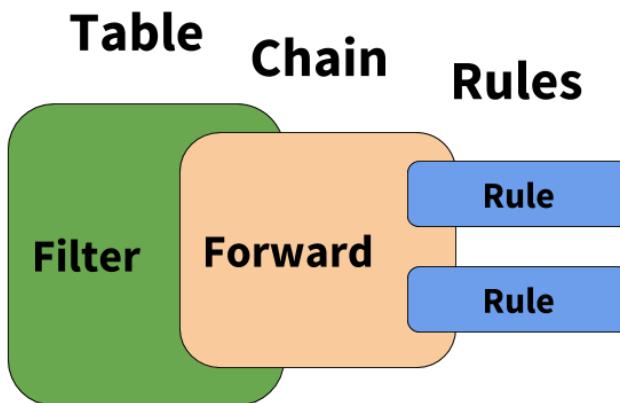
**Hardware Accelerated**



**NOT Hardware Accelerated**

### Understanding Rules

Rules are the items that actually classify traffic to be acted upon. Rules are applied to chains, which are attached to tables, similar to the graphic below.



Rules have several different components; the examples below highlight those different components.

(Sets SSH as high priority traffic)

-t mangle	-A FORWARD	-p tcp --dport 22	-j	DSCP --set-dscp 46
-----------	------------	-------------------	----	--------------------

Table	Chain	Matches	Jump	Targets
-------	-------	---------	------	---------

	-A INPUT	-i swp1 -p tcp --dport bgp	-j	POLICE --set-mode pkt
				--set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 --set-class 7

(Police and Prioritize BGP Traffic)

- **Table:** The first argument is the *table*. Notice the second example does not specify a table, that is because the filter table is implied if a table is not specified.
- **Chain:** The second argument is the *chain*. Each table supports several different chains. See Understanding Tables above.

- **Matches:** The third argument(s) are called the *matches*. You can specify multiple matches in a single rule. However, the more matches you use in a rule, the more memory that rule consumes.
- **Jump:** The *jump* specifies the target of the rule; that is, what action to take if the packet matches the rule. If this option is omitted in a rule, then matching the rule will have no effect on the packet's fate, but the counters on the rule will be incremented.
- **Target(s):** The *target* can be a user-defined chain (other than the one this rule is in), one of the special built-in targets that decides the fate of the packet immediately (like `DROP`), or an extended target. See the [Supported Rule Types and Common Usages](#) (see page 112) section below for examples of different targets.

## How Rules Are Parsed and Applied

All the rules from each chain are read from `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables` and entered in order into either the filter table or the mangle table. The rules are read from the kernel in the following order:

- IPv6 (`ip6tables`)
- IPv4 (`iptables`)
- `ebtables`

When rules are combined and put into one table, the order determines the relative priority of the rules; `iptables` and `ip6tables` have the highest precedence and `ebtables` has the lowest.

The Linux packet forwarding construct is an overlay for how the silicon underneath processes packets; to that end, here are some things to be aware of:

- The order of operations for how rules are processed is not perfectly maintained when you compare how `iptables` and the switch silicon process packets. The switch silicon reorders rules when `switchd` writes to the ASIC, whereas traditional `iptables` executes the list of rules in order.
- When processing traffic, rules affecting the FORWARD chain that specify an ingress interface are performed prior to rules that match on an egress interface. As a workaround, rules that only affect the egress interface can have an ingress interface wildcard (currently, only `swp+` and `bond+` are supported as wildcard names; see below) that matches any interface applied so that you can maintain order of operations with other input interface rules. Take the following rules, for example:

```
-A FORWARD -i $PORTA -j ACCEPT
-A FORWARD -o $PORTA -j ACCEPT    <-- This rule is performed LAST
(because of egress interface matching)
-A FORWARD -i $PORTB -j DROP
```

If you modify the rules like this, they are performed in order:

```
-A FORWARD -i $PORTA -j ACCEPT
-A FORWARD -i swp+ -o $PORTA -j ACCEPT    <-- These rules are
performed in order (because of wildcard match on ingress interface)
-A FORWARD -i $PORTB -j DROP
```

- When using rules that do a mangle and a filter lookup for a packet, Cumulus Linux does them in parallel and combines the action.

- If a switch port is assigned to a bond, any egress rules must be assigned to the bond.
- When using the OUTPUT chain, rules must be assigned to the source. For example, if a rule is assigned to the switch port in the direction of traffic but the source is a bridge (VLAN), the traffic won't be affected by the rule and must be applied to the bridge.
- If all transit traffic needs to have a rule applied, use the FORWARD chain, not the OUTPUT chain.
- `eptables` rules are put into either the IPv4 or IPv6 memory space depending on whether the rule utilizes IPv4 or IPv6 to make a decision. Layer 2-only rules, which match the MAC address, are put into the IPv4 memory space.

## Rule Placement in Memory

INPUT and ingress (FORWARD -i) rules occupy the same memory space. A rule counts as ingress if the -i option is set. If both input and output options (-i and -o) are set, the rule is considered as ingress and occupies that memory space. For example:

```
-A FORWARD -i swp1 -o swp2 -s 10.0.14.2 -d 10.0.15.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT
```



If you set an output flag with the INPUT chain you will get an error. For example, running `cl-acltool -i` on the following rule:

```
-A FORWARD,INPUT -i swp1 -o swp2 -s 10.0.14.2 -d 10.0.15.8 -p
tcp -j ACCEPT
```

generates the following error:

```
error: line 2 : output interface specified with INPUT chain
error processing rule '-A FORWARD,INPUT -i swp1 -o swp2 -s
10.0.14.2 -d 10.0.15.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT'
```

However, simply removing the -o option and interface would make it a valid rule.

## Enabling Nonatomic Updates

You can enable nonatomic updates for `switchd`, which offer better scaling because all TCAM resources are used to actively impact traffic. With atomic updates, half of the hardware resources are on standby and do not actively impact traffic.

Nonatomic updates are now table based, so they don't interrupt network traffic when new rules are installed. The rules are mapped into the following tables and are updated in this order:

- mirror (ingress only)
- ipv4-mac (can be both ingress and egress)
- ipv6 (ingress only)

Updates are done incrementally, one table at a time without stopping traffic. Cumulus Linux checks if a table's rules have changed since the last time they were installed; if a table does not have any changes, then it is not reinstalled. If there are changes in a table, then the new rules are populated in new groups or slices in hardware, then that table is switched over to the new groups or slices. Finally, old resources for that table are freed. This process is repeated for each of the tables listed above. If a failure occurs during an update, the regular nonatomic mode is attempted, which interrupts network traffic. If that also fails, Cumulus Linux reverts back to the previous rules.

To always start `switchd` with nonatomic updates:

1. Edit `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`.
2. Add the following line to the file:

```
acl.non_atomic_update_mode = TRUE
```

3. Restart `switchd`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```



During nonatomic updates, traffic is stopped first, and enabled after the new configuration is written into the hardware completely.

## **Using `iptables/ip6tables/ebtables` Directly**

Using `iptables/ip6tables/ebtables` directly is not recommended because any rules installed in these cases only are applied to the Linux kernel and are not hardware accelerated via synchronization to the switch silicon. Also running `cl-acltool -i` (the installation command) resets all rules and deletes anything that is not stored in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf`.

For example, performing:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -A INPUT -p icmp --icmp-type echo-request -j DROP
```

Appears to work, and the rule appears when you run `cl-acltool -L`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 72 packets, 5236 bytes)
 pkts bytes target prot opt in out source destination
 0 0 DROP icmp -- any any anywhere anywhere icmp echo-request
```

However, the rule is not synced to hardware when applied in this fashion and running `cl-acltool -i` or `reboot` removes the rule without replacing it. To ensure all rules that can be in hardware are hardware accelerated, place them in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf` and install them by running `cl-acltool -i`.

## ***Estimating the Number of Rules***

To estimate the number of rules that could be created from an ACL entry, first determine if that entry is an ingress or an egress. Then determine if it is IPv4-mac or IPv6 type rule. This determines the slice to which the rule belongs. Then use the following to determine how many entries are used up for each type.

By default, each entry occupies one double wide entry, except if the entry is one of the following:

- An entry with multiple comma-separated input interfaces is split into one rule for each input interface (listed after `--in-interface` below). For example, this entry splits into two rules:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1s0,swp1s1 -p icmp -j ACCEPT
```

- An entry with multiple comma-separated output interfaces is split into one rule for each output interface (listed after `--out-interface` below). this entry splits into two rules:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ --out-interface swp1s0,swp1s1 -p icmp -j ACCEPT
```

- An entry with both input and output comma-separated interfaces is split into one rule for each combination of input and output interface (listed after `--in-interface` and `--out-interface` below). For example, this entry splits into four rules:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1s0,swp1s1 --out-interface swp1s2, swp1s3 -p icmp -j ACCEPT
```

- An entry with multiple L4 port ranges is split into one rule for each range (listed after `--dports` below). For example, this entry splits into two rules:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp -m multiport --dports 1050:1051,1055:1056 -j ACCEPT
```

## ***Installing and Managing ACL Rules with cl-acltool***

You manage Cumulus Linux ACLs with `cl-acltool`. Rules are first written to the `iptables` chains, as described above, and then synced to hardware via `switchd`.

To examine the current state of chains and list all installed rules, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L all
```

```
-----  
Listing rules of type iptables:  
-----  
  
TABLE filter :  
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 90 packets, 14456 bytes)  
pkts bytes target prot opt in out source destination  
0 0 DROP all -- swp+ any 240.0.0.0/5 anywhere  
0 0 DROP all -- swp+ any loopback/8 anywhere  
0 0 DROP all -- swp+ any base-address.mcast.net/8 anywhere  
0 0 DROP all -- swp+ any 255.255.255.255 anywhere ...
```

To list installed rules using native `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables`, run these commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip6tables -L  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ebtables -L
```

To flush all installed rules, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -F all
```

To flush only the IPv4 `iptables` rules, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -F ip
```

If the install fails, ACL rules in the kernel and hardware are rolled back to the previous state. Errors from programming rules in the kernel or ASIC are reported appropriately.

## ***Installing Packet Filtering (ACL) Rules***

`cl-acltool` takes access control list (ACL) rules input in files. Each ACL policy file contains `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables` categories under the tags `[iptables]`, `[ip6tables]` and `[ebtables]` respectively.

Each rule in an ACL policy must be assigned to one of the rule categories above.

See `man cl-acltool(5)` for ACL rule details. For `iptables` rule syntax, see `man iptables(8)`. For `ip6tables` rule syntax, see `man ip6tables(8)`. For `ebtables` rule syntax, see `man ebtables(8)`.

See `man cl-acltool(5)` and `man cl-acltool(8)` for further details on using `cl-acltool`; however, some examples are listed here, and more are listed [later in this chapter \(see page \)](#).



By default:

- ACL policy files are located in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`.
- All `*.rules` files in this directory are included in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf`.

- All files included in this `policy.conf` file are installed when the switch boots up.
- The `policy.conf` file expects rules files to have a `.rules` suffix as part of the file name.

Here is an example ACL policy file:

```
[iptables]
-A INPUT --in-interface swp1 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT

[ip6tables]
-A INPUT --in-interface swp1 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT

[ebtables]
-A INPUT -p IPv4 -j ACCEPT
-A FORWARD -p IPv4 -j ACCEPT
```

You can use wildcards or variables to specify chain and interface lists to ease administration of rules.



**Interface Wildcards** – Currently only `swp+` and `bond+` are supported as wildcard names. There may be kernel restrictions in supporting more complex wildcards like `swp1+` etc.

```
INGRESS = swp+
INPUT_PORT_CHAIN = INPUT, FORWARD

[iptables]
-A $INPUT_PORT_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS -p tcp --dport 80 -j
ACCEPT

[ip6tables]
-A $INPUT_PORT_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS -p tcp --dport 80 -j
ACCEPT

[ebtables]
-A INPUT -p IPv4 -j ACCEPT
```

ACL rules for the system can be written into multiple files under the default `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/` directory. The ordering of rules during installation follows the sort order of the files based on their file names.

Use multiple files to stack rules. The example below shows two rules files separating rules for management and datapath traffic:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ ls /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/
00sample_mgmt.rules 01sample_datapath.rules
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00sample_mgmt.rules

INGRESS_INTF = swp+
INGRESS_CHAIN = INPUT

[iptables]
# protect the switch management
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 10.0.14.2 -d 10.0.15
.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 10.0.11.2 -d 10.0.12
.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -d 10.0.16.8 -p udp -j
DROP

cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/01sample_datapath.
rules
INGRESS_INTF = swp+
INGRESS_CHAIN = INPUT, FORWARD

[iptables]
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 192.0.2.5 -p icmp -
j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 192.0.2.6 -d 192.0.2
.4 -j DROP
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 192.0.2.2 -d 192.0.2
.8 -j DROP

```

Install all ACL policies under a directory:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i -P ./rules
Reading files under rules
Reading rule file ./rules/01_http_rules.txt ...
Processing rules in file ./rules/01_http_rules.txt ...
Installing acl policy ...
Done.

```

Install all rules and policies included in /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i

```

## Specifying which Policy Files to Install

By default, any .rules file you configure in /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/ get installed by Cumulus Linux. To add other policy files to an ACL, you need to include them in /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf. For example, in order for Cumulus Linux to install a rule in a policy file called 01\_new.rules , you would add include /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/01\_new.rules to policy.conf, as in this example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vi /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf

#
# This file is a master file for acl policy file inclusion
#
# Note: This is not a file where you list acl rules.
#
# This file can contain:
# - include lines with acl policy files
#   example:
#       include <filepath>
#
# see manpage cl-acltool(5) and cl-acltool(8) for how to write policy
files
#


include /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/*.rules
include /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/01_new.rules
```

## Hardware Limitations on Number of Rules

The maximum number of rules that can be handled in hardware is a function of the platform type (switch silicon, like Tomahawk) and a mix of IPv4 and/or IPv6. See the [HCL](#) to determine which platform type applies to a particular switch.

If the maximum number of rules for a particular table is exceeded, cl-acltool -i generates the following error:

```
error: hw sync failed (sync_acl hardware installation failed) Rolling
back .. failed.
```

## Broadcom Tomahawk Limits

Direction	Atomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Atomic Mode IPv6 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv6 Rules
Ingress	512	512	1024	1024
Egress	512	256	1024	512

## Broadcom Trident II+ Limits

Direction	Atomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Atomic Mode IPv6 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv6 Rules
Ingress	4096	4096	8192	8192
Egress	512	256	1024	512

## Broadcom Trident II and Helix4 Limits

Direction	Atomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Atomic Mode IPv6 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv6 Rules
Ingress	1024	1024	2048	2048
Egress	512	256	1024	512

## Mellanox Spectrum Limits

Unlike Broadcom ASICs, the Mellanox Spectrum ASIC hardware counts ACL rules differently. The ASIC also has one common [TCAM](#) for both ingress and egress, and it may be used for other non-ACL-related resources.

Further, when a rule is installed in software then sent to the ASIC, the number of rules allowed is determined by the size of the rule itself. The Spectrum ASIC allocates 324KB total for rules, broken down as follows:

- 18K x 18 byte rules
- 9K x 36 byte rules
- 6K x 54 byte rules

## Supported Rule Types

The `iptables`/`ip6tables`/`ebtables` construct tries to layer the Linux implementation on top of the underlying hardware but they are not always directly compatible. Here are the supported rules for chains in `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables`.



To learn more about any of the options shown in the tables below, run `iptables -h [name of option]`. The same help syntax works for options for `ip6tables` and `ebtables`.

[Click to see an example of help syntax for an ebttables target](#)

```
root@leaf1# ebttables -h tricolorpolice
<...snip...
tricolorpolice option:
  --set-color-mode STRING setting the mode in blind or aware
  --set-cir INT setting committed information rate in kbits per
second
  --set-cbs INT setting committed burst size in kbyte
  --set-pir INT setting peak information rate in kbits per
second
  --set-ebs INT setting excess burst size in kbyte
  --set-conform-action-dscp INT setting dscp value if the
action is accept for conforming packets
  --set-exceed-action-dscp INT setting dscp value if the action
is accept for exceeding packets
  --set-violate-action STRING setting the action (accept/drop) for
or violating packets
  --set-violate-action-dscp INT setting dscp value if the
action is accept for violating packets
Supported chains for the filter table:
INPUT FORWARD OUTPUT
```

## `iptables`/`ip6tables` Rule Support

Rule Element	Supported	Unsupported
<b>Matches</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Src/Dst, IP protocol</li> <li>In/out interface</li> <li>IPv4: icmp, ttl,</li> <li>IPv6: icmp6, frag, hl,</li> <li>IP common: tcp (<a href="#">with flags (see page 118)</a>), udp, multiport, TOS, DSCP, addrtpe</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rules with input/output Ethernet interfaces are ignored</li> <li>Inverse matches</li> </ul>

Rule Element	Supported	Unsupported
<b>Standard Targets</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACCEPT, DROP</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>RETURN, QUEUE, STOP, Fall Thru, Jump</li> </ul>
<b>Extended Targets</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>LOG (IPv4/IPv6); UID is not supported for LOG</li> <li>TCP SEQ, TCP options or IP options</li> <li>ULOG</li> <li>SETQOS</li> <li>DSCP</li> </ul> <p><i>Unique to Cumulus Linux:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SPAN</li> <li>ERSPAN (IPv4/IPv6)</li> <li>POLICE</li> <li>TRICOLORPOLICE</li> <li>SETCLASS</li> </ul>	

## ebtables Rule Support

Rule Element	Supported	Unsupported
<b>Matches</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ether type</li> <li>input interface/wildcard</li> <li>output interface/wildcard</li> <li>src/dst MAC</li> <li>IP: src, dest, tos, proto, sport, dport</li> <li>IPv6: tclass, icmp6: type, icmp6: code range, src /dst addr, sport, dport</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inverse matches</li> <li>Proto length</li> <li>VLAN</li> <li>802.1p (CoS)</li> </ul>
<b>Standard Targets</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACCEPT, DROP</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Return, Continue, Jump, Fall Thru</li> </ul>
<b>Extended Targets</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ulog</li> <li>log</li> </ul> <p><i>Unique to Cumulus Linux:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>span</li> <li>erspan</li> <li>police</li> </ul>	

Rule Element	Supported	Unsupported
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tricolorpolice</li> <li>• setclass</li> </ul>	

## Other Unsupported Rules

- Rules that have no matches and accept all packets in a chain are currently ignored. This probably has side effects in the sense that the rules below them do get hit, when normally they wouldn't.
- Chain default rules (which are ACCEPT) are also ignored.
- Rules that match on eth\* interfaces are assumed to be Linux management interfaces and are ignored.

## Common Examples

### Policing Control Plane and Data Plane Traffic

You can configure quality of service for traffic on both the control plane and the data plane. By using QoS policers, you can rate limit traffic so incoming packets get dropped if they exceed specified thresholds.



Counters on POLICE ACL rules in `iptables` do not currently show the packets that are dropped due to those rules.

Use the POLICE target with `iptables`. POLICE takes these arguments:

- `--set-class value`: Sets the system internal class of service queue configuration to *value*.
- `--set-rate value`: Specifies the maximum rate in kilobytes (KB) or packets.
- `--set-burst value`: Specifies the number of packets or kilobytes (KB) allowed to arrive sequentially.
- `--set-mode string`: Sets the mode in KB (kilobytes) or pkt (packets) for rate and burst size.

For example, to rate limit the incoming traffic on swp1 to 400 packets/second with a burst of 100 packets /second and set the class of the queue for the policed traffic as 0, set this rule in your appropriate `.rules` file:

```
-A INPUT --in-interface swp1 -j POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 400
--set-burst 100 --set-class 0
```

Here is another example of control plane ACL rules to lock down the switch. You specify them in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.rules`:

View the contents of the file ...

```
INGRESS_INTF = swp+
```

```

INGRESS_CHAIN = INPUT
INNFWD_CHAIN = INPUT, FORWARD
MARTIAN_SOURCES_4 = "240.0.0.0/5,127.0.0.0/8,224.0.0.0/8,
255.255.255/32"
MARTIAN_SOURCES_6 = "ff00::/8, ::/128, ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96, ::1/128"
# Custom Policy Section
SSH_SOURCES_4 = "192.168.0.0/24"
NTP_SERVERS_4 = "192.168.0.1/32,192.168.0.4/32"
DNS_SERVERS_4 = "192.168.0.1/32,192.168.0.4/32"
SNMP_SERVERS_4 = "192.168.0.1/32"
[iptables]
-A $INNFWD_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s $MARTIAN_SOURCES_4 -
j DROP
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p ospf -j POLICE --
set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 --set-class 7
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport bgp -j
POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 --set-class 7
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --sport bgp -j
POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 --set-class 7
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p icmp -j POLICE --
set-mode pkt --set-rate 100 --set-burst 40 --set-class 2
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --dport bootps:
bootpc -j POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 100 --set-burst 100 --set-
class 2
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport bootps:
bootpc -j POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 100 --set-burst 100 --set-
class 2
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p igmp -j POLICE --
set-mode pkt --set-rate 300 --set-burst 100 --set-class 6
# Custom policy
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport 22 -s
$SSH_SOURCES_4 -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --sport 123 -s
$NTP_SERVERS_4 -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --sport 53 -s
$DNS_SERVERS_4 -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --dport 161 -s
$SNMP_SERVERS_4 -j ACCEPT
# Allow UDP traceroute when we are the current TTL expired hop
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --dport 1024:655
35 -m ttl --ttl-eq 1 -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -j DROP

```

## Setting DSCP on Transit Traffic

The examples here use the *mangle* table to modify the packet as it transits the switch. DSCP is expressed in decimal notation in the examples below.

```
[iptables]
```

```
#Set SSH as high priority traffic.
-t mangle -A FORWARD -p tcp --dport 22 -j DSCP --set-dscp 46

#Set everything coming in SWP1 as AF13
-t mangle -A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -j DSCP --set-dscp 14

#Set Packets destined for 10.0.100.27 as best effort
-t mangle -A FORWARD -d 10.0.100.27/32 -j DSCP --set-dscp 0

#Example using a range of ports for TCP traffic
-t mangle -A FORWARD -p tcp -s 10.0.0.17/32 --sport 10000:20000 -d 10.0.100.27/32 --dport 10000:20000 -j DSCP --set-dscp 34
```

## Verifying DSCP Values on Transit Traffic

The examples here use the DSCP match criteria in combination with other IP, TCP and interface matches to identify traffic and count the number of packets.

```
[iptables]

#Match and count the packets that match SSH traffic with DSCP EF
-A FORWARD -p tcp --dport 22 -m dscp --dscp 46 -j ACCEPT

#Match and count the packets coming in SWP1 as AF13
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -m dscp --dscp 14 -j ACCEPT
#Match and count the packets with a destination 10.0.0.17 marked best
effort
-A FORWARD -d 10.0.100.27/32 -m dscp --dscp 0 -j ACCEPT

#Match and count the packets in a port range with DSCP AF41
-A FORWARD -p tcp -s 10.0.0.17/32 --sport 10000:20000 -d 10.0.100.27/32 --dport 10000:20000 -m dscp --dscp 34 -j ACCEPT
```

## Checking the Packet and Byte Counters for ACL Rules

To verify the counters, using the above example rules, first send test traffic matching the patterns through the network. The following example generates traffic with `mz`, which can be installed on host servers or even on Cumulus Linux switches. Once traffic is sent to validate the counters, they are matched on switch1 use `cl-acltool`.

```
# Send 100 TCP packets on Host1 with a DSCP value of EF with a
destination of Host2 TCP port 22:

cumulus@host1$ mz eth1 -A 10.0.0.17 -B 10.0.100.27 -c 100 -v -t tcp "d
p=22,dscp=46"
IP: ver=4, len=40, tos=184, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0,
SA=10.0.0.17, DA=10.0.100.27,
payload=[see next layer]
```

```

TCP: sp=0, dp=22, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,
      payload=

# Verify the 100 packets are matched on switch1
cumulus@switch1$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 9314 packets, 753K bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
    100   6400 ACCEPT     tcp  --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:ssh DSCP match 0x2e
      0     0 ACCEPT     all  --  swp1    any     anywhere
anywhere          DSCP match 0x0e
      0     0 ACCEPT     all  --  any     any     10.0.0.17
anywhere          DSCP match 0x00
      0     0 ACCEPT     tcp  --  any     any     10.0.0.17
.0.100.27         tcp spts:webmin:20000 dpts:webmin:2002      10

```

```
# Send 100 packets with a small payload on Host1 with a DSCP value of AF13 with a destination of Host2:
```

```

cumulus@host1$ mz eth1 -A 10.0.0.17 -B 10.0.100.27 -c 100 -v -t ip
  IP: ver=4, len=20, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=0, sum=0, SA=
10.0.0.17, DA=10.0.100.27,
      payload=

```

```
# Verify the 100 packets are matched on switch1
cumulus@switch1$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----

```

```
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----

```

```

TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 9314 packets, 753K bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
    100   6400 ACCEPT     tcp  --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:ssh DSCP match 0x2e
    100   7000 ACCEPT     all  --  swp3    any     anywhere
anywhere          DSCP match 0x0e
    100   6400 ACCEPT     all  --  any     any     10.0.0.17
anywhere          DSCP match 0x00

```

```
0      0 ACCEPT      tcp  --  any    any     10.0.0.17      10
.0.100.27          tcp spts:webmin:20000 dpts:webmin:2002
```

```
# Send 100 packets on Host1 with a destination of Host2:
cumulus@host1$ mz eth1 -A 10.0.0.17 -B 10.0.100.27 -c 100 -v -t ip
  IP: ver=4, len=20, tos=56, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=0, sum=0,
  SA=10.0.0.17, DA=10.0.100.27,
  payload=

# Verify the 100 packets are matched on switch1
cumulus@switch1$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 9314 packets, 753K bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
  100   6400 ACCEPT      tcp  --  any    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:ssh DSCP match 0x2e
  100   7000 ACCEPT      all  --  swp3   any     anywhere
anywhere          DSCP match 0x0e
  0      0 ACCEPT      all  --  any    any     10.0.0.17
anywhere          DSCP match 0x00
  0      0 ACCEPT      tcp  --  any    any     10.0.0.17      10
.0.100.27          tcp spts:webmin:20000 dpts:webmin:2002Still working
```

## Filtering Specific TCP Flags

The example solution below creates rules on the INPUT and FORWARD chains to drop ingress IPv4 and IPv6 TCP packets when the SYN bit is set and the RST, ACK and FIN bits are reset. The default for the INPUT and FORWARD chains allows all other packets. The ACL is applied to ports swp20 and swp21. After configuring this ACL, new TCP sessions that originate from ingress ports swp20 and swp21 will not be allowed. TCP sessions that originate from any other port are allowed.

```
INGRESS_INTF = swp20,swp21

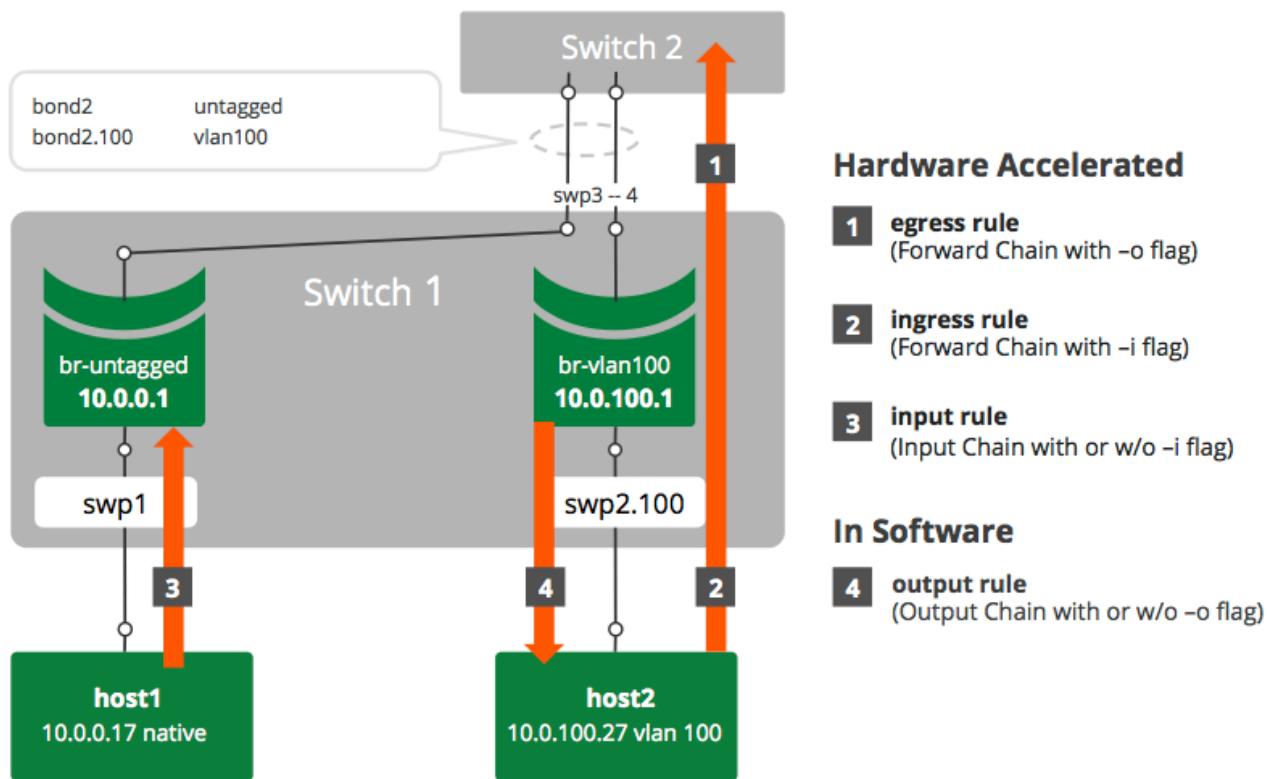
[iptables]
-A INPUT, FORWARD --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --syn -j DROP
[ip6tables]
-A INPUT, FORWARD --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --syn -j DROP
```

The `--syn` flag in the above rule matches packets with the SYN bit set and the ACK, RST and FIN bits are cleared. It is equivalent to using `-tcp-flags SYN,RST,ACK,FIN SYN`. For example, the above rule could be re-written as:

```
-A INPUT, FORWARD --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --tcp-flags SYN,
RST,ACK,FIN SYN -j DROP
```

## Example Scenario

The following example scenario demonstrates where several different rules are applied to show what is possible.



Following are the configurations for the two switches used in these examples. The configuration for each switch appears in `/etc/network/interfaces` on that switch.

## Switch 1 Configuration

```
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
```

```
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4

auto bond2
iface bond2
    bond-slaves swp3 swp4

auto br-untagged
iface br-untagged
    address 10.0.0.1/24
    bridge_ports swp1 bond2
    bridge_stp on

auto br-tag100
iface br-tag100
    address 10.0.100.1/24
    bridge_ports swp2.100 bond2.100
    bridge_stp on
```

## Switch 2 Configuration

```
auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4

auto br-untagged
iface br-untagged
    address 10.0.0.2/24
    bridge_ports bond2
    bridge_stp on

auto br-tag100
iface br-tag100
    address 10.0.100.2/24
    bridge_ports bond2.100
    bridge_stp on

auto bond2
iface bond2
    bond-slaves swp3 swp4
```

## Egress Rule

The following rule blocks any TCP with destination port 200 traffic going from host1 or host2 through the switch (corresponding to rule 1 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A FORWARD -o bond2 -p tcp --dport 200 -j DROP
```

## Ingress Rule

The following rule blocks any UDP traffic with source port 200 going from host1 through the switch (corresponding to rule 2 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A FORWARD -i swp2 -p udp --sport 200 -j DROP
```

## Input Rule

The following rule blocks any UDP traffic with source port 200 and destination port 50 going from host1 to the switch (corresponding to rule 3 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A INPUT -i swp1 -p udp --sport 200 --dport 50 -j DROP
```

## Output Rule

The following rule blocks any TCP traffic with source port 123 and destination port 123 going from Switch 1 to host2 (corresponding to rule 4 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A OUTPUT -o br-tag100 -p tcp --sport 123 --dport 123 -j DROP
```

## Combined Rules

The following rule blocks any TCP traffic with source port 123 and destination port 123 going from any switch port egress or generated from Switch 1 to host1 or host2 (corresponding to rules 1 and 4 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A OUTPUT, FORWARD -o swp+ -p tcp --sport 123 --dport 123 -j DROP
```

This also becomes 2 ACLs, and is effectively the same as:

```
[iptables]
-A FORWARD -o swp+ -p tcp --sport 123 --dport 123 -j DROP
-A OUTPUT -o swp+ -p tcp --sport 123 --dport 123 -j DROP
```

## **Layer 2-only Rules/ebtables**

The following rule blocks any traffic with source MAC address 00:00:00:00:00:12 and destination MAC address 08:9e:01:ce:e2:04 going from any switch port egress/ingress.

```
[ebtables] -A FORWARD -s 00:00:00:00:00:12 -d 08:9e:01:ce:e2:04 -j
DROP
```

## **Useful Links**

- [www.netfilter.org](http://www.netfilter.org)
- Netfilter.org packet filtering how-to

## **Caveats and Errata**

### **Not All Rules Supported**

As mentioned in the [Supported Rules](#) section (see page 112) above, not all `iptables`, `ip6tables` or `ebtables` rules are supported. Refer to that section for specific rule support.

### **Bridge Traffic Limitations**

Bridge traffic that matches LOG ACTION rules are not logged in syslog, as the kernel and hardware identify packets using different information.

### **Log Actions Cannot Be Forwarded**

Logged packets cannot be forwarded. The hardware cannot both forward a packet and send the packet to the control plane (or kernel) for logging. To emphasize this, a log action must also have a drop action.

### **Tomahawk Hardware Limitations**

#### **Rate Limiting per Pipeline, Not Global**

On Tomahawk switches, the field processor (FP) polices on a per-pipeline basis instead of globally, as with a Trident II switch. If packets come in to different switch ports that are on different pipelines on the ASIC, they may be rate limited differently.

For example, your switch is set so BFD is rate limited to 2000 packets per second. When the BFD packets are received on port1/pipeline1 and port2/pipeline2, they would each be rate limited at 2000 pps, thus the switch is rate limiting at 4000 pps overall. Since there are four pipelines on a Tomahawk switch, you could see a 4 increase of your configured rate limits.

## Ping-pong Mode Enabled by Default

In Cumulus Linux, the ping-pong atomic policy update mode is enabled by default. If you have Tomahawk switches and plan to use only SPAN and/or mangle rules, you must disable ping-pong mode.

To do so, set the value for `acl.non_atomic_update_mode` to true in `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`:

```
acl.non_atomic_update_mode = TRUE
```

Then `restart switchd`.

## Packets Undercounted during ACL Updates

On Tomahawk switches, when updating egress FP rules, some packets do not get counted. This results in an underreporting of counts during ping-pong/incremental switchover.

### `iptables` Interactions with `cl-acltool`

Since Cumulus Linux is a Linux operating system, the `iptables` commands can be used directly and will work. However, you should consider using `cl-acltool` instead because:

- Without using `cl-acltool`, rules are not installed into hardware.
- Running `cl-acltool -i` (the installation command) will reset all rules and delete anything that is not stored in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf`.

For example performing:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -A INPUT -p icmp --icmp-type echo-request -j DROP
```

Does work, and the rules appear when you run `cl-acltool -L`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 72 packets, 5236 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in      out
source          destination
          0     0  DROP      icmp --  any    any
anywhere        anywhere           icmp echo-request
```

However, running `cl-acltool -i` or `reboot` will remove them. To ensure all rules that can be in hardware are hardware accelerated, place them in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf` and run `cl-acltool -i`.

## Where to Assign Rules

- If a switch port is assigned to a bond, any egress rules must be assigned to the bond.
- When using the OUTPUT chain, rules must be assigned to the source. For example, if a rule is assigned to the switch port in the direction of traffic but the source is a bridge (VLAN), the traffic won't be affected by the rule and must be applied to the bridge.
- If all transit traffic needs to have a rule applied, use the FORWARD chain, not the OUTPUT chain.

## Generic Error Message Displayed after ACL Rule Installation Failure

After an ACL rule installation failure, a generic error message like the following is displayed:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo cl-acltool -i -p 00control_plane.rules
Using user provided rule file 00control_plane.rules
Reading rule file 00control_plane.rules ...
Processing rules in file 00control_plane.rules ...
error: hw sync failed (sync_acl hardware installation failed)
Installing acl policy... Rolling back ..
failed.
```

## Dell S3048-ON Supports only 24K MAC Addresses

The Dell S3048-ON has a limit of 24576 MAC address entries, instead of 32K for other 1G switches.

## Default Cumulus Linux ACL Configuration

The Cumulus Linux default ACL configuration is split into three parts, as outlined in the [netfilter ACL documentation \(see page 98\)](#): IP tables, IPv6 tables, and EB tables. The sections below cover the default configurations for each part, while the default file can be seen by clicking the Default ACL Configuration link:

[Default ACL Configuration](#)

```
root@r4u18:~# cl-acltool -L all
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 167 packets, 16481 bytes)
 pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
      0      0 DROP       all   --  swp+    any     240.0.0.0/5
anywhere
      0      0 DROP       all   --  swp+    any     loopback/8
anywhere
      0      0 DROP       all   --  swp+    any     base-address.mcast.net/
  8 anywhere
      0      0 DROP       all   --  swp+    any     255.255.255.255
anywhere
```

```

      0      0 SETCLASS    udp  --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:3785 SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0 POLICE     udp  --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:3785 POLICE  mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    udp  --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:3784 SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0 POLICE     udp  --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:3784 POLICE  mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    udp  --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:4784 SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0 POLICE     udp  --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:4784 POLICE  mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    ospf --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0 POLICE     ospf --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          POLICE  mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bgp SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0 POLICE     tcp   --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bgp POLICE  mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:bgp SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0 POLICE     tcp   --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:bgp POLICE  mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:5342 SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0 POLICE     tcp   --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:5342 POLICE  mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:5342 SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0 POLICE     tcp   --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:5342 POLICE  mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    icmp --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS  class:2
      1     84 POLICE     icmp --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          POLICE  mode:pkt rate:100 burst:40
      0      0 SETCLASS    udp  --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          udp dpts:bootps:bootpc SETCLASS  class:2
      0      0 POLICE     udp  --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:bootps POLICE  mode:pkt rate:100 burst:10
0
      0      0 POLICE     udp  --  any   any      anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:bootpc POLICE  mode:pkt rate:100 burst:10
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   --  swp+  any      anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpts:bootps:bootpc SETCLASS  class:2

```

```

      0      0 POLICE      tcp  --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere                      tcp dpt:bootps POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:10
0
      0      0 POLICE      tcp  --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere                      tcp dpt:bootpc POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:10
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    udp  --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere                      udp dpt:10001 SETCLASS class:3
      0      0 POLICE      udp  --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere                      udp dpt:10001 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:20
00
      0      0 SETCLASS    igmp --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere                      SETCLASS class:6
      1     32 POLICE      igmp --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere                      POLICE mode:pkt rate:300 burst:100
      0      0 POLICE      all   --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere                      ADDRTYPE match dst-type LOCAL POLICE mode:pkt
rate:1000 burst:1000 class:0
      0      0 POLICE      all   --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere                      ADDRTYPE match dst-type IPROUTER POLICE mode:
pkt rate:400 burst:100 class:0
      0      0 SETCLASS    all   --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere                      SETCLASS class:0
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
 pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
      0      0 DROP        all   --  swp+   any    240.0.0.0/5
anywhere
      0      0 DROP        all   --  swp+   any    loopback/8
anywhere
      0      0 DROP        all   --  swp+   any    base-address.mcast.net/
8 anywhere
      0      0 DROP        all   --  swp+   any    255.255.255.255
anywhere
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 107 packets, 12590 bytes)
 pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
TABLE mangle :
Chain PREROUTING (policy ACCEPT 172 packets, 17871 bytes)
 pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 172 packets, 17871 bytes)
 pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
 pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 111 packets, 18134 bytes)
 pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain POSTROUTING (policy ACCEPT 111 packets, 18134 bytes)

```

```

pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
TABLE raw :
Chain PREROUTING (policy ACCEPT 173 packets, 17923 bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 112 packets, 18978 bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
-----
Listing rules of type ip6tables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
    0    0 DROP        all      swp+    any     ip6-mcastprefix/8
anywhere
    0    0 DROP        all      swp+    any     ::/128
anywhere
    0    0 DROP        all      swp+    any     ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96
anywhere
    0    0 DROP        all      swp+    any     localhost/128
anywhere
    0    0 POLICE     udp     swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:3785 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0 class:7
    0    0 POLICE     udp     swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:3784 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0 class:7
    0    0 POLICE     udp     swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:4784 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0 class:7
    0    0 POLICE     ospf    swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000 class:7
    0    0 POLICE     tcp     swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bgp POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
class:7
    0    0 POLICE     tcp     swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:bgp POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
class:7
    0    0 POLICE     ipv6-icmp  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          ipv6-icmp router-
solicitation POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:100 class:2
    0    0 POLICE     ipv6-icmp  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          ipv6-icmp router-
advertisement POLICE mode:pkt rate:500 burst:500 class:2
    0    0 POLICE     ipv6-icmp  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          ipv6-icmp neighbour-
solicitation POLICE mode:pkt rate:400 burst:400 class:2

```

```

      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp      swp+    any
anywhere           anywhere           ipv6-icmp neighbour-
advertisement POLICE mode:pkt rate:400 burst:400 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp      swp+    any
anywhere           anywhere           ipv6-icmptype 130 POLICE
mode:pkt rate:200 burst:100 class:6
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp      swp+    any
anywhere           anywhere           ipv6-icmptype 131 POLICE
mode:pkt rate:200 burst:100 class:6
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp      swp+    any
anywhere           anywhere           ipv6-icmptype 132 POLICE
mode:pkt rate:200 burst:100 class:6
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp      swp+    any
anywhere           anywhere           ipv6-icmptype 143 POLICE
mode:pkt rate:200 burst:100 class:6
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp      swp+    any
anywhere           anywhere           POLICE mode:pkt rate:64
burst:40 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      udp       swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere           udp dpts:dhcpv6-client:dhcpv6-server POLICE
mode:pkt rate:100 burst:100 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      tcp       swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere           tcp dpts:dhcpv6-client:dhcpv6-server POLICE
mode:pkt rate:100 burst:100 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      all      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere           ADDRTYPE match dst-type LOCAL POLICE mode:pkt
rate:1000 burst:1000 class:0
      0      0 POLICE      all      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere           ADDRTYPE match dst-type IPROUTER POLICE mode:
pkt rate:400 burst:100 class:0
      0      0 SETCLASS    all      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere           SETCLASS class:0
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
      0      0 DROP       all      swp+    any     ip6-mcastprefix/8
anywhere
      0      0 DROP       all      swp+    any     ::/128
anywhere
      0      0 DROP       all      swp+    any     ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96
anywhere
      0      0 DROP       all      swp+    any     localhost/128
anywhere
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 5 packets, 408 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
TABLE mangle :
Chain PREROUTING (policy ACCEPT 7 packets, 718 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)

```

```

pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain POSTROUTING (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
TABLE raw :
Chain PREROUTING (policy ACCEPT 7 packets, 718 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
-----
Listing rules of type ebtables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Bridge table: filter
Bridge chain: INPUT, entries: 16, policy: ACCEPT
-d BGA -i swp+ -j setclass --class 7 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d BGA -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 ,
pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:80:c2:0:0:2 -i swp+ -j setclass --class 7 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:80:c2:0:0:2 -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst
2000 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:80:c2:0:0:e -i swp+ -j setclass --class 6 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:80:c2:0:0:e -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 200 --set-burst 2
00 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:0:c:cc:cc:cc -i swp+ -j setclass --class 6 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:0:c:cc:cc:cc -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 200 --set-burst
200 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-p ARP -i swp+ -j setclass --class 2 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-p ARP -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 400 --set-burst 100 , pcnt
= 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:0:c:cc:cc:cd -i swp+ -j setclass --class 7 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:0:c:cc:cc:cd -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-
burst 2000 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-p IPv4 -i swp+ -j ACCEPT , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-p IPv6 -i swp+ -j ACCEPT , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-i swp+ -j setclass --class 0 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 100 --set-burst 100 , pcnt = 0 --
bcnt = 0
Bridge chain: FORWARD, entries: 0, policy: ACCEPT
Bridge chain: OUTPUT, entries: 0, policy: ACCEPT

```

## IP Tables

Action/Value	Protocol/IP Address
Drop Destination IP: Any	Source IPv4: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 240.0.0.0/5</li> <li>• loopback/8</li> <li>• 224.0.0.0/4</li> <li>• 255.255.255.255</li> </ul>
Set class: 7 Police: Packet rate 2000 burst 2000 Source IP: Any Destination IP: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UDP/BFD Echo</li> <li>• UDP/BFD Control</li> <li>• UDP BFD Multihop Control</li> <li>• OSPF</li> <li>• TCP/BGP (spt dpt 179)</li> <li>• TCP/MLAG (spt dpt 5342)</li> </ul>
Set Class: 6 Police: Rate 300 burst 100 Source IP: Any Destination IP: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IGMP</li> </ul>
Set class: 2 Police: Rate 100 burst 40 Source IP : Any Destination IP: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ICMP</li> </ul>
Set class: 2 Police: Rate 100 burst 100 Source IP: Any Destination IP: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UDP/bootpc, bootps</li> </ul>
Set class: 3	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UDP/LNV</li> </ul>

Police: Rate 2000 burst:2000  Source IP: Any Destination IP: Any	
Set class: 0  Police: Rate 400 burst 100  Source IP: Any Destination IP: Any	<p>Protocol:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● IP Router</li> </ul> <div style="border: 2px solid #fbc02d; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <span style="color: #fbc02d; font-size: 1.5em;">⚠</span> IPROUTER is any unresolved address. On a L2/L3 boundary receiving a packet from L3 and needs to go to CPU in order to ARP for the destination.         </div>
Set class: 0  Police: Rate 1000 burst 1000  Source IP: Any Destination IP: Any	<p>Protocol:</p> <p>ALL</p>



*Set class* is internal to the switch. It does not set any precedence bits.

## IPv6 Tables

Action/Value	Protocol/IP Address
Drop	Source IPv6: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ff00::/8</li> <li>• ::</li> <li>• ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96</li> <li>• localhost</li> </ul>
Set class: 7 Police: Packet rate 2000 burst 2000 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UDP/BFD Echo</li> <li>• UDP/BFD Control</li> <li>• UDP BFD Multihop Control</li> <li>• OSPF</li> <li>• TCP/BGP (spt dpt 179)</li> </ul>
Set class: 6 Police: Packet Rte: 200 burst 100 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Multicast Listener Query (MLD)</li> <li>• Multicast Listener Report (MLD)</li> <li>• Multicast Listener Done (MLD)</li> <li>• Multicast Listener Report V2</li> </ul>
Set class: 2 Police: Packet rate: 100 burst 100 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ipv6-icmp router-solicitation</li> </ul>
Set class: 2 Police: Packet rate: 500 burst 500 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ipv6-icmp router-advertisement POLICE</li> </ul>
Set class: 2	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ipv6-icmp neighbour-solicitation</li> </ul>

Police: Packet rate: 400 burst 400 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ipv6-icmp neighbour-advertisement</li> </ul>
Set class: 2 Police: Packet rate: 64 burst: 40 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	<p>Protocol:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ipv6 icmp</li> </ul>
Set class: 2 Police: Packet rate: 100 burst: 100 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	<p>Protocol:</p> <p>UDP/dhcpv6-client:dhcpv6-server (Spts &amp; dpts)</p>
Police: Packet rate: 1000 burst 1000 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	ADDRTYPE match dst-type LOCAL
Set class: 0 Police: Packet rate: 400 burst 100	<p>ADDRTYPE match dst-type IPROUTER</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #f0c080; padding: 10px;"> <p><span style="color: yellow;">⚠</span> IPROUTER is an unresolved address. On a L2/L3 boundary receiving a packet from L3 and needs to go to CPU in order to ARP for the destination.</p> </div>
Set class 0	All



*Set class* is internal to the switch. It does not set any precedence bits.

## EB Tables

Action/Value	Protocol/MAC address
Set Class: 7 Police: packet rate: 2000 burst rate:2000 Any switch port input interface	BDPU LACP Cisco PVST
Set Class: 6 Police: packet rate: 200 burst rate: 200 Any switch port inteface	LLDP CDP
Set Class: 2 Police: packet rate: 400 burst rate: 100 Any switch port input interface	ARP
Catch All: Allow all traffic Any switch port input interface	IPv4 IPv6
Catch All (applied at end): Set class: 0 Police: packet rate 100 burst rate 100 Any switch port	ALL OTHER



*Set class* is internal to the switch. It does not set any precedence bits.

## Managing Application Daemons

You manage application daemons (services) in Cumulus Linux in the following ways:

- Identifying active listener ports
- Identifying daemons currently active or stopped
- Identifying boot time state of a specific daemon
- Disabling or enabling a specific daemon

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Using `systemd` and the `systemctl` Command (see page 135)
  - Understanding the `systemctl` Subcommands (see page 135)

- Ensuring a Service Starts after Multiple Restarts (see page 135)
- Keeping systemd Services from Hanging after Starting (see page 136)
- Identifying Active Listener Ports for IPv4 and IPv6 (see page 136)
- Identifying Daemons Currently Active or Stopped (see page 137)
- Identifying Boot Time State of a Specific Daemon (see page 138)

## **Using `systemd` and the `systemctl` Command**

In general, you manage services using `systemd` via the `systemctl` command. You use it with any service on the switch to start/stop/restart/reload/enable/disable/reenable or get the status of the service.

```
systemctl start | stop | restart | status | reload | enable | disable
| reenable SERVICENAME.service
```

For example to restart networking, run the command:

```
systemctl restart networking.service
```



Unlike the `service` command in Debian Wheezy, the service name is written **after** the `systemctl` subcommand, not before it.

## **Understanding the `systemctl` Subcommands**

`systemctl` has a number of subcommands that perform a specific operation on a given daemon.

- **status**: Returns the status of the specified daemon.
- **start**: Starts the daemon.
- **stop**: Stops the daemon.
- **restart**: Stops, then starts the daemon, all the while maintaining state. So if there are dependent services or services that mark the restarted service as *Required*, the other services also get restarted. For example, running `systemctl restart quagga.service` restarts any of the routing protocol daemons that are enabled and running, such as `bgpd` or `ospfd`.
- **reload**: Reloads a daemon's configuration.
- **enable**: Enables the daemon to start when the system boots, but does not start it unless you use the `systemctl start SERVICENAME.service` command or reboot the switch.
- **disable**: Disables the daemon, but does not stop it unless you use the `systemctl stop SERVICENAME.service` command or reboot the switch. A disabled daemon can still be started or stopped.
- **reenable**: Disables, then enables a daemon. You might need to do this so that any new *Wants* or *WantedBy* lines create the symlinks necessary for ordering. This has no side effects on other daemons.

## Ensuring a Service Starts after Multiple Restarts

By default, `systemd` is configured to try to restart a particular service only a certain number of times within a given interval before the service fails to start at all. The settings for this are stored in the service script. The settings are `StartLimitInterval` (which defaults to 10 seconds) and `StartBurstLimit` (which defaults to 5 attempts), but many services override these defaults, sometimes with much longer times. `switchd.service`, for example, sets `StartLimitInterval=10m` and `StartBurstLimit=3`, which means if you restart `switchd` more than 3 times in 10 minutes, it will not start.

When the restart fails for this reason, a message similar to the following appears:

```
Job for switchd.service failed. See 'systemctl status switchd.service'
and 'journalctl -xn' for details.
```

And `systemctl status switchd.service` shows output similar to:

```
Active: failed (Result: start-limit) since Thu 2016-04-07 21:55:14
UTC; 15s ago
```

To clear this error, run `systemctl reset-failed switchd.service`. If you know you are going to restart frequently (multiple times within the `StartLimitInterval`), you can run the same command before you issue the restart request. This also applies to stop followed by start.

## Keeping `systemd` Services from Hanging after Starting

If you start, restart or reload any `systemd` service that could be started from another `systemd` service, you must use the `--no-block` option with `systemctl`. Otherwise, that service or even the switch itself may hang after starting or restarting.

## Identifying Active Listener Ports for IPv4 and IPv6

You can identify the active listener ports under both IPv4 and IPv6 using the `netstat` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netstat -nlp --inet --inet6
Active Internet connections (only servers)
Proto Recv-Q Send-Q Local Address          Foreign Address
State      PID/Program name
tcp        0      0 0.0.0.0:53              0.0.0.0:*
LISTEN     444/dnsmasq
tcp        0      0 0.0.0.0:22              0.0.0.0:*
LISTEN     874/sshd
tcp6       0      0 :::53                  ::::*
LISTEN     444/dnsmasq
tcp6       0      0 :::22                  ::::*
LISTEN     874/sshd
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:28450            0.0.0.0:
*          839/dhclient
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:53              0.0.0.0:
*          444/dnsmasq
```

udp	0	0 0.0.0.0:68	0.0.0.0:
*		839/dhclient	
udp	0	0 192.168.0.42:123	0.0.0.0:
*		907/ntpd	
udp	0	0 127.0.0.1:123	0.0.0.0:
*		907/ntpd	
udp	0	0 0.0.0.0:123	0.0.0.0:
*		907/ntpd	
udp	0	0 0.0.0.0:4784	0.0.0.0:
*		909/ptmd	
udp	0	0 0.0.0.0:3784	0.0.0.0:
*		909/ptmd	
udp	0	0 0.0.0.0:3785	0.0.0.0:
*		909/ptmd	
udp6	0	0 ::::58352	:::
*		839/dhclient	
udp6	0	0 ::::53	:::
*		444/dnsmasq	
udp6	0	0 fe80::a200:ff:fe00::123	:::
*		907/ntpd	
udp6	0	0 ::::1:123	:::
*		907/ntpd	
udp6	0	0 ::::123	:::
*		907/ntpd	
udp6	0	0 ::::4784	:::
*		909/ptmd	
udp6	0	0 ::::3784	:::
*		909/ptmd	

## Identifying Daemons Currently Active or Stopped

To determine which daemons are currently active or stopped, run `cl-service-summary`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-service-summary
Service cron           enabled   active
Service ssh            enabled   active
Service syslog          enabled   active
Service arp_refresh    enabled   active
Service clagd          enabled   active
Service lldpd          enabled   active
Service mstpd          enabled   active
Service poed           enabled   inactive
Service portwd         enabled   inactive
Service ptmd           enabled   active
Service pwdx           enabled   active
Service smond          enabled   active
Service switchd        enabled   active
Service vxrd           disabled  inactive
Service vxsnd          disabled  inactive
```

Service bgpd	disabled	inactive
Service isisd	disabled	inactive
Service ospf6d	disabled	inactive
Service ospfd	disabled	inactive
Service rdnbrd	disabled	inactive
Service ripd	disabled	inactive
Service ripngd	disabled	inactive
Service zebra	disabled	inactive

Another way to get this information is to use the `sudo systemctl status` command, then pipe the results to `grep`, using the `-` or `+` operators:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl status | grep +
[ ? ] aclinit
[ + ] arp_refresh
[ + ] auditd
...
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl status | grep -
[ - ] isc-dhcp-server
[ - ] openvswitch-vtep
[ - ] ptmd
...
```

## ***Identifying Boot Time State of a Specific Daemon***

The `ls` command can provide the boot time state of a daemon. A file link with a name starting with **S** identifies a boot-time-enabled daemon. A file link with a name starting with **K** identifies a disabled daemon.

```
cumulus@switch:~/etc$ sudo ls -l rc*.d | grep <daemon name>
```

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~/etc$ sudo ls -l rc*.d | grep snmpd
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 15 Apr 4 2014 K02snmpd -> ../init.d/snmpd
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 15 Apr 4 2014 K02snmpd -> ../init.d/snmpd
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 15 Apr 4 2014 S01snmpd -> ../init.d/snmpd
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 15 Apr 4 2014 S01snmpd -> ../init.d/snmpd
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 15 Apr 4 2014 S01snmpd -> ../init.d/snmpd
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 15 Apr 4 2014 S01snmpd -> ../init.d/snmpd
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 15 Apr 4 2014 K02snmpd -> ../init.d/snmpd
```

## Configuring switchd

switchd is the daemon at the heart of Cumulus Linux. It communicates between the switch and Cumulus Linux, and all the applications running on Cumulus Linux.

The switchd configuration is stored in `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`.



Versions of Cumulus Linux prior to 2.1 stored the switchd configuration at `/etc/default/switchd`.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- The switchd File System (see page 139)
- Configuring switchd Parameters (see page 141)
- Restarting switchd (see page 141)
- Booting a Switch without a License (see page 142)
- Commands (see page 142)
- Configuration Files (see page 142)

### The switchd File System

switchd also exports a file system, mounted on `/cumulus/switchd`, that presents all the switchd configuration options as a series of files arranged in a tree structure. You can see the contents by parsing the switchd tree; run `tree /cumulus/switchd`. The output below is for a switch with one switch port configured:

```
cumulus@cumulus:~# sudo tree /cumulus/switchd/
/cumulus/switchd/
|-- config
|   |-- acl
|   |   |-- non_atomic_update_mode
|   |   `-- optimize_hw
|   |-- arp
|   |   `-- next_hops
|   |-- buf_util
|   |   |-- measure_interval
|   |   `-- poll_interval
|   |-- coalesce
|   |   |-- reducer
|   |   `-- timeout
|   |-- disable_internal_restart
|   |-- ignore_non_swps
|   `-- interface
```

```
|   |   |   |-- swp1
|   |   |   `-- storm_control
|   |   |       |-- broadcast
|   |   |       |-- multicast
|   |   |       `-- unknown_unicast
|   |   |-- logging
|   |   |-- route
|   |       |-- host_max_percent
|   |       `-- table
|   |   '-- stats
|   |       `-- poll_interval
|   '-- ctrl
|       |-- acl
|       |-- hal
|       |   `-- resync
|       |-- logger
|       |-- netlink
|       |   `-- resync
|       |-- resync
|       '-- sample
|           `-- ulog_channel
|-- run
|   '-- route_info
|       |-- ecmp_nh
|       |   |-- count
|       |   |-- max
|       |   `-- max_per_route
|       '-- host
|           |-- count
|           |-- count_v4
|           |-- count_v6
|           `-- max
|       '-- mac
|           |-- count
|           `-- max
|       '-- route
|           |-- count_0
|           |-- count_1
|           |-- count_total
|           |-- count_v4
|           |-- count_v6
|           |-- mask_limit
|           |-- max_0
|           |-- max_1
|           `-- max_total
`-- version
```

## Configuring `switchd` Parameters

You can use `cl-cfg` to configure many `switchd` parameters at runtime (like ACLs, interfaces, and route table utilization), which minimizes disruption to your running switch. However, some options are read only and cannot be configured at runtime.

For example, to see data related to routes, run:

```
cumulus@cumulus:~$ sudo cl-cfg -a switchd | grep route
route.table = 254
route.host_max_percent = 50
cumulus@cumulus:~$
```

To modify the configuration, run `cl-cfg -w`. For example, to set the buffer utilization measurement interval to 1 minute, run:

```
cumulus@cumulus:~$ sudo cl-cfg -w switchd buf_util.measure_interval=1
```

To verify that the value changed, use `grep`:

```
cumulus@cumulus:~# cl-cfg -a switchd | grep buf
buf_util.poll_interval = 0
buf_util.measure_interval = 1
```



You can get some of this information by running `cl-resource-query`; though you cannot update the `switchd` configuration with it.

## Restarting `switchd`

Whenever you modify any `switchd` hardware configuration file (typically changing any `*.conf` file that requires making a change to the switching hardware, like `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`), you must restart `switchd` for the change to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```



You do not have to restart the `switchd` service when you update a network interface configuration (that is, edit `/etc/network/interfaces`).



Restarting `switchd` causes all network ports to reset in addition to resetting the switch hardware configuration.

## Booting a Switch without a License

If a license is not installed on a Cumulus Linux switch, the `switchd` service will not start. If you install the license again, start `switchd` with:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start switchd.service
```

## Commands

- `cl-cfg`

## Configuration Files

- `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`

## Power over Ethernet - PoE

Cumulus Linux supports Power over Ethernet (PoE) and PoE+, so certain Cumulus Linux switches can supply power from Ethernet switch ports to enabled devices over the Ethernet cables that connect them. Power over Ethernet (PoE) is capable of powering devices up to 15W, while PoE+ can power devices up to 30W.

The [currently supported platform](#) includes:

- Edge-Core AS4610-54P, which supports PoE and PoE+ and configuration over Ethernet layer 2 LLDP for power negotiation

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- How It Works (see page 143)
  - About Link State and PoE State (see page 143)
- Configuring PoE (see page 143)
  - `poectl` Arguments (see page 147)
- Troubleshooting PoE and PoE+ (see page 148)
  - Using `ip link show` (see page 148)
  - Using `lldpcli` (see page 148)
  - Using `tcpdump` (see page 149)
  - Logging poed Events in syslog (see page 150)

## How It Works

PoE functionality is provided by the `cumulus-poe` package. When a powered device is connected to the switch via an Ethernet cable:

- If the available power is greater than the power required by the connected device, power is supplied to the switch port, and the device powers on
- If available power is less than the power required by the connected device and the switch port's priority is less than the port priority set on all powered ports, power is **not** supplied to the port
- If available power is less than the power required by the connected device and the switch port's priority is greater than the priority of a currently powered port, power is removed from lower priority port(s) and power is supplied to the port
- If the total consumed power exceeds the configured power limit of the power source, low priority ports are turned off. In the case of a tie, the port with the lower port number gets priority

Power is available as follows:

PSU 1	PSU 2	PoE Power Budget
920W	x	750W
x	920W	750W
920W	920W	1650W

The AS4610-54P has an LED on the front panel to indicate PoE status:

- Green: The `poed` daemon is running and no errors are detected
- Yellow: One or more errors are detected or the `poed` daemon is not running

## About Link State and PoE State

Link state and PoE state are completely independent of each other. When a link is brought down on a particular port using `ip link <port> down`, power on that port is not turned off; however, LLDP negotiation is not possible.

## Configuring PoE

You use the `poectl` command utility to configure PoE on a **switch that supports** the feature. You can:

- Enable or disable PoE for a given switch port
- Set a switch port's PoE priority to one of three values: *low*, *high* or *critical*

The PoE configuration resides in `/etc/cumulus/poe.conf`. The file lists all the switch ports, whether PoE is enabled for those ports and the priority for each port.

Sample `poe.conf` file ...

```
[enable]
swp1 = enable
```

```
swp2 = enable
swp3 = enable
swp4 = enable
swp5 = enable
swp6 = enable
swp7 = enable
swp8 = enable
swp9 = enable
swp10 = enable
swp11 = enable
swp12 = enable
swp13 = enable
swp14 = enable
swp15 = enable
swp16 = enable
swp17 = enable
swp18 = enable
swp19 = enable
swp20 = enable
swp21 = enable
swp22 = enable
swp23 = enable
swp24 = enable
swp25 = enable
swp26 = enable
swp27 = enable
swp28 = enable
swp29 = enable
swp30 = enable
swp31 = enable
swp32 = enable
swp33 = enable
swp34 = enable
swp35 = enable
swp36 = enable
swp37 = enable
swp38 = enable
swp39 = enable
swp40 = enable
swp41 = enable
swp42 = enable
swp43 = enable
swp44 = enable
swp45 = enable
swp46 = enable
swp47 = enable
swp48 = enable
[priority]
swp1 = low
swp2 = low
swp3 = low
swp4 = low
```

```
swp5 = low
swp6 = low
swp7 = low
swp8 = low
swp9 = low
swp10 = low
swp11 = low
swp12 = low
swp13 = low
swp14 = low
swp15 = low
swp16 = low
swp17 = low
swp18 = low
swp19 = low
swp20 = low
swp21 = low
swp22 = low
swp23 = low
swp24 = low
swp25 = low
swp26 = low
swp27 = low
swp28 = low
swp29 = low
swp30 = low
swp31 = low
swp32 = low
swp33 = low
swp34 = low
swp35 = low
swp36 = low
swp37 = low
swp38 = low
swp39 = low
swp40 = low
swp41 = low
swp42 = low
swp43 = low
swp44 = low
swp45 = low
swp46 = low
swp47 = low
swp48 = low
```

By default, PoE and PoE+ are enabled on all Ethernet/1G switch ports, and these ports are set with a low priority. Switch ports can have low, high or critical priority.

There is no additional configuration for PoE+.

To change the priority for one or more switch ports, run `poectl -p swp# [low|high|critical]`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo poectl -p swp1-swp5,swp7 high
```

To disable PoE for one or more ports, run `poectl -d [port_numbers]`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo poectl -d swp1-swp5,swp7
```

To display PoE information for a set of switch ports, run `poectl -i [port_numbers]`:

Port	Status	Allocated Power	Priority	PD type	
PD class	Voltage	Current			
swp10	connected		negotiating	low	IEEE802.3at 4
53.5 V	25 mA	3.9 W			
swp11	searching		n/a	low	IEEE802.3at
none	0.0 V	0 mA	0.0 W		
swp12	connected		n/a	low	IEEE802.3at 2
53.5 V	25 mA	1.4 W			
swp13	connected		51.0 W	low	IEEE802.3at 4
53.6 V	72 mA	3.8 W			

The **Status** can be one of the following:

- **searching:** PoE is enabled but no device has been detected.
- **disabled:** The PoE port has been configured as disabled.
- **connected:** A powered device is connected and receiving power.
- **power-denied:** There is insufficient PoE power available to enable the connected device.

The **Allocated** column displays how much PoE power has been allocated to the port, which can be one of the following:

- **n/a:** No device is connected or the connected device does not support LLDP negotiation.
- **negotiating:** An LLDP-capable device is connected and is negotiating for PoE power.
- **XX.X W:** An LLDP-capable device has negotiated for XX.X watts of power (for example, 51.0 watts for swp13 above).

To see all the PoE information for a switch, run `poectl -s`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ poectl -s
System power:
  Total:      730.0 W
  Used:       11.0 W
  Available:  719.0 W
Connected ports:
  swp11, swp24, swp27, swp48
```

The set commands (priority, enable, disable) either succeed silently or display an error message if the command fails.

## **poectl Arguments**

The `poectl` command takes the following arguments:

Argument	Description
<code>-h, --help</code>	Show this help message and exit
<code>-i, --port-info</code> PORT_LIST	Returns detailed information for the specified ports. You can specify a range of ports. For example: <code>-i swp1-swp5,swp10</code> <div style="border: 2px solid #fbc02d; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <span style="color: #fbc02d; font-size: 1.5em;">⚠</span> On an Edge-Core AS4610-54P switch, the voltage reported by the <code>poectl -i</code> command and measured through a power meter connected to the device varies by 5V. The current and power readings are correct and no difference is seen for them. </div>
<code>-a, --all</code>	Returns PoE status and detailed information for all ports.
<code>-p, --priority</code> PORT_LIST PRIORITY	Sets priority for the specified ports: low, high, critical.
<code>-d, --disable-ports</code> PORT_LIST	Disables PoE operation on the specified ports.
<code>-e, --enable-ports</code> PORT_LIST	Enables PoE operation on the specified ports.
<code>-S, --system</code>	Returns PoE status for the entire switch.
<code>-r, --reset</code> PORT_LIST	Performs a hardware reset on the specified ports. Use this if one or more ports are stuck in an error state. This does not reset any configuration settings for the specified ports.
<code>-v, --version</code>	Displays version information.
<code>-j, --json</code>	Displays output in JSON format.

Argument	Description
--save	Saves the current configuration. The saved configuration is automatically loaded on system boot.
--load	Loads and applies the saved configuration.

## Troubleshooting PoE and PoE+

You can troubleshoot PoE and PoE+ using the following utilities and files:

- poectl -s, as described above.
- The Cumulus Linux cl-support script, which includes PoE-related output from poed.conf, syslog, poectl --diag-info and lldpctl.
- ip link show
- lldpcli show neighbors ports <swp> protocol lldp hidden details
- tcpdump -v -v -i <swp> ether proto 0x88cc
- The contents of the PoE/PoE+ /etc/lldpd.d/poed.conf configuration file, as described above.

## Using ip link show

LLDP requires network connectivity, so run ip link show to verify that the link is up.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link show swp20
22: swp20: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
      state UP mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000
        link/ether 00:30:ab:f2:d7:b9 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

## Using lldpcli

You can run lldpcli to view the LLDP information that has been received on a switch port. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpcli show neighbors ports swp20 protocol
lldp hidden details
-----
-----
LLDP neighbors:
-----
-----
Interface:    swp20, via: LLDP, RID: 2, Time: 0 day, 00:03:34
  Chassis:
    ChassisID:      mac 68:c9:0b:25:54:7c
    SysName:        ihm-ubuntu
    SysDescr:       Ubuntu 14.04.2 LTS Linux 3.14.4+ #1 SMP Thu Jun 26 0
0:54:44 UTC 2014 armv7l
```

```

MgmtIP:          fe80::6ac9:bfःfe25:547c
Capability:      Bridge, off
Capability:      Router, off
Capability:      Wlan, off
Capability:      Station, on
Port:
  PortID:        mac 68:c9:0b:25:54:7c
  PortDescr:     eth0
  PMD autoneg:   supported: yes, enabled: yes
    Adv:          10Base-T, HD: yes, FD: yes
    Adv:          100Base-TX, HD: yes, FD: yes
  MAU oper type: 100BaseTXFD - 2 pair category 5 UTP, full duplex
mode
  MDI Power:     supported: yes, enabled: yes, pair control: no
    Device type: PD
    Power pairs: spare
    Class:        class 4
    Power type:  2
    Power Source: Primary power source
    Power Priority: low
    PD requested power Value: 51000
    PSE allocated power Value: 51000
UnknownTLVs:
  TLV:           OUI: 00,01,42, SubType: 1, Len: 1 05
  TLV:           OUI: 00,01,42, SubType: 1, Len: 1 0D
-----
```

## Using `tcpdump`

You can use `tcpdump` to view the LLDP frames being transmitted and received. For example:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tcpdump -v -v -i swp20 ether proto 0x88cc
tcpdump: listening on swp20, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture
size 262144 bytes
18:41:47.559022 LLDP, length 211
  Chassis ID TLV (1), length 7
    Subtype MAC address (4): 00:30:ab:f2:d7:a5 (oui Unknown)
    0x0000: 0400 30ab f2d7 a5
  Port ID TLV (2), length 6
    Subtype Interface Name (5): swp20
    0x0000: 0573 7770 3230
  Time to Live TLV (3), length 2: TTL 120s
    0x0000: 0078
  System Name TLV (5), length 13: dni-3048up-09
    0x0000: 646e 692d 3330 3438 7570 2d30 39
  System Description TLV (6), length 68
    Cumulus Linux version 3.0.1~1466303042.2265c10 running on dni
3048up
```

```

0x0000: 4375 6d75 6c75 7320 4c69 6e75 7820 7665
0x0010: 7273 696f 6e20 332e 302e 317e 3134 3636
0x0020: 3330 3330 3432 2e32 3236 3563 3130 2072
0x0030: 756e 6e69 6e67 206f 6e20 646e 6920 3330
0x0040: 3438 7570

System Capabilities TLV (7), length 4
  System Capabilities [Bridge, Router] (0x0014)
    Enabled Capabilities [Router] (0x0010)
      0x0000: 0014 0010
Management Address TLV (8), length 12
  Management Address length 5, AFI IPv4 (1): 10.0.3.190
    Interface Index Interface Numbering (2): 2
    0x0000: 0501 0a00 03be 0200 0000 0200
Management Address TLV (8), length 24
  Management Address length 17, AFI IPv6 (2): fe80::230:abff:fef2:
d7a5
    Interface Index Interface Numbering (2): 2
    0x0000: 1102 fe80 0000 0000 0000 0230 abff fef2
    0x0010: d7a5 0200 0000 0200
Port Description TLV (4), length 5: swp20
  0x0000: 7377 7032 30
Organization specific TLV (127), length 9: OUI IEEE 802.3 Private
(0x00120f)
  Link aggregation Subtype (3)
    aggregation status [supported], aggregation port ID 0
    0x0000: 0012 0f03 0100 0000 00
Organization specific TLV (127), length 9: OUI IEEE 802.3 Private
(0x00120f)
  MAC/PHY configuration/status Subtype (1)
    autonegotiation [supported, enabled] (0x03)
    PMD autoneg capability [10BASE-T fdx, 100BASE-TX fdx,
1000BASE-T fdx] (0x2401)
    MAU type 100BASEFX fdx (0x0012)
    0x0000: 0012 0f01 0324 0100 12
Organization specific TLV (127), length 12: OUI IEEE 802.3
Private (0x00120f)
  Power via MDI Subtype (2)
    MDI power support [PSE, supported, enabled], power pair
spare, power class class4
    0x0000: 0012 0f02 0702 0513 01fe 01fe
Organization specific TLV (127), length 5: OUI Unknown (0x000142)
  0x0000: 0001 4201 0d
Organization specific TLV (127), length 5: OUI Unknown (0x000142)
  0x0000: 0001 4201 01
End TLV (0), length 0

```

## Logging poed Events in syslog

The poed service logs the following events to syslog:

- When a switch provides power to a powered device

- When a device that was receiving power is removed
- When the power available to the switch changes
- Errors

## Configuring a Global Proxy

You configure **global HTTP and HTTPS proxies** in the `/etc/profile.d/` directory of Cumulus Linux. To do so, set the `http_proxy` variable, which tells the switch the address of the proxy server to use to fetch URLs on the command line. This is useful for programs such as `apt/apt-get`, `curl` and `wget`, which can all use this proxy.

1. In a terminal, create a new file in the `/etc/profile.d/` directory. In the code example below, the file is called `proxy`, and is created using the text editor `vi`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vi /etc/profile.d/proxy.sh
```

2. Add a line to the file to configure either an HTTP or an HTTPS proxy, and save the file:

- HTTP proxy:

```
http_proxy=http://myproxy.domain.com:8080
export http_proxy
```

- HTTPS proxy:

```
https_proxy=https://myproxy.domain.com:8080
export https_proxy
```

3. Run the `source` command, to execute the file in the current environment:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ source /etc/profile.d/proxy.sh
```

The proxy is now configured. The `echo` command can be used to confirm a proxy is set up correctly:

- HTTP proxy:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ echo $http_proxy
http://myproxy.domain.com:8080
```

- HTTPS proxy:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ echo $https_proxy
```

<https://myproxy.domain.com:8080>

## ***Related Links***

- Setting up an apt package cache

# Configuring and Managing Network Interfaces

`ifupdown` is the network interface manager for Cumulus Linux. Cumulus Linux 2.1 and later uses an updated version of this tool, `ifupdown2`.

For more information on network interfaces, see [Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes \(see page 168\)](#).



By default, `ifupdown` is quiet; use the verbose option `-v` when you want to know what is going on when bringing an interface down or up.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 153)
- Man Pages (see page 154)
- Configuration Files (see page 154)
- Basic Commands (see page 154)
- ifupdown2 Interface Classes (see page 155)
  - Bringing All auto Interfaces Up or Down (see page 156)
- Configuring a Loopback Interface (see page 157)
- ifupdown2 Interface Dependencies (see page 158)
  - ifup Handling of Upper (Parent) Interfaces (see page 161)
- Configuring IP Addresses (see page 162)
  - Specifying IP Address Scope (see page 163)
  - Purging Existing IP Addresses on an Interface (see page 164)
- Specifying User Commands (see page 164)
- Sourcing Interface File Snippets (see page 165)
- Using Globs for Port Lists (see page 165)
- Using Templates (see page 166)
- Adding Descriptions to Interfaces (see page 167)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 167)
- Useful Links (see page 168)

## Commands

- `ifdown`

- ifquery
- ifreload
- ifup
- mako-render

## Man Pages

The following man pages have been updated for `ifupdown2`:

- man ifdown(8)
- man ifquery(8)
- man ifreload
- man ifup(8)
- man ifupdown-addons-interfaces(5)
- man interfaces(5)

## Configuration Files

- /etc/network/interfaces

## Basic Commands

To bring up an interface or apply changes to an existing interface, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup <ifname>
```

To bring down a single interface, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown <ifname>
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

To administratively bring an interface up or down, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link set dev swp1 {up|down}
```

If you specified *manual* as the address family, you must bring up that interface manually using `ifconfig`. For example, if you configured a bridge like this:

```
auto bridge01
iface bridge01 inet manual
```

You can only bring it up by running `ifconfig bridge01 up`.



`ifdown` always deletes logical interfaces after bringing them down. Use the `--admin-state` option if you only want to administratively bring the interface up or down.

To see the link and administrative state, use the `ip link show` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

In this example, `swp1` is administratively UP and the physical link is UP (`LOWER_UP` flag). More information on interface administrative state and physical state can be found in [this knowledge base article](#).

## ifupdown2 Interface Classes

`ifupdown2` provides for the grouping of interfaces into separate classes, where a class is simply a user-defined label used to group interfaces that share a common function (like uplink, downlink or compute). You specify classes in `/etc/network/interfaces`.

The most common class users are familiar with is `auto`, which you configure like this:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
```

You can add other classes using the `allow` prefix. For example, if you have multiple interfaces used for uplinks, you can make up a class called `uplinks`:

```
auto swp1
allow-uplink swp1
iface swp1 inet static
    address 10.1.1.1/31
auto swp2
allow-uplink swp2
iface swp2 inet static
```

```
address 10.1.1.3/31
```

This allows you to perform operations on only these interfaces using the --allow-uplinks option, or still use the -a options since these interfaces are also in the auto class:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup --allow=uplinks
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Another example where this feature is useful is if you're using [Management VRF](#) (see page 544), you can use the special interface class called *mgmt*, and put the management interface into that class:

```
allow-mgmt eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt

allow-mgmt mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto
```

All *ifupdown2* commands (*ifup*, *ifdown*, *ifquery*, *ifreload*) can take a class. Include the --allow=<class> option when you run the command. For example, to reload the configuration for the management interface described above, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload --allow=mgmt
```

## **Bringing All auto Interfaces Up or Down**

You can easily bring up or down all interfaces marked with the common *auto* class in */etc/network/interfaces*. Use the -a option. For further details, see individual man pages for *ifup(8)*, *ifdown(8)*, *ifreload(8)*.

To administratively bring up all interfaces marked *auto*, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup -a
```

To administratively bring down all interfaces marked *auto*, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown -a
```

To reload all network interfaces marked *auto*, use the *ifreload* command, which is equivalent to running *ifdown* then *ifup*, the one difference being that *ifreload* skips any configurations that didn't change):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

## Configuring a Loopback Interface

Cumulus Linux has a loopback preconfigured in `/etc/network/interfaces`. When the switch boots up, it has a loopback interface, called `lo`, which is up and assigned an IP address of 127.0.0.1.



The loopback interface `lo` must always be specified in `/etc/network/interfaces` and must always be up.

### ifupdown Behavior with Child Interfaces

By default, `ifupdown` recognizes and uses any interface present on the system — whether a VLAN, bond or physical interface — that is listed as a dependent of an interface. You are not required to list them in the `interfaces` file unless they need a specific configuration, for [MTU, link speed, and so forth \(see page 168\)](#). And if you need to delete a child interface, you should delete all references to that interface from the `interfaces` file.

For this example, `swp1` and `swp2` below do not need an entry in the `interfaces` file. The following stanzas defined in `/etc/network/interfaces` provide the exact same configuration:

#### With Child Interfaces Defined

```
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports swp1
    swp2
    bridge-vids 1-100
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-stp on
```

#### Without Child Interfaces Defined

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports swp1
    swp2
    bridge-vids 1-100
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-stp on
```

### Bridge in Traditional Mode - Example

For this example, `swp1.100` and `swp2.100` below do not need an entry in the `interfaces` file. The following stanzas defined in `/etc/network/interfaces` provide the exact same configuration:

#### With Child Interfaces Defined

```
auto swp1.100
```

#### Without Child Interfaces Defined

```
auto br-100
```

```

iface swp1.100
auto swp2.100
iface swp2.100
auto br-100
iface br-100
    address 10.0.12.2
/24
    address 2001:dad:
beef::3/64
    bridge-ports
swp1.100 swp2.100
    bridge-stp on

```

```

iface br-100
    address 10.0.12.2/2
4
    address 2001:dad:
beef::3/64
    bridge-ports swp1.1
00 swp2.100
    bridge-stp on

```

For more information on the bridge in traditional mode vs the bridge in VLAN-aware mode, please read [this knowledge base article](#).

## ifupdown2 Interface Dependencies

ifupdown2 understands interface dependency relationships. When `ifup` and `ifdown` are run with all interfaces, they always run with all interfaces in dependency order. When run with the interface list on the command line, the default behavior is to not run with dependents. But if there are any built-in dependents, they will be brought up or down.

To run with dependents when you specify the interface list, use the `--with-dependents` option. `--with-dependents` walks through all dependents in the dependency tree rooted at the interface you specify. Consider the following example configuration:

```

auto bond1
iface bond1
    address 100.0.0.2/16
    bond-slaves swp29 swp30

auto bond2
iface bond2
    address 100.0.0.5/16
    bond-slaves swp31 swp32

auto br2001
iface br2001
    address 12.0.1.3/24
    bridge-ports bond1.2001 bond2.2001
    bridge-stp on

```

Using `ifup --with-dependents br2001` brings up all dependents of br2001: bond1.2001, bond2.2001, bond1, bond2, bond1.2001, bond2.2001, swp29, swp30, swp31, swp32.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup --with-dependents br2001
```

Similarly, specifying `ifdown --with-dependents br2001` brings down all dependents of `br2001: bond1.2001, bond2.2001, bond1, bond2, bond1.2001, bond2.2001, swp29, swp30, swp31, swp32`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown --with-dependents br2001
```



As mentioned earlier, `ifdown2` always deletes logical interfaces after bringing them down. Use the `--admin-state` option if you only want to administratively bring the interface up or down. In terms of the above example, `ifdown br2001` deletes `br2001`.

To guide you through which interfaces will be brought down and up, use the `--print-dependency` option to get the list of dependents.

Use `ifquery --print-dependency=list -a` to get the dependency list of all interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --print-dependency=list -a
lo : None
eth0 : None
bond0 : [ 'swp25', 'swp26' ]
bond1 : [ 'swp29', 'swp30' ]
bond2 : [ 'swp31', 'swp32' ]
br0 : [ 'bond1', 'bond2' ]
bond1.2000 : [ 'bond1' ]
bond2.2000 : [ 'bond2' ]
br2000 : [ 'bond1.2000', 'bond2.2000' ]
bond1.2001 : [ 'bond1' ]
bond2.2001 : [ 'bond2' ]
br2001 : [ 'bond1.2001', 'bond2.2001' ]
swp40 : None
swp25 : None
swp26 : None
swp29 : None
swp30 : None
swp31 : None
swp32 : None
```

To print the dependency list of a single interface, use:

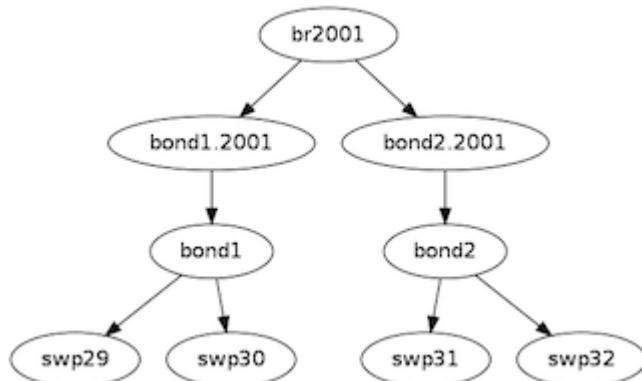
```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --print-dependency=list br2001
br2001 : [ 'bond1.2001', 'bond2.2001' ]
bond1.2001 : [ 'bond1' ]
bond2.2001 : [ 'bond2' ]
bond1 : [ 'swp29', 'swp30' ]
bond2 : [ 'swp31', 'swp32' ]
swp29 : None
swp30 : None
swp31 : None
```

```
swp32 : None
```

To print the dependency information of an interface in dot format:

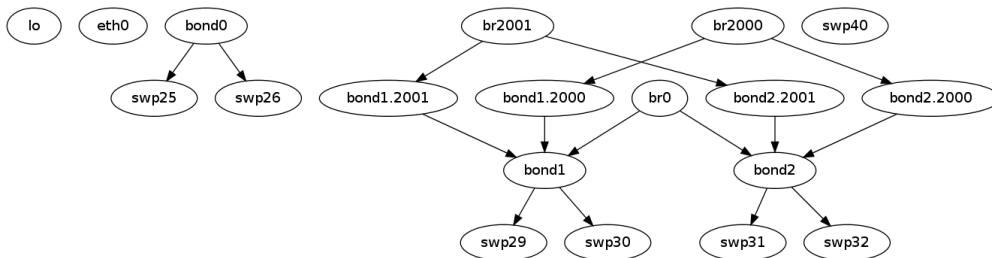
```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --print-dependency=dot br2001
/* Generated by GvGen v.0.9 (http://software.inl.fr/trac/wiki/GvGen)
 */
digraph G {
    compound=true;
    node1 [label="br2001"];
    node2 [label="bond1.2001"];
    node3 [label="bond2.2001"];
    node4 [label="bond1"];
    node5 [label="bond2"];
    node6 [label="swp29"];
    node7 [label="swp30"];
    node8 [label="swp31"];
    node9 [label="swp32"];
    node1->node2;
    node1->node3;
    node2->node4;
    node3->node5;
    node4->node6;
    node4->node7;
    node5->node8;
    node5->node9;
}
}
```

You can use dot to render the graph on an external system where dot is installed.



To print the dependency information of the entire interfaces file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --print-dependency=dot -a
>interfaces_all.dot
```



## ***ifup Handling of Upper (Parent) Interfaces***

When you run `ifup` on a logical interface (like a bridge, bond or VLAN interface), if the `ifup` resulted in the creation of the logical interface, by default it implicitly tries to execute on the interface's upper (or parent) interfaces as well. This helps in most cases, especially when a bond is brought down and up, as in the example below. This section describes the behavior of bringing up the upper interfaces.

Consider this example configuration:

```

auto br100
iface br100
    bridge-ports bond1.100 bond2.100

auto bond1
iface bond1
    bond-slaves swp1 swp2
  
```

If you run `ifdown bond1`, `ifdown` deletes bond1 and the VLAN interface on bond1 (bond1.100); it also removes bond1 from the bridge br100. Next, when you run `ifup bond1`, it creates bond1 and the VLAN interface on bond1 (bond1.100); it also executes `ifup br100` to add the bond VLAN interface (bond1.100) to the bridge br100.

As you can see above, implicitly bringing up the upper interface helps, but there can be cases where an upper interface (like br100) is not in the right state, which can result in warnings. The warnings are mostly harmless.

If you want to disable these warnings, you can disable the implicit upper interface handling by setting `skip_upperinterfaces=1` in `/etc/network/ifupdown2/ifupdown2.conf`.

With `skip_upperinterfaces=1`, you will have to explicitly execute `ifup` on the upper interfaces. In this case, you will have to run `ifup br100` after an `ifup bond1` to add bond1 back to bridge br100.



Although specifying a subinterface like `swp1.100` and then running `ifup swp1.100` will also result in the automatic creation of the `swp1` interface in the kernel, Cumulus Networks recommends you specify the parent interface `swp1` as well. A parent interface is one where any physical layer configuration can reside, such as `link-speed 1000` or `link-duplex full`.

It's important to note that if you only create `swp1.100` and not `swp1`, then you cannot run `ifup swp1` since you did not specify it.

## Configuring IP Addresses

In `/etc/network/interfaces`, list all IP addresses as shown below under the `iface` section (see `man interfaces` for more information):

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 12.0.0.1/30
    address 12.0.0.2/30
```

The address method and address family are not mandatory. They default to `inet/inet6` and `static`, but `inet/inet6` **must** be specified if you need to specify `dhcp` or `loopback`:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
```

You can specify both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses in the same `iface` stanza:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 192.0.2.1/30
    address 192.0.2.2/30
    address 2001:DB8::1/126
```

### Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

To make non-persistent changes to interfaces at runtime, use `ip addr add`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip addr add 192.0.2.1/30 dev swp1
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip addr add 2001:DB8::1/126 dev swp1
```

To remove an addresses from an interface, use `ip addr del`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip addr del 192.0.2.1/30 dev swp1
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip addr del 2001:DB8::1/126 dev swp1
```

See `man ip` for more details on the options available to manage and query interfaces.

To show the assigned address on an interface, use `ip addr show`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip addr show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    state UP qlen 500
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        inet 192.0.2.1/30 scope global swp1
            inet 192.0.2.2/30 scope global swp1
            inet6 2001:DB8::1/126 scope global tentative
                valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

## **Specifying IP Address Scope**

`ifupdown2` does not honor the configured IP address scope setting in `/etc/network/interfaces`, treating all addresses as global. It does not report an error. Consider this example configuration:

```
auto swp2
iface swp2
    address 35.21.30.5/30
    address 3101:21:20::31/80
    scope link
```

When you run `ifreload -a` on this configuration, `ifupdown2` considers all IP addresses as global.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip addr show swp2
5: swp2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    state UP group default qlen 1000
        link/ether 74:e6:e2:f5:62:82 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        inet 35.21.30.5/30 scope global swp2
            valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
        inet6 3101:21:20::31/80 scope global
            valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
        inet6 fe80::76e6:e2ff:fef5:6282/64 scope link
            valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

To work around this issue, configure the IP address scope using `post-up ip address add <address> dev <interface> scope <scope>`. In continuing with the previous example:

```
auto swp6
iface swp6
    post-up ip address add 71.21.21.20/32 dev swp6 scope site
```

Now, when you run `ifreload -a` on this configuration, it has the correct scope:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip addr show swp6
9: swp6: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
  state UP group default qlen 1000
  link/ether 74:e6:e2:f5:62:86 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    inet 71.21.21.20/32 scope site swp6
      valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
    inet6 fe80::76e6:e2ff:fef5:6286/64 scope link
      valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

## Purging Existing IP Addresses on an Interface

By default, `ifupdown2` purges existing IP addresses on an interface. If you have other processes that manage IP addresses for an interface, you can disable this feature including the `address-purge` setting in the interface's configuration. For example, add the following to the interface configuration in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
  address-purge no
```



Purging existing addresses on interfaces with multiple `iface` stanzas is not supported. Doing so can result in the configuration of multiple addresses for an interface after you change an interface address and reload the configuration with `ifreload -a`. If this happens, you must shut down and restart the interface with `ifup` and `ifdown`, or manually delete superfluous addresses with `ip address delete specify.ip.address.here/mask dev DEVICE`. See also the [Caveats and Errata \(see page 167\)](#) section below for some cautions about using multiple `iface` stanzas for the same interface.

## Specifying User Commands

You can specify additional user commands in the `interfaces` file. As shown in the example below, the interface stanzas in `/etc/network/interfaces` can have a command that runs at pre-up, up, post-up, pre-down, down, and post-down:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
  address 12.0.0.1/30
  up /sbin/foo bar
```

Any valid command can be hooked in the sequencing of bringing an interface up or down, although commands should be limited in scope to network-related commands associated with the particular interface.

For example, it wouldn't make sense to install some Debian package on `ifup` of `swp1`, even though that is technically possible. See `man interfaces` for more details.



If your `post-up` command also starts, restarts or reloads any `systemd` service, you must use the `--no-block` option with `systemctl`. Otherwise, that service or even the switch itself may hang after starting or restarting.

For example, say you want to restart the `dhcrelay` service after bringing up a VLAN. Your configuration in `/etc/network/interfaces` would look something like this:

```
auto bridge.100
iface bridge.100
    post-up systemctl --no-block restart dhcrelay.service
```

## Sourcing Interface File Snippets

Sourcing interface files helps organize and manage the `interfaces(5)` file. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

source /etc/network/interfaces.d/bond0
```

The contents of the sourced file used above are:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces.d/bond0
auto bond0
iface bond0
    address 14.0.0.9/30
    address 2001:ded:beef:2::1/64
    bond-slaves swp25 swp26
```

## Using Globs for Port Lists

Some modules support globs to define port lists (that is, a range of ports). You can use the `glob` keyword to specify bridge ports and bond slaves:

```
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports glob swp1-6.100

auto br1
iface br1
    bridge-ports glob swp7-9.100  swp11.100  glob swp15-18.100
```

## Using Templates

ifupdown2 supports Mako-style templates. The Mako template engine is run over the `interfaces` file before parsing.

Use the template to declare cookie-cutter bridges in the `interfaces` file:

```
%for v in [11,12]:
auto vlan${v}
iface vlan${v}
    address 10.20.${v}.3/24
    bridge-ports glob swp19-20.${v}
    bridge-stp on
%endfor
```

And use it to declare addresses in the `interfaces` file:

```
%for i in [1,12]:
auto swp${i}
iface swp${i}
    address 10.20.${i}.3/24
```



Regarding Mako syntax, use square brackets ([1,12]) to specify a list of individual numbers (in this case, 1 and 12). Use `range(1,12)` to specify a range of interfaces.



You can test your template and confirm it evaluates correctly by running `mako-render /etc/network/interfaces`.



For more examples of configuring Mako templates, read this [knowledge base article](#).

## Adding Descriptions to Interfaces

You can add descriptions to the interfaces configured in `/etc/network/interfaces` by using the `alias` keyword. For example:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    alias swp1 hypervisor_port_1
```

You can query interface descriptions by running `ip link show`. The alias appears on the `alias` line:

```
cumulus@switch$ ip link show swp1
3: swp1: <NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state DOWN mode DEFAULT qlen 500
    link/ether aa:aa:aa:aa:bc brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    alias hypervisor_port_1
```

Interface descriptions also appear in the SNMP OID (see page 568) IF-MIB::ifAlias.



Aliases are limited to 256 characters.

## Caveats and Errata

While `ifupdown2` supports the inclusion of multiple `iface` stanzas for the same interface, Cumulus Networks recommends you use a single `iface` stanza for each interface, if possible.

There are cases where you must specify more than one `iface` stanza for the same interface. For example, the configuration for a single interface can come from many places, like a template or a sourced file.

If you do specify multiple `iface` stanzas for the same interface, make sure the stanzas do not specify the same interface attributes. Otherwise, unexpected behavior can result.

For example, `swp1` is configured in two places:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
source /etc/interfaces.d/speed_settings

auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 10.0.14.2/24
```

As well as `/etc/interfaces.d/speed_settings`

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/interfaces.d/speed_settings  
  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
    link-speed 1000  
    link-duplex full
```

ifupdown2 correctly parses a configuration like this because the same attributes are not specified in multiple `iface` stanzas.

And, as stated in the note above, you cannot purge existing addresses on interfaces with multiple `iface` stanzas.

## Useful Links

- [wiki.debian.org/NetworkConfiguration](http://wiki.debian.org/NetworkConfiguration)
- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bonding](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bonding)
- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge)
- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/vlan](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/vlan)

## Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes

This chapter discusses the various network interfaces on a switch running Cumulus Linux.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 169)
- Man Pages (see page 169)
- Configuration Files (see page 169)
- Interface Types (see page 169)
- Settings (see page 169)
  - Port Speed and Duplexing (see page 170)
  - Auto-negotiation (see page 171)
  - MTU (see page 171)
- Configuring Breakout Ports (see page 173)
  - Breaking Out a 100G Port (see page 173)
  - Breaking Out a 40G Port (see page 176)
  - Combining Four 10G Ports into One 40G Port (see page 177)
- Logical Switch Port Limitations (see page 178)
- Verification and Troubleshooting Commands (see page 179)
  - Statistics (see page 179)

- Querying SFP Port Information (see page 180)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 180)
  - Timeout Error on Quanta LY8 and LY9 Switches (see page 180)
- Useful Links (see page 181)

## Commands

- ethtool
- ip

## Man Pages

- man ethtool
- man interfaces
- man ip
- man ip addr
- man ip link

## Configuration Files

- /etc/cumulus/ports.conf
- /etc/network/interfaces

## Interface Types

Cumulus Linux exposes network interfaces for several types of physical and logical devices:

- lo, network loopback device
- ethN, switch management port(s), for out of band management only
- swpN, switch front panel ports
- (optional) brN, bridges (IEEE 802.1Q VLANs)
- (optional) bondN, bonds (IEEE 802.3ad link aggregation trunks, or port channels)

## Settings

You can set the MTU, speed, duplex and auto-negotiation settings under a physical or logical interface stanza:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 10.1.1.1/24
    mtu 9000
    link-speed 10000
    link-duplex full
    link-autoneg off
```

To load the updated configuration, run the `ifreload -a` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

## Port Speed and Duplexing

Cumulus Linux supports both half- and **full-duplex** configurations. Supported port speeds include 1G, 10G and 40G. Set the speeds in terms of Mbps, where the setting for 1G is 1000, 10G is 10000 and 40G is 40000.

You can create a persistent configuration for port speeds in `/etc/network/interfaces`. Add the appropriate lines for each switch port stanza. For example:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 10.1.1.1/24
    link-speed 10000
    link-duplex full
```



If you specify the port speed in `/etc/network/interfaces`, you must also specify the duplex mode setting along with it; otherwise, `ethtool` defaults to half duplex.

You can also configure these settings at run time, using `ethtool`.

### Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

You can use `ethtool` to configure duplexing and the speed for your switch ports. You must specify both port speed and duplexing in the `ethtool` command; auto-negotiation is optional. The following examples use `swp1`.

- To set the port speed to 1G, run:

```
ethtool -s swp1 speed 1000 duplex full
```

- To set the port speed to 10G, run:

```
ethtool -s swp1 speed 10000 duplex full
```

- To enable duplexing, run:

```
ethtool -s swp1 speed 10000 duplex full|half
```

## Port Speed Limitations

Ports can be configured to one speed less than their maximum speed.

Switch port Type	Lowest Configurable Speed
1G	100 Mb
10G	1 Gigabit (1000 Mb)
40G	10G*
100G	50G (with or without breakout port), 40G*, 25G*, 10G*

\*Requires the port to be converted into a breakout port.

## Auto-negotiation

You can enable or disable [auto-negotiation](#) (that is, set it *on* or *off*) on a switch port.



Cumulus Linux does not support auto-negotiation for 10G or 40G interfaces.

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    link-autoneg off
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

You can use `ethtool` to configure auto-negotiation for your switch ports. The following example uses `swp1`:

- To enable or disable auto-negotiation, run:

```
ethtool -s swp1 speed 10000 duplex full autoneg on|off
```

## MTU

Interface MTU (maximum transmission unit) applies to the management port, front panel port, bridge, VLAN subinterfaces and bonds.

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    mtu 9000
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

To set swp1 to Jumbo Frame MTU=9000, use `ip link set`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link set dev swp1 mtu 9000
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 9000 qdisc pfifo_fast
    state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:cl brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```



You must take care to ensure there are no MTU mismatches in the conversation path. MTU mismatches will result in dropped or truncated packets, degrading or blocking network performance.

When you are configuring MTU for a bridge, don't set MTU on the bridge itself; set it on the individual members of the bridge. The MTU setting is the lowest MTU setting of any interface that is a member of that bridge (that is, every interface specified in `bridge-ports` in the bridge configuration in the `interfaces` file), even if another bridge member has a higher MTU value. Consider this bridge configuration:

```
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports bond1 bond2 bond3 bond4 peer5
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vids 100-110
    bridge-stp on
```

In order for br0 to have an MTU of 9000, set the MTU for each of the member interfaces (bond1 to bond 4, and peer5), to 9000 at minimum.

```
auto peer5
```

```
iface peer5
    bond-slaves swp3 swp4
    mtu 9000
```

When configuring MTU for a bond, configure the MTU value directly under the bond interface; the configured value is inherited by member links.

To show MTU, use `ip link show`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

## Configuring MTU for a VXLAN Virtual Network Interface

If you are working with [VXLANs](#) (see page 300), the MTU for a virtual network interface (VNI) must be 50 bytes smaller than the MTU of the physical interfaces on the switch, as those 50 bytes are required for various headers and other data. You should also consider setting the MTU much higher than the default 1500.

Two common MTUs for physical interfaces are 9216 and 9000 bytes. The corresponding MTUs for the VNIs would be 9166 and 8950.

## Configuring Breakout Ports

Cumulus Linux has the ability to:

- Break out 100G switch ports into the following with breakout cables:
  - 2x50G, 2x40G, 4x25G, 4x10G
- Break out 40G switch ports into four separate 10G ports for use with breakout cables.
- Combine (also called *aggregating* or *ganging*) four 10G switch ports into one 40G port for use with a breakout cable ([not to be confused with a bond](#) (see page 241)).

You configure breakout ports in the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` file. After you modify the configuration, restart `switchd` (see page 141) to push the new configuration; [this interrupts network services](#) (see page 141).



`/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` varies across different hardware platforms. Check the current list of supported platforms on [the hardware compatibility list](#).

## Breaking Out a 100G Port

A snippet from the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` looks on a Tomahawk switch like this:

```
# The Dell Z9100 has:
#
#      32 QSFP28 ports numbered 1-32
```

```

#      These ports are configurable as 100G, 50G, 40G, 2x50G, 4x25G,
4x10G
#      or disabled.
#
#      Two SFP+ ports. These ports are configurable as 10G or disabled.
#
#      The system can only handle 128 logical ports.
#
#      This means that if all 32 QSFP28 ports are broken out into
#      4x25G or 4x10G mode, the two 10G ports (33 and 34) must be
#      set to "disabled".
# If you make changes to this file, you must restart switchd for the
# changes to take effect.
# QSFP28 ports
#
# <port label 1-32> = [4x10G|4x25G|2x50G|40G|50G|100G|disabled]
1=4x10G
2=100G
3=100G
4=100G
...
# SFP+ ports
#
# <port label 33-34> = [10G|disabled]
33=disabled
34=disabled

```

Notice that you can break out any of the 100G ports into a variety of options: four 10G ports, four 25G ports or two 50G ports. Keep in mind that you cannot have more than 128 total logical ports on the switch.

To change a 100G port to a number of logical ports, edit the /etc/cumulus/ports.conf file with a text editor (nano, vi, zile). Change 100G to 4x10G, 4x25G or 2x50G.

In the following example, port 3 is broken out into two logical 50G ports:

```

# QSFP28 ports
#
# <port label 1-32> = [4x10G|4x25G|2x50G|40G|50G|100G|disabled]
1=4x10G
2=100G
3=2x50G
4=100G

```

Similarly, the ports.conf file for a Mellanox Spectrum 100G switch looks like this:

```

#
# mlnx,x86_MSN2700 has:
#      32 QSFP28 ports numbered 1-32
#      These ports are configurable as 40G, 50G, 2x50G, or 100G;
#      or a subset

```

```

#           of them can be split into 4x25G or 4x10G.
#
#           Note that a port may become disabled, i.e., unusable and
unconfigurable
#           in /etc/network/interfaces, when an adjacent port is split
into 4
#           interfaces. It is REQUIRED that the disabled port be
configured as
#           "disabled" in this file when an adjacent port is split into
4
#           interfaces.
#
# NOTE: When ports are split into 4 interfaces it is REQUIRED that
the adjacent
# disabled port be configured as "disabled" in this file. When
splitting a port
# into two interfaces, like 2x50G, it is NOT required that the
adjacent port be
# disabled. Adjacent ports only need to be disabled when a port is
split into
# 4 interfaces. For example, when splitting port 11 into 4 25G
interfaces, port
# 12 must be configued as "disabled" like this:
#
#   11=4x25G
#   12=disabled
#
#   The list of ports which can be split into 4 interfaces and the
adjacent ports
#   which must be configured as "disabled" are:
#
#   1: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 2)
#   3: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 4)
#   5: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 6)
#   7: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 8)
#   9: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 10)
#  11: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 12)
#  13: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 14)
#  15: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 16)
#  17: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 18)
#  19: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 20)
#  21: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 22)
#  23: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 24)
#  25: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 26)
#  27: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 28)
#  29: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 30)
#  31: 4x10G or 4x25G (would disable port 32)
#
# QSFP28 ports
#
# <port label>      = [40G|50G|100G]
#   or when split = [2x50G|4x10G|4x25G|disabled]

```

```

1=100G
2=100G
3=100G
4=100G
5=100G
...
30=100G
31=100G
32=100G

```

To change a 100G port to a number of logical ports, edit the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` file with a text editor (nano, vi, zile). Change `100G` to `4x10G`, `4x25G` or `2x50G`.

However, for both 100G and 40G switches using Mellanox Spectrum chipsets, there is a limit of 64 logical ports in total. You must configure the logical ports as follows:

- You can only break out odd-numbered ports into logical ports.
- You must disable the next even-numbered port.

For example, if you have a 100G Mellanox SN-2700 switch and configure port 11 as `4x25G` logical ports, you must configure port 12 as disabled. In `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf`:

```

...
11=4x25G
12=disabled
...

```

In any case, when you finish editing `ports.conf`, make sure to [restart `switchd`](#) (see page 141) to reload your changes.

## ***Breaking Out a 40G Port***

A snippet from the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` looks on a 40G switch like this:

```

# QSFP+ ports
#
# <port label 49-5249=40G
50=40G
51=40G
52=40G

```

To change a 40G port to `4x10G` ports, edit the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` file with a text editor (nano, vi, zile). Change `40G` to `4x10G`.

In the following example, switch port 49 is changed to a breakout port with four 10G logical ports:

```

# QSFP+ ports
#
# <port label 49-52

```

```
49=4x10G
50=40G
51=40G
52=40G
```

To load the change `restart switchd` (see page 141).

Many services depend on `switchd`. It is highly recommended to restart Cumulus Linux if possible in this situation.



For both 100G and 40G switches using Mellanox Spectrum chipsets, there is a limit of 64 logical ports in total. However, the logical ports must be configured as follows:

- You can only break out odd-numbered ports into 4 logical ports.
- You must disable the next even-numbered port.

For example, if you have a 100G Mellanox SN-2700 switch and configure port 11 as 4x25G logical ports, you must configure port 12 as disabled. In `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf`:

```
...
11=4x25G
12=disabled
...
```

## Combining Four 10G Ports into One 40G Port

To gang (aggregate) four 10G ports into one 40G port for use with a breakout cable, you must edit `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf`.



`/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` varies across different hardware platforms. Check the current list of supported platforms on [the hardware compatibility list](#).

A snippet from the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` looks like this:

```
# SFP+ ports#
# <port label 1-48> = [10G|40G/4]
1=10G
2=10G
3=10G
4=10G
5=10G
```

To change four 10G ports into one 40G port, edit the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` file with a text editor (nano, vi, zile). Change `10G` to `40G/4` for every port being ganged.

In the following example, switch ports swp1-4 are changed to a ganged port:

```
# SFP+ ports#
# <port label 1-48> = [10G|40G/4]
1=40G/4
2=40G/4
3=40G/4
4=40G/4
5=10G
```

To load the change, [restart switchd](#) (see page 141) to load your changes.

Many services depend on switchd. It is highly recommended to restart Cumulus Linux if possible in this situation.



- You must gang four 10G ports in sequential order. For example, you cannot gang swp1, swp10, swp20 and swp40 together.
- The ports must be in increments of four, with the starting port being swp1 (or swp5, swp9, or so forth); so you cannot gang swp2, swp3, swp4 and swp5 together.

## Logical Switch Port Limitations

100G and 40G switches with Spectrum, Tomahawk, Trident II and Trident II+ chipsets (check the [HCL](#)) can support a certain number of logical ports, depending upon the manufacturer.

Before you configure any logical/unganged ports on a switch, check the limitations listed in `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf`; this file is specific to each manufacturer.

For example, the Dell S6000 `ports.conf` file indicates the logical port limitation like this:

```
# ports.conf --
#
# This file controls port aggregation and subdivision.  For example,
QSFP+
# ports are typically configurable as either one 40G interface or four
# 10G/1000/100 interfaces.  This file sets the number of interfaces
per port
# while /etc/network/interfaces and ethtool configure the link speed f
or each
# interface.
#
# You must restart switchd for changes to take effect.
#
# The DELL S6000 has:
#   32 QSFP ports numbered 1-32
#   These ports are configurable as 40G, split into 4x10G ports or
#   disabled.
#
#   The X pipeline covers QSFP ports 1 through 16 and the Y pipeline
```

```
#      covers QSFP ports 17 through 32.
#
#      The Trident2 chip can only handle 52 logical ports per pipeline.
#
#      This means 13 is the maximum number of 40G ports you can ungang
#      per pipeline, with the remaining three 40G ports set to
#      "disabled". The 13 40G ports become 52 unganged 10G ports, which
#      totals 52 logical ports for that pipeline.
#
```

The means the maximum number of ports for this Dell S6000 is 104.

For switches using Mellanox Spectrum chipsets, there is a limit of 64 logical ports in total. However, the logical ports must be configured in a specific way. See [the note \(see page 173\)](#) above.

## Verification and Troubleshooting Commands

### Statistics

High-level interface statistics are available with the `ip -s link` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -s link show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
        21780       242       0       0       0       242
    TX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped carrier collsns
        1145554     11325       0       0       0       0
```

Low-level interface statistics are available with `ethtool`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -S swp1
NIC statistics:
    HwIfInOctets: 21870
    HwIfInUcastPkts: 0
    HwIfInBcastPkts: 0
    HwIfInMcastPkts: 243
    HwIfOutOctets: 1148217
    HwIfOutUcastPkts: 0
    HwIfOutMcastPkts: 11353
    HwIfOutBcastPkts: 0
    HwIfInDiscards: 0
    HwIfInL3Drops: 0
    HwIfInBufferDrops: 0
    HwIfInAclDrops: 0
    HwIfInBlackholeDrops: 0
    HwIfInDot3LengthErrors: 0
    HwIfInErrors: 0
```

```
SoftInErrors: 0
SoftInDrops: 0
SoftInFrameErrors: 0
HwIfOutDiscards: 0
HwIfOutErrors: 0
HwIfOutQDrops: 0
HwIfOutNonQDrops: 0
SoftOutErrors: 0
SoftOutDrops: 0
SoftOutTxFifoFull: 0
HwIfOutQLen: 0
```

## Querying SFP Port Information

You can verify SFP settings using `ethtool -m`. The following example shows the output for 1G and 10G modules:

```
cumulus@switch:~# sudo ethtool -m | egrep '(swp|RXPower :|TXPower :|EthernetComplianceCode)'

swp1: SFP detected
    EthernetComplianceCodes : 1000BASE-LX
    RXPower : -10.4479dBm
    TXPower : 18.0409dBm
swp3: SFP detected
    10GEthernetComplianceCode : 10G Base-LR
    RXPower : -3.2532dBm
    TXPower : -2.0817dBm
```

## Caveats and Errata

### Timeout Error on Quanta LY8 and LY9 Switches

On Quanta T5048-LY8 and T3048-LY9 switches, an "Operation timed out" error occurs while removing and reinserting QSFP module.

The QSPFx2 module cannot be removed while the switch is powered on, as it is not hot-swappable. However, if this occurs, you can get the link to come up; however, this involves [restarting `switchd`](#) (see [page 141](#)), which disrupts your network.

On the T3048-LY9, run the following commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo echo 0 > qsfpd_power_enable/value
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo rmmod quanta_ly9_rangeley_platform
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo modprobe quanta_ly9_rangeley_platform
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

On the T5048-LY8, run the following commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo echo 0 > qsfpd_power_enable/value  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Useful Links

- [wiki.debian.org/NetworkConfiguration](http://wiki.debian.org/NetworkConfiguration)
- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/vlan](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/vlan)
- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge)
- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bonding](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bonding)

## Buffer and Queue Management

Hardware datapath configuration manages packet buffering, queueing and scheduling in hardware. There are two configuration input files:

- `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`, which describes priority groups and assigns the scheduling algorithm and weights
- `/etc/[bcm.d|mlx]/datapath/datapath.conf`, which assigns buffer space and egress queues



Versions of these files prior to Cumulus Linux 2.1 are incompatible with Cumulus Linux 2.1 and later; using older files will cause `switchd` to fail to start and return an error that it cannot find the `/var/lib/cumulus/rc.datapath` file.

Each packet is assigned to an ASIC Class of Service (CoS) value based on the packet's priority value stored in the 802.1p (Class of Service) or DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point) header field. The packet is assigned to a priority group based on the CoS value.

Priority groups include:

- *Control*: Highest priority traffic
- *Service*: Second-highest priority traffic
- *Bulk*: All remaining traffic

The scheduler is configured to use a hybrid scheduling algorithm. It applies strict priority to control traffic queues and a weighted round robin selection from the remaining queues. Unicast packets and multicast packets with the same priority value are assigned to separate queues, which are assigned equal scheduling weights.

Datapath configuration takes effect when you initialize `switchd`. Changes to the `traffic.conf` file require you to **restart the `switchd`** (see page 141) service.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Commands \(see page 182\)](#)
- [Configuration Files \(see page 182\)](#)
- [Configuring Traffic Marking through ACL Rules \(see page 185\)](#)

- Configuring Priority Flow Control (see page 186)
  - Understanding Port Groups (see page 187)
- Configuring Link Pause (see page 188)
- Configuring Explicit Congestion Notification (see page 188)
- Useful Links (see page 189)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 189)

## Commands

If you modify the configuration in the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file, you must [restart switchd](#) (see page 141) for the changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Configuration Files

The following configuration applies to 10G, 40G, and 100G switches on Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II platforms only.

- `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`: The datapath configuration file.

Click to view sample traffic.conf file ...

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
#
# /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
#
# packet header field used to determine the packet priority
level
# fields include {802.1p,
dscp}
traffic.packet_priority_source = 802.
1p
# remark packet priority
value
# fields include {802.1p,
none}
traffic.remark_packet_priority = none
# packet priority values assigned to each internal cos
value
# internal cos values {cos_0..
cos_7}
# (internal cos 3 has been reserved for CPU-generated
traffic)
# 802.1p values = {0..7}, dscp values = {0..63}
traffic.cos_0.packet_priorities = [0]
traffic.cos_1.packet_priorities = [1]
```

```

traffic.cos_2.packet_priorities = [2]
traffic.cos_3.packet_priorities = []
traffic.cos_4.packet_priorities = [3,4]
traffic.cos_5.packet_priorities = [5]
traffic.cos_6.packet_priorities = [6]
traffic.cos_7.packet_priorities = [7]
# priority groups
traffic.priority_group_list = [control, service, bulk]
# internal cos values assigned to each priority group
# each cos value should be assigned exactly once
# internal cos values {0..7}
priority_group.control.cos_list = [7]
priority_group.service.cos_list = [2]
priority_group.bulk.cos_list = [0,1,3,4,5,6]
# to configure priority flow control on a group of ports:
# -- assign cos value(s) to the cos list
# -- add or replace a port group names in the port group list
# -- for each port group in the list
#     -- populate the port set, e.g.
#         swp1-swp4,swp8,swp50s0-swp50s3
#     -- set a PFC buffer size in bytes for each port in the group
#     -- set the xoff byte limit (buffer limit that triggers PFC frame
transmit to start)
#     -- set the xon byte delta (buffer limit that triggers PFC frame
transmit to stop)
#     -- enable PFC frame transmit and/or PFC frame receive
# priority flow control
# pfc.port_group_list = [pfc_port_group]
# pfc.pfc_port_group.cos_list = []
# pfc.pfc_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
# pfc.pfc_port_group.port_buffer_bytes = 25000
# pfc.pfc_port_group.xoff_size = 10000
# pfc.pfc_port_group.xon_delta = 2000
# pfc.pfc_port_group.tx_enable = true
# pfc.pfc_port_group.rx_enable = true
# to configure pause on a group of ports:
# -- add or replace port group names in the port group list
# -- for each port group in the list
#     -- populate the port set, e.g.
#         swp1-swp4,swp8,swp50s0-swp50s3
#     -- set a pause buffer size in bytes for each port in the group
#     -- set the xoff byte limit (buffer limit that triggers pause
frames transmit to start)
#     -- set the xon byte delta (buffer limit that triggers pause
frames transmit to stop)
# link pause
# link_pause.port_group_list = [pause_port_group]
# link_pause.pause_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
# link_pause.pause_port_group.port_buffer_bytes = 25000
# link_pause.pause_port_group.xoff_size = 10000
# link_pause.pause_port_group.xon_delta = 2000
# link_pause.pause_port_group.rx_enable = true

```

```
# link_pause.pause_port_group.tx_enable = true
# scheduling algorithm: algorithm values = {dwrr}
scheduling.algorithm = dwrr
# traffic group scheduling weight
# weight values = {0..127}
# '0' indicates strict priority
priority_group.control.weight = 0
priority_group.service.weight = 32
priority_group.bulk.weight = 16
# To turn on/off Denial of service (DOS) prevention checks
dos_enable = false
# Cut-through is disabled by default on all chips with the exception of
# Spectrum. On Spectrum cut-through cannot be disabled.
#cut_through_enable = false
# Enable resilient hashing
#resilient_hash_enable = FALSE
# Resilient hashing flowset entries per ECMP group
# Valid values - 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024
#resilient_hash_entries_ecmp = 128
# Enable symmetric hashing
#symmetric_hash_enable = TRUE
# Set sflow/sample ingress cpu packet rate and burst in packets/sec
# Values: {0..16384}
#sflow.rate = 16384
#sflow.burst = 16384
#Specify the maximum number of paths per route entry.
# Maximum paths supported is 200.
# Default value 0 takes the number of physical ports as the max path size.
#ecmp_max_paths = 0
#Specify the hash seed for Equal cost multipath entries
# Default value 0
# Value Rang: {0..4294967295}
#ecmp_hash_seed = 42
# Specify the forwarding table resource allocation profile, applicable
# only on platforms that support universal forwarding resources.
#
# /usr/cumulus/sbin/cl-rsource-query reports the allocated table sizes
# based on the profile setting.
#
# Values: one of {'default', 'l2-heavy', 'v4-lpm-heavy', 'v6-lpm-heavy'}
# Default value: 'default'
# Note: some devices may support more modes, please consult user
# guide for more details
#
#forwarding_table.profile = default
```

## Configuring Traffic Marking through ACL Rules

You can mark traffic for egress packets through `iptables` or `ip6tables` rule classifications. To enable these rules, you do one of the following:

- Mark DSCP values in egress packets.
- Mark 802.1p CoS values in egress packets.

To enable traffic marking, use `cl-acltool`. Add the `-p` option to specify the location of the policy file. By default, if you don't include the `-p` option, `cl-acltool` looks for the policy file in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`.

The `iptables`-`ip6tables`-based marking is supported via the following action extension:

```
-j SETQOS --set-dscp 10 --set-cos 5
```

You can specify one of the following targets for `SETQOS`:

Option	Description
<code>-set-cos INT</code>	Sets the datapath resource/queuing class value. Values are defined in <a href="#">IEEE_P802.1p</a> .
<code>-set-dscp value</code>	Sets the DSCP field in packet header to a value, which can be either a decimal or hex value.
<code>-set-dscp-class class</code>	Sets the DSCP field in the packet header to the value represented by the DiffServ class value. This class can be EF, BE or any of the CSxx or AFxx classes.



You can specify either `--set-dscp` or `--set-dscp-class`, but not both.

Here are two example rules:

```
[iptables]
-t mangle -A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --dport bgp -j SETQOS
--set-dscp 10 --set-cos 5

[ip6tables]
-t mangle -A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -j SETQOS --set-dscp 10
```

You can put the rule in either the *mangle* table or the default *filter* table; the mangle table and filter table are put into separate TCAM slices in the hardware.

To put the rule in the mangle table, include `-t mangle`; to put the rule in the filter table, omit `-t mangle`.

## Configuring Priority Flow Control

Priority flow control, as defined in the [IEEE 802.1Qbb standard](#), provides a link-level flow control mechanism that can be controlled independently for each Class of Service (CoS) with the intention to ensure no data frames are lost when congestion occurs in a bridged network.



Before Cumulus Linux 3.1.1, PFC was designated as a *lossless* priority group. The lossless priority group has been removed from Cumulus Linux.



Priority flow control is fully supported on [Broadcom switches](#) but is an [early access](#) feature on [Mellanox switches](#).

PFC is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux. Enabling priority flow control (PFC) requires configuring the following settings in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` on the switch:

- Specifying the name of the port group in `pfc.port_group_list` in brackets; for example, `pfc.port_group_list = [pfc_port_group]`.
- Assigning a CoS value to the port group in `pfc.pfc_port_group.cos_list` setting. Note that `pfc_port_group` is the name of a port group you specified above and is used throughout the following settings.
- Populating the port group with its member ports in `pfc.pfc_port_group.port_set`.
- Setting a PFC buffer size in `pfc.pfc_port_group.port_buffer_bytes`. This is the maximum number of bytes allocated for storing bursts of packets, guaranteed at the ingress port. The default is 25000 bytes.
- Setting the xoff byte limit in `pfc.pfc_port_group.xoff_size`. This is a threshold for the PFC buffer; when this limit is reached, an xoff transition is initiated, signaling the upstream port to stop sending traffic, during which time packets continue to arrive due to the latency of the communication. The default is 10000 bytes.
- Setting the xon delta limit in `pfc.pfc_port_group.xon_delta`. This is the number of bytes to subtract from the xoff limit, which results in a second threshold at which the egress port resumes sending traffic. After the xoff limit is reached and the upstream port stops sending traffic, the buffer begins to drain. When the buffer reaches 8000 bytes (assuming default xoff and xon settings), the egress port signals that it can start receiving traffic again. The default is 2000 bytes.
- Enabling the egress port to signal the upstream port to stop sending traffic (`pfc.pfc_port_group.tx_enable`). The default is `true`.
- Enabling the egress port to receive notifications and act on them (`pfc.pfc_port_group.rx_enable`). The default is `true`.

The following configuration example shows PFC configured for ports swp1 through swp4 and swp6:

```
# to configure priority flow control on a group of ports:  
# -- assign cos value(s) to the cos list  
# -- add or replace a port group names in the port group list  
# -- for each port group in the list  
#     -- populate the port set, e.g.
```

```

#           swp1-swp4,swp8,swp50s0-swp50s3
#   -- set a PFC buffer size in bytes for each port in the group
#   -- set the xoff byte limit (buffer limit that triggers PFC frame
transmit to start)
#   -- set the xon byte delta (buffer limit that triggers PFC frame
transmit to stop)
#   -- enable PFC frame transmit and/or PFC frame receive
# priority flow control
pfc.port_group_list = [pfc_port_group]
pfc.pfc_port_group.cos_list = []
pfc.pfc_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
pfc.pfc_port_group.port_buffer_bytes = 25000
pfc.pfc_port_group.xoff_size = 10000
pfc.pfc_port_group.xon_delta = 2000
pfc.pfc_port_group.tx_enable = true
pfc.pfc_port_group.rx_enable = true

```

## ***Understanding Port Groups***

A *port group* refers to one or more sequences of contiguous ports. Multiple port groups can be defined by:

- Adding a comma-separated list of port group names to the `port_group_list`.
- Adding the `port_set`, `rx_enable`, and `tx_enable` configuration lines for each port group.

You can specify the set of ports in a port group in comma-separated sequences of contiguous ports; you can see which ports are contiguous in `/var/lib/cumulus/porttab`. The syntax supports:

- A single port (`swp1s0` or `swp5`)
- A sequence of regular `swp` ports (`swp2-swp5`)
- A sequence within a breakout `swp` port (`swp6s0-swp6s3`)
- A sequence of regular and breakout ports, provided they are all in a contiguous range. For example:

```

...
swp2
swp3
swp4
swp5
swp6s0
swp6s1
swp6s2
swp6s3
swp7
...

```

Restart `switchd` (see page 141) to allow the PFC configuration changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Configuring Link Pause

The PAUSE frame is a flow control mechanism that halts the transmission of the transmitter for a specified period of time. A server or other network node within the data center may be receiving traffic faster than it can handle it, thus the PAUSE frame. In Cumulus Linux, individual ports can be configured to execute link pause by:

- Transmitting pause frames when its ingress buffers become congested (TX pause enable) and/or
- Responding to received pause frames (RX pause enable).

Link pause is disabled by default. Enabling link pause requires configuring settings in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`, similar to how you configure [priority flow control](#) (see page 181). The settings are explained in that section as well.

Here is an example configuration which turns of both types of link pause for swp1 through swp4 and swp6:

```
# to configure pause on a group of ports:
# -- add or replace port group names in the port group list
# -- for each port group in the list
#   -- populate the port set, e.g.
#     swp1-swp4,swp8,swp50s0-swp50s3
#   -- set a pause buffer size in bytes for each port in the group
#   -- set the xoff byte limit (buffer limit that triggers pause
frames transmit to start)
#   -- set the xon byte delta (buffer limit that triggers pause
frames transmit to stop)

# link pause
link_pause.port_group_list = [pause_port_group]
link_pause.pause_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
link_pause.pause_port_group.port_buffer_bytes = 25000
link_pause.pause_port_group.xoff_size = 10000
link_pause.pause_port_group.xon_delta = 2000
link_pause.pause_port_group.rx_enable = true
link_pause.pause_port_group.tx_enable = true
```

Restart `switchd` (see page 141) to allow link pause configuration changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Configuring Explicit Congestion Notification

### ➊ Early Access Feature

ECN is an [early access feature](#) in Cumulus Linux 3.1.1. It is supported on [Mellanox switches](#) only.

*Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN)* is defined by [RFC 3168](#). ECN gives a Cumulus Linux switch the ability to mark a packet to signal impending congestion instead of dropping the packet outright, which is how TCP typically behaves when ECN is not enabled.

Click to learn how to configure ECN ...

ECN is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux. Enabling ECN requires configuring the following settings in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` on the switch:

- Specifying the name of the port group in `ecn.port_group_list` in brackets; for example, `ecn.port_group_list = [ecn_port_group]`.
- Assigning a CoS value to the port group in `ecn.ecn_port_group.cos_list`. Note that `ecn_port_group` is the name of a port group you specified above.
- Populating the port group with its member ports (`ecn.ecn_port_group.port_set`), where `ecn_port_group` is the name of the port group you specified above. Congestion is measured on the egress port queue for the ports listed here.

The following configuration example shows ECN configured for ports swp1 through swp4 and swp6:

```
ecn.port_group_list = [ecn_port_group]
ecn.ecn_port_group.cos_list = [3]
ecn.ecn_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
```

Restart `switchd` (see page 141) to allow the ECN configuration changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Useful Links

- [iptables-extensions man page](#)

## Caveats and Errata

- You can configure Quality of Service (QoS) for 10G, 40G, and 100G switches on the Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II platforms only.

## Configuring Hardware-enabled DDOS Protection



This configuration option is only available for Trident, Trident II, and Tomahawk chipsets.

## Configure Persistent DDOS Protection

1. Open the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file in a text editor.
2. Enable DOS prevention checks by changing the following value to `true`, and save the file:

```
# To turn on/off Denial of Service (DOS) prevention checks
dos_enable = true
```

3. Open the `/etc/bcm.d/datapath/datapath.conf` or `/etc/mlx/datapath/datapath.conf` file in a text editor.
4. Set the following checks to `true`, and save the file:

```
# Enabling/disabling Denial of service (DOS) prevention checks
# To change the default configuration:
# enable/disable the individual DOS checks.
dos.sip_eq_dip = true
dos.smac_eq_dmac = true
dos.tcp_hdr_partial = true
dos.tcp_syn_frag = true
dos.tcp_ports_eq = true
dos.tcp_flags_syn_fin = true
dos.tcp_flags_fup_seq0 = true
dos.tcp_offset1 = true
dos.tcp_ctrl0_seq0 = true
dos.udp_ports_eq = true
dos.icmp_frag = true
dos.icmpv4_length = true
dos.icmpv6_length = true
dos.ipv6_min_frag = true
```

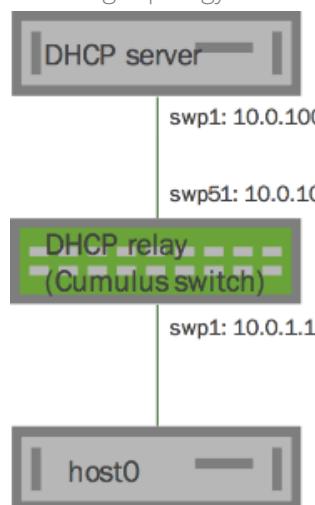
5. Restart switchd to enable DOS protection:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Configuring DHCP Relays and Servers

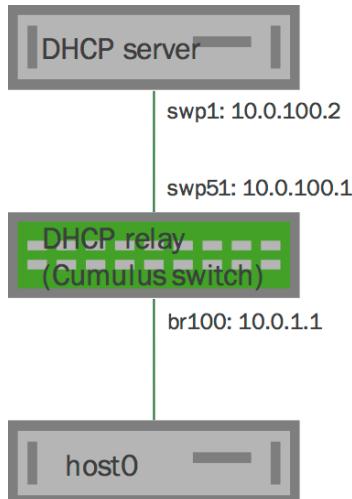
You can configure an interface so it can make DHCP relay requests for IPv4 and IPv6.

To run DHCP for both IPv4 and IPv6, you need to initiate the DHCP relay and DHCP server twice: once for IPv4 and once for IPv6. Following are the configurations on the host, DHCP relay and DHCP server using the following topology:



For the configurations used in this chapter, both the DHCP server and DHCP relay are switches running Cumulus Linux; however, the DHCP server can also be located on a dedicated server in your environment.

Another way to configure this would be to connect the host to the DHCP relay via a layer 2 bridge instead of a switch port over layer 3:



The `dhcpd` and `dhcrelay` services are disabled by default. After you finish configuring the DHCP relays and servers, you need to start those services.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring the Host Interfaces (see page 191)
- Configuring the DHCP Relays on Cumulus Linux Switches (see page 192)
  - Configuring the DHCP Relay Interfaces (see page 192)
  - Configuring IPv4 DHCP Relays (see page 193)
  - Configuring IPv6 DHCP Relays (see page 194)
- Configuring DHCP Server on Cumulus Linux Switches (see page 195)
  - Configuring the IPv4 DHCP Server (see page 195)
  - Configuring the IPv6 DHCP Server (see page 195)
- Troubleshooting the DHCP Relays (see page 196)

## Configuring the Host Interfaces

You need to configure the host interfaces for DHCP for both IPv4 and IPv6. On each host, edit `/etc/network/interfaces` and add the following for the DHCP relay port on the server:

```

auto eth1
iface eth1 inet dhcp
  
```

```
auto eth1
iface eth1 inet dhcp
```



There is currently an issue where `ifupdown2` only recognizes the first configuration, but not the second; see this [release note](#).

## Configuring the DHCP Relays on Cumulus Linux Switches

Configure the IPv4 and IPv6 DHCP relays on each leaf switch. You need to run two independent instances of `dhcrelay`, one for IPv4 and one for IPv6. The `dhcrelay` feature is part of the `isc-dhcp-relay` services.

Edit the `systemd` launch scripts so that the `dhcrelay` service starts with the switch. The launch scripts for `systemd` are located in `/lib/systemd/system`.



If your launch script also starts, restarts or reloads any `systemd` service, including `dhcrelay`. `service`, you must use the `--no-block` option with the `systemctl` command. Otherwise, that service or even the switch itself may hang after starting or restarting.

## Configuring the DHCP Relay Interfaces

As described above, you can configure the interfaces on the DHCP relay (the Cumulus Linux switch) a number of ways, either as layer 3 or as a layer 2 bridge.

Here's the layer 3 connected client configuration:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 10.0.1.1/30

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.0.100.1/30
```

If you prefer to use a layer 2 bridge, you can configure it in either [VLAN-aware](#) (see page 264) or [traditional](#) (see page 244) mode. Here is the configuration for the VLAN-aware bridge:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    bridge-access 100

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.0.100.1/30
```

```

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports swp1

auto bridge.100
iface bridge.100
    address 10.0.1.1/24

```

And here's the configuration for the bridge in traditional mode:

```

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.0.100.1/30

auto br100
iface br100
    address 10.0.1.1/24
    bridge-ports swp1
    bridge-stp yes

```

## Configuring IPv4 DHCP Relays

Edit `dhcrelay.service`, as described below. The IPv4 `dhcrelay.service` *Unit* script calls `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay` to find launch variables.

```

cumulus@switch:~$ cat /lib/systemd/system/dhcrelay.service
[Unit]
Description=DHCPv4 Relay Agent Daemon
Documentation=man:dhcrelay(8)
After=network-online.target networking.service syslog.service

[Service]
Type=simple
EnvironmentFile=-/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay
# Here, we are expecting the INTF_CMD to contain
# the -i for each interface specified,
ExecStart=/usr/sbin/dhcrelay -d -q $INTF_CMD $SERVERS $OPTIONS

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target

```

The `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay` variables file needs to reference both interfaces participating in DHCP relay (facing the server and facing the client) and the IP address of the server. If the client-facing interface is a bridge port, specify the switch virtual interface (SVI) name if using a [VLAN-aware bridge](#) (see page 264) (for example, `bridge.100`), or the bridge name if using traditional bridging (for example, `br100`).

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay
SERVERS="10.0.100.2"

INTF_CMD="-i swp1 -i swp51"

OPTIONS=""
```

After you've finished configuring the DHCP relay, enable the `dhcrelay` service so the configuration persists between reloads:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay.service
```

## Configuring IPv6 DHCP Relays

If you're configuring IPv6, you need to create the `dhcrelay6.service` file and populate its content, as described below. The `dhcrelay6.service` *Unit* script calls `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay6` to find launch variables.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /lib/systemd/system/dhcrelay6.service
[Unit]
Description=DHCPv6 Relay Agent Daemon
Documentation=man:dhcrelay(8)
After=network-online.target networking.service syslog.service

[Service]
Type=simple
EnvironmentFile=/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay6
ExecStart=/usr/sbin/dhcrelay -6 -d -q $INTF_CMD $SERVERS $OPTIONS

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target
```

The `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay6` variables file has a different format than the `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay` file used for IPv4 DHCP relays. Make sure to configure the variables appropriately:

```
cumulus@switch:$ cat /etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay6
SERVERS=" -u 2001:db8:100::2%swp51"

INTF_CMD="-l swp1"
```

After you've finished configuring the DHCP relay, enable the `dhcrelay6` service so the configuration persists between reloads:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay6.service
```

## Configuring DHCP Server on Cumulus Linux Switches

You can use the following sample configurations for `dhcp.conf` and `dhcpd6.conf` to start both an IPv4 and an IPv6 DHCP server. The configuration files for the two DHCP server instances need to have two pools:

- Pool 1: Subnet overlaps interfaces
- Pool 2: Subnet that includes the addresses

### Configuring the IPv4 DHCP Server

In a text editor, edit the `dhcpd.conf` file with a configuration similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf
ddns-update-style none;

default-lease-time 600;
max-lease-time 7200;

subnet 10.0.100.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
}
subnet 10.0.1.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 10.0.1.50 10.0.1.60;
}
```

Just as you did with the DHCP relay scripts, edit the DHCP server configuration file so it can launch the DHCP server when the system boots. Here is a sample configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/default/isc-dhcp-server
DHCPD_CONF="-cf /etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf"

INTERFACES="swp1"
```

After you've finished configuring the DHCP server, enable the `dhcpd` service immediately:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcpd.service
```

### Configuring the IPv6 DHCP Server

In a text editor, edit the `dhcpd6.conf` file with a configuration similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/dhcp/dhcpd6.conf
ddns-update-style none;

default-lease-time 600;
max-lease-time 7200;
```

```
subnet6 2001:db8:100::/64 {  
}  
subnet6 2001:db8:1::/64 {  
    range6 2001:db8:1::100 2001:db8:1::200;  
}
```

Just as you did with the DHCP relay scripts, edit the DHCP server configuration file so it can launch the DHCP server when the system boots. Here is a sample configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/default/isc-dhcp-server6  
DHCPD_CONF="-cf /etc/dhcp/dhcpd6.conf"  
  
INTERFACES="swp1"
```

After you've finished configuring the DHCP server, enable the `dhcpd6` service immediately:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcpd6.service
```

## Troubleshooting the DHCP Relays

If you are experiencing issues with the DHCP relay, you can run the following commands to determine whether or not the issue is with `systemd`. The following commands manually activate the DHCP relay process, and they do not persist when you reboot the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ /usr/sbin/dhcrelay -4 -i <interface_facing_host>  
<ip_address_dhcp_server> -i <interface_facing_dhcp_server>  
cumulus@switch:~$ /usr/sbin/dhcrelay -6 -l <interface_facing_host> -u  
<ip_address_dhcp_server>%<interface_facing_dhcp_server>
```

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ /usr/sbin/dhcrelay -4 -i swp1 10.0.100.2 -i swp51  
cumulus@switch:~$ /usr/sbin/dhcrelay -6 -l swp1 -u 2001:db8:100::2%  
swp51
```

See the `man dhcrelay` for more information.

## Network Command Line Utility

### ➊ Early Access Feature

`nclu` is an [early access feature](#) in Cumulus Linux 3.1. Before you can install `nclu`, you must enable the Early Access repository. For more information about the Cumulus Linux repository, [read this knowledge base article](#).

The Network Command Line Utility, or NCLU, is a command line interface for Cumulus Networks products, implemented in Cumulus Linux and VX 3.1 and later releases, with the goal of simplifying the networking configuration process for all users.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Installation ([see page 197](#))
- Configuration ([see page 197](#))
- Getting Started ([see page 198](#))
  - Built-In Examples ([see page 200](#))

The NCLU wrapper utility is called `net`. In 3.1 releases, `net` is capable of configuring L2 and L3 features of the networking stack, as well as providing monitoring and troubleshooting functionality for these features. `/etc/network/interfaces` and `/etc/quagga/Quagga.conf` can both be configured with `net`, in addition to running `show` and `clear` commands related to `ifupdown2` and Quagga.



In later releases, additional features will be available for configuration, such as VXLANS and ACLs. However, they are not provided in Cumulus Linux 3.1.



The Cumulus Linux 3.1 release of NCLU supports `ifupdown2` and `quagga`.

## Installation

To install the `nclu` package, follow the instructions in the [Cumulus Linux 3.1 release notes](#).

## Configuration

Configuration of the `net` utility is done in the `/etc/netd.conf` file. This file can be configured to allow different permission levels for users to edit configurations and run `show` commands.

Configuration Variable	Default Setting	Description
<code>show_linux_command</code>	<code>False</code>	When true, displays the linux command running in the background.

Configuration Variable	Default Setting	Description
enable_ifupdown2	True	Enables net wrapping of ifupdown2
enable_quagga	True	Enables net wrapping of Quagga
users_with_edit	root, cumulus	Sets the Linux users with root edit privileges
groups_with_edit	root, cumulus	Sets the Linux groups with root edit privileges
ifupdown_blacklist	address-purge, bond-ad-actor-sys-prio, bond-ad-actor-system, bond-mode, bond-num-grat-arp, bond-num-unsol-na, bond-use-carrier, bond-xmit-hash-policy, bridge-bridgeprio, bridge-fd, bridge-hashed, bridge-hashmax, bridge-hello, bridge-maxage, bridge-maxwait, bridge-mclmc, bridge-mclmi, bridge-mcmi, bridge-mcqci, bridge-mcqpi, bridge-mcqri, bridge-mcqv4src, bridge-mcrouter, bridge-mcsqc, bridge-mcsqi, bridge-pathcosts, bridge-port-pvids, bridge-port-vids, bridge-portmcfl, bridge-portmcrouter, bridge-portprios, bridge-waitport, broadcast, hwaddress, link-type, mstpcctl-ageing, mstpcctl-fdelay, mstpcctl-forcevers, mstpcctl-hello, mstpcctl-maxage, mstpcctl-maxhops, mstpcctl-portp2p, mstpcctl-portpathcost, mstpcctl-portrestrrole, mstpcctl-portrestrtcn, mstpcctl-treeportcost, mstpcctl-treeportprior, mstpcctl-txholdcount, netmask, pre-down, pre-up, preferred-lifetime, scope, vxlan-ageing, vxlan-learning, up, down	Hides corner case command options from tab complete, to simplify and streamline output.

## ⓘ Net Tab Complete Output

`net` provides an environment variable for setting where the `net` output is directed. To only use `stdout`, set the `NCLU_TAB_STDOUT` environment variable to `true`. The value is not case sensitive.

## Getting Started

NCLU uses the following workflow for staging and committing changes to Cumulus Linux 3.1:

1. Use the `net add` and `net del` commands to stage/remove configuration changes.

2. Use the `net pending` command to review staged changes.
3. Use `net commit` and `net abort` to commit/delete staged changes.



`net commit` applies the changes to `/etc/network/interfaces`, as well as running `ifreload -a`.

NCLU provides a number of features to assist users. In addition to tab completion and partial keyword commands identification, verification checks are set in place to ensure correct syntax is used. The examples below show the output for incorrect commands:

```
cumulus@switch[~]# net add bgp router-id 1.1.1.1/32
ERROR: Command not found

Did you mean one of the following?

net add bgp router-id <ipv4>
    This command is looking for an IP address, not an IP/prefixlen

cumulus@switch[~]# net add bgp router-id 1.1.1.1
cumulus@switch[~]# net add int swp10 mtu <TAB>
<552-9216> :
cumulus@switch[~]# net add int swp10 mtu 9300
ERROR: Command not found
```

NCLU has a comprehensive help system built in to assist usage. `?` and `help` can be used to show available commands:

```
cumulus@switch[~]# net help

Usage:
# net <COMMAND> [<ARGS>] [help]
#
# net is a command line utility for networking on Cumulus Linux
switches.
#
# COMMANDS are listed below and have context specific arguments
which can
# be explored by typing "?", "TAB", and "help" anytime while
using net.
#
# Use 'man net' for a more comprehensive overview.

net abort
net commit [verbose]
net help [verbose]
net pending
net show configuration [commands|files]
```

### Options:

```
# Help commands
help      : context sensitive information; see section below
example   : detailed examples of common workflows

# Configuration commands
add       : add/modify configuration (staged in commit buffer)
del       : remove configuration (staged in commit buffer)

# Commit buffer commands
commit    : apply the commit buffer to the system
pending   : show changes staged in the commit buffer
abort     : abandon changes in the commit buffer

# Status commands
show      : show command output
clear     : clear counters, BGP neighbors, etc
```

cumulus@switch[~]# net help bestpath

The following commands contain keyword(s) 'bestpath':

```
net (add|del) bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax [as-set|no-as-
set]
  net add debug bgp bestpath <ip/prefixlen>
  net del debug bgp bestpath [<ip/prefixlen>]
  net show [ip] bgp [ipv4|ipv6] [unicast|multicast] (<ip>|<ip
/prefixlen>) [bestpath|multipath] [json]
```

 Multiple interfaces can be configured at once:

```
net add int swp7-9,12,15-17,22 mtu 9216
```

## Built-In Examples

The NCLU has a couple of built in examples to guide users through basic configuration setup:

```
cumulus@switch[~]# net example <TAB>
  bgp
  bond
  bridge
  clag
...
...
```

```

        ospf      : Open Shortest Path First

cumulus@switch[~]# net example bridge

Scenario
=====
We are configuring switch1 and would like to configure the following
- configure switch1 as an L2 switch for host-11 and host-12
- enable vlans 10-20
- place host-11 in vlan 10
- place host-12 in vlan 20
- create an SVI interface for vlan 10
- create an SVI interface for vlan 20
- assign IP 10.0.0.1/24 to the SVI for vlan 10
- assign IP 20.0.0.1/24 to the SVI for vlan 20
- configure swp3 as a trunk for vlans 10, 11, 12 and 20

        swp3
*switch1 ----- switch2
      / \
swp1 /   \ swp2
      /   \
      /     \
host-11   host-12

switch1 net commands
=====
- enable vlans 10-20
switch1# net add vlan 10-20

- place host-11 in vlan 10
- place host-12 in vlan 20
switch1# net add int swp1 bridge-access 10
switch1# net add int swp2 bridge-access 20

- create an SVI interface for vlan 10
- create an SVI interface for vlan 20
- assign IP 10.0.0.1/24 to the SVI for vlan 10
- assign IP 20.0.0.1/24 to the SVI for vlan 20
switch1# net add vlan-interface vlan10 address 10.0.0.1/24
switch1# net add vlan-interface vlan20 address 20.0.0.1/24

- configure swp3 as a trunk for vlans 10, 11, 12 and 20
switch1# net add int swp3 bridge-trunk vlans 10-12,20

# Review and commit changes
switch1# net pending
switch1# net commit

```

## Verification

```
=====
switch1# net show bridge
switch1# net show l2
```

# Layer 1 and Layer 2 Features

## Spanning Tree and Rapid Spanning Tree

Spanning tree protocol (STP) is always recommended in layer 2 topologies, as it prevents bridge loops and broadcast radiation on a bridged network.

The `mstpd` daemon is an open source project used by Cumulus Linux to implement IEEE802.1D 2004 and IEEE802.1Q 2011. `mstptcl` is the utility provided by the `mstpd` service to configure STP. STP is disabled by default on bridges in Cumulus Linux.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 203)
- Supported Modes (see page 204)
- Configuring STP within a Traditional Mode Bridge (see page 204)
  - Creating a Bridge and Configuring PVRST (see page 204)
- Configuring STP within a VLAN-aware Bridge (see page 205)
  - Creating a VLAN-aware Bridge and Configuring RSTP (see page 205)
  - RSTP Interoperation with MST (802.1s) (see page 205)
- Viewing Bridge and STP Status/Logs (see page 205)
- Customizing Spanning Tree Protocol (see page 207)
  - PortAdminEdge/PortFast Mode (see page 207)
  - BPDU Guard (see page 208)
  - Bridge Assurance (see page 211)
  - BPDU Filter (see page 212)
  - Storm Control (see page 213)
  - Example Configuration with All Possible Parameters (see page 214)
  - Configuring Other Spanning Tree Parameters (see page 214)
- Configuration Files (see page 222)
- Man Pages (see page 222)
- Useful Links (see page 222)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 222)

### Commands

- `brctl`
- `mstptcl`

## Supported Modes

The STP modes Cumulus Linux supports vary depending upon whether the [traditional or VLAN-aware bridge driver mode](#) (see page 244) is in use.

For a bridge configured in *traditional* mode, PVST and PVRST are supported, with the default set to PVRST. Each traditional bridge has its own separate STP instance.

Bridges configured in [VLAN-aware](#) (see page 264) mode operate **only** in RSTP mode.

## Configuring STP within a Traditional Mode Bridge

### Creating a Bridge and Configuring PVRST

Per VLAN Spanning Tree (PVST) creates a spanning tree instance for a bridge. Rapid PVST (PVRST) supports RSTP enhancements for each spanning tree instance. In order to use PVRST with a traditional bridge, a bridge corresponding to the untagged native VLAN must be created, and all the physical switch ports must be part of the same VLAN.



When connected to a switch that has a native VLAN configuration, the native VLAN **must** be configured to be VLAN 1 only for maximum interoperability.

To create a traditional mode bridge, configure the bridge stanza under `/etc/network/interfaces`. More information on configuring [bridges can be found here](#). (see page 244) To enable STP on the bridge, include the keyword `bridge-stp on`. `swp1` and `swp5` are configured for tagging VLAN 100, while `swp4` is configured to not tag a VLAN across the link.

```
auto br100
iface br100
    bridge-ports swp1.100 swp5.100
    bridge-stp on

auto br1
iface br1
    bridge-ports swp1 swp4 swp5
    bridge-stp on
```

To enable the bridge and load the new configuration from `/etc/network/interfaces`, run `ifreload -a`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

You use `brctl` to create the bridge, add bridge ports in the bridge and configure STP on the bridge. `mstpd` is used only when an admin needs to change the default configuration parameters for STP:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addbr br100
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addif br100 swp1.100 swp4.100 swp5.100
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl stp br100 on
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifconfig br100 up
```

## **Configuring STP within a VLAN-aware Bridge**

*VLAN-aware* (see page 264) bridges only operate in RSTP mode. STP BPDUs are transmitted on the native VLAN.

If a bridge running RSTP (802.1w) receives a common STP (802.1D) BPDU, it will automatically fall back to 802.1D operation.

## **Creating a VLAN-aware Bridge and Configuring RSTP**

To create a VLAN-aware mode bridge, configure the bridge stanza under `/etc/network/interfaces`.

```
auto br2
iface br2
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vids 100
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-ports swp1 swp4 swp5
    bridge-stp on
```

To enable the bridge and load the new configuration from `/etc/network/interfaces`, run `ifreload -a`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

## **RSTP Interoperation with MST (802.1s)**

RSTP interoperates with MST seamlessly, creating a single instance of spanning tree which transmits BPDUs on the native VLAN. RSTP treats the MST domain as if it were one giant switch.

## **Viewing Bridge and STP Status/Logs**

`mstpd` is started by default when the switch boots. `mstpd` logs and errors are located in `/var/log/syslog`.



`mstpd` is the preferred utility for interacting with STP on Cumulus Linux. `brctl` also provides certain methods for configuring STP; however, they are not as complete as the tools offered in `mstpd` and [output from brctl can be misleading](#) in some cases.

To get the bridge state, use:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl show
bridge name      bridge id
br2              8000.001401010100
                           STP enabled
                           yes
                           interfaces
                           swp1
                           swp4
                           swp5
```

To get the `mstpd` bridge state, use:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showbridge br2
br2 CIST info
  enabled          yes
  bridge id       F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00
  designated root  F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00
  regional root   F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00
  root port        none
  path cost        0           internal path cost  0
  max age          20          bridge max age     20
  forward delay    15          bridge forward delay 15
  tx hold count   6            max hops          20
  hello time       2            ageing time       200
  force protocol version  rstp
  time since topology change 90843s
  topology change count      4
  topology change        no
  topology change port     swp4
  last topology change port swp5
```

To get the `mstpd` bridge port state, use:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showport br2
E swp1 8.001 forw F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00 F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00 8.0
01 Desg
  swp4 8.002 forw F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00 F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00 8.0
02 Desg
  E swp5 8.003 forw F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00 F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00 8.0
03 Desg

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showportdetail br2 swp1
br2:swp1 CIST info
  enabled          yes
  Designated
```

port id	8.001	state
forwarding		
external port cost	2000	admin external cost 0
internal port cost	2000	admin internal cost 0
designated root	F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00	dsgn external cost 0
dsgn regional root	F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00	dsgn internal cost 0
designated bridge	F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00	designated port 8.00
1		
admin edge port	no	auto edge port yes
oper edge port	yes	topology change ack no
point-to-point	yes	admin point-to-point auto
restricted role	no	restricted TCN no
port hello time	2	disputed no
bpdu guard port	no	bpdu guard error no
network port	no	BA inconsistent no
Num TX BPDU	45772	Num TX TCN 4
Num RX BPDU	0	Num RX TCN 0
Num Transition FWD	2	Num Transition BLK 2

## Customizing Spanning Tree Protocol

There are a number of ways you can customize STP in Cumulus Linux. You should exercise extreme caution with many of the settings below to prevent malfunctions in STP's loop avoidance.

### PortAdminEdge/PortFast Mode

`PortAdminEdge` is equivalent to the PortFast feature offered by other vendors.

All ports configured with `PortAdminEdge` bypass the listening and learning states to move immediately to forwarding.



Using `PortAdminEdge` mode has the potential to cause loops if it is not accompanied by the BPDU guard feature. All examples below include BPDU guard.

While it is common for edge ports to be configured as access ports for a simple end host, this is not mandatory. In the data center, edge ports typically connect to servers, which may pass both tagged and untagged traffic.

For a bridge in [traditional mode \(see page 244\)](#), configure `PortAdminEdge` under the bridge stanza in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto br2
iface br2 inet static
  bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3 swp4
  bridge-stp on
  mstptctl-bpduguard swp1=yes swp2=yes swp3=yes swp4=yes
  mstptctl-portadmineedge swp1=yes swp2=yes swp3=yes swp4=yes
```

For a [VLAN-aware bridge \(see page 264\)](#), configure PortAdminEdge and BPDU guard under the switch port interface stanza in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto swp5
iface swp5
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portadminedge yes
```

To load the new configuration, run `ifreload -a`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpctl setportadminedge br2 swp1 yes
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpctl setbpduguard br2 swp1 yes
```

## BPDUs Guard

To protect the spanning tree topology from unauthorized switches affecting the forwarding path, you can configure *BPDU guard* (Bridge Protocol Data Unit). One very common example is when someone hooks up a new switch to an access port off of a leaf switch. If this new switch is configured with a low priority, it could become the new root switch and affect the forwarding path for the entire layer 2 topology.

## Configuring BPDU Guard

For the bridge, configure BPDU guard under the bridge stanza in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto br2
iface br2 inet static
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3 swp4 swp5 swp6
    bridge-stp on
    mstpctl-bpduguard swp1=yes swp2=yes swp3=yes swp4=yes
```

For each interface, configure BPDU guard under an interface stanza in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto swp5
iface swp5
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
```

To load the new configuration, run `ifreload -a`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl setbpduGuard br2 swp1 yes
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl setbpduGuard br2 swp2 yes
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl setbpduGuard br2 swp3 yes
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl setbpduGuard br2 swp4 yes
```

## ***Recovering a Port Disabled by BPDU Guard***

If a BPDU is received on the port, STP will bring down the port and log an error in `/var/log/syslog`. The following is a sample error:

```
mstpd: error, MSTP_IN_rx_bpdu: bridge:bond0 Recvd BPDU on BPDU Guard
Port - Port Down
```

To determine whether BPDU guard is configured, or if a BPDU has been received, run `mstpcctl showportdetail <bridge name>`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showportdetail br2 swp1 | grep guard
  bpdu guard port      yes                      bpdu guard error      yes
```

The only way to recover a port that has been placed in the disabled state is to manually un-shut or bring up the port with `sudo ifup [port]`, as shown in the example below:



Bringing up the disabled port does not fix the problem if the configuration on the connected end-station has not been rectified.

```
cumulus@leaf2$ mstpcctl showportdetail bridge bond0
bridge:bond0 CIST info
  enabled          no          role
Disabled
```

```

port id          8.001           state
discarding
  external port cost 305           admin external cost 0
  internal port cost 305           admin internal cost 0
  designated root    8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn external cost 0
  dsgn regional root 8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn internal cost 0
  designated bridge   8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C designated port 8.00
1
  admin edge port    no            auto edge port      yes
  oper edge port     no            topology change ack no
  point-to-point     yes           admin point-to-point auto
  restricted role    no            restricted TCN       no
  port hello time   10            disputed             no
  bpdu guard port   yes           bpdu guard error  yes
  network port       no            BA inconsistent   no
  Num TX BPDU        3             Num TX TCN        2
  Num RX BPDU        488           Num RX TCN        2
  Num Transition FWD 1             Num Transition BLK 2
  bpdulfILTER port  no            clag ISL Oper UP  no
  clag role          unknown        clag dual conn mac 0:0:
0:0:0:0
  clag remote portID F.FFF
0:0:0:0

```

cumulus@leaf2\$ sudo ifup bond0

```

cumulus@leaf2$ mstpcctl showportdetail bridge bond0
bridge:bond0 CIST info
  enabled        yes           role           Root
  port id       8.001         state
forwarding
  external port cost 305           admin external cost 0
  internal port cost 305           admin internal cost 0
  designated root    8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn external cost 0
  dsgn regional root 8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn internal cost 0
  designated bridge   8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C designated port 8.00
1
  admin edge port    no            auto edge port      yes
  oper edge port     no            topology change ack no
  point-to-point     yes           admin point-to-point auto
  restricted role    no            restricted TCN       no
  port hello time   2             disputed             no
  bpdu guard port   no            bpdu guard error  no
  network port       no            BA inconsistent   no
  Num TX BPDU        3             Num TX TCN        2
  Num RX BPDU        43            Num RX TCN        1
  Num Transition FWD 1             Num Transition BLK 0
  bpdulfILTER port  no            clag ISL Oper UP  no
  clag role          no

```

```

clag role          unknown           clag dual conn mac  0:0:
0:0:0:0
      clag remote portID F.FFFF
      clag system mac       0:0:
0:0:0:0

```

## Bridge Assurance

On a point-to-point link where RSTP is running, if you want to detect unidirectional links and put the port in a discarding state (in error), you can enable bridge assurance on the port by enabling a port type network. The port would be in a bridge assurance inconsistent state until a BPDU is received from the peer. You need to configure the port type network on both the ends of the link in order for bridge assurance to operate properly.

The default setting for bridge assurance is off. This means that there is no difference between disabling bridge assurance on an interface and not configuring bridge assurance on an interface.

To enable bridge assurance on an interface, edit `/etc/network/interfaces` and add a line similar to the example below to the bridge configuration:

```
mstpctl-portnetwork swp1=no
```

You can monitor logs for bridge assurance messages by doing the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo grep -in assurance /var/log/syslog | grep mstp
 1365:Jun 25 18:03:17 mstpd: br1007:swp1.1007 Bridge assurance
 inconsistent
```

To load the new configuration from `/etc/network/interfaces`, run `ifreload -a`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

To enable bridge assurance at runtime, run `mstpctl`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpctl setportnetwork br1007 swp1.1007 yes
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpctl showportdetail br1007 swp1.1007 | grep
network
      network port        yes           BA inconsistent      yes
```

## BPDU Filter

You can enable `bpdulfilt`er on a switch port, which filters BPDUs in both directions. This effectively disables STP on the port as no BPDUs are transiting.



Using BDPU filter inappropriately can cause layer 2 loops. Use this feature deliberately and with extreme caution.

For the bridge, enable BPDU filter persistently by adding the following to `/etc/network/interfaces` under the `bridge port iface` section example:

```
auto br100
iface br100
    bridge-ports swp1.100 swp2.100
    mstpcctl-portbpdufilter swp1=yes swp2=yes
```

For each interface, it is also possible to enable BPDU filter persistently for a specific port with the following configuration:

```
auto swp6
iface swp6
    mstpcctl-portbpdufilter yes
```

To load the new configuration from `/etc/network/interfaces`, run `ifreload -a`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

For more information, see `man(5) ifupdown-addons-interfaces`.

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

To enable BPDU filter at runtime, run `mstpcctl`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl setportbpdufilter br100 swp1.100=yes swp2.100=yes
```

## Storm Control

*Storm control* provides protection against excessive inbound BUM (broadcast, unknown unicast, multicast) traffic on layer 2 switch port interfaces, which can cause poor network performance.

You configure storm control for each physical port in one of three ways:

- By editing `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`. The configuration persists across reboots and restarting `switchd`. If you change the storm control configuration in this file after rebooting the switch, you must [restart `switchd`](#) (see page 141) to activate the new configuration.
- By editing `/etc/network/interfaces`, which requires you to reload the interface configuration for the change to take effect.
- By writing directly to the `switchd` file system (see page 139).

For example, to enable broadcast and multicast storm control at 400 packets per second (pps) and 3000 pps, respectively, for `swp1` editing `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`, configure it as follows:

```
# Storm Control setting on a port, in pps, 0 means disable
interface.swp1.storm_control.broadcast = 400
interface.swp1.storm_control.multicast = 3000
```

To configure these settings in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    post-up echo 400 > /cumulus/switchd/config/interface/$IFACE
    /storm_control/broadcast
    post-up echo 3000 > /cumulus/switchd/config/interface/$IFACE
    /storm_control/multicast
    post-down echo 0 > /cumulus/switchd/config/interface/$IFACE
    /storm_control/broadcast
    post-down echo 0 > /cumulus/switchd/config/interface/$IFACE
    /storm_control/multicast
```

Then, reload the configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

Finally, if you are not in a position to restart `switchd`, you can change your storm control settings at runtime, which take effect immediately. For example, to set the pps on `swp1` to 400 pps for broadcast traffic and 3000 for multicast traffic:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo cl-cfg -w switchd interface.swp1.storm_control.
broadcast=400
cumulus@switch:$ sudo cl-cfg -w switchd interface.swp1.storm_control.
multicast=3000
```

## **Example Configuration with All Possible Parameters**

The persistent configuration for a bridge is set in `/etc/network/interfaces`. The configuration below shows every possible option configured. There is no requirement to configure any of these options:

```
auto br2
iface br2 inet static
  bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3 swp4
  bridge-stp on
  mstpctl-maxage 20
  mstpctl-ageing 300
  mstpctl-fdelay 15
  mstpctl-maxhops 20
  mstpctl-txholdcount 6
  mstpctl-forcevers rstp
  mstpctl-treepriority 32768
  mstpctl-treeportpriority swp3=128
  mstpctl-hello 2
  mstpctl-portpathcost swp1=0 swp2=0
  mstpctl-portadminedge swp1=no swp2=no
  mstpctl-portautoedge swp1=yes swp2=yes
  mstpctl-portp2p swp1=no swp2=no
  mstpctl-portrestrole swp1=no swp2=no
  mstpctl-portrestrcn swp1=no swp2=no
  mstpctl-portnetwork swp1=no
  mstpctl-bpduguard swp1=no swp2=no
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter swp4=yes
```

## **Configuring Other Spanning Tree Parameters**

Spanning tree parameters are defined in the IEEE [802.1D](#), [802.1Q](#) specifications and in the table below.

While configuring spanning tree in a persistent configuration, as described above, is the preferred method, you can also use `mstpctl` to configure spanning tree protocol parameters at runtime.



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

For a comparison of STP parameter configuration between `mstpctl` and other vendors, [please read this knowledge base article](#).

Examples are included below:

Parameter	Description
<b>maxage</b>	<p>Sets the bridge's <i>maximum age</i> to &lt;max_age&gt; seconds. The default is 20. The maximum age must meet the condition <math>2 * (\text{Bridge Forward Delay} - 1 \text{ second}) \geq \text{Bridge Max Age}</math>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-maxage 24</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl setmaxage &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;max_age&gt;</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setmaxage br2 24</pre>
<b>ageing</b>	<p>Sets the Ethernet (MAC) address <i>ageing time</i> in &lt;time&gt; seconds for the bridge when the running version is STP, but not RSTP/MSTP. The default is 300.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-ageing 240</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl setageing &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;time&gt;</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setageing br2 240</pre>
<b>fdelay</b>	<p>Sets the bridge's <i>bridge forward delay</i> to &lt;time&gt; seconds. The default is 15. The bridge forward delay must meet the condition <math>2 * (\text{Bridge Forward Delay} - 1 \text{ second}) \geq \text{Bridge Max Age}</math>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-fdelay 15</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p>

Parameter	Description
	<pre>mstpctl setfdelay &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;time&gt;</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setfdelay br2 15</pre>
<b>maxhops</b>	<p>Sets the bridge's <i>maximum hops</i> to &lt;max_hops&gt;. The default is 20.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl -maxhops 24</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl setmaxhops &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;max_hops&gt;</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setmaxhops br2 24</pre>
<b>txholdcount</b>	<p>Sets the bridge's <i>bridge transmit hold count</i> to &lt;tx_hold_count&gt;. The default is 6.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl -txholdcount 6</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl settxholdcount &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;tx_hold_count&gt;</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl settxholdcount br2 5</pre>
<b>forcevers</b>	<p>Sets the bridge's <i>force STP version</i> to either RSTP/STP. MSTP is not supported currently. The default is <i>RSTP</i>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl -forcevers rstp</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p>

Parameter	Description
	<pre>mstpctl setforcevers &lt;bridge&gt; {mstp rstp stp}</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setforcevers br2 rstp</pre>
<b>treeprio</b>	<p>Sets the bridge's <i>tree priority</i> to &lt;priority&gt; for an MSTI instance. The priority value is a number between 0 and 65535 and must be a multiple of 4096. The bridge with the lowest priority is elected the <i>root bridge</i>. The default is 32768.</p> <div style="border: 2px solid red; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <span style="color: red;">!</span> For <code>msti</code>, only 0 is supported currently. </div> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-treeprio 8192</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl settreeprio &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;mstid&gt; &lt;priority&gt;</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl settreeprio br2 0 8192</pre>
<b>treeportprio</b>	<p>Sets the <i>priority</i> of port &lt;port&gt; to &lt;priority&gt; for the MSTI instance. The priority value is a number between 0 and 240 and must be a multiple of 16. The default is 128.</p> <div style="border: 2px solid red; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <span style="color: red;">!</span> For <code>msti</code>, only 0 is supported currently. </div> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-treeportprio swp4 64</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl settreeportprio &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; &lt;mstid&gt; &lt;priority&gt;</pre>

Parameter	Description
	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl settreeportprio br2 swp4 0 64</pre>
<b>hello</b>	<p>Sets the bridge's <i>bridge hello time</i> to &lt;time&gt; seconds. The default is 2.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-hello 20</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl sethello &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;time&gt;</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl sethello br2 20</pre>
<b>portpathcost</b>	<p>Sets the <i>port cost</i> of the port &lt;port&gt; in bridge &lt;bridge&gt; to &lt;cost&gt;. The default is 0.</p> <p><code>mstp</code>d supports only long mode; that is, 32 bits for the path cost.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-portpathcost swp1=10</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl setportpathcost &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; &lt;cost&gt;</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setportpathcost br2 swp1 10</pre>
<b>portadminedge</b>	<p>Enables/disables the <i>initial edge state</i> of the port &lt;port&gt; in bridge &lt;bridge&gt;. The default is <i>no</i>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-portadminedge swp1=yes</pre>

Parameter	Description
	<p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpcctl setportadminedge &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; {yes no}</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpcctl setportadminedge br2 swp1 yes</pre>
<b>portautoedge</b>	<p>Enables/disables the <i>auto transition</i> to/from the edge state of the port <i>&lt;port&gt;</i> in bridge <i>&lt;bridge&gt;</i>. The default is yes.</p> <p><i>portautoedge</i> is an enhancement to the standard PortAdminEdge (PortFast) mode, which allows for the automatic detection of edge ports.</p> <p><b>⚠</b> Edge ports and access ports are not the same thing. Edge ports transition directly to the forwarding state and skip the listening and learning stages. Upstream topology change notifications are not generated when an edge port's link changes state. Access ports only forward untagged traffic; however, there is no such restriction on edge ports, which can forward both tagged and untagged traffic.</p>
	<p>When a BPDU is received on a port configured with <i>portautoedge</i>, the port ceases to be in the edge port state and transitions into a normal STP port.</p> <p>When BPDUs are no longer received on the interface, the port becomes an edge port, and transitions through the discarding and learning states before resuming forwarding.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpcctl -portautoedge swp1=no</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpcctl setportautoedge &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; {yes no}</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpcctl setportautoedge br2 swp1 no</pre>

Parameter	Description
	<p>Enables/disables the <i>point-to-point detection mode</i> of the port &lt;port&gt; in bridge &lt;bridge&gt;. The default is <i>auto</i>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl -portp2p swp1=no</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl setportp2p &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; {yes no auto}</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setportp2p br2 swp1 no</pre>
<b>portrestrrole</b>	<p>Enables/disables the ability of the port &lt;port&gt; in bridge &lt;bridge&gt; to take the <i>root role</i>. The default is <i>no</i>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl -portrestrrole swp1=no</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl setportrestrrole &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; {yes no}</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setportrestrrole br2 swp1 yes</pre>
<b>portrestrtcn</b>	<p>Enables/disables the ability of the port &lt;port&gt; in bridge &lt;bridge&gt; to propagate <i>received topology change notifications</i>. The default is <i>no</i>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl -portrestrtcn swp1=yes</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p>

Parameter	Description
	<pre>mstpctl setportrestrtcn &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; {yes no}</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setportrestrtcn br2 swp1 yes</pre>
<b>portnetwork</b>	<p>Enables/disables the <i>bridge assurance capability</i> for a network port <i>&lt;port&gt;</i> in bridge <i>&lt;bridge&gt;</i>. The default is <i>no</i>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-portnetwork swp4=yes</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl setportnetwork &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; {yes no}</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setportnetwork br2 swp4 yes</pre>
<b>bpduguard</b>	<p>Enables/disables the <i>BPDU guard configuration</i> of the port <i>&lt;port&gt;</i> in bridge <i>&lt;bridge&gt;</i>. The default is <i>no</i>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl-bpduguard swp1=no</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl setbpduguard &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; {yes no}</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setbpduguard br2 swp1 yes</pre>
<b>portbpdufilter</b>	

Parameter	Description
	<p>Enables/disables the <i>BPDU filter</i> functionality for a port &lt;port&gt; in bridge &lt;bridge&gt;. The default is <i>no</i>.</p> <p>To set this parameter persistently, configure it under the bridge stanza:</p> <pre>mstpctl -portbpdufilter swp4=yes</pre> <p>To set this parameter at runtime, use:</p> <pre>mstpctl setportbpdufilter &lt;bridge&gt; &lt;port&gt; {yes no}</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo mstpctl setportbpdufilter br2 swp4 yes</pre>

## Configuration Files

- /etc/network/interfaces
- /etc/cumulus/switchd.conf

## Man Pages

- brctl(8)
- bridge-utils-interfaces(5)
- ifupdown-addons-interfaces(5)
- mstpctl(8)
- mstpctl-utils-interfaces(5)

## Useful Links

The source code for `mstpd/mstpctl` was written by [Vitalii Demianets](#) and is hosted at the sourceforge URL below.

- [sourceforge.net/projects/mstpd/](http://sourceforge.net/projects/mstpd/)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanning\\_Tree\\_Protocol](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanning_Tree_Protocol)

## Caveats and Errata

- MSTP is not supported currently. However, interoperability with MSTP networks can be accomplished using PVRSTP or PVSTP.

# Link Layer Discovery Protocol

The `lldpd` daemon implements the IEEE802.1AB (Link Layer Discovery Protocol, or LLDP) standard. LLDP allows you to know which ports are neighbors of a given port. By default, `lldpd` runs as a daemon and is started at system boot. `lldpd` command line arguments are placed in `/etc/default/lldpd`. `lldpd` configuration options are placed in `/etc/lldpd.conf` or under `/etc/lldpd.d/`.

For more details on the command line arguments and config options, please see `man lldpd(8)`.

`lldpd` supports CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol, v1 and v2). `lldpd` logs by default into `/var/log/syslog` with an `lldpd` prefix.

`lldpcli` is the CLI tool to query the `lldpd` daemon for neighbors, statistics and other running configuration information. See `man lldpcli(8)` for details.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 223)
- Man Pages (see page 223)
- Configuring LLDP (see page 223)
- Example `lldpcli` Commands (see page 224)
- Enabling the SNMP Subagent in LLDP (see page 228)
- Configuration Files (see page 229)
- Useful Links (see page 229)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 229)

## Commands

- `lldpd` (daemon)
- `lldpcli` (interactive CLI)

## Man Pages

- `man lldpd`
- `man lldpcli`

## Configuring LLDP

You configure `lldpd` settings in `/etc/lldpd.conf` or `/etc/lldpd.d/`.

Here is an example persistent configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cat /etc/lldpd.conf
configure lldp tx-interval 40
configure lldp tx-hold 3
configure system interface pattern-blacklist "eth0"
```

lldpd logs to /var/log/daemon.log with the *lldpd* prefix:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tail -f /var/log/syslog | grep lldp
2016-11-23T14:48:37.538595-05:00 switch lldpd[21945]: protocol LLDP
enabled
2016-11-23T14:48:37.539266-05:00 switch lldpd[21945]: protocol CDPv1
enabled
2016-11-23T14:48:37.539937-05:00 switch lldpd[21945]: protocol CDPv2
enabled
2016-11-23T14:48:37.540604-05:00 switch lldpd[21945]: libevent 2.0.21-
stable initialized with epoll method
2016-11-23T14:48:37.541270-05:00 switch lldpd[21945]: enable SNMP
subagent
2016-11-23T14:48:37.542295-05:00 switch lldpd[21945]: NET-SNMP
version 5.7.3 AgentX subagent connected
2016-11-23T14:48:37.633597-05:00 switch lldpcli[21943]: LLDP PortID
TLV type set to new value : ifname
2016-11-23T14:48:37.634389-05:00 switch lldpcli[21943]: lldpd should
resume operations
```

## ***Example lldpcli Commands***

To see all neighbors on all ports/interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpcli show neighbors
-----
-----
LLDP neighbors:
-----
-----
Interface:    eth0, via: LLDP, RID: 1, Time: 0 day, 17:38:08
  Chassis:
    ChassisID:      mac 08:9e:01:e9:66:5a
    SysName:        PIONEERMS22
    SysDescr:       Cumulus Linux version 2.5.4 running on quanta lb9
    MgmtIP:         192.168.0.22
    Capability:    Bridge, on
    Capability:    Router, on
  Port:
    PortID:        ifname swp47
    PortDescr:     swp47
-----
-----
Interface:    swp1, via: LLDP, RID: 10, Time: 0 day, 17:08:27
  Chassis:
    ChassisID:      mac 00:01:00:00:09:00
    SysName:        MSP-1
```

```

        SysDescr:      Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
        MgmtIP:       192.0.2.9
        MgmtIP:       fe80::201:ff:fe00:900
        Capability:   Bridge, off
        Capability:   Router, on
Port:
        PortID:       ifname swp1
        PortDescr:    swp1
-----
-----
Interface:    swp2, via: LLDP, RID: 10, Time: 0 day, 17:08:27
Chassis:
        ChassisID:   mac 00:01:00:00:09:00
        SysName:     MSP-1
        SysDescr:    Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
        MgmtIP:       192.0.2.9
        MgmtIP:       fe80::201:ff:fe00:900
        Capability:   Bridge, off
        Capability:   Router, on
Port:
        PortID:       ifname swp2
        PortDescr:    swp2
-----
-----
Interface:    swp3, via: LLDP, RID: 11, Time: 0 day, 17:08:27
Chassis:
        ChassisID:   mac 00:01:00:00:0a:00
        SysName:     MSP-2
        SysDescr:    Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
        MgmtIP:       192.0.2.10
        MgmtIP:       fe80::201:ff:fe00:a00
        Capability:   Bridge, off
        Capability:   Router, on
Port:
        PortID:       ifname swp1
        PortDescr:    swp1
-----
-----
Interface:    swp4, via: LLDP, RID: 11, Time: 0 day, 17:08:27
Chassis:
        ChassisID:   mac 00:01:00:00:0a:00
        SysName:     MSP-2
        SysDescr:    Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
        MgmtIP:       192.0.2.10
        MgmtIP:       fe80::201:ff:fe00:a00
        Capability:   Bridge, off
        Capability:   Router, on
Port:
```

```
PortID:        ifname swp2
PortDescr:     swp2
-----
-----
Interface:    swp49s1, via: LLDP, RID: 9, Time: 0 day, 16:55:00
Chassis:
  ChassisID:   mac 00:01:00:00:0c:00
  SysName:     TORC-1-2
  SysDescr:    Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
  MgmtIP:      192.0.2.12
  MgmtIP:      fe80::201:ff:fe00:c00
  Capability:  Bridge, on
  Capability:  Router, on
Port:
  PortID:      ifname swp6
  PortDescr:   swp6
-----
-----
Interface:    swp49s0, via: LLDP, RID: 9, Time: 0 day, 16:55:00
Chassis:
  ChassisID:   mac 00:01:00:00:0c:00
  SysName:     TORC-1-2
  SysDescr:    Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
  MgmtIP:      192.0.2.12
  MgmtIP:      fe80::201:ff:fe00:c00
  Capability:  Bridge, on
  Capability:  Router, on
Port:
  PortID:      ifname swp5
  PortDescr:   swp5
```

To see lldpd statistics for all ports:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpccli show statistics
-----
LLDP statistics:
-----
Interface: eth0
  Transmitted: 9423
  Received: 17634
  Discarded: 0
  Unrecognized: 0
  Ageout: 10
  Inserted: 20
  Deleted: 10
```

```

Interface:      swp1
Transmitted:   9423
Received:     6264
Discarded:    0
Unrecognized: 0
Ageout:       0
Inserted:    2
Deleted:     0
-----
Interface:      swp2
Transmitted:   9423
Received:     6264
Discarded:    0
Unrecognized: 0
Ageout:       0
Inserted:    2
Deleted:     0
-----
Interface:      swp3
Transmitted:   9423
Received:     6265
Discarded:    0
Unrecognized: 0
Ageout:       0
Inserted:    2
Deleted:     0
-----
... and more (output truncated to fit this document)

```

To see lldpd statistics summary for all ports:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpccli show statistics summary
-----
LLDP Global statistics:
-----
Summary of stats:
Transmitted: 648186
Received:    437557
Discarded:   0
Unrecognized: 0
Ageout:      10
Inserted:   38
Deleted:    10

```

To see the lldpd running configuration:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpccli show running-configuration
-----
Global configuration:

```

```
-----  
Configuration:  
  Transmit delay: 30  
  Transmit hold: 4  
  Receive mode: no  
  Pattern for management addresses: (none)  
  Interface pattern: (none)  
  Interface pattern blacklist: (none)  
  Interface pattern for chassis ID: (none)  
  Override description with: (none)  
  Override platform with: Linux  
  Override system name with: (none)  
  Advertise version: yes  
  Update interface descriptions: no  
  Promiscuous mode on managed interfaces: no  
  Disable LLDP-MED inventory: yes  
  LLDP-MED fast start mechanism: yes  
  LLDP-MED fast start interval: 1  
  Source MAC for LLDP frames on bond slaves: local  
  Portid TLV Subtype for lldp frames: ifname  
-----
```

## Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration does not persist when you reboot the switch — all changes are lost.

To configure active interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpccli configure system interface pattern "swp*"
```

To configure inactive interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpccli configure system interface pattern-blacklist "eth0"
```



The active interface list always overrides the inactive interface list.

To reset any interface list to none:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpccli configure system interface pattern-blacklist ""
```

## Enabling the SNMP Subagent in LLDP

LLDP does not enable the SNMP subagent by default. Configure the DAEMON\_ARGS= variable in /etc/default/lldpd by adding the -x option to enable the SNMP subagent.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/default/lldpd
# Enable CDP by default
DAEMON_ARGS="$DAEMON_OPT_ARGS -c -x"
```

## Configuration Files

- /etc/llpd.conf
- /etc/llpd.d
- /etc/default/llpd

## Useful Links

- [vincentbernat.github.io/llpd/](https://github.com/vincentbernat/llpd/)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Link\\_Layer\\_Discovery\\_Protocol](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Link_Layer_Discovery_Protocol)

## Caveats and Errata

- Annex E (and hence Annex D) of IEEE802.1AB (lldp) is not supported.

## Prescriptive Topology Manager - PTM

In data center topologies, right cabling is a time-consuming endeavor and is error prone. Prescriptive Topology Manager (PTM) is a dynamic cabling verification tool to help detect and eliminate such errors. It takes a Graphviz-DOT specified network cabling plan (something many operators already generate), stored in a topology.dot file, and couples it with runtime information derived from LLDP to verify that the cabling matches the specification. The check is performed on every link transition on each node in the network.

You can customize the topology.dot file to control ptmd at both the global/network level and the node/port level.

PTM runs as a daemon, named ptmd.

For more information, see `man ptmd(8)`.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Supported Features (see page 230)
- Configuring PTM (see page 230)
- Basic Topology Example (see page 231)
- Advanced PTM Configuration (see page 231)
  - Scripts (see page 231)

- Configuration Parameters (see page 232)
- Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) (see page 235)
- Enabling Quagga to Check Link State (see page 237)
- Using ptmd Service Commands (see page 237)
- Using ptmctl Commands (see page 238)
  - ptmctl Examples (see page 238)
  - ptmctl Error Outputs (see page 240)
- Configuration Files (see page 240)
- Useful Links (see page 241)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 241)

## **Supported Features**

- Topology verification using LLDP. `ptmd` creates a client connection to the LLDP daemon, `lldpd`, and retrieves the neighbor relationship between the nodes/ports in the network and compares them against the prescribed topology specified in the `topology.dot` file.
- Only physical interfaces, like `swp1` or `eth0`, are currently supported. Cumulus Linux does not support specifying virtual interfaces like bonds or subinterfaces like `eth0.200` in the topology file.
- Forwarding path failure detection using **Bidirectional Forwarding Detection** (BFD); however, demand mode is not supported. For more information on how BFD operates in Cumulus Linux, [see below \(see page 235\)](#) and see `man ptmd(8)`.
- Integration with Quagga (PTM to Quagga notification).
- Client management: `ptmd` creates an abstract named socket `/var/run/ptmd.socket` on startup. Other applications can connect to this socket to receive notifications and send commands.
- Event notifications: see Scripts below.
- User configuration via a `topology.dot` file; [see below \(see page 230\)](#).

## **Configuring PTM**

`ptmd` verifies the physical network topology against a DOT-specified network graph file, `/etc/ptm.d/topology.dot`.



This file must be present or else `ptmd` will not start. You can specify an alternate file using the `-c` option.

PTM supports **undirected graphs**.

At startup, `ptmd` connects to `lldpd`, the LLDP daemon, over a Unix socket and retrieves the neighbor name and port information. It then compares the retrieved port information with the configuration information that it read from the topology file. If there is a match, then it is a PASS, else it is a FAIL.

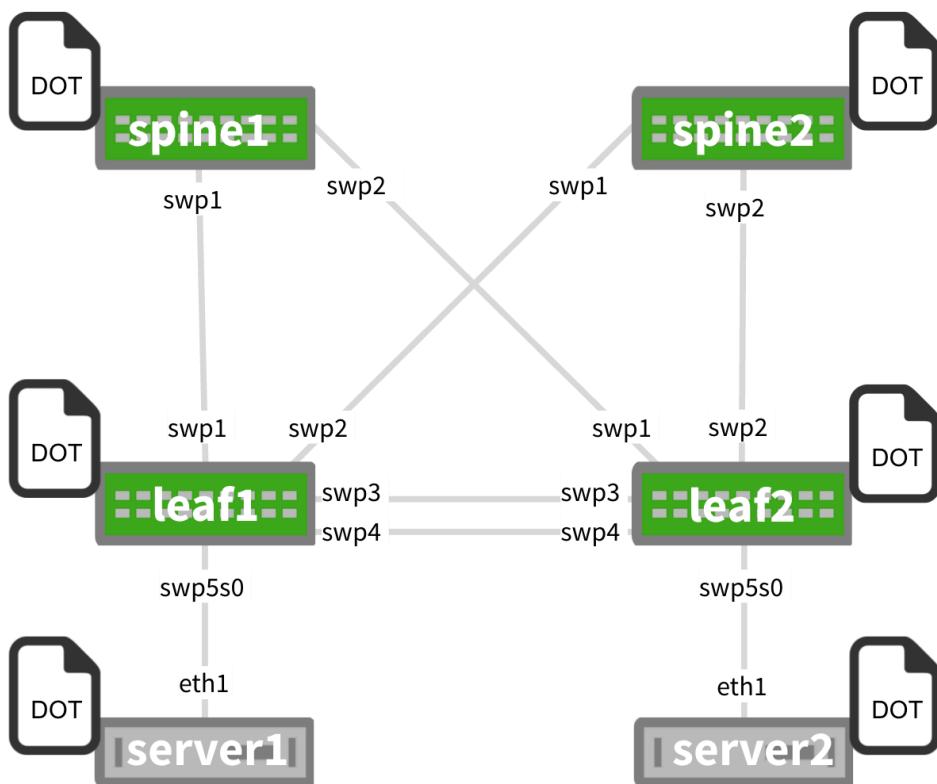


PTM performs its LLDP neighbor check using the PortID ifname TLV information. Previously, it used the PortID port description TLV information.

## Basic Topology Example

This is a basic example DOT file and its corresponding topology diagram. You should use the same `topology.dot` file on all switches, and don't split the file per device; this allows for easy automation by pushing/pulling the same exact file on each device!

```
graph G {
    "spine1": "swp1" -- "leaf1": "swp1";
    "spine1": "swp2" -- "leaf2": "swp1";
    "spine2": "swp1" -- "leaf1": "swp2";
    "spine2": "swp2" -- "leaf2": "swp2";
    "leaf1": "swp3" -- "leaf2": "swp3";
    "leaf1": "swp4" -- "leaf2": "swp4";
    "leaf1": "swp5s0" -- "server1": "eth1";
    "leaf2": "swp5s0" -- "server2": "eth1";
}
```



## Advanced PTM Configuration

PTM allows for more advanced configuration of the topology file using parameters you specify in the topology file.

## Scripts

`ptmd` executes scripts at `/etc/ptm.d/if-topo-pass` and `/etc/ptm.d/if-topo-fail` for each interface that goes through a change, running `if-topo-pass` when an LLDP or BFD check passes and running `if-topo-fails` when the check fails. The scripts receive an argument string that is the result of the `ptmctl` command, described in the [ptm commands section below](#) (see page 237).

You should modify these default scripts as needed.

## Configuration Parameters

You can configure `ptmd` parameters in the topology file. The parameters are classified as host-only, global, per-port/node and templates.

### Host-only Parameters

*Host-only parameters* apply to the entire host on which PTM is running. You can include the `hostnametype` host-only parameter, which specifies whether PTM should use only the host name (`hostname`) or the fully-qualified domain name (`fqdn`) while looking for the `self-node` in the graph file. For example, in the graph file below, PTM will ignore the FQDN and only look for `switch04`, since that is the host name of the switch it's running on:



It's a good idea to always wrap the hostname in double quotes, like "`www.example.com`". Otherwise, `ptmd` can fail if you specify a fully-qualified domain name as the hostname and do not wrap it in double quotes.

Further, to avoid errors when starting the `ptmd` process, make sure that `/etc/hosts` and `/etc/hostname` both reflect the hostname you are using in the `topology.dot` file.

```
graph G {
    hostnametype="hostname"
    BFD="upMinTx=150,requiredMinRx=250"
    "cumulus":"swp44" -- "switch04.cumulusnetworks.com":"swp20"
    "cumulus":"swp46" -- "switch04.cumulusnetworks.com":"swp22"
}
```

However, in this next example, PTM will compare using the FQDN and look for `switch05.cumulusnetworks.com`, which is the FQDN of the switch it's running on:

```
graph G {
    hostnametype="fqdn"
    "cumulus":"swp44" -- "switch05.cumulusnetworks.com":"swp20"
    "cumulus":"swp46" -- "switch05.cumulusnetworks.com":"swp22"
}
```

## Global Parameters

*Global parameters* apply to every port listed in the topology file. There are two global parameters: LLDP and BFD. LLDP is enabled by default; if no keyword is present, default values are used for all ports. However, BFD is disabled if no keyword is present, unless there is a per-port override configured. For example:

```
graph G {
    LLDP= ""
    BFD="upMinTx=150,requiredMinRx=250,afi=both"
    "cumulus": "swp44" -- "qct-ly2-04": "swp20"
    "cumulus": "swp46" -- "qct-ly2-04": "swp22"
}
```

## Per-port Parameters

*Per-port parameters* provide finer-grained control at the port level. These parameters override any global or compiled defaults. For example:

```
graph G {
    LLDP= ""
    BFD="upMinTx=300,requiredMinRx=100"
    "cumulus": "swp44" -- "qct-ly2-04": "swp20" [BFD="upMinTx=150,
requiredMinRx=250,afi=both"]
    "cumulus": "swp46" -- "qct-ly2-04": "swp22"
}
```

## Templates

*Templates* provide flexibility in choosing different parameter combinations and applying them to a given port. A template instructs `ptmd` to reference a named parameter string instead of a default one. There are two parameter strings `ptmd` supports:

- `bfdtmp1`, which specifies a custom parameter tuple for BFD.
- `lldptmp1`, which specifies a custom parameter tuple for LLDP.

For example:

```
graph G {
    LLDP= ""
    BFD="upMinTx=300,requiredMinRx=100"
    BFD1="upMinTx=200,requiredMinRx=200"
    BFD2="upMinTx=100,requiredMinRx=300"
    LLDP1="match_type=ifname"
    LLDP2="match_type=portdescr"
    "cumulus": "swp44" -- "qct-ly2-04": "swp20" [BFD="bfdtmp1=BFD1"
    , LLDP="lldptmp1=LLDP1"]
```

```

    "cumulus" :"swp46" -- "qct-ly2-04" :"swp22" [BFD="bfdtmpl=BFD2"
, LLDP="lldptmpl=LLDP2"]
    "cumulus" :"swp46" -- "qct-ly2-04" :"swp22"
}

```

In this template, LLDP1 and LLDP2 are templates for LLDP parameters while BFD1 and BFD2 are templates for BFD parameters.

## **Supported BFD and LLDP Parameters**

`ptmd` supports the following BFD parameters:

- `upMinTx`: the minimum transmit interval, which defaults to *300ms*, specified in milliseconds.
- `requiredMinRx`: the minimum interval between received BFD packets, which defaults to *300ms*, specified in milliseconds.
- `detectMult`: the detect multiplier, which defaults to *3*, and can be any non-zero value.
- `afi`: the address family to be supported for the edge. The address family must be one of the following:
  - *v4*: BFD sessions will be built for only IPv4 connected peer. This is the default value.
  - *v6*: BFD sessions will be built for only IPv6 connected peer.
  - *both*: BFD sessions will be built for both IPv4 and IPv6 connected peers.

The following is an example of a topology with BFD applied at the port level:

```

graph G {
    "cumulus-1" :"swp44" -- "cumulus-2" :"swp20" [BFD="upMinTx=300,
requiredMinRx=100,afi=v6"]
    "cumulus-1" :"swp46" -- "cumulus-2" :"swp22" [BFD="detectMult=4
"]
}

```

`ptmd` supports the following LLDP parameters:

- `match_type`, which defaults to the interface name (`ifname`), but can accept a port description (`portdescr`) instead if you want `lldpd` to compare the topology against the port description instead of the interface name. You can set this parameter globally or at the per-port level.
- `match_hostname`, which defaults to the host name (`hostname`), but enables PTM to match the topology using the fully-qualified domain name (`fqdn`) supplied by LLDP.

The following is an example of a topology with LLDP applied at the port level:

```

graph G {
    "cumulus-1" :"swp44" -- "cumulus-2" :"swp20" [LLDP="match_hostname=fqdn"]
    "cumulus-1" :"swp46" -- "cumulus-2" :"swp22" [LLDP="match_type=portdescr"]
}

```



When you specify `match_hostname=fqdn`, `ptmd` will match the entire FQDN, like *cumulus-2.domain.com* in the example below. If you do not specify anything for `match_hostname`, `ptmd` will match based on hostname only, like *cumulus-3* below, and ignore the rest of the URL:

```
graph G {
    "cumulus-1": "swp44" -- "cumulus-2.domain.com": "swp20"
    [LLDP="match_hostname=fqdn"]
    "cumulus-1": "swp46" -- "cumulus-3": "swp22" [LLDP="match_type=portdescr"]
}
```

## Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD)

BFD provides low overhead and rapid detection of failures in the paths between two network devices. It provides a unified mechanism for link detection over all media and protocol layers. Use BFD to detect failures for IPv4 and IPv6 single or multihop paths between any two network devices, including unidirectional path failure detection. For more information, see the [BFD chapter \(see page 502\)](#).



BFD requires an IP address for any interface on which it is configured. The neighbor IP address for a single hop BFD session must be in the ARP table before BFD can start sending control packets.



You cannot specify BFD multihop sessions in the `topology.dot` file since you cannot specify the source and destination IP address pairs in that file. Use [Quagga \(see page 438\)](#) to configure multihop sessions.

## Configuring BFD

You configure BFD one of two ways: by specifying the configuration in the `topology.dot` file, or using [Quagga \(see page 502\)](#). However, the topology file has some limitations:

- The `topology.dot` file supports creating BFD IPv4 and IPv6 single hop sessions only; you cannot specify IPv4 or IPv6 multihop sessions in the topology file.
- The topology file supports BFD sessions for only link-local IPv6 peers; BFD sessions for global IPv6 peers discovered on the link will not be created.

## Echo Function

Cumulus Linux supports the *echo function* for IPv4 single hops only, and with the a synchronous operating mode only (Cumulus Linux does not support demand mode).

You use the echo function primarily to test the forwarding path on a remote system. To enable the echo function, set `echoSupport` to 1 in the topology file.

Once the echo packets are looped by the remote system, the BFD control packets can be sent at a much lower rate. You configure this lower rate by setting the `slowMinTx` parameter in the topology file to a non-zero value of milliseconds.

You can use more aggressive detection times for echo packets since the round-trip time is reduced because they are accessing the forwarding path. You configure the detection interval by setting the `echoMinRx` parameter in the topology file to a non-zero value of milliseconds; the minimum setting is 50 milliseconds. Once configured, BFD control packets are sent out at this required minimum echo Rx interval. This indicates to the peer that the local system can loop back the echo packets. Echo packets are transmitted if the peer supports receiving echo packets.

## About the Echo Packet

BFD echo packets are encapsulated into UDP packets over destination and source UDP port number 3785. The BFD echo packet format is vendor-specific and has not been defined in the RFC. BFD echo packets that originate from Cumulus Linux are 8 bytes long and have the following format:

0	1	2	3
Version	Length	Reserved	
My Discriminator			

Where:

- **Version** is the version of the BFD echo packet.
- **Length** is the length of the BFD echo packet.
- **My Discriminator** is a non-zero value that uniquely identifies a BFD session on the transmitting side. When the originating node receives the packet after being looped back by the receiving system, this value uniquely identifies the BFD session.

## Transmitting and Receiving Echo Packets

BFD echo packets are transmitted for a BFD session only when the peer has advertised a non-zero value for the required minimum echo Rx interval (the `echoMinRx` setting) in the BFD control packet when the BFD session starts. The transmit rate of the echo packets is based on the peer advertised echo receive value in the control packet.

BFD echo packets are looped back to the originating node for a BFD session only if locally the `echoMinRx` and `echoSupport` are configured to a non-zero values.

## Using Echo Function Parameters

You configure the echo function by setting the following parameters in the topology file at the global, template and port level:

- **echoSupport:** Enables and disables echo mode. Set to 1 to enable the echo function. It defaults to 0 (disable).
- **echoMinRx:** The minimum interval between echo packets the local system is capable of receiving. This is advertised in the BFD control packet. When the echo function is enabled, it defaults to 50. If you disable the echo function, this parameter is automatically set to 0, which indicates the port or the node cannot process or receive echo packets.

- **slowMinTx:** The minimum interval between transmitting BFD control packets when the echo packets are being exchanged.

## ***Enabling Quagga to Check Link State***

The Quagga routing suite enables additional checks to ensure that routing adjacencies are formed only on links that have connectivity conformant to the specification, as determined by `ptmd`.



You only need to do this to check link state; you don't need to enable PTM to determine BFD status.

To enable the check:

```
quagga# conf t
quagga(config)# ptm-enable
quagga(config)#+
```

To disable the checks:

```
quagga# conf t
quagga(config)# no ptm-enable
quagga(config)#+
```

When the `ptm-enable` flag is configured by the user, the `zebra` daemon connects to `ptmd` over a Unix socket. Any time there is a change of status for an interface, `ptmd` sends notifications to `zebra`. `zebra` maintains a `ptm-status` flag per interface and evaluates routing adjacency based on this flag. To check the per-interface `ptm-status`:

```
quagga# show interface swp1
Interface swp1 is up, line protocol is up
  Link ups:      0    last: (never)
  Link downs:   0    last: (never)
  PTM status: disabled
  vrf: Default-IP-Routing-Table
  index 3 metric 0 mtu 1550
  flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  HWaddr: c4:54:44:bd:01:41
quagga#
```

## ***Using ptmd Service Commands***

PTM sends client notifications in CSV format.

`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start|restart|force-reload ptmd.service`: Starts or restarts the `ptmd` service. The `topology.dot` file must be present in order for the service to start.

cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl reload ptmd.service: Instructs `ptmd` to read the `topology.dot` file again without restarting, applying the new configuration to the running state.

cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl stop ptmd.service: Stops the `ptmd` service.

cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl status ptmd.service: Retrieves the current running state of `ptmd`.

## Using `ptmctl` Commands

`ptmctl` is a client of `ptmd`; it retrieves the operational state of the ports configured on the switch and information about BFD sessions from `ptmd`. `ptmctl` parses the CSV notifications sent by `ptmd`.

See `man ptmctl` for more information.

### `ptmctl Examples`

For basic output, use `ptmctl` without any options:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl

-----
port  cbl      BFD      BFD
      status    status   peer
                           BFD      BFD
                           local    type
-----
swp1  pass     pass    11.0.0.2
      N/A      N/A
      N/A      N/A
      N/A      N/A
      N/A      N/A
      N/A      N/A
```

For more detailed output, use the `-d` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl -d

-----
port  cbl      exp      act      sysname  portID  portDescr  match
last   BFD      BFD      BFD      det_mult tx_timeout
rx_timeout echo_tx_timeout echo_rx_timeout max_hop_cnt
      status  nbr      nbr
      on
upd    Type     state    peer    DownDiag
-----
swp45  pass     h1:swp1  h1:swp1  h1       swp1     swp1      IfName 5m:
5s    N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N
/A
      N/A
      N/A
swp46  fail     h2:swp1  h2:swp1  h2       swp1     swp1      IfName 5m:
5s    N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N
/A
      N/A
      N/A
```

To return information on active BFD sessions `ptmd` is tracking, use the `-b` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl -b

-----
port  peer          state local      type      diag
-----
swp1  11.0.0.2     Up    N/A        singlehop  N/A
N/A   12.12.12.1   Up    12.12.12.4  multihop   N/A
```

To return LLDP information, use the `-l` option. It returns only the active neighbors currently being tracked by `ptmd`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl -l

-----
port  sysname  portID  port      match  last
              descr   on       upd
-----
swp45 h1      swp1    swp1    IfName  5m:59s
swp46 h2      swp1    swp1    IfName  5m:59s
```

To return detailed information on active BFD sessions `ptmd` is tracking, use the `-b` and `-d` options (results are for an IPv6-connected peer):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl -b -d

-----
-----  

-----  

port  peer          state local      type      diag  det
tx_timeout  rx_timeout echo        echo      max   rx_ctrl
tx_ctrl    rx_echo   tx_echo  
  

mult          tx_timeout  rx_timeout
hop_cnt  
  

-----  

-----  

-----  

swp1  fe80::202:ff:fe00:1  Up    N/A        singlehop  N/A   3   300
900   0           0           N/A        187172   185986  0
0
swp1  3101:abc:bcad::2    Up    N/A        singlehop  N/A   3   300
900   0           0           N/A        501      533    0
0
```

## ptmctl Error Outputs

If there are errors in the topology file or there isn't a session, PTM will return appropriate outputs. Typical error strings are:

```
Topology file error [/etc/ptm.d/topology.dot] [cannot find node
cumulus] -
please check /var/log/ptmd.log for more info

Topology file error [/etc/ptm.d/topology.dot] [cannot open file
(errno 2)] -
please check /var/log/ptmd.log for more info

No Hostname/MgmtIP found [Check LLDPD daemon status] -
please check /var/log/ptmd.log for more info

No BFD sessions . Check connections

No LLDP ports detected. Check connections

Unsupported command
```

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl
-----
---  
cmd      error
-----
---  
get-status Topology file error [/etc/ptm.d/topology.dot] [cannot
open file (errno 2)] - please check /var/log/ptmd.log for more info
```



If you encounter errors with the `topology.dot` file, you can use `dot` (included in the Graphviz package) to validate the syntax of the topology file.

By simply opening the topology file with Graphviz, you can ensure that it is readable and that the file format is correct.

If you edit `topology.dot` file from a Windows system, be sure to double check the file formatting; there may be extra characters that keep the graph from working correctly.

## Configuration Files

- `/etc/ptm.d/topology.dot`
- `/etc/ptm.d/if-topo-pass`
- `/etc/ptm.d/if-topo-fail`

## Useful Links

- Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD)
- Graphviz
- LLDP on Wikipedia
- PTMd GitHub repo

## Caveats and Errata

- Prior to version 2.1, Cumulus Linux stored the `ptmd` configuration files in `/etc/cumulus/ptm.d`. When you upgrade to version 2.1 or later, all the existing `ptmd` files are copied from their original location to `/etc/ptm.d` with a `dpkg-old` extension, except for `topology.dot`, which gets copied to `/etc/ptm.d`.  
If you customized the `if-topo-pass` and `if-topo-fail` scripts, they are also copied to `dpkg-old`, and you must modify them so they can parse the CSV output correctly.  
Sample `if-topo-pass` and `if-topo-fail` scripts are available in `/etc/ptm.d`. A sample `topology.dot` file is available in `/usr/share/doc/ptmd/examples`.

## Bonding - Link Aggregation

Linux bonding provides a method for aggregating multiple network interfaces (the slaves) into a single logical bonded interface (the bond). Cumulus Linux bonding supports the IEEE 802.3ad link aggregation mode. Link aggregation allows one or more links to be aggregated together to form a *link aggregation group* (LAG), such that a media access control (MAC) client can treat the link aggregation group as if it were a single link. The benefits of link aggregation are:

- Linear scaling of bandwidth as links are added to LAG
- Load balancing
- Failover protection

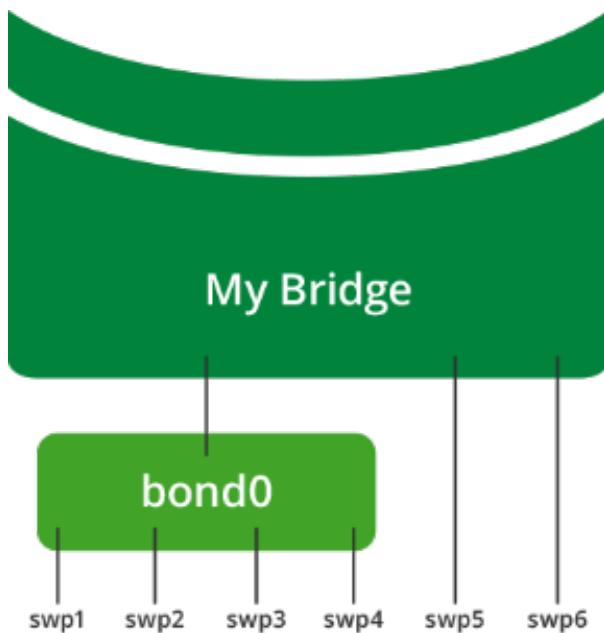
Cumulus Linux LAG control protocol is LACP version 1.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Example: Bonding 4 Slaves (see page 242)
- Hash Distribution (see page 244)
- Configuration Files (see page 244)
- Useful Links (see page 244)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 244)

## Example: Bonding 4 Slaves



In this example, front panel port interfaces `swp1`-`swp4` are slaves in `bond0` (`swp5` and `swp6` are not part of `bond0`).

The name of the bond is arbitrary as long as it follows Linux interface naming guidelines, and is unique within the switch. The only bonding mode supported in Cumulus Linux is 802.3ad. There are several 802.3 ad settings that can be applied to each bond.

All of the following settings except for `bond-slaves` are set to the recommended defaults and should only be added to a configuration in `/etc/network/interfaces` if you plan to use a different setting.

- `bond-slaves`: The list of slaves in bond.
- `bond-mode`: Is set to `802.3ad` by default and **must not** be changed.
- `bond-miimon`: How often the link state of each slave is inspected for link failures. It `100`, the recommended value.
- `bond-use-carrier`: How to determine link state. It defaults to `1`.
- `bond-xmit-hash-policy`: Hash method used to select the slave for a given packet; it defaults to `layer3+4` and **must not** be changed.
- `bond-lacp-rate`: Rate to ask link partner to transmit LACP control packets. It defaults to `1`.
- `bond-min-links`: Specifies the minimum number of links that must be active before asserting carrier on the bond. It defaults to `1`, but a value greater than `1` is useful if higher level services need to ensure a minimum of aggregate bandwidth before putting the bond in service. Keeping `bond-min-links` set to `1` indicates the bond must have at least one active member for bond to assert carrier. If the number of active members drops below the `bond-min-links` setting, the bond will appear to upper-level protocols as `link-down`. When the number of active links returns to greater than or equal to `bond-min-links`, the bond will become `link-up`.

See Useful Links below for more details on settings.

To configure the bond, edit `/etc/network/interfaces` and add a stanza for `bond0`:

```
auto bond0
iface bond0
    address 10.0.0.1/30
    bond-slaves swp1 swp2 swp3 swp4
```

However, if you are intending that the bond become part of a bridge, you don't need to specify an IP address. The configuration would look like this:

```
auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves glob swp1-4
```

See `man interfaces` for more information on `/etc/network/interfaces`.

When networking is started on switch, bond0 is created as MASTER and interfaces swp1-swp4 come up in SLAVE mode, as seen in the `ip link show` command:

```
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    master bond0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
4: swp2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    master bond0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
5: swp3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    master bond0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
6: swp4: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    master bond0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

And

```
55: bond0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    state UP mode DEFAULT
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```



All slave interfaces within a bond will have the same MAC address as the bond. Typically, the first slave added to the bond donates its MAC address for the bond. The other slaves' MAC addresses are set to the bond MAC address. The bond MAC address is used as source MAC address for all traffic leaving the bond, and provides a single destination MAC address to address traffic to the bond.

## Hash Distribution

Egress traffic through a bond is distributed to a slave based on a packet hash calculation. This distribution provides load balancing over the slaves. The hash calculation uses packet header data to pick which slave to transmit the packet. For IP traffic, IP header source and destination fields are used in the calculation. For IP + TCP/UDP traffic, source and destination ports are included in the hash calculation. Traffic for a given conversation flow will always hash to the same slave. Many flows will be distributed over all the slaves to load balance the total traffic. In a failover event, the hash calculation is adjusted to steer traffic over available slaves.

## Configuration Files

- /etc/network/interfaces

## Useful Links

- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bonding](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bonding)
- 802.3ad (Accessible writeup)
- Link aggregation from Wikipedia

## Caveats and Errata

- An interface cannot belong to multiple bonds.
- Slave ports within a bond should all be set to the same speed/duplex, and should match the link partner's slave ports.
- A bond cannot enslave VLAN subinterfaces. A bond can have subinterfaces, but not the other way around.

## Ethernet Bridging - VLANs

Ethernet bridges provide a means for hosts to communicate at layer 2. Bridge members can be individual physical interfaces, bonds or logical interfaces that traverse an 802.1Q VLAN trunk. Cumulus Linux does not put all ports into a bridge by default.

Cumulus Linux has a unique method for configuring bridges that are [VLAN-aware \(see page 264\)](#). The bridge driver in Cumulus Linux is capable of VLAN filtering, which allows for configurations that are similar to incumbent network devices. While Cumulus Linux supports Ethernet bridges in traditional mode, Cumulus Networks recommends using [VLAN-aware \(see page 264\)](#) mode.

For a comparison of traditional and VLAN-aware modes, read [this knowledge base article](#).



You can configure both VLAN-aware and traditional mode bridges on the same network in Cumulus Linux; however you should not have more than one VLAN-aware bridge on a given switch.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuration Files (see page 245)
- Commands (see page 245)
- Creating a Bridge between Physical Interfaces (see page 245)
  - Creating the Bridge and Adding Interfaces (see page 246)
  - Showing and Verifying the Bridge Configuration (see page 247)
- Examining MAC Addresses (see page 248)
- Multiple Bridges (see page 249)
- Configuring an SVI (Switch VLAN Interface) (see page 250)
  - Showing and Verifying the Bridge Configuration (see page 252)
- Using Trunks in Traditional Bridging Mode (see page 253)
  - Trunk Example (see page 254)
  - Showing and Verifying the Trunk (see page 255)
  - Additional Examples (see page 255)
- Configuration Files (see page 255)
- Useful Links (see page 255)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 256)

## ***Configuration Files***

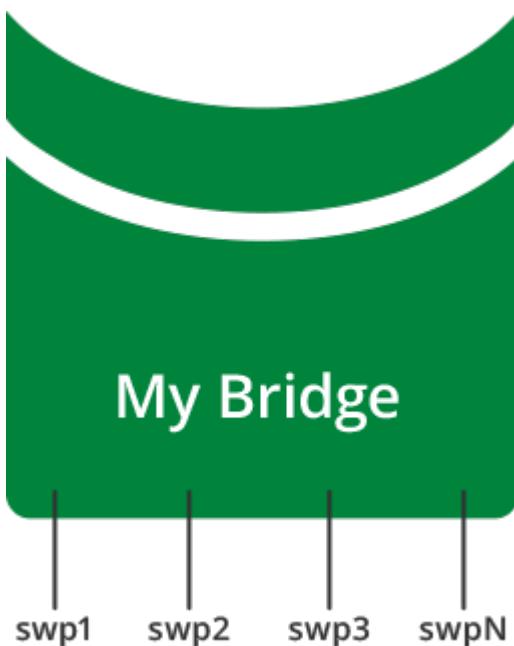
- /etc/network/interfaces

## ***Commands***

- brctl
- bridge
- ip addr
- ip link

## ***Creating a Bridge between Physical Interfaces***

The basic use of bridging is to connect all of the physical and logical interfaces in the system into a single layer 2 domain.



## ***Creating the Bridge and Adding Interfaces***

You statically manage bridge configurations in `/etc/network/interfaces`. The following configuration snippet details an example bridge used throughout this chapter, explicitly enabling [spanning tree \(see page 203\)](#) and setting the bridge MAC address ageing timer. First, create a bridge with a descriptive name of 15 characters or fewer. Then add the logical interfaces (`bond0`) and physical interfaces (`swp5`, `swp6`) to assign to that bridge.

```
auto my_bridge
iface my_bridge
    bridge-ports bond0 swp5 swp6
    bridge-ageing 150
    bridge-stp on
```

Keyword	Explanation
bridge-ports	List of logical and physical ports belonging to the logical bridge.
bridge-ageing	Maximum amount of time before a MAC addresses learned on the bridge expires from the bridge MAC cache. The default value is 300 seconds.
bridge-stp	Enables spanning tree protocol on this bridge. The default spanning tree mode is Per VLAN Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (PVRST). For more information on spanning-tree configurations see the configuration section: <a href="#">Spanning Tree and Rapid Spanning Tree (see page 203)</a> .

To bring up the bridge `my_bridge`, use the `ifreload` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

### Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

To create the bridge and interfaces on the bridge, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addbr my_bridge
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addif my_bridge bond0 swp5 swp6
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl show
bridge name          bridge id      STP enabled    interfaces
my_bridge            8000.44383900129b  yes           bond0
                                         swp5
                                         swp6
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link set up dev my_bridge
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link set up dev bond0
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo for I in {5..6}; do ip link set up dev swp$I; done
```

## Showing and Verifying the Bridge Configuration

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show my_bridge
56: my_bridge: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    state UP mode DEFAULT
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:12:9b brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```



Do not try to bridge the management port, eth0, with any switch ports (like swp0, swp1, and so forth). For example, if you created a bridge with eth0 and swp1, it will **not** work.

Using netshow to Display Bridge Information

`netshow` is a Cumulus Linux tool for retrieving information about your network configuration.

```
cumulus@switch$ netshow interface bridge
      Name      Speed      Mtu      Mode      Summary
      --  -----  -----  -----  -----
UP   my_bridge    N/A      1500  Bridge/L2  Untagged: bond0, swp5-6
                                         Root Port: bond0
                                         VlanID: Untagged
```

## Bridge Interface MAC Address and MTU

A bridge is a logical interface with a MAC address and an [MTU \(see page 171\)](#) (maximum transmission unit). The bridge MTU is the minimum MTU among all its members. The bridge's MAC address is inherited from the first interface that is added to the bridge as a member. The bridge MAC address remains unchanged until the member interface is removed from the bridge, at which point the bridge will inherit from the next member interface, if any. The bridge can also be assigned an IP address, as discussed below.

### Examining MAC Addresses

A bridge forwards frames by looking up the destination MAC address. A bridge learns the source MAC address of a frame when the frame enters the bridge on an interface. After the MAC address is learned, the bridge maintains an age for the MAC entry in the bridge table. The age is refreshed when a frame is seen again with the same source MAC address. When a MAC is not seen for greater than the MAC ageing time, the MAC address is deleted from the bridge table.

The following shows the MAC address table of the example bridge. Notice that the `is local?` column indicates if the MAC address is the interface's own MAC address (`is local` is `yes`), or if it is learned on the interface from a packet's source MAC (where `is local` is `no`):

port	name	mac	addr	is local?	ageing	timer
swp4		06:90:70:22:a6:2e		no	19.47	
swp1		12:12:36:43:6f:9d		no	40.50	
bond0		2a:95:22:94:d1:f0		no	1.98	
swp1		44:38:39:00:12:9b		yes	0.00	
swp2		44:38:39:00:12:9c		yes	0.00	
swp3		44:38:39:00:12:9d		yes	0.00	
swp4		44:38:39:00:12:9e		yes	0.00	
bond0		44:38:39:00:12:9f		yes	0.00	
swp2		90:e2:ba:2c:b1:94		no	12.84	
swp2		a2:84:fe:fc:bf:cd		no	9.43	

You can use the `bridge fdb` command to display the MAC address table as well:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ bridge fdb show
44:38:39:00:12:9c dev swp2 VLAN 0 master bridge-A permanent
44:38:39:00:12:9b dev swp1 VLAN 0 master bridge-A permanent
44:38:39:00:12:9e dev swp4 VLAN 0 master bridge-B permanent
44:38:39:00:12:9d dev swp3 VLAN 0 master bridge-B permanent
```

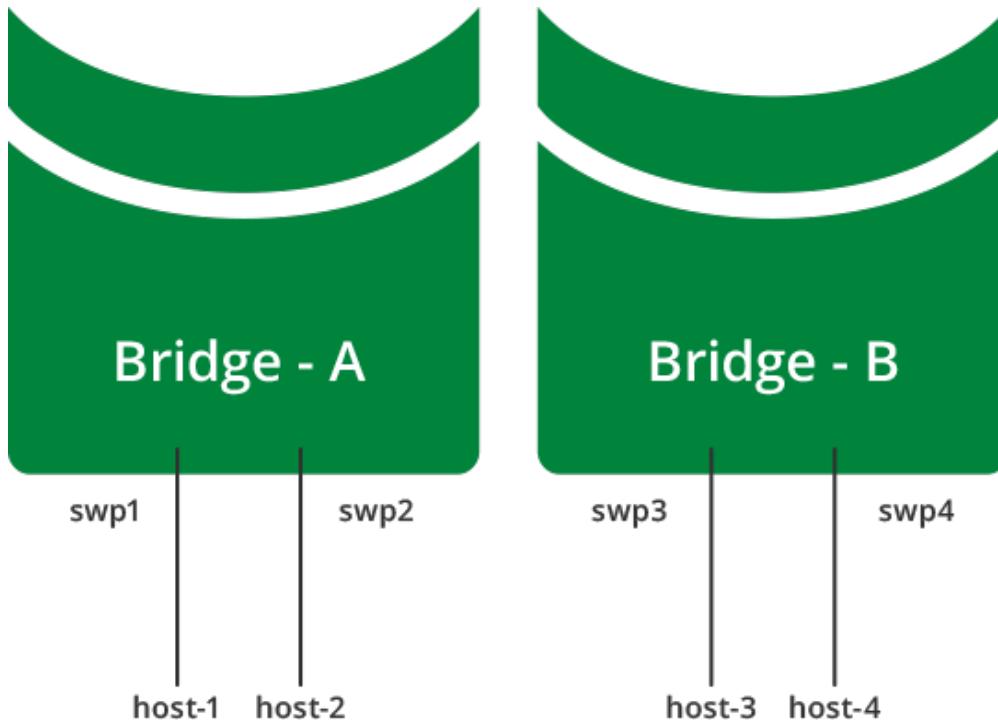


You can clear a MAC address from the table using the `bridge fdb` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bridge fdb del 44:38:39:00:12:9c dev
swp2
```

## Multiple Bridges

Sometimes it is useful to logically divide a switch into multiple layer 2 domains, so that hosts in one domain can communicate with other hosts in the same domain but not in other domains. You can achieve this by configuring multiple bridges and putting different sets of interfaces in the different bridges. In the following example, host-1 and host-2 are connected to the same bridge (bridge-A), while host-3 and host-4 are connected to another bridge (bridge-B). host-1 and host-2 can communicate with each other, so can host-3 and host-4, but host-1 and host-2 cannot communicate with host-3 and host-4.



To configure multiple bridges, edit /etc/network/interfaces:

```

auto bridge-A
iface bridge-A
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2
    bridge-stp on

auto bridge-B
iface bridge-B
    bridge-ports swp3 swp4
    bridge-stp on

```

To bring up the bridges bridge-A and bridge-B, use the ifreload command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addbr bridge-A
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addif bridge-A swp1 swp2
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addbr bridge-B
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addif bridge-B swp3 swp4
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo for I in {1..4}; do ip link set up dev swp$I; done
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link set up dev bridge-A
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link set up dev bridge-B
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl show
  bridge name      bridge id          STP enabled    interfaces
  bridge-A        8000.44383900129b    yes           swp1
                                         swp2
  bridge-B        8000.44383900129d    yes           swp3
                                         swp4
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show bridge-A
97: bridge-A: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
  state UP mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 70:72:cf:9d:4e:35 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show bridge-B
98: bridge-B: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
  state UP mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 70:72:cf:9d:4e:37 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

## Using netshow to Display the Bridges

`netshow` is a Cumulus Linux tool for retrieving information about your network configuration.

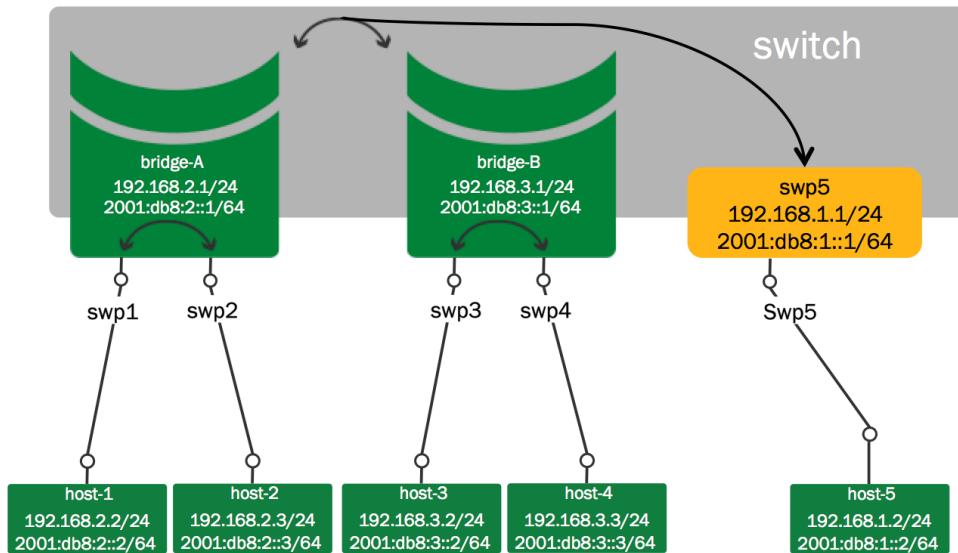
```
cumulus@switch$ netshow interface bridge
  Name      Speed     Mtu     Mode      Summary
  --  -----  -----  -----  -----
UP  bridge-A   N/A     1500   Bridge/L2  Untagged: swp1-2
                                         Root Port: swp2
                                         VlanID: Untagged
UP  bridge-B   N/A     1500   Bridge/L2  Untagged: swp3-4
                                         Root Port: swp3
                                         VlanID: Untagged
```

## Configuring an SVI (Switch VLAN Interface)

A bridge creates a layer 2 forwarding domain for hosts to communicate. A bridge can be assigned an IP address — typically of the same subnet as the hosts that are members of the bridge — and participate in routing topologies. This enables hosts within a bridge to communicate with other hosts outside the bridge through layer 3 routing.



- When an interface is added to a bridge, it ceases to function as a router interface, and the IP address on the interface, if any, becomes unreachable.



The configuration for the two bridges example looks like the following:

```

auto swp5
iface swp5
    address 192.168.1.1/24
    address 2001:db8:1::1/64

auto bridge-A
iface bridge-A
    address 192.168.2.1/24
    address 2001:db8:2::1/64
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2
    bridge-stp on

auto bridge-B
iface bridge-B
    address 192.168.3.1/24
    address 2001:db8:3::1/64
    bridge-ports swp3 swp4
    bridge-stp on

```

To bring up swp5 and bridges bridge-A and bridge-B, use the `ifreload` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

## Showing and Verifying the Bridge Configuration

```
cumulus@switch$ ip addr show bridge-A
106: bridge-A: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    state UP
        link/ether 70:72:cf:9d:4e:35 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        inet 192.168.2.1/24 scope global bridge-A
            inet6 2001:db8:2::1/64 scope global
                valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
                inet6 fe80::7272:ffff:fe9d:4e35/64 scope link
                    valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
cumulus@switch$ ip addr show bridge-B
107: bridge-B: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    state UP
        link/ether 70:72:cf:9d:4e:37 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        inet 192.168.3.1/24 scope global bridge-B
            inet6 2001:db8:3::1/64 scope global
                valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
                inet6 fe80::7272:ffff:fe9d:4e37/64 scope link
                    valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

To see all the routes on the switch use the `ip route show` command:

```
cumulus@switch$ ip route show
192.168.1.0/24 dev swp5 proto kernel scope link src 192.168.1.2 dead
192.168.2.0/24 dev bridge-A proto kernel scope link src 192.168.2.1
192.168.3.0/24 dev bridge-B proto kernel scope link src 192.168.3.1
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)

! A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

To add an IP address to a bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip addr add 192.0.2.101/24 dev bridge-A
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip addr add 192.0.2.102/24 dev bridge-B
```

Using netshow to Display the SVI

netshow is a Cumulus Linux tool for retrieving information about your network configuration.

```
cumulus@switch$ netshow interface bridge
      Name      Speed      Mtu      Mode      Summary
```

UP	bridge-A	N/A	1500	Bridge/L3	IP: 192.168.2.1/24, 2001:db8: 2::1/64	Untagged: swp1-2 Root Port: swp2 VlanID: Untagged
UP	bridge-B	N/A	1500	Bridge/L3	IP: 192.168.3.1/24, 2001:db8: 3::1/64	Untagged: swp3-4 Root Port: swp3 VlanID: Untagged

## Using Trunks in Traditional Bridging Mode

The [IEEE standard](#) for trunking is 802.1Q. The 802.1Q specification adds a 4 byte header within the Ethernet frame that identifies the VLAN of which the frame is a member.

802.1Q also identifies an *untagged* frame as belonging to the *native* VLAN (most network devices default their native VLAN to 1). The concept of native, non-native, tagged or untagged has generated confusion due to mixed terminology and vendor-specific implementations. Some clarification is in order:

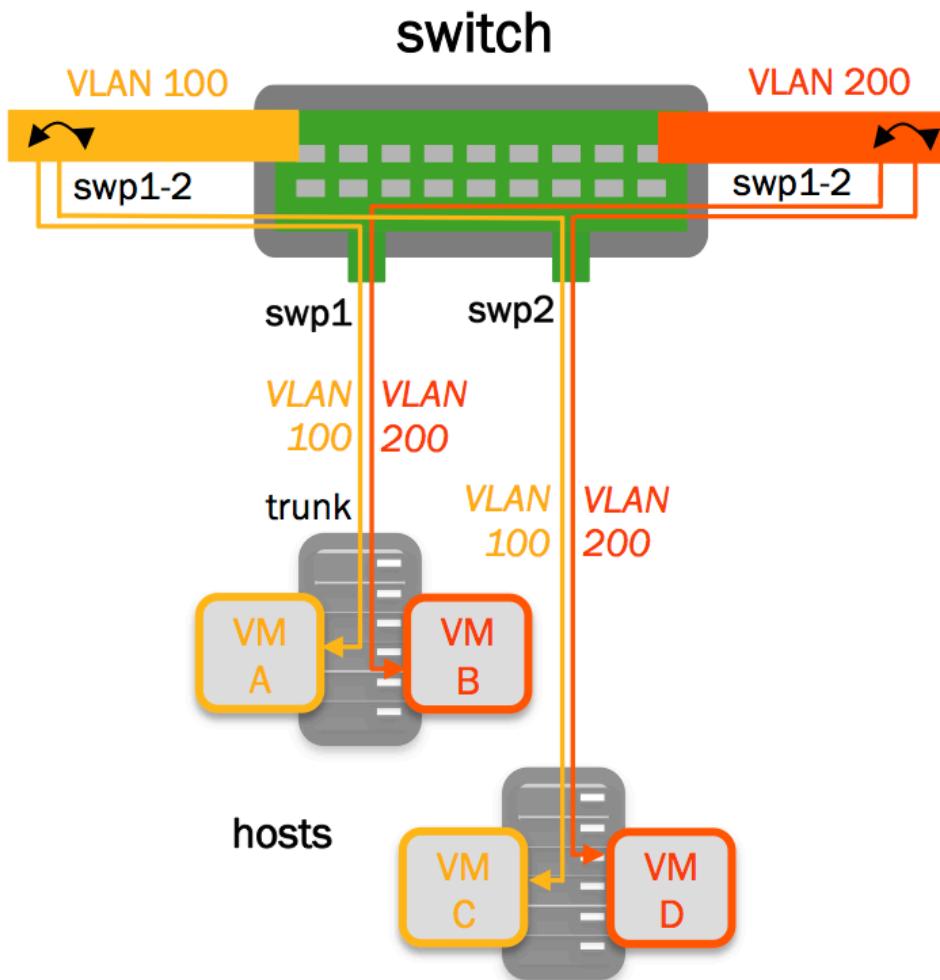
- A *trunk port* is a switch port configured to send and receive 802.1Q tagged frames.
- A switch sending an untagged (bare Ethernet) frame on a trunk port is sending from the native VLAN defined on the trunk port.
- A switch sending a tagged frame on a trunk port is sending to the VLAN identified by the 802.1Q tag.
- A switch receiving an untagged (bare Ethernet) frame on a trunk port places that frame in the native VLAN defined on the trunk port.
- A switch receiving a tagged frame on a trunk port places that frame in the VLAN identified by the 802.1Q tag.

A bridge in traditional mode has no concept of trunks, just tagged or untagged frames. With a trunk of 200 VLANs, there would need to be 199 bridges, each containing a tagged physical interface, and one bridge containing the native untagged VLAN. See the examples below for more information.



The interaction of tagged and un-tagged frames on the same trunk often leads to undesired and unexpected behavior. A switch that uses VLAN 1 for the native VLAN may send frames to a switch that uses VLAN 2 for the native VLAN, thus merging those two VLANs and their spanning tree state.

## Trunk Example



Configure the following in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto br-VLAN100
iface br-VLAN100
    bridge-ports swp1.100 swp2.100
    bridge-stp on
auto br-VLAN200
iface br-VLAN200
    bridge-ports swp1.200 swp2.200
    bridge-stp on
```

To bring up `br-VLAN100` and `br-VLAN200`, use the `ifreload` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

## Showing and Verifying the Trunk

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl show
bridge name bridge id          STP enabled interfaces
br-VLAN100  8000.7072cf9d4e35 yes      swp1.100
                                         swp2.100
br-VLAN200  8000.7072cf9d4e35 yes      swp1.200
                                         swp2.200
```

Using netshow to Display the Trunk

`netshow` is a Cumulus Linux tool for retrieving information about your network configuration.

```
cumulus@switch$ netshow interface bridge
  Name      Speed   Mtu    Mode      Summary
--  -----
UP  br-VLAN100  N/A     1500  Bridge/L2 Tagged: swp1-2
                                         STP: rootSwitch(32768)
                                         VlanID: 100
UP  br-VLAN200  N/A     1500  Bridge/L2 Tagged: swp1-2
                                         STP: rootSwitch(32768)
                                         VlanID: 200
```

## Additional Examples

You can find additional examples of VLAN tagging in [this chapter](#) (see page 256).

## Configuration Files

- `/etc/network/interfaces`
- `/etc/network/interfaces.d/`
- `/etc/network/if-down.d/`
- `/etc/network/if-post-down.d/`
- `/etc/network/if-pre-up.d/`
- `/etc/network/if-up.d/`

## Useful Links

- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge)
- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/vlan](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/vlan)
- [www.linuxjournal.com/article/8172](http://www.linuxjournal.com/article/8172)

## Caveats and Errata

- The same bridge cannot contain multiple subinterfaces of the **same** port as members. Attempting to apply such a configuration will result in an error.
- In environments where both VLAN-aware and traditional bridges are in use, where a traditional bridge has a subinterface of a bond that is present as a normal interface in a VLAN-aware bridge, when the traditional bridge's bond subinterface is brought down, it flaps the bridge.

## VLAN Tagging

This article shows two examples of VLAN tagging, one basic and one more advanced. They both demonstrate the streamlined interface configuration from `ifupdown2`.

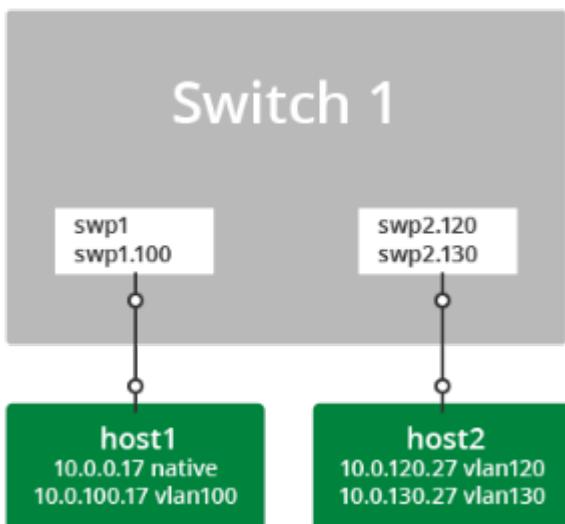
## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- VLAN Tagging, a Basic Example (see page 256)
  - Persistent Configuration (see page 257)
- VLAN Tagging, an Advanced Example (see page 257)
  - Persistent Configuration (see page 258)
  - VLAN Translation (see page 262)

## VLAN Tagging, a Basic Example

A simple configuration demonstrating VLAN tagging involves two hosts connected to a switch.



- *host1* connects to *swp1* with both untagged frames and with 802.1Q frames tagged for *vlan100*.
- *host2* connects to *swp2* with 802.1Q frames tagged for *vlan120* and *vlan130*.

## Persistent Configuration

To configure the above example persistently, edit /etc/network/interfaces like this:

```
# Config for host1

auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp1.100
iface swp1.100

# Config for host2
# swp2 must exist to create the .1Q subinterfaces, but it is not
# assigned an address

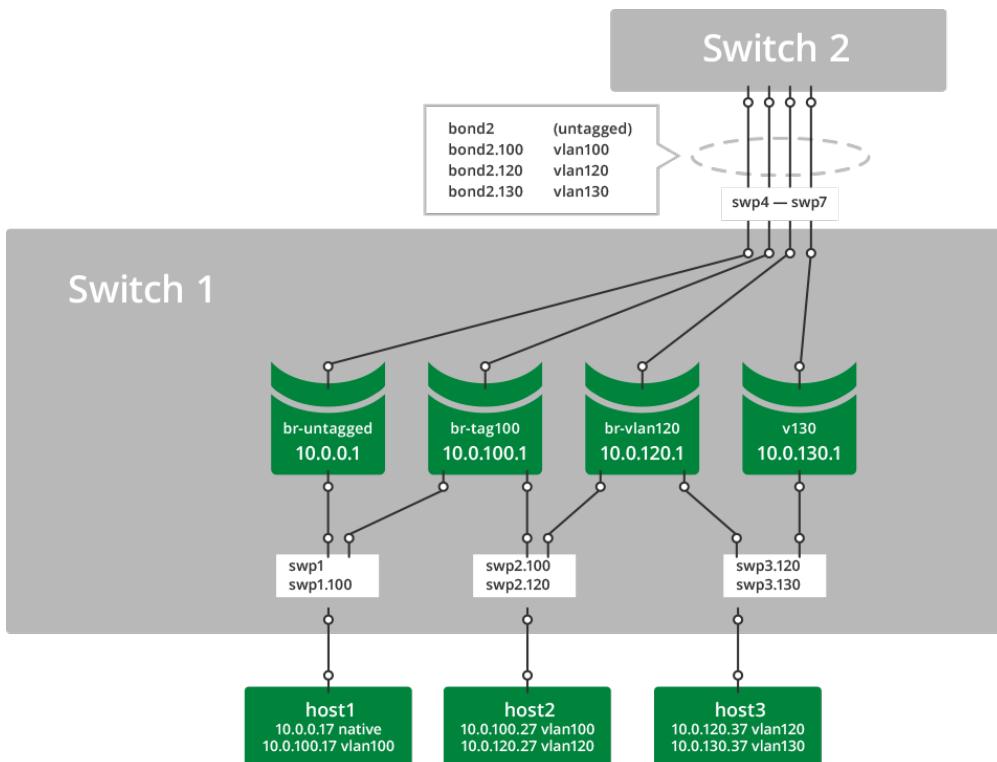
auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp2.120
iface swp2.120

auto swp2.130
iface swp2.130
```

## VLAN Tagging, an Advanced Example

This example of VLAN tagging is more complex, involving three hosts and two switches, with a number of bridges and a bond connecting them all.



- *host1* connects to bridge *br-untagged* with bare Ethernet frames and to bridge *br-tag100* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan100*.
- *host2* connects to bridge *br-tag100* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan100* and to bridge *br-vlan120* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan120*.
- *host3* connects to bridge *br-vlan120* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan120* and to bridge *v130* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan130*.
- *bond2* carries tagged and untagged frames in this example.

Although not explicitly designated, the bridge member ports function as 802.1Q access ports and *trunk ports*. In the example above, comparing Cumulus Linux with a traditional Cisco device:

- *swp1* is equivalent to a trunk port with untagged and *vlan100*.
- *swp2* is equivalent to a trunk port with *vlan100* and *vlan120*.
- *swp3* is equivalent to a trunk port with *vlan120* and *vlan130*.
- *bond2* is equivalent to an EtherChannel in trunk mode with untagged, *vlan100*, *vlan120*, and *vlan130*.
- Bridges *br-untagged*, *br-tag100*, *br-vlan120*, and *v130* are equivalent to SVIs (switched virtual interfaces).

## Persistent Configuration

From /etc/network/interfaces:

```
# Config for host1 -----  
-----  
  
# swp1 does not need an iface section unless it has a specific  
setting,
```



```

bridge-ports swp1.100 swp2.100 bond2.100
bridge-stp on

auto br-vlan120
iface br-vlan120
    address 10.0.120.1/24
    bridge-ports swp2.120 swp3.120 bond2.120
    bridge-stp on

auto v130
iface v130
    address 10.0.130.1/24
    bridge-ports swp3.130 bond2.130
    bridge-stp on
# -----

```

To verify:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showbridge br-tag100
br-tag100 CIST info
  enabled          yes
  bridge id        8.000.44:38:39:00:32:8B
  designated root  8.000.44:38:39:00:32:8B
  regional root   8.000.44:38:39:00:32:8B
  root port       none
  path cost        0           internal path cost  0
  max age          20          bridge max age     20
  forward delay   15          bridge forward delay 15
  tx hold count   6            max hops          20
  hello time      2            ageing time       300
  force protocol version    rstp
  time since topology change 333040s
  topology change count     1
  topology change          no
  topology change port     swp2.100
  last topology change port None

```

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showportdetail br-tag100 | grep -B 2
state
br-tag100:bond2.100 CIST info
  enabled          yes          role
Designated
  port id         8.003        state
forwarding
--
br-tag100:swp1.100 CIST info

```

```

        enabled          yes           role
Designated
    port id       8.001         state
forwarding
--
br-tag100:swp2.100 CIST info
    enabled          yes           role
Designated
    port id       8.002         state
forwarding

```

```

cumulus@switch:~$ cat /proc/net/vlan/config
VLAN Dev name      | VLAN ID
Name-Type: VLAN_NAME_TYPE_RAW_PLUS_VID_NO_PAD
bond2.100          | 100   | bond2
bond2.120          | 120   | bond2
bond2.130          | 130   | bond2
swp1.100          | 100   | swp1
swp2.100          | 100   | swp2
swp2.120          | 120   | swp2
swp3.120          | 120   | swp3
swp3.130          | 130   | swp3

```

```

cumulus@switch:~$ cat /proc/net/bonding/bond2
Ethernet Channel Bonding Driver: v3.7.1 (April 27, 2011)

Bonding Mode: IEEE 802.3ad Dynamic link aggregation
Transmit Hash Policy: layer3+4 (1)
MII Status: up
MII Polling Interval (ms): 100
Up Delay (ms): 0
Down Delay (ms): 0

802.3ad info
LACP rate: fast
Min links: 0
Aggregator selection policy (ad_select): stable
Active Aggregator Info:
    Aggregator ID: 3
    Number of ports: 4
    Actor Key: 33
    Partner Key: 33
    Partner Mac Address: 44:38:39:00:32:cf

Slave Interface: swp4
MII Status: up
Speed: 10000 Mbps
Duplex: full

```

```
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 44:38:39:00:32:8e
Aggregator ID: 3
Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: swp5
MII Status: up
Speed: 10000 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 44:38:39:00:32:8f
Aggregator ID: 3
Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: swp6
MII Status: up
Speed: 10000 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 44:38:39:00:32:90
Aggregator ID: 3
Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: swp7
MII Status: up
Speed: 10000 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 44:38:39:00:32:91
Aggregator ID: 3
Slave queue ID: 0
```



A single bridge cannot contain multiple subinterfaces of the **same** port as members. Attempting to apply such a configuration will result in an error:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addbr another_bridge
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addif another_bridge swp9 swp9.100
0
bridge cannot contain multiple subinterfaces of the same port:
swp9, swp9.100
```

## VLAN Translation

By default, Cumulus Linux does not allow VLAN subinterfaces associated with different VLAN IDs to be part of the same bridge. Base interfaces are not explicitly associated with any VLAN IDs and are exempt from this restriction:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addbr br_mix

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link add link swp10 name swp10.100 type
vlan id 100
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link add link swp11 name swp11.200 type
vlan id 200

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addif br_mix swp10.100 swp11.200
can't add swp11.200 to bridge br_mix: Invalid argument
```

In some cases, it may be useful to relax this restriction. For example, two servers may be connected to the switch using VLAN trunks, but the VLAN numbering provisioned on the two servers are not consistent. You can choose to just bridge two VLAN subinterfaces of different VLAN IDs from the servers. You do this by enabling the `sysctl net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans`. Packets entering a bridge from a member VLAN subinterface will egress another member VLAN subinterface with the VLAN ID translated.



A bridge in [VLAN-aware mode \(see page 264\)](#) cannot have VLAN translation enabled for it; only bridges configured in traditional mode can utilize VLAN translation.

The following example enables the VLAN translation `sysctl`:

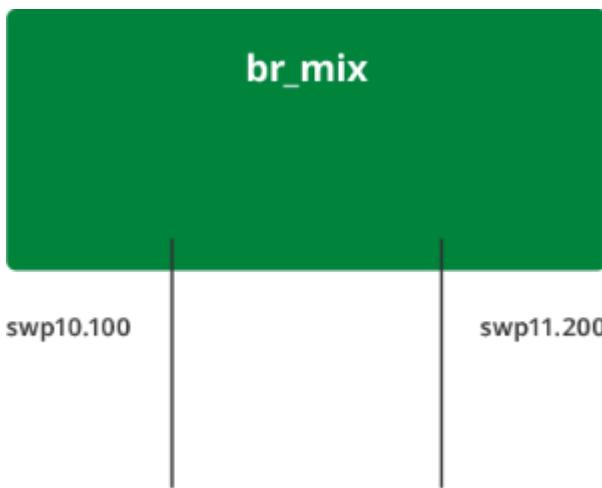
```
cumulus@switch:~$ echo net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans = 1 | 
sudo tee /etc/sysctl.d/multiple_vlans.conf
net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans = 1
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo sysctl -p /etc/sysctl.d/multiple_vlans.conf
net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans = 1
```

If the `sysctl` is enabled and you want to disable it, run the above example, setting the `sysctl net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans` to `0`.

Once the `sysctl` is enabled, ports with different VLAN IDs can be added to the same bridge. In the following example, packets entering the bridge `br_mix` from `swp10.100` will be bridged to `swp11.200` with the VLAN ID translated from 100 to 200:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addif br_mix swp10.100 swp11.200

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl show br_mix
bridge name      bridge id          STP enabled     interfaces
br_mix           8000.4438390032bd    yes            swp10.100
                                         swp11.200
```



## VLAN-aware Bridge Mode for Large-scale Layer 2 Environments

Cumulus Linux bridge driver supports two configuration modes, one that is VLAN-aware, and one that follows a more traditional Linux bridge model.

For traditional Linux bridges, the kernel supports VLANs in the form of VLAN subinterfaces. Enabling bridging on multiple VLANs means configuring a bridge for each VLAN and, for each member port on a bridge, creating one or more VLAN subinterfaces out of that port. This mode poses scalability challenges in terms of configuration size as well as boot time and run time state management, when the number of ports times the number of VLANs becomes large.

The VLAN-aware mode in Cumulus Linux implements a configuration model for large-scale L2 environments, with **one single instance** of Spanning Tree (see page 203). Each physical bridge member port is configured with the list of allowed VLANs as well as its port VLAN ID (either PVID or native VLAN — see below). MAC address learning, filtering and forwarding are *VLAN-aware*. This significantly reduces the configuration size, and eliminates the large overhead of managing the port/VLAN instances as subinterfaces, replacing them with lightweight VLAN bitmaps and state updates.



You can configure both VLAN-aware and traditional mode bridges on the same network in Cumulus Linux; however you should not have more than one VLAN-aware bridge on a given switch.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Defining VLAN-aware Bridge Attributes (see page 265)
- Basic Trunking (see page 265)
- VLAN Filtering/VLAN Pruning (see page 266)
- Untagged/Access Ports (see page 266)
  - Dropping Untagged Frames (see page 267)
- VLAN Layer 3 Addressing - Switch Virtual Interfaces and other VLAN Attributes (see page 268)
- Using the glob Keyword to Configure Multiple Ports in a Range (see page 269)
- Example Configuration with Access Ports and Pruned VLANs (see page 269)

- Example Configuration with Bonds (see page 270)
- Converting a Traditional Bridge to VLAN-aware or Vice Versa (see page 272)
- VXLANs with VLAN-aware Bridges (see page 272)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 273)

## Defining VLAN-aware Bridge Attributes

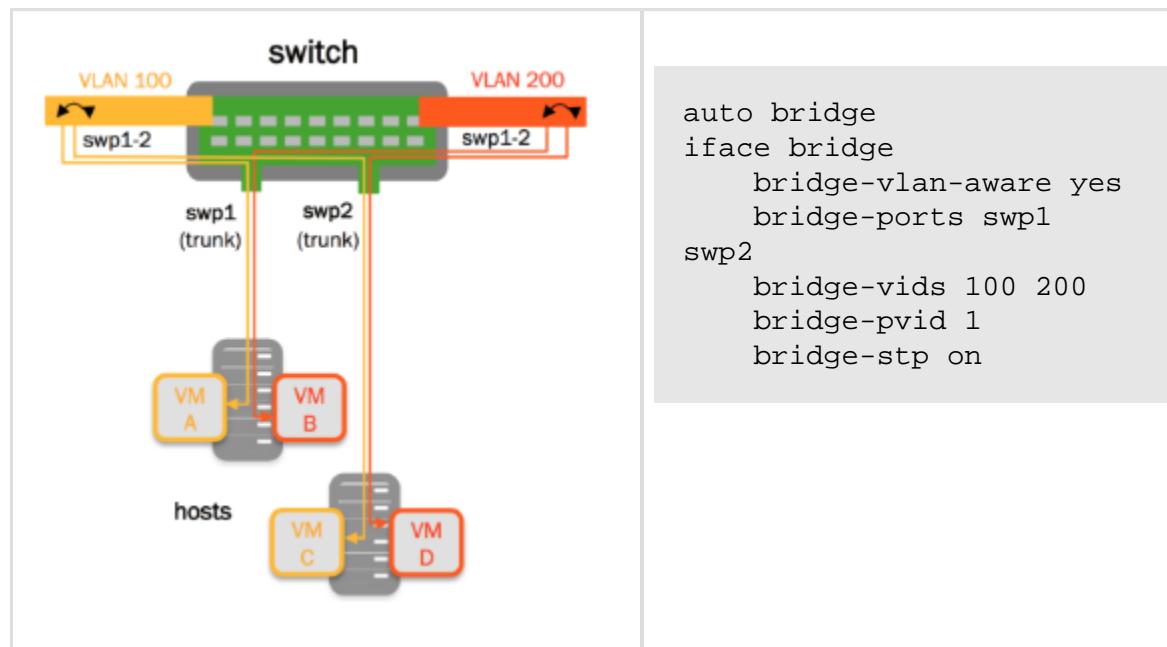
To configure a VLAN-aware bridge, include the `bridge-vlan-aware` attribute, setting it to `yes`. Name the bridge `bridge` to help ensure it is the only VLAN-aware bridge on the switch. The following attributes are useful for configuring VLAN-aware bridges:

- `bridge-vlan-aware`: Set to `yes` to indicate that the bridge is in VLAN-aware mode.
- `bridge-pvid`: A PVID is the bridge's *Primary VLAN Identifier*. The PVID defaults to 1; specifying the PVID identifies that VLAN as the native VLAN.
- `bridge-vids`: A VID is the *VLAN Identifier*, which declares the VLANs associated with this bridge.
- `bridge-access`: Declares the physical switch port as an *access port*. Access ports ignore all tagged packets; put all untagged packets into the `bridge-pvid`.
- `bridge-allow-untagged`: When set to `no`, it drops any untagged frames for a given switch port.

For a definitive list of bridge attributes, run `ifquery --syntax-help` and look for the entries under **bridge**, **bridgevlan** and **mstpclt**.

## Basic Trunking

A basic configuration for a VLAN-aware bridge configured for STP that contains two switch ports looks like this:



The above configuration actually includes 3 VLANs: the tagged VLANs 100 and 200 and the untagged (native) VLAN of 1.



The `bridge-pvid 1` is implied by default. You do not have to specify `bridge-pvid`. And while it does not hurt the configuration, it helps other users for readability.

The following configurations are identical to each other and the configuration above:

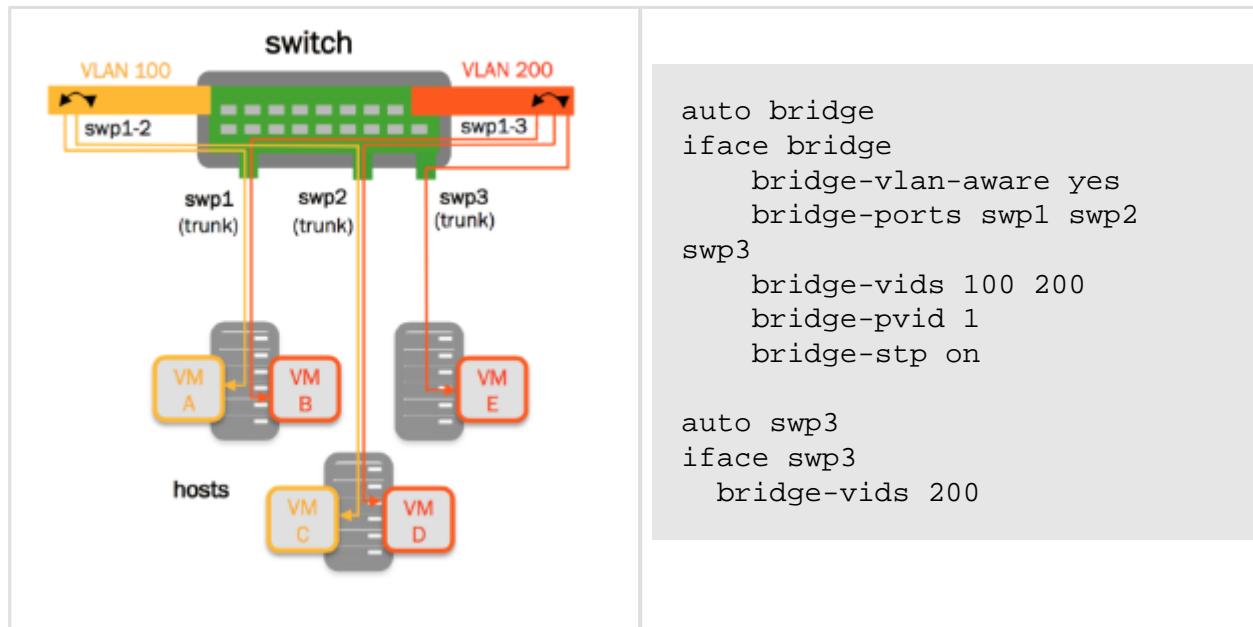
```
auto bridge
iface bridge
  bridge-vlan-
  aware yes
  bridge-ports
  swp1 swp2
  bridge-vids
  1 100 200
  bridge-stp on
```

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
  bridge-vlan-
  aware yes
  bridge-ports
  swp1 swp2
  bridge-vids
  1 100 200
  bridge-pvid 1
  bridge-stp on
```

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
  bridge-vlan-
  aware yes
  bridge-ports
  swp1 swp2
  bridge-vids
  100 200
  bridge-stp on
```

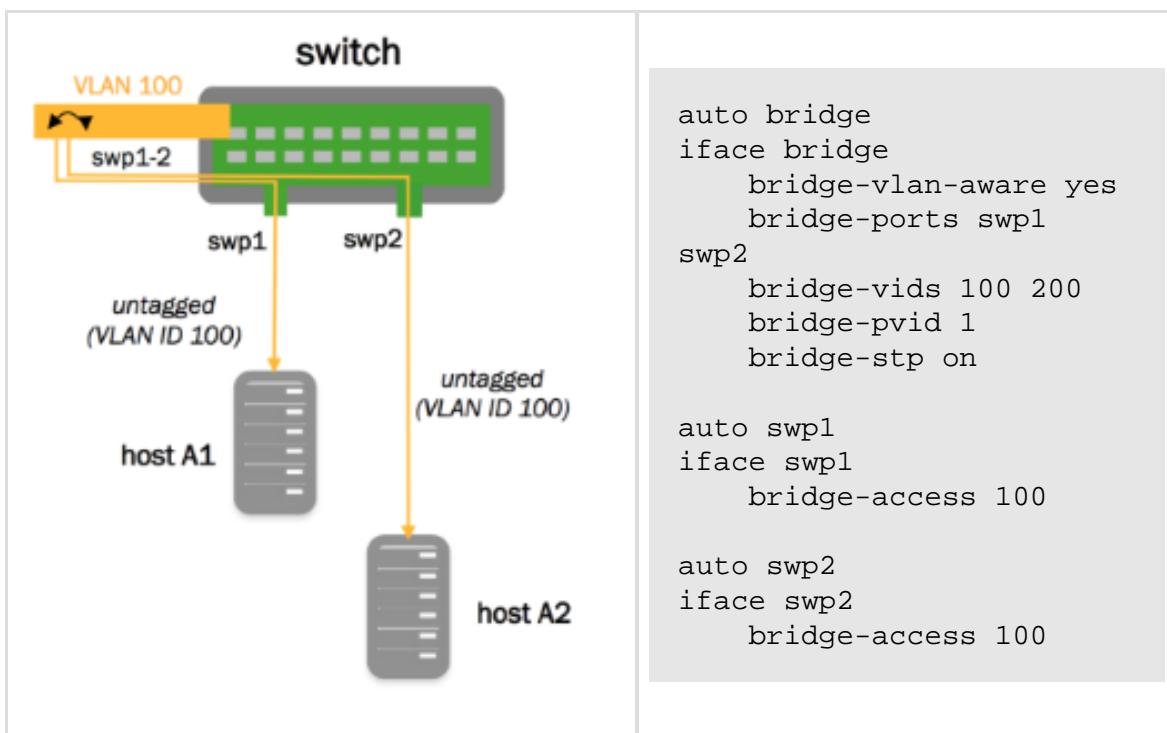
## VLAN Filtering/VLAN Pruning

By default, the bridge port inherits the bridge VIDs. A port's configuration can override the bridge VIDs. Do this by specifying port-specific VIDs using the `bridge-vids` attribute.



## Untagged/Access Ports

As described above, access ports ignore all tagged packets. In the configuration below, `swp1` and `swp2` are configured as access ports. All untagged traffic goes to the specified VLAN, which is VLAN 100 in the example below.



## Dropping Untagged Frames

With VLAN-aware bridge mode, it's possible to configure a switch port so it drops any untagged frames. To do this, add `bridge-allow-untagged no` under the switch port stanza in `/etc/network/interfaces`. This leaves the bridge port without a PVID and drops untagged packets.

Consider the following example bridge:

```

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports swp1 swp9
    bridge-vids 2-100
    bridge-pvid 101
    bridge-stp on

```

Here is the VLAN membership for that configuration:

```

cumulus@switch$ bridge -c vlan show
portvlan ids
swp1 101 PVID Egress Untagged
2-100

swp9 101 PVID Egress Untagged
2-100

bridge 101

```

To configure swp9 to drop untagged frames, add `bridge-allow-untagged no`:

```
auto swp9
iface swp9
  bridge-allow-untagged no
```

When you check VLAN membership for that port, it shows that there is **no** untagged VLAN.

```
cumulus@switch$ bridge -c vlan show
portvlan ids
swp1 101 PVID Egress Untagged
  2-100

swp9 2-100

bridge 101
```

## **VLAN Layer 3 Addressing - Switch Virtual Interfaces and other VLAN Attributes**

When configuring the VLAN attributes for the bridge, put the attributes in a separate stanza for each VLAN interface: `<bridge>.<vlanid>`. If you are configuring the SVI for the native VLAN, you must declare the native VLAN in its own stanza and specify its IP address. Specifying the IP address in the bridge stanza itself returns an error.

```
auto bridge.100
iface bridge.100
  address 192.168.10.1/24
  address 2001:db8::1/32
  hwaddress 44:38:39:ff:00:00

# 12 attributes
auto bridge.100
vlan bridge.100
  bridge-igmp-querier-src 172.16.101.1
```



The `vlan` object type in the l2 attributes section above is used to specify layer 2 VLAN attributes only. Currently, the only supported layer 2 VLAN attribute is `bridge-igmp-querier-src`.

However, if your switch is configured for multicast routing, then you do not need to specify `bridge-igmp-querier-src`, as there is no need for a static IGMP querier configuration on the switch. Otherwise, the static IGMP querier configuration helps to probe the hosts to refresh their IGMP reports.

You can specify a range of VLANs as well. For example:

```
auto bridge.[1-2000]
vlan bridge.[1-2000]
    ATTRIBUTE VALUE
```

## **Using the `glob` Keyword to Configure Multiple Ports in a Range**

The `glob` keyword referenced in the `bridge-ports` attribute indicates that `swp1` through `swp52` are part of the bridge, which is a short cut that saves you from enumerating each port individually:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports glob swp1-52
    bridge-stp on
    bridge-vids 310 700 707 712 850 910
```

## **Example Configuration with Access Ports and Pruned VLANs**

The following example contains an access port and a switch port that is *pruned*; that is, it only sends and receives traffic tagged to and from a specific set of VLANs declared by the `bridge-vids` attribute. It also contains other switch ports that send and receive traffic from all the defined VLANs.

```
# ports swp3-swp48 are trunk ports which inherit vlans from the 'bridge'
#
# ie vlans 310,700,707,712,850,910
#
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports glob swp1-52
    bridge-stp on
    bridge-vids 310 700 707 712 850 910

auto swp1
iface swp1
    mstpctl-portadminedge yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    bridge-access 310

# The following is a trunk port that is "pruned".
# native vlan is 1, but only .1q tags of 707, 712, 850 are
# sent and received
#
auto swp2
iface swp2
    mstpctl-portadminedge yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
```

```

bridge-vids 707 712 850

# The following port is the trunk uplink and inherits all vlans
# from 'bridge'; bridge assurance is enabled using 'portnetwork'
attribute
auto swp49
iface swp49
    mstpctl-portpathcost 10
    mstpctl-portnetwork yes

# The following port is the trunk uplink and inherits all vlans
# from 'bridge'; bridge assurance is enabled using 'portnetwork'
attribute
auto swp50
iface swp50
    mstpctl-portpathcost 0
    mstpctl-portnetwork yes

```

## ***Example Configuration with Bonds***

This configuration demonstrates a VLAN-aware bridge with a large set of bonds. The bond configurations are generated from a [Mako](#) template.

```

#
# vlan-aware bridge with bonds example
#
# uplink1, peerlink and downlink are bond interfaces.
# 'bridge' is a vlan aware bridge with ports uplink1, peerlink
# and downlink (swp2-20).
#
# native vlan is by default 1
#
# 'bridge-vids' attribute is used to declare vlans.
# 'bridge-pvid' attribute is used to specify native vlans if other
than 1
# 'bridge-access' attribute is used to declare access port
#
auto lo
iface lo

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# bond interface
auto uplink1
iface uplink1
    bond-slaves swp32
    bridge-vids 2000-2079

# bond interface

```

```

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp30 swp31
    bridge-vids 2000-2079 4094

# bond interface
auto downlink
iface downlink
    bond-slaves swp1
    bridge-vids 2000-2079

#
# Declare vlans for all swp ports
# swp2-20 get vlans from 2004 to 2022.
# The below uses mako templates to generate iface sections
# with vlans for swp ports
#
%for port, vlanid in zip(range(2, 20), range(2004, 2022)) :
    auto swp${port}
    iface swp${port}
        bridge-vids ${vlanid}

%endfor

# svi vlan 4094
auto bridge.4094
iface bridge.4094
    address 11.100.1.252/24

# 12 attributes for vlan 4094
auto bridge.4094
vlan bridge.4094
    bridge-igmp-querier-src 172.16.101.1

#
# vlan-aware bridge
#
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports uplink1 peerlink downlink glob swp2-20
    bridge-stp on

# svi peerlink vlan
auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 192.168.10.1/30
    broadcast 192.168.10.3

```

## Converting a Traditional Bridge to VLAN-aware or Vice Versa

You cannot automatically convert a traditional bridge to/from a VLAN-aware bridge simply by changing the configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file. If you need to change the mode for a bridge, do the following:

1. Delete the traditional mode bridge from the configuration and bring down all its member switch port interfaces.
2. Create a new VLAN-aware bridge, as described above.
3. Bring up the bridge.

These steps assume you are converting a traditional mode bridge to a VLAN-aware one. To do the opposite, delete the VLAN-aware bridge in step 1, and create a new traditional mode bridge in step 2.

## VXLANs with VLAN-aware Bridges

Cumulus Linux 3.1 supports using VXLANs with VLAN-aware bridge configuration, providing improved scalability, as multiple VXLANs can be added to a single VLAN-aware bridge. A 1:1 association is used between the VXLAN VNI and the VLAN, using the `bridge0access` VLAN definition on the VXLAN, and the VLAN membership definition on the local bridge member interfaces.

The configuration examples below show the differences between a VXLAN configured for traditional bridge mode and one configured for VLAN-aware mode.



The current tested scale limit for Cumulus Linux 3.1 is 512 VNIs.

The following configuration uses head end replication (HER) along with the VLAN-aware bridge to map VLANs to VNIs.

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.35.0.10/32

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports uplink regex vni.*
    bridge-stp on
    bridge-vids 1-100
    bridge-pvid 1

auto vni-10000
iface vni-10000
    alias CUSTOMER X VLAN 10
    vxlan-id 10000
    bridge-access 10
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.35.0.10
    vxlan-remoteip 10.35.0.34
    mstpcctl-bpduguard yes
```

```
mstpctl -portbpdufilter yes
```



The VLAN translation between different bridge member interfaces is not supported in Cumulus Linux 3.1. If VLAN translation is required, configure the VXLANS using traditional bridge mode.

## Caveats and Errata

- **STP:** Because Spanning Tree and Rapid Spanning Tree (see page 203) (STP) are enabled on a per-bridge basis, VLAN-aware mode essentially supports a single instance of STP across all VLANs. A common practice when using a single STP instance for all VLANs is to define all every VLAN on each switch in the spanning tree instance. `mstp`d continues to be the user space protocol daemon, and Cumulus Linux supports RSTP.
- **IGMP snooping:** IGMP snooping and group membership are supported on a per-VLAN basis, though the IGMP snooping configuration (including enable/disable, mrouter port and so forth) are defined on a per-bridge port basis.
- **Reserved VLAN range:** For hardware data plane internal operations, the switching silicon requires VLANs for every physical port, Linux bridge, and layer 3 subinterface. Cumulus Linux reserves a range of 1000 VLANs by default; this range is 3000-3999. In case any of your user-defined VLANs conflict with the default reserved range, you can modify the range, as long as the new range is a contiguous set of VLANs with IDs anywhere between 2 and 4094, and the minimum size of the range is 300 VLANs:
  1. Edit `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`, uncomment `resv_vlan_range` and specify the new range.
  2. Restart `switchd` (see page 141) (`sudo systemctl restart switchd.service`) for the new range to take effect.



While restarting `switchd`, all running ports will flap and forwarding will be interrupted (see page 141).

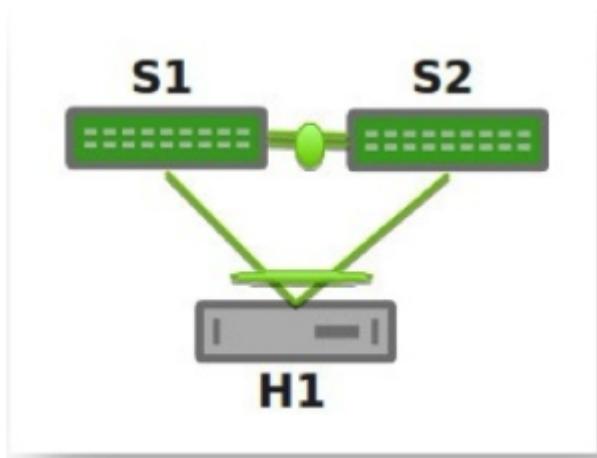
- **VLAN translation:** A bridge in VLAN-aware mode cannot have VLAN translation enabled for it; only bridges configured in [traditional mode \(see page 244\)](#) can utilize VLAN translation.

## Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation - MLAG

Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation, or MLAG, enables a server or switch with a two-port bond (such as a link aggregation group/LAG, EtherChannel, port group, or trunk) to connect those ports to different switches and operate as if they are connected to a single, logical switch. This provides greater redundancy and greater system throughput.

Dual-connected devices can create LACP bonds that contain links to each physical switch. Thus, active-active links from the dual-connected devices are supported even though they are connected to two different physical switches.

A basic setup looks like this:



The two switches, S1 and S2, known as *peer switches*, cooperate so that they appear as a single device to host H1's bond. H1 distributes traffic between the two links to S1 and S2 in any manner that you configure on the host. Similarly, traffic inbound to H1 can traverse S1 or S2 and arrive at H1.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- MLAG Requirements (see page 275)
- LACP and Dual-Connectedness (see page 276)
- Understanding Switch Roles (see page 277)
- Configuring MLAG (see page 277)
  - Reserved MAC Address Range (see page 278)
  - Configuring the Host or Switch (see page 278)
  - Configuring the Interfaces (see page 278)
  - Example MLAG Configuration (see page 279)
  - Configuring MLAG with a Traditional Mode Bridge (see page 283)
  - Using the clagd Command Line Interface (see page 283)
- Peer Link Interfaces and the protodown State (see page 284)
  - Specifying a Backup Link (see page 284)
- Monitoring Dual-Connected Peers (see page 287)
- Configuring Layer 3 Routed Uplinks (see page 288)
- IGMP Snooping with MLAG (see page 288)
- Monitoring the Status of the clagd Service (see page 289)
- MLAG Best Practices (see page 290)
  - Understanding MTU in an MLAG Configuration (see page 290)
  - Sizing the Peerlink (see page 290)
- STP Interoperability with MLAG (see page 291)
  - Debugging STP with MLAG (see page 291)
  - Best Practices for STP with MLAG (see page 292)

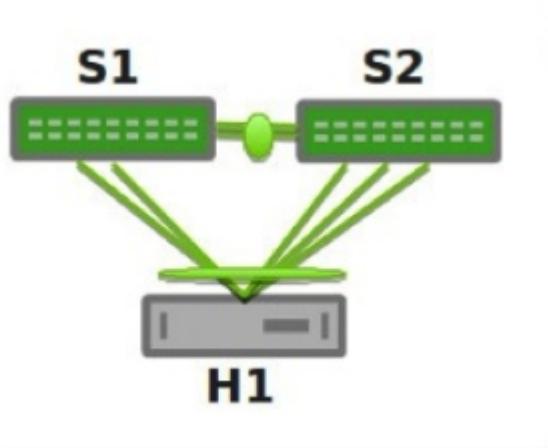
- Troubleshooting MLAG (see page 292)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 293)
- Configuration Files (see page 293)

## MLAG Requirements

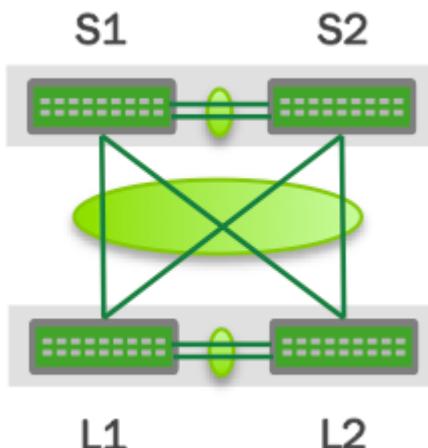
MLAG has these requirements:

- There must be a direct connection between the two peer switches implementing MLAG (S1 and S2). This is typically a bond for increased reliability and bandwidth.
- There must be only two peer switches in one MLAG configuration, but you can have multiple configurations in a network for *switch-to-switch MLAG* (see below).
- The peer switches implementing MLAG must be running Cumulus Linux version 2.5 or later.
- You must specify a unique `c1ag-id` for every dual-connected bond on each peer switch; the value must be between 1 and 65535 and must be the same on both peer switches in order for the bond to be considered *dual-connected*.
- The dual-connected devices (hosts or switches) must use LACP (IEEE 802.3ad/802.1ax) to form the bond. The peer switches must also use LACP.

More elaborate configurations are also possible. The number of links between the host and the switches can be greater than two, and does not have to be symmetrical:



Additionally, since S1 and S2 appear as a single switch to other bonding devices, pairs of MLAG switches can also be connected to each other in a switch-to-switch MLAG setup:

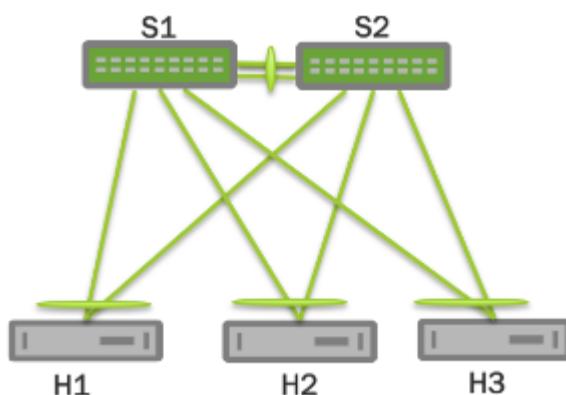


In this case, L1 and L2 are also MLAG peer switches, and thus present a two-port bond from a single logical system to S1 and S2. S1 and S2 do the same as far as L1 and L2 are concerned. For a switch-to-switch MLAG configuration, each switch pair must have a unique system MAC address. In the above example, switches L1 and L2 each have the same system MAC address configured. Switch pair S1 and S2 each have the same system MAC address configured; however, it is a different system MAC address than the one used by the switch pair L1 and L2.

### **LACP and Dual-Connectedness**

In order for MLAG to operate correctly, the peer switches must know which links are *dual-connected*, or are connected to the same host or switch. To do this, specify a `c1ag-id` for every dual-connected bond on each peer switch; the `c1ag-id` must be the same for the corresponding bonds on both peer switches. [Link Aggregation Control Protocol \(LACP\)](#), the IEEE standard protocol for managing bonds, is used for verifying dual-connectedness. LACP runs on the dual-connected device and on each of the peer switches. On the dual-connected device, the only configuration requirement is to create a bond that will be managed by LACP.

On each of the peer switches the links connected to the dual-connected host or switch must be placed in the bond. This is true even if the links are a single port on each peer switch, where each port is placed into a bond, as shown below:



All of the dual-connected bonds on the peer switches have their system ID set to the MLAG system ID. Therefore, from the point of view of the hosts, each of the links in its bond is connected to the same system, and so the host will use both links.

Each peer switch periodically makes a list of the LACP partner MAC addresses of all of their bonds and sends that list to its peer (using the `c1agd` service; see below). The LACP partner MAC address is the MAC address of the system at the other end of a bond, which in the figure above would be hosts H1, H2 and H3. When a switch receives this list from its peer, it compares the list to the LACP partner MAC addresses on its switch. If any matches are found and the `c1ag-id` for those bonds match, then that bond is a dual-connected bond. You can also find the LACP partner MAC address in the `/sys/class/net/<bondname>/bonding/ad_partner_mac sysfs` file for each bond.

## **Understanding Switch Roles**

Each MLAG-enabled switch in the pair has a role. When the peering relationship is established between the two switches, one switch will be in *primary* role, and the other one will be in *secondary* role. When an MLAG-enabled switch is in the secondary role, it does not send STP BPDUs on dual-connected links; it only sends BPDUs on single-connected links. The switch in the primary role sends STP BPDUs on all single- and dual-connected links.

<b>Send BPDUs</b>	<b>Primary</b>	<b>Secondary</b>
Single-connected links	Yes	Yes
Dual-connected links	Yes	No

By default, the role is determined by comparing the MAC addresses of the two sides of the peering link; the switch with the lower MAC address assumes the primary role. You can override this by setting the priority configuration, either by specifying the `c1agd-priority` option in `/etc/network/interfaces`, or by using `c1agct1`. The switch with the lower priority value is given the primary role; the default value is 32768, and the range is 0 to 65535. Read the `c1agd(8)` and `c1agct1(8)` man pages for more information.

When the `c1agd` service is exited during switch reboot or the service is stopped in the primary switch, the peer switch that is in the secondary role will become primary. If the primary switch goes down without stopping the `c1agd` service for any reason or the peer link goes down, the secondary switch will **not** change its role. In case the peer switch is determined to be not alive, the switch in the secondary role will roll back the LACP system ID to be the bond interface MAC address instead of the `c1agd-sys-mac` and the switch in primary role uses the `c1agd-sys-mac` as the LACP system ID on the bonds.

## **Configuring MLAG**

Configuring MLAG involves:

- On the dual-connected devices, create a bond that uses LACP.
- On each peer switch, configure the interfaces, including bonds, VLANs, bridges and peer links.



MLAG synchronizes the dynamic state between the two peer switches, but it does not synchronize the switch configurations. After modifying the configuration of one peer switch, you must make the same changes to the configuration on the other peer switch. This applies to all configuration changes, including:

- Port configuration: For example, VLAN membership, [MTU \(see page 290\)](#), and bonding parameters.
- Bridge configuration: For example, spanning tree parameters or bridge properties.
- Static address entries: For example, static FDB entries and static IGMP entries.

- QoS configuration: For example, ACL entries.

You can verify the configuration of VLAN membership using the `clagctl -v verifyvlans` command.

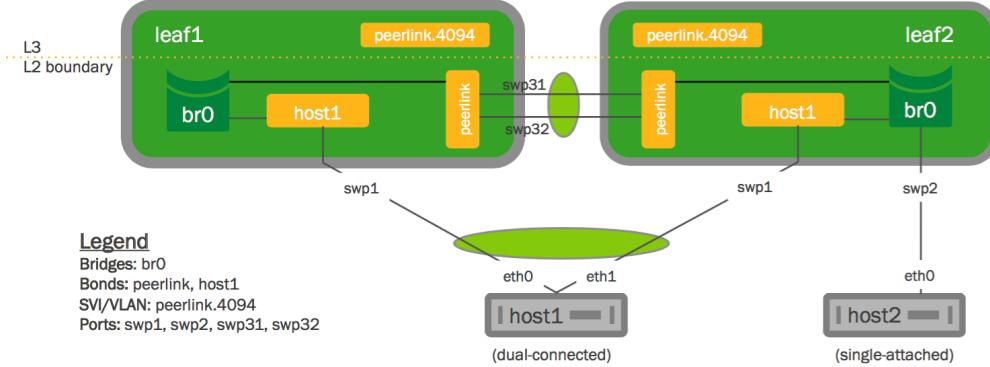
## Reserved MAC Address Range

In order to prevent MAC address conflicts with other interfaces in the same bridged network, Cumulus Networks has **reserved a range of MAC addresses** specifically to use with MLAG. This range of MAC addresses is 44:38:39:ff:00:00 to 44:38:39:ff:ff:ff.

Cumulus Networks recommends you use this range of MAC addresses when configuring MLAG.

## Configuring the Host or Switch

On your dual-connected device, create a bond that uses LACP. The method you use varies with the type of device you are configuring. The following image is a basic MLAG configuration, showing all the essential elements; a more detailed two-leaf/two-spine configuration is [below \(see page \)](#).



## Configuring the Interfaces

Every interface that connects to the MLAG pair from a dual-connected device should be placed into a **bond** ([see page 241](#)), even if the bond contains only a single link on a single physical switch (since the MLAG pair contains two or more links). Layer 2 data travels over this bond. In the examples throughout this chapter, **peerlink** is the name of the bond.

Single-attached hosts, also known as *orphan ports*, can be just a member of the bridge.

Additionally, the fast mode of LACP should be configured on the bond to allow more timely updates of the LACP state. These bonds will then be placed in a bridge, which will include the peer link between the switches.

In order to enable communication between the `clagd` services on the peer switches, you should choose an unused VLAN (also known as a *switched virtual interface* or *SVI* here) and assign an unrouteable link-local address to give the peer switches layer 3 connectivity between each other. To ensure that the VLAN is completely independent of the bridge and spanning tree forwarding decisions, configure the VLAN as a VLAN subinterface on the peer link bond rather than the VLAN-aware bridge. Cumulus Networks recommends you use 4094 for the peer link VLAN (`peerlink.4094` below) if possible. In addition, to avoid issues with STP, make sure you include untagged traffic on the peer link.

You can also specify a backup interface, which is any layer 3 backup interface for your peer links in the event that the peer link goes down. [See below \(see page 284\)](#) for more information about the backup link.

For example, if peerlink is the inter-chassis bond, and VLAN 4094 is the peer link VLAN, configure `peerlink.4094` using:

```
auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.1/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
    clagd-backup-ip 192.0.2.50
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:94
```

Then run `ifup` on the peer link VLAN interface. In this example, the command would be `sudo ifup peerlink.4094`.

There is no need to add VLAN 4094 to the bridge VLAN list, as it is unnecessary there.



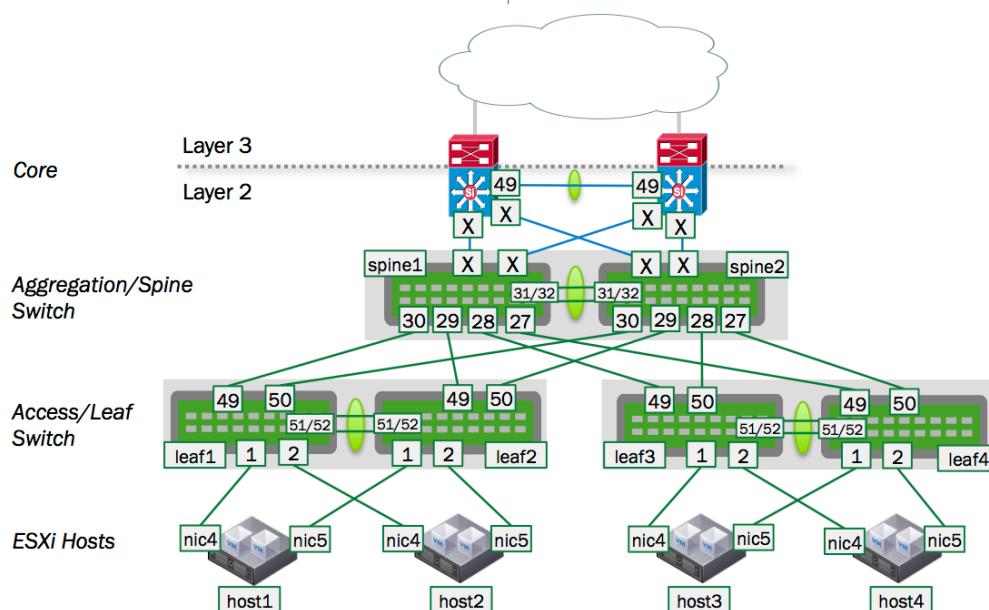
Keep in mind that when you change the MLAG configuration in the `interfaces` file, the changes take effect when you bring the peer link interface up with `ifup`. Do **not** use `systemctl restart clagd.service` to apply the new configuration.



Do not use 169.254.0.1 as the MLAG peerlink IP address, as Cumulus Linux uses this address exclusively for BGP unnumbered (see page 474) interfaces.

## Example MLAG Configuration

An example configuration is included below. It configures two bonds for MLAG, each with a single port, a peer link that is a bond with two member ports, and three VLANs on each port. You store the configuration in `/etc/network/interfaces` on each peer switch.



Configuring these interfaces uses syntax from `ifupdown2` and the [VLAN-aware bridge driver mode](#) (see page 264). The bridges use these Cumulus Linux-specific keywords:

- `bridge-vids`, which defines the allowed list of tagged 802.1q VLAN IDs for all bridge member interfaces. You can specify non-contiguous ranges with a space-separated list, like `bridge-vids 100-200 300 400-500`.
- `bridge-pvid`, which defines the untagged VLAN ID for each port. This is commonly referred to as the *native VLAN*.

The bridge configurations below indicate that each bond carries tagged frames on VLANs 1000 to 3000 but untagged frames on VLAN 1. Also, take note on how you configure the VLAN subinterface used for `clagd` communication (`peerlink.4094` in the sample configuration below).



At minimum, this VLAN subinterface should not be in your Layer 2 domain, and you should give it a very high VLAN ID (up to 4094). Read more about the [range of VLAN IDs you can use \(see page 273\)](#).

The configuration for the spines should look like the following (note that the `clag-id` and `clagd-sys-mac` must be the same for the corresponding bonds on spine1 and spine2):

spine1

```
# The loopback network
interface auto lo
iface lo
inet loopback

# The primary network
interface
auto eth0
iface eth0
    address 10.0.0.1
    netmask 255.255.255.0

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp31 swp32

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.255.1
    netmask 255.255.255.0
    clagd-priority 4096
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.255.2
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.2
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:ff:00:01

# ToR pair #1
auto downlink1
```

spine2

```
# The loopback network
interface auto lo
iface lo
inet loopback

# The primary network
interface
auto eth0
iface eth0
    address 10.0.0.2
    netmask 255.255.255.0

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp31 swp32

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.255.2
    netmask 255.255.255.0
    clagd-priority 8192
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.255.1
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.1
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:ff:00:01

# ToR pair #1
auto downlink1
```

```

iface downlink1
    bond-slaves swp29 swp30
    clag-id 1

# ToR pair #2
auto downlink2
iface downlink2
    bond-slaves swp27 swp28
    clag-id 2

auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports uplinkA
peerlink downlink1 downlink2
    bridge-stp on
    bridge-vids 1000-2999
    bridge-pvid 1
    mstptctl-treepriority 4096

```

```

iface downlink1
    bond-slaves swp29 swp30
    clag-id 1

# ToR pair #2
auto downlink2
iface downlink2
    bond-slaves swp27 swp28
    clag-id 2

auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports uplinkA
peerlink downlink1 downlink2
    bridge-stp on
    bridge-vids 1000-2999
    bridge-pvid 1
    mstptctl-treepriority 4096

```

Here is an example configuration file for the switches leaf1 and leaf2. Note that the `clag-id` and `clagd-sys-mac` must be the same for the corresponding bonds on leaf1 and leaf2:

leaf1

```

# The loopback network
interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0
    address 10.0.0.3
    netmask 255.255.255.0

auto spine1-2
iface spine1-2
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    clag-id 1

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp51 swp52

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094

```

leaf2

```

# The loopback network
interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0
    address 10.0.0.4
    netmask 255.255.255.0

auto spine1-2
iface spine1-2
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    clag-id 1

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp51 swp52

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094

```

```

address 169.254.255.3
netmask 255.255.255.0
clagd-priority 4096
clagd-peer-ip 169.254.255.4
clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.4
clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:ff:
01:02

auto host1
iface host1
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 2
    mstpclctl-portadminedge yes
    mstpclctl-bpduguard yes

auto host2
iface host2
    bond-slaves swp2
    clag-id 3
    mstpclctl-portadminedge yes
    mstpclctl-bpduguard yes

auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports spine1-2
    peerlink host1 host2
    bridge-stp on
    bridge-vids 1000-2999
    bridge-pvid 1
    mstpclctl-treeprio 8192

```

```

address 169.254.255.4
netmask 255.255.255.0
clagd-priority 8192
clagd-peer-ip 169.254.255.3
clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.3
clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:ff:
01:02

auto host1
iface host1
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 2
    mstpclctl-portadminedge yes
    mstpclctl-bpduguard yes

auto host2
iface host2
    bond-slaves swp2
    clag-id 3
    mstpclctl-portadminedge yes
    mstpclctl-bpduguard yes

auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports spine1-2
    peerlink host1 host2
    bridge-stp on
    bridge-vids 1000-2999
    bridge-pvid 1
    mstpclctl-treeprio 8192

```

The configuration is almost identical, except for the IP addresses used for managing the `clagd` service.



In the configurations above, the `clagd-peer-ip` and `clagd-sys-mac` parameters are mandatory, while the rest are optional. When mandatory `clagd` commands are present under a peer link subinterface, by default `clagd-enable` is set to `yes` and doesn't need to be specified; to disable `clagd` on the subinterface, set `clagd-enable` to `no`. Use `clagd-priority` to set the role of the MLAG peer switch to primary or secondary. Each peer switch in an MLAG pair must have the same `clagd-sys-mac` setting. Each `clagd-sys-mac` setting should be unique to each MLAG pair in the network. For more details refer to `man clagd`.

## Configuring MLAG with a Traditional Mode Bridge

It's possible to configure MLAG with a bridge in traditional mode (see page 244) instead of VLAN-aware mode (see page 264). In order to do so, the peer link and all dual-connected links must be configured as untagged/native (see page 253) ports on a bridge (note the absence of any VLANs in the `bridge-ports` line and the lack of the `bridge-vlan-aware` parameter below):

```
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports peerlink spinel-2 host1 host2
```

Because you can have multiple bridges in traditional mode, you can create more than one bridge on the switch, in case you need to use tagged VLANs, as the following example shows:

```
#native vlan (default vlan1)
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports peerlink host1 host2 host3
    bridge-stp on

# also can configure additional tagged bridges
auto bridge1000
iface bridge1000
    bridge-ports peerlink.1000 host1.1000 host2.1000 host3.1000
    bridge-stp on
```



For a deeper comparison of traditional versus VLAN-aware bridge modes, read this [knowledge base article](#).

## Using the `clagctl` Command Line Interface

A command line utility called `clagctl` is available for interacting with a running `clagd` service to get status or alter operational behavior. For detailed explanation of the utility, please refer to the `clagctl(8)` man page. The following is a sample output of the MLAG operational status displayed by the utility:

```
cumulus@switch$ clagctl
The peer is alive
    Our Priority, ID, and Role: 8192 00:e0:ec:26:50:89 primary
    Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 8192 00:e0:ec:27:49:f6 secondary
        Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.255.2
        System MAC: 44:38:39:ff:00:01

                                         Dual Attached Ports
Our Interface      Peer Interface      CLAG Id
```

downlink1	downlink1	1
downlink2	downlink2	2

## Peer Link Interfaces and the protodown State

In addition to the standard UP and DOWN administrative states, an interface that is a member of an MLAG bond can also be in a `protodown` state. When MLAG detects a problem that could result in connectivity issues such as traffic black-holing or a network meltdown if the link carrier was left in an UP state, it can put that interface into `protodown` state. Such connectivity issues include:

- When the peer link goes down but the peer switch is up (that is, the backup link is active).
- When the bond is configured with an MLAG ID, but the `c1agd` service is not running (whether it was deliberately stopped or simply died).
- When an MLAG-enabled node is booted or rebooted, the MLAG bonds are placed in a `protodown` state until the node establishes a connection to its peer switch, or five minutes have elapsed.

When an interface goes into a `protodown` state, it results in a local OPER DOWN (carrier down) on the interface. As of Cumulus Linux 2.5.5, the `protodown` state can be manipulated with the `ip link set` command. Given its use in preventing network meltdowns, manually manipulating `protodown` is not recommended outside the scope of interaction with the Cumulus Networks support team.

The following `ip link show` command output shows an interface in `protodown` state. Notice that the link carrier is down (NO-CARRIER):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show swp1
3: swp1: <NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast master host-bond1 state DOWN mode DEFAULT qlen 500
  protodown on
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:69:84 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

## Specifying a Backup Link

You can specify a backup link for your peer links in the event that the peer link goes down. When this happens, the `c1agd` service uses the backup link to check the health of the peer switch. To configure this, edit `/etc/network/interfaces` and add `c1agd-backup-ip <ADDRESS>` to the peer link configuration. Here's an example:

```
auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
  address 169.254.255.1
  netmask 255.255.255.0
  c1agd-priority 8192
  c1agd-peer-ip 169.254.255.2
  c1agd-backup-ip 192.0.2.50
  c1agd-sys-mac 44:38:39:ff:00:01
  c1agd-args --priority 1000
```



The backup IP address must be different than the peer link IP address (`clagd-peer-ip` above). It must be reachable by a route that doesn't use the peer link and it must be in the same network namespace as the peer link IP address.

Cumulus Networks recommends you use the switch's management IP address for this purpose.

You can also specify the backup UDP port. The port defaults to 5342, but you can configure it as an argument in `clagd-args` using `--backupPort <PORT>`.

```
auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.255.1
    netmask 255.255.255.0
    clagd-priority 8192
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.255.2
    clagd-backup-ip 192.0.2.50
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:ff:00:01
    clagd-args --backupPort 5400
```

You can see the backup IP address if you run `clagctl`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ clagctl
The peer is alive
    Our Priority, ID, and Role: 8192 00:e0:ec:26:50:89 primary
    Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 8192 00:e0:ec:27:49:f6 secondary
        Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.255.2
            Backup IP: 192.0.2.50
            System MAC: 44:38:39:ff:00:01

                    Dual Attached Ports
Our Interface      Peer Interface      CLAG Id
-----  -----
downlink1          downlink1           1
downlink2          downlink2           2
```

## **Specifying a Backup Link to a VRF**

You can configure the backup link to a [VRF \(see page 525\)](#) or [management VRF \(see page 544\)](#). Include the name of the VRF or management VRF when you specify `clag-backup-ip <ADDRESS> vrf <VRF name>`. Here is a sample configuration linking to a management VRF in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt

auto mgmt
iface mgmt
```

```
vrf-table auto

auto peer-bond.4000
iface peer-bond.4000
    address 169.254.2.1/30
    clagd-priority 8192
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.2.2
    clagd-backup-ip 192.0.2.174 vrf mgmt
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:ff:00:01
    mtu 9000
```



You cannot use the VRF on a peer link subinterface.

Verify the backup link by running clagctl:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ clagctl
The peer is alive
    Our Priority, ID, and Role: 8192 44:38:39:00:81:7f primary
    Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:76:81 secondary
        Peer Interface and IP: peer-bond.4000 169.254.2.2
            Backup IP: 192.0.2.174 vrf mgmt (active)
            System MAC: 44:38:39:ff:00:01

CLAG Interfaces
Our Interface      Peer Interface      CLAG Id
Conflicts          Proto-Down Reason
-----  -----
-----  -----
hs-bond-1          hs-bond-1          20
-
spine             spine              11
-
```



The configuration for both a VRF and management VRF is exactly the same. A sample configuration where the backup interface is in a VRF could be as follows:

```
auto swp52s0
iface swp52s0
    address 192.0.2.1/24
    vrf green

auto green
iface green
    vrf-table auto
```

```

auto peer5.4000
iface peer5.4000
    address 192.0.2.15/24
    clagd-peer-ip 192.0.2.16
    clagd-backup-ip 192.0.2.2 vrf green
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:01:01:01
Which you can verify with clagctl:
cumulus@switch:~$ clagctl
The peer is alive
    Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 00:02:00:00:00:13
primary
    Our Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 c4:54:44:f6:44:5a
secondary
    Peer Interface and IP: peer5.4000 192.0.2.16
    Backup IP: 192.0.2.2 vrf green (active)
    System MAC: 44:38:39:01:01:01

CLAG Interfaces
Our Interface      Peer Interface      CLAG Id
Conflicts          Proto-Down Reason
-----            -----
-----            -----
        bond4      bond4           4
-
        bond1      bond1           1
-
        bond2      bond2           2
-
        bond3      bond3           3
-

```

## Monitoring Dual-Connected Peers

Upon receipt of a valid message from its peer, the switch knows that `clagd` is alive and executing on that peer. This causes `clagd` to change the system ID of each bond that was assigned a `clag-id` from the default value (the MAC address of the bond) to the system ID assigned to both peer switches. This makes the hosts connected to each switch act as if they are connected to the same system so that they will use all ports within their bond. Additionally, `clagd` determines which bonds are dual-connected and modifies the forwarding and learning behavior to accommodate these dual-connected bonds.

If the peer does not receive any messages for three update intervals, then that peer switch is assumed to no longer be acting as an MLAG peer. In this case, the switch reverts all configuration changes so that it operates as a standard non-MLAG switch. This includes removing all statically assigned MAC addresses, clearing the egress forwarding mask, and allowing addresses to move from any port to the peer port. Once a message is again received from the peer, MLAG operation starts again as described earlier. You can configure a custom timeout setting by adding `--peerTimeout <VALUE>` to `clagd-args` in `/etc/network/interfaces`.

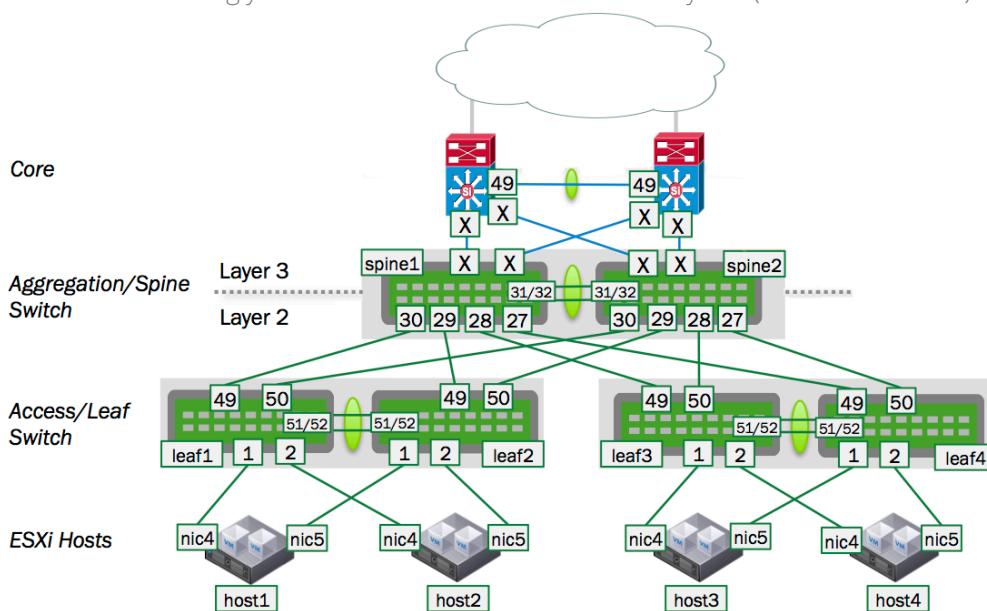
Once bonds are identified as dual-connected, `clagd` sends more information to the peer switch for those bonds. The MAC addresses (and VLANs) that have been dynamically learned on those ports are sent along with the LACP partner MAC address for each bond. When a switch receives MAC address information from

its peer, it adds MAC address entries on the corresponding ports. As the switch learns and ages out MAC addresses, it informs the peer switch of these changes to its MAC address table so that the peer can keep its table synchronized. Periodically, at 45% of the bridge ageing time, a switch will send its entire MAC address table to the peer, so that peer switch can verify that its MAC address table is properly synchronized.

The switch sends an update frequency value in the messages to its peer, which tells `c1agd` how often the peer will send these messages. You can configure a different frequency by adding `--lacpPoll <SECONDS>` to `c1agd-args` in `/etc/network/interfaces`.

## Configuring Layer 3 Routed Uplinks

In this scenario, the spine switches connect at layer 3, as shown in the image below. Alternatively, the spine switches can be singly connected to each core switch at layer 3 (not shown below).



In this design, the spine switches route traffic between the server hosts in the layer 2 domains and the core. The servers (host1 - host4) each have a layer 2 connection up to the spine layer where the default gateway for the host subnets resides. However, since the spine switches act as gateway devices communicate at layer 3, you need to configure a protocol such as [VRR \(see page 295\)](#) (Virtual Router Redundancy) between the spine switch pair to support active/active forwarding.

Then, to connect the spine switches to the core switches, you need to determine whether the routing is static or dynamic. If it's dynamic, you must choose which protocol — [OSPF \(see page 451\)](#) or [BGP \(see page 469\)](#) — to use. When enabling a routing protocol in an MLAG environment it is also necessary to manage the uplinks, because by default MLAG is not aware of layer 3 uplink interfaces. In the event of a peer link failure MLAG does not remove static routes or bring down a BGP or OSPF adjacency unless a separate link state daemon such as `ifplugd` is used.

## IGMP Snooping with MLAG

IGMP snooping processes IGMP reports received on a bridge port in a bridge to identify hosts that are configured to receive multicast traffic destined to that group. An IGMP query message received on a port is used to identify the port that is connected to a router and configured to receive multicast traffic.

IGMP snooping is enabled by default on the bridge. IGMP snooping multicast database entries and router port entries are synced to the peer MLAG switch. If there is no multicast router in the VLAN, the IGMP querier can be configured on the switch to generate IGMP query messages by adding a configuration like the following to `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto br.100
vlan br.100
    #igmp snooping is enabled by default, but is shown here for
    completeness
    bridge-mcsnoop 1
    # If you need to specify the querier IP address
    bridge-igmp-querier-source 123.1.1.1
```

To display multicast group and router port information, use the `bridge -d mdb show` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~# sudo bridge -d mdb show
dev br port bond0 vlan 100 grp 234.1.1.1 temp
router ports on br: bond0
```

#### Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

```
cumulus@switch:~# sudo brctl setmcqv4src br 100 192.0.2.1
cumulus@switch:~# sudo brctl setmcquerier br 1
cumulus@switch:~# sudo brctl showmcqv4src br
vlan          querier address
 100           192.0.2.1
```

## ***Monitoring the Status of the clagd Service***

Due to the critical nature of the `clagd` service, `systemd` continuously monitors the status of `clagd`. `systemd` monitors the `clagd` service through the use of notify messages every 30 seconds. If the `clagd` service dies or becomes unresponsive for any reason and `systemd` receives no messages after 60 seconds, `systemd` restarts `clagd`. `systemd` logs these failures in `/var/log/syslog`, and, on the first failure, generates a `cl-support` file as well.

This monitoring is automatically configured and enabled as long as `clagd` is enabled (that is, `clagd-peer-ip` and `clagd-sys-mac` are configured in `/etc/network/interfaces`) and `clagd` been started. When `clagd` is explicitly stopped, for example with the `systemctl stop clagd.service` command, monitoring of `clagd` is also stopped.

You can check the status of `clagd` monitoring by using the `cl-service-summary` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-service-summary summary
The systemctl daemon 5.4 uptime: 15m
...
Service clagd           enabled   active
...
```

## MLAG Best Practices

For MLAG to function properly, the dual-connected hosts' interfaces should be configured identically on the pair of peering switches. See the note above in the [Configuring MLAG \(see page 277\)](#) section.

## Understanding MTU in an MLAG Configuration

Note that the [MTU \(see page 171\)](#) in MLAG traffic is determined by the bridge MTU. Bridge MTU is determined by the lowest MTU setting of an interface that is a member of the bridge. If an MTU other than the default of 1500 bytes is desired, you must configure the MTU on each physical interface and bond interface that are members of the MLAG bridges in the entire bridged domain.

For example, if an MTU of 9216 is desired through the MLAG domain in the example shown above:

On the leaf switches, `configure mtu 9216 (see page 171)` for each of following interfaces, since they are members of bridge `br0`: spine1-2, peerlink, host1, host2.

```
auto br0
iface br0
  bridge-vlan-aware yes
  bridge-ports spine1-2 peerlink host1 host2    <- List of bridge
member interfaces
...
```

Likewise, to ensure the MTU 9216 path is respected through the spine switches above, also change the MTU setting for bridge `br` by configuring `mtu 9216` for each of the following members of bridge `br` on spine1 and spine2: uplinkA, peerlink, downlink1, downlink2.

```
auto br
iface br
  bridge-vlan-aware yes
  bridge-ports uplinkA peerlink downlink1 downlink2
...
```

## Sizing the Peerlink

What's the best size for a peerlink? Before we answer that, let's talk a little bit about the peerlink itself.

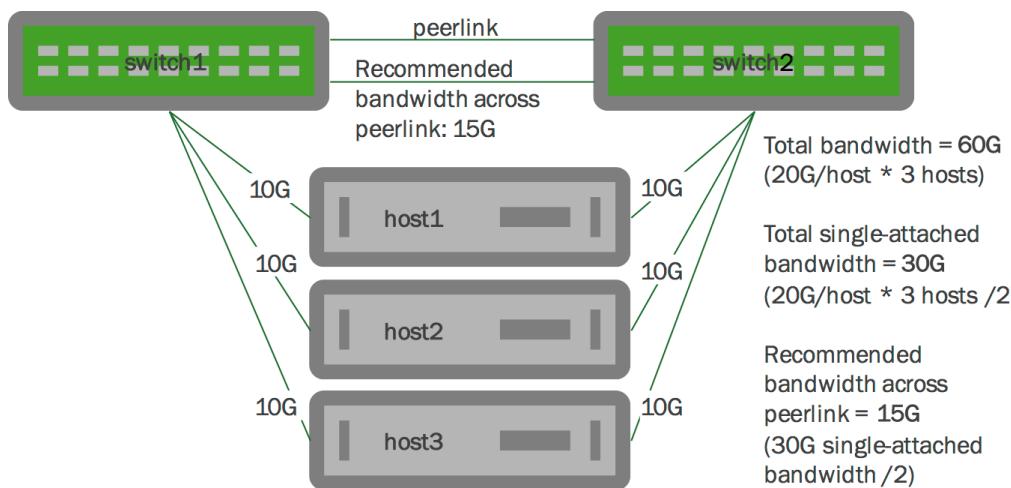
The peerlink tends to carry very little traffic when compared to the bandwidth consumed by dataplane traffic. In a typical MLAG configuration, most every connection between the two switches in the MLAG pair is dual-connected, so the only traffic going across the peerlink is traffic from the `clagd` process and some LLDP or LACP traffic. However, there are some instances where a host is connected to only one switch in the MLAG pair; these include:

- You have a hardware limitation on the host where there is only one PCIE slot, and thus, one NIC on the system, so the host is only single-connected across that interface.
- The host doesn't support 802.3ad and you can't create a bond on it.
- You are accounting for a link failure, where the host may become single connected until the failure is rectified.

So, in terms of sizing the peerlink, in general, you need to determine how much bandwidth is traveling across the single-connected interfaces, and allocate half of that bandwidth to the peerlink. We recommend half of the single-connected bandwidth because, on average, one half of the traffic destined to the single-connected host will arrive on the switch directly connected to the single-connected host and the other half will arrive on the switch that is not directly connected to the single-connected host. When this happens, only the traffic that arrives on the switch that is not directly connected to the single-connected host needs to traverse the peerlink, which is how you calculate 50% of the traffic.

In addition, you may want to add extra links to the peerlink bond to handle link failures in the peerlink bond itself.

In illustration below, each host has 2 10G links, with each 10G link going to each switch in the MLAG pair. Each host has 20G of dual-connected bandwidth, so all three hosts have a total of 60G of dual-connected bandwidth. We recommend you allocate at least 15G of bandwidth to each peerlink bond, which represents half of the single-connected bandwidth.



Scaling this example out to a full rack, when planning for link failures, you need only allocate enough bandwidth to meet your site's strategy for handling failure scenarios. Imagine a full rack with 40 servers and two switches in it. You may plan for, say, 4 to 6 servers to lose connectivity to a single switch and become single connected before you respond to the event. So expanding upon our previous example, if you have 40 hosts each with 20G of bandwidth dual-connected to the MLAG pair, you might allocate 20G to 30G of bandwidth to the peerlink — which accounts for half of the single-connected bandwidth for 4 to 6 hosts.

## STP Interoperability with MLAG

Cumulus Networks recommends that you always enable STP in your layer 2 network.

Further, with MLAG, Cumulus Networks recommends you enable BPDU guard on the host-facing bond interfaces. (For more information about BPDU guard, see [BPDU Guard and Bridge Assurance \(see page 208\)](#).)

## Debugging STP with MLAG

`/var/log/daemon.log` has `mstpd` logs.

Run `mstpcctl debuglevel 3` to see MLAG-related logs in `/var/log/daemon.log`:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showportdetail br peer-bond
br:peer-bond CIST info
  enabled          yes           role
Designated
  port id        8.008         state
forwarding
  .....
  bpdufilter port no
  clag ISL        yes          clag ISL Oper UP    yes
  clag role       primary      clag dual conn mac 0:0:
0:0:0:0
  clag remote portID F.FFF   clag system mac     44:3
8:39:ff:0:1
cumulus@switch:~$

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showportdetail br downlink-1
br:downlink-1 CIST info
  enabled          yes           role
Designated
  port id        8.006         state
forwarding
  .....
  bpdufilter port no
  clag ISL        no           clag ISL Oper UP    no
  clag role       primary      clag dual conn mac 0:0:
0:3:11:1
  clag remote portID F.FFF   clag system mac     44:3
8:39:ff:0:1
cumulus@switch:~$

```

## Best Practices for STP with MLAG

- The STP global configuration must be the same on both the switches.
- The STP configuration for dual-connected ports should be the same on both peer switches.
- Use `mstpcctl` commands for all spanning tree configurations, including bridge priority, path cost and so forth. Do not use `brctl` commands for spanning tree, except for `brctl stp on/off`, as changes are not reflected to `mstpd` and can create conflicts.

## Troubleshooting MLAG

By default, when `clagd` is running, it logs its status to the `/var/log/clagd.log` file and `syslog`. Example log file output is below:

```

Jan 14 23:45:10 switch clagd[3704]: Beginning execution of clagd
version 1.0.0

```

```

Jan 14 23:45:10 switch clagd[3704]: Invoked with: /usr/sbin/clagd --
daemon 169.254.2.2 peer-bond.4000 44:38:39:ff:00:01 --priority 8192
Jan 14 23:45:11 switch clagd[3995]: Role is now secondary
Jan 14 23:45:31 switch clagd[3995]: Role is now primary
Jan 14 23:45:32 switch clagd[3995]: The peer switch is active.
Jan 14 23:45:35 switch clagd[3995]: downlink-1 is now dual connected.

```

## Caveats and Errata

If both the backup and peer connectivity are lost within a 30-second window, the switch in the secondary role misinterprets the event sequence, believing the peer switch is down, so it takes over as the primary.

## Configuration Files

- /etc/network/interfaces

## LACP Bypass

On Cumulus Linux, *LACP Bypass* is a feature that allows a **bond** (see page 241) configured in 802.3ad mode to become active and forward traffic even when there is no LACP partner. A typical use case for this feature is to enable a host, without the capability to run LACP, to PXE boot while connected to a switch on a bond configured in 802.3ad mode. Once the pre-boot process finishes and the host is capable of running LACP, the normal 802.3ad link aggregation operation takes over.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Understanding the LACP Bypass All-active Mode (see page 293)
  - LACP Bypass and MLAG Deployments (see page 294)
- Configuring LACP Bypass (see page 294)
  - VLAN-aware Bridge Mode Configuration (see page 294)
  - Traditional Bridge Mode Configuration (see page 295)

## **Understanding the LACP Bypass All-active Mode**

When a bond has multiple slave interfaces, each bond slave interface operates as an active link while the bond is in bypass mode. This is known as *all-active mode*. This is useful during PXE boot of a server with multiple NICs, when the user cannot determine beforehand which port needs to be active.

Keep in the mind the following caveats with all-active mode:

- All-active mode is not supported on bonds that are not specified as bridge ports on the switch.
- Spanning tree protocol (STP) does not run on the individual bond slave interfaces when the LACP bond is in all-active mode. Therefore, only use all-active mode on host-facing LACP bonds. Cumulus Networks highly recommends you configure **STP BPDU guard** (see page 208) along with all-active mode.



Priority mode, bond-lacp-bypass-period, bond-lacp-bypass-priority and bond-lacp-bypass-all-active are not supported.

## LACP Bypass and MLAG Deployments

In an MLAG deployment (see page 273) where bond slaves of a host are connected to two switches and the bond is in all-active mode, all the slaves of bond are active on both the primary and secondary MLAG nodes.

### Configuring LACP Bypass

You configure LACP bypass in the /etc/network/interfaces file.

To enable LACP bypass on the host-facing bond, under the bond interface stanza, set bond-lacp-bypass-allow to 1.

### VLAN-aware Bridge Mode Configuration

The following configuration shows LACP bypass enabled for a bridge in VLAN-aware mode (see page 264):

```
auto bond1
iface bond1
    bond-slaves swp51s2 swp51s3
    clag-id 1
    bond-lacp-bypass-allow 1

...
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard bond1=yes
    bridge_ports bond1 bond2 bond3 bond4 peer5
    bridge-stp on
    bridge-vids 100-105
```

You can check the status of the configuration by running ip link show on the bond and its slave interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show bond1
164: bond1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master br0 state UP mode DORMANT group default
        link/ether c4:54:44:f6:44:5a brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show swp51s2
55: swp51s2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    master bond1 state UP mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000
        link/ether c4:54:44:f6:44:5a brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show swp52s3
```

```
56: swp51s3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast master bond1 state UP mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000
    link/ether c4:54:44:f6:44:5a brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

Use the `cat` command to verify that LACP bypass is enabled on a bond and its slave interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /sys/class/net/bond1/bonding/lacp_bypass
on 1
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /sys/class/net/bond1/bonding/slaves
swp51s2 swp51s3
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /sys/class/net/swp51s2/bonding_slave
/ad_rx_bypass
1
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /sys/class/net/swp51s3/bonding_slave
/ad_rx_bypass
1
```

## Traditional Bridge Mode Configuration

The following configuration shows LACP bypass enabled for multiple active interfaces (all-active mode) with a bridge in [traditional bridge mode](#) (see page 244):

```
auto bond1
iface bond1
    bond-slaves swp3 swp4
    bond-lacp-bypass-allow 1

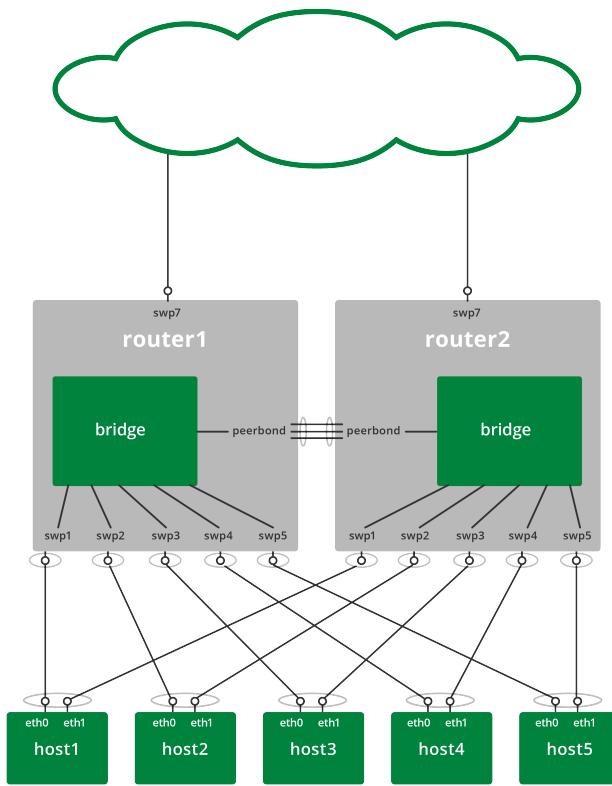
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports bond1 bond2 bond3 bond4 peers5
    bridge-stp on
    mstptctl-bpduguard bond1=yes
```

## Virtual Router Redundancy - VRR

VRR provides virtualized router redundancy in network configurations, which enables the hosts to communicate with any redundant router without:

- Needing to be reconfigured
- Having to run dynamic router protocols
- Having to run router redundancy protocols

A basic VRR-enabled network configuration is shown below. The network consists of several hosts, two routers running Cumulus Linux and configured with [MLAG](#) (see page 273), and the rest of the network:



An actual implementation will have many more server hosts and network connections than are shown here. But this basic configuration provides a complete description of the important aspects of the VRR setup.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring the Network (see page 296)
  - Reserved MAC Address Range (see page 298)
  - Configuring the Hosts (see page 298)
  - Configuring the Routers (see page 298)
  - Other Network Connections (see page 298)
  - Handling ARP Requests (see page 298)
  - Monitoring Peer Links and Uplinks (see page 299)
- Using ifplugged (see page 299)
- Notes (see page 300)

## Configuring the Network

Configuring this network is fairly straightforward. First create the bridge subinterface, then create the secondary address for the virtual router. Configure each router with a bridge; edit each router's `/etc/network/interfaces` file and add a configuration similar to the following:

```
auto bridge.500
iface bridge.500
    address 192.168.0.252/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:01:01 192.168.0.254/24 2001:aa::1/48
```



Notice the simpler configuration of the bridge with `ifupdown2`. For more information, see [Configuring and Managing Network Interfaces \(see page 153\)](#).

You should always use `ifupdown2` to configure VRR, because it ensures correct ordering when bringing up the virtual and physical interfaces and it works best with [VLAN-aware bridges \(see page 264\)](#).

If you are using the `traditional mode` bridge driver, the configuration would look like this:

```
auto bridge500
iface bridge500
    address 192.168.0.252/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:01:01 192.168.0.254/24 2001:aa::1/48
    bridge-ports bond1.500 bond2.500 bond3.500
```

The IP address assigned to the bridge is the unique address for the bridge. The parameters of this configuration are:

- `bridge.500`: 500 represents a VLAN subinterface of the bridge, sometimes called a switched virtual interface, or SVI.
- `192.168.0.252/24`: The unique IP address assigned to this bridge. It is unique because, unlike the 192.168.0.254 address, it is assigned only to this bridge, not the bridge on the other router.
- `00:00:5e:00:01:01`: The MAC address of the virtual router. This must be the same on all virtual routers. Cumulus Linux has a reserved range for VRR MAC addresses. See below for details.
- `192.168.0.254/24, 2001:aa::1/48`: The IPv4 and IPv6 addresses of the virtual router, including the routing prefixes. These addresses must be the same on all the virtual routers and must match the default gateway address configured on the servers as well as the size of the subnet.
- `address-virtual`: This keyword enables and configures VRR.

The above bridge configuration enables VRR by creating a *MAC VLAN interface* on the SVI. This MAC VLAN interface is:

- Named `bridge-500-v0`, which is the name of the SVI with dots changed to dashes and `-v0` appended to the end.
- Assigned a MAC address of `00:00:5e:00:01:01`.
- Assigned an IPv4 address of `192.168.0.254` and an IPv6 address of `2001:aa::1/48`.

## Reserved MAC Address Range

In order to prevent MAC address conflicts with other interfaces in the same bridged network, Cumulus Networks has [reserved a range of MAC addresses](#) specifically to use with VRR. This range of MAC addresses is 00:00:5E:00:01:00 to 00:00:5E:00:01:ff.

You may notice that this is the same range reserved for VRRP, since VRR serves a similar function. Cumulus Networks recommends you use this range of MAC addresses when configuring VRR.

## Configuring the Hosts

Each host should have two network interfaces. The routers configure the interfaces as bonds running LACP; the hosts should also configure its two interfaces using teaming, port aggregation, port group, or EtherChannel running LACP. Configure the hosts, either statically or via DHCP, with a gateway address that is the IP address of the virtual router; this default gateway address never changes.

Configure the links between the hosts and the routers in *active-active* mode for First Hop Redundancy Protocol.



If you are configuring VRR without [MLAG](#) (see page 273), use *active-standby* mode instead. For example, configure the bond like this:

```
auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-mode active-backup
```

The configuration may vary, depending upon the host OS.

## Configuring the Routers

The routers implement the layer 2 network interconnecting the hosts, as well as the redundant routers. If you are using [MLAG](#) (see page 273), configure each router with a bridge interface, named *bridge* in our example, with these different types of interfaces:

- One bond interface to each host (swp1-swp5 in the image above).
- One or more interfaces to each peer router (peerbond in the image above). Multiple inter-peer links are typically bonded interfaces in order to accommodate higher bandwidth between the routers and to offer link redundancy.



If you are not using MLAG, then the bridge should have one switch port interface to each host instead of a bond.

## Other Network Connections

Other interfaces on the router can connect to other subnets and are accessed through layer 3 forwarding (swp7 in the image above).

## **Handling ARP Requests**

The entire purpose of this configuration is to have all the redundant routers respond to ARP requests from hosts for the virtual router IP address (192.168.0.254 in the example above) with the virtual router MAC address (00:00:5e:00:01:01 in the example above). All of the routers should respond in an identical manner, but if one router fails, the other redundant routers will continue to respond in an identical manner, leaving the hosts with the impression that nothing has changed.

Since the bridges in each of the redundant routers are connected, they will each receive and reply to ARP requests for the virtual router IP address. Each ARP request made by a host will receive multiple replies (typically two). But these replies will be identical and so the host that receives these replies will not get confused over which response is "correct" and will either ignore replies after the first, or accept them and overwrite the previous reply with identical information.

## **Monitoring Peer Links and Uplinks**

When an uplink on a switch in active-active mode goes down, the peer link may get congested. When this occurs, you should monitor the uplink and shut down all host-facing ports using `ifplugd` (or another script).

When the peer link goes down in a MLAG environment, one of the switches becomes secondary and all host-facing dual-connected bonds go down. The host side bond sees two different system MAC addresses, so the link to primary is active on host. If any traffic from outside this environment goes to the secondary MLAG switch, traffic will be black-holed. To avoid this, shut down all the uplinks when the peer link goes down using `ifplugd`.

## **Using `ifplugd`**

`ifplugd` is a link state monitoring daemon that can execute user-specified scripts on link transitions (not admin-triggered transitions, but transitions when a cable is plugged in or removed).

Run the following commands to install the `ifplugd` service:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo apt-get update
cumulus@switch:$ sudo apt-get install ifplugd
```

Next, configure `ifplugd`. The example below indicates that when the `peerbond` goes down in a MLAG environment, `ifplugd` brings down all the uplinks. Run the following `ifplugd` script on both the primary and secondary [MLAG \(see page 273\)](#) switches.

To configure `ifplugd`, modify `/etc/default/ifplugd` and add the appropriate `peerbond` interface name. `/etc/default/ifplugd` will look like this:

```
INTERFACES="peerbond"
HOTPLUG_INTERFACES=""
ARGS="-q -f -u0 -d1 -w -I"
SUSPEND_ACTION="stop"
```

Next, modify the `/etc/ifplugd/action.d/ifupdown` script.

```
#!/bin/sh
```

```

set -e
case "$2" in
up)
    clagrole=$(clagctl | grep "Our Priority" | awk '{print $8}')
    if [ "$clagrole" = "secondary" ]
    then
        #List all the interfaces below to bring up when clag
        #peerbond comes up.
        for interface in swp1 bond1 bond3 bond4
        do
            echo "bringing up : $interface"
            ip link set $interface up
        done
    fi
;;
down)
    clagrole=$(clagctl | grep "Our Priority" | awk '{print $8}')
    if [ "$clagrole" = "secondary" ]
    then
        #List all the interfaces below to bring down when clag
        #peerbond goes down.
        for interface in swp1 bond1 bond3 bond4
        do
            echo "bringing down : $interface"
            ip link set $interface down
        done
    fi
;;
esac
  
```

Finally, restart `ifplugd` for your changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo systemctl restart ifplugd.service
```

## Notes

The default shell is `/bin/sh`, which is `dash` and not `bash`. This makes for faster execution of the script since `dash` is small and quick, but consequently less featureful than `bash`. For example, it doesn't handle multiple uplinks.

## Network Virtualization

Cumulus Linux supports these forms of [network virtualization](#):

VXLAN (Virtual Extensible LAN), is a standard overlay protocol that abstracts logical virtual networks from the physical network underneath. You can deploy simple and scalable layer 3 Clos architectures while extending layer 2 segments over that layer 3 network.

VXLAN uses a VLAN-like encapsulation technique to encapsulate MAC-based layer 2 Ethernet frames within layer 3 UDP packets. Each virtual network is a VXLAN logical L2 segment. VXLAN scales to 16 million segments – a 24-bit VXLAN network identifier (VNI ID) in the VXLAN header – for multi-tenancy.

Hosts on a given virtual network are joined together through an overlay protocol that initiates and terminates tunnels at the edge of the multi-tenant network, typically the hypervisor vSwitch or top of rack. These edge points are the VXLAN tunnel end points (VTEP).

Cumulus Linux can initiate and terminate VTEPs in hardware and supports wire-rate VXLAN with Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II platforms. VXLAN provides an efficient hashing scheme across IP fabric during the encapsulation process; the source UDP port is unique, with the hash based on L2-L4 information from the original frame. The UDP destination port is the standard port 4789.

Cumulus Linux includes the native Linux VXLAN kernel support and integrates with controller-based overlay solutions like [VMware NSX](#) (see page 302) and [Midokura MidoNet](#) (see page 315).

VXLAN is supported only on switches in the [Cumulus Linux HCL](#) using Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II chipsets.



VXLAN encapsulation over layer 3 subinterfaces (for example, swp3.111) is not supported. Therefore, VXLAN uplinks should be only configured as layer 3 interfaces without any subinterfaces (for example, swp3).

Furthermore the VXLAN tunnel endpoints cannot share a common subnet; there must be at least one layer 3 hop between the VXLAN source and destination.

## Commands

- brctl
- bridge fdb
- ip link
- ovs-pki
- ovsdb-client
- vtep-ctl

## Caveats/Errata

### Cut-through Mode

Cut-through mode is disabled in Cumulus Linux by default. With cut-through mode enabled and link pause is asserted, Cumulus Linux generates a TOVR and TUFL ERROR; certain error counters increment on a given physical port.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -S swp49 | grep Error
HwIfInDot3LengthErrors: 0
HwIfInErrors: 0
HwIfInDot3FrameErrors: 0
SoftInErrors: 0
SoftInFrameErrors: 0
HwIfOutErrors: 35495749
```

```
SoftOutErrors: 0

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -S swp50 | grep Error
HwIfInDot3LengthErrors: 3038098
HwIfInErrors: 297595762
HwIfInDot3FrameErrors: 293710518
```

To work around this issue, disable link pause or disable cut-through in /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf.

To disable link pause, comment out the link\_pause\* section in /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
#link_pause.port_group_list = [port_group_0]
#link_pause.port_group_0.port_set = swp45-swp54
#link_pause.port_group_0.rx_enable = true
#link_pause.port_group_0.tx_enable = true
```

To enable store and forward switching, set cut\_through\_enable to false in /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
cut_through_enable = false
```

## MTU Size for Virtual Network Interfaces

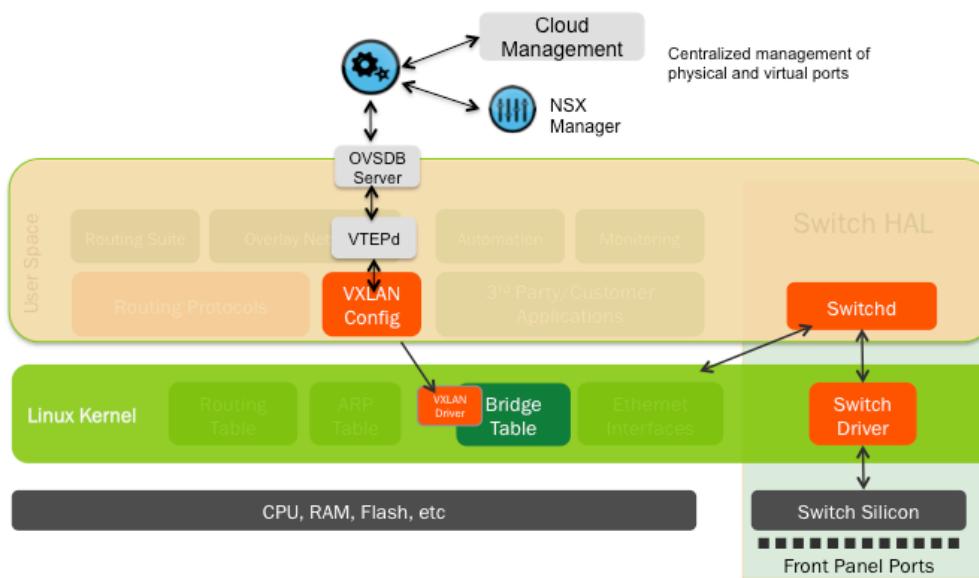
The maximum transmission unit (MTU) size for a virtual network interface should be 50 bytes smaller than the MTU for the physical interfaces on the switch. For more information, read [Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes](#) (see page 173).

## Useful Links

- VXLAN IETF draft
- ovsdb-server

## Integrating with VMware NSX

Switches running Cumulus Linux can integrate with VMware NSX to act as VTEP gateways. The VMware NSX controller provides consistent provisioning across virtual and physical server infrastructures.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Getting Started (see page 303)
  - Caveats and Errata (see page 304)
- Bootstrapping the NSX Integration (see page 304)
  - Enabling the openvswitch-vtep Package (see page 304)
  - Using the Bootstrapping Script (see page 305)
  - Manually Bootstrapping the NSX Integration (see page 305)
  - Generating the Credentials Certificate (see page 306)
  - Configuring the Switch as a VTEP Gateway (see page 307)
- Configuring the Transport Layer (see page 309)
- Configuring the Logical Layer (see page 310)
  - Defining Logical Switches (see page 311)
  - Defining Logical Switch Ports (see page 312)
- Verifying the VXLAN Configuration (see page 314)
- Troubleshooting VXLANs in NSX (see page 314)

## Getting Started

Before you integrate VXLANs with NSX, make sure you have the following components:

- A switch (L2 gateway) with a Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II chipset running Cumulus Linux 2.0 or later;
- OVSDB server (ovsdb-server), included in Cumulus Linux 2.0 and later
- VTEPd (ovs-vtep), included in Cumulus Linux 2.0 and later

Integrating a VXLAN with NSX involves:

- Bootstrapping the NSX Integration
- Configuring the Transport Layer
- Configuring the Logical Layer
- Verifying the VXLAN Configuration

## Caveats and Errata

- As mentioned in [Network Virtualization \(see page 300\)](#), the switches with the source and destination VTEPs cannot reside on the same subnet; there must be at least one layer 3 hop between the VXLAN source and destination.
- There is no support for VXLAN routing in the Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II chips; use a loopback interface or external router.
- The `ovsdb-server` cannot select the loopback interface as the source IP address, causing TOR registration to the controller to fail. To work around this issue, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-bgp redistribute add connected
```

- Do not use 0 or 16777215 as the VNI ID, as they are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.
- For more information about NSX, see the VMware NSX User Guide, version 4.0.0 or later.

## Bootstrapping the NSX Integration

Before you start configuring the gateway service and logical switches and ports that comprise the VXLAN, you need to complete some steps to bootstrap the process. You need to do the bootstrapping just once, before you begin the integration.

## Enabling the `openvswitch-vtep` Package

Before you start bootstrapping the integration, you need to enable the `openvswitch-vtep` package, as it is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux.

1. In `/etc/default/openvswitch-vtep`, change the `START` option from `no` to `yes`:

```
cumulus@switch$ cat /etc/default/openvswitch-vtep
# This is a POSIX shell fragment          -*- sh -*-

# Start openvswitch at boot ? yes/no
START=yes

# FORCE_COREFILES: If 'yes' then core files will be enabled.
# FORCE_COREFILES=yes

# BRCOMPAT: If 'yes' and the openvswitch-brcompat package is
installed, then
# Linux bridge compatibility will be enabled.
# BRCOMPAT=no
```

2. Start the daemon:

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo systemctl start openvswitch-vtep.service
```

## ***Using the Bootstrapping Script***

A script is available so you can do the bootstrapping automatically. For information, read `man vtep-bootstrap`. The output of the script is displayed here:

```
cumulus@vtep7: ~ - □ ×
cumulus@vtep7$ sudo vtep-bootstrap --credentials-path /var/lib/openvswitch vtep7 192.168.100.17 172.1
6.20.157 192.168.100.157
Executed:
    create certificate on a switch, to be used for authentication with controller
    ().
Executed:
    sign certificate
        (vtep7-req.pem      Fri Jan 17 18:04:33 UTC 2014
         fingerprint 6f443eb8445317b545d8564c2ae9638ea0a9184a).
Executed:
    define physical switch
    ().
Executed:
    define NSX controller IP address in OVSDB
    ().
Executed:
    define local tunnel IP address on the switch
    ().
Executed:
    define management IP address on the switch
    ().
Executed:
    restart a service
        (Killing ovs-vtep (4973).
Killing ovsdb-server (4969).
Starting ovsdb-server.
Starting ovs-vtep(4973).
cumulus@vtep7$ cumulus@vtep7$ ps xa | grep ovsdb-server
 5184 pts/0    S<     0:00 ovsdb-server: monitoring pid 5185 (healthy)

5185 ?      S<    0:00 ovsdb-server /var/lib/openvswitch/conf.db -vANY:CONSOLE:EMER -vANY:SYSLOG:
ERR -vANY:FILE:INFO --remote=unix:/var/run/openvswitch/db.sock --remote=db:Global_managers --remote=
ptcp:6633: --private-key=/var/lib/openvswitch/vtep7-privkey.pem --certificate=/var/lib/openvswitch/vt
ep7-cert.pem --bootstrap-ca-cert=/var/lib/openvswitch/controller.cacert --no-chdir --log-file=/var/lo
g/openvswitch/ovsdb-server.log --pidfile=/var/run/openvswitch/ovsdb-server.pid --detach --monitor
 5436 pts/0    S+    0:00 grep ovsdb-server
cumulus@vtep7$
```

In the above example, the following information was passed to the `vtep-bootstrap` script:

- `--credentials-path /var/lib/openvswitch`: Is the path to where the certificate and key pairs for authenticating with the NSX controller are stored.
- `vtep7`: is the ID for the VTEP.
- `192.168.100.17`: is the IP address of the NSX controller.
- `172.16.20.157`: is the datapath IP address of the VTEP.
- `192.168.100.157`: is the IP address of the management interface on the switch.

These IP addresses will be used throughout the rest of the examples below.

## ***Manually Bootstrapping the NSX Integration***

If you don't use the script, then you must:

- Initialize the OVS database instance
- Generate a certificate and key pair for authentication by NSX
- Configure a switch as a VTEP gateway

These steps are described next.

### ***Generating the Credentials Certificate***

First, in Cumulus Linux, you must generate a certificate that the NSX controller uses for authentication.

1. In a terminal session connected to the switch, run the following commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovs-pki init
Creating controllerca...
Creating switchca...
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovs-pki req+sign cumulus

cumulus-req.pem Wed Oct 23 05:32:49 UTC 2013
    fingerprint b587c9fe36f09fb371750ab50c430485d33a174a

cumulus@switch:~$ ls -l
total 12
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 4028 Oct 23 05:32 cumulus-cert.pem
-rw----- 1 root root 1679 Oct 23 05:32 cumulus-privkey.pem
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 3585 Oct 23 05:32 cumulus-req.pem
```

2. In /usr/share/openvswitch/scripts/ovs-ctl-vtep, make sure the lines containing **private-key**, **certificate** and **bootstrap-ca-cert** point to the correct files; **bootstrap-ca-cert** is obtained dynamically the first time the switch talks to the controller:

```
# Start ovsdb-server.
set ovsdb-server "$DB_FILE"
set "$@" -vANY:CONSOLE:EMER -vANY:SYSLOG:ERR -vANY:FILE:INFO
set "$@" --remote=unix:"$DB_SOCK"
set "$@" --remote=db:Global,managers
set "$@" --remote=ptcp:$LOCALIP:6633
set "$@" --private-key=/root/cumulus-privkey.pem
set "$@" --certificate=/root/cumulus-cert.pem
set "$@" --bootstrap-ca-cert=/root/controller.cacert
```

If files have been moved or regenerated, restart the OVSDB server and vtep daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart openvswitch-vtep.service
```

3. Define the NSX controller cluster IP address in OVSDB. This causes the OVSDB server to start contacting the NSX controller:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set-manager ssl:192.168.100.17:66  
32
```

4. Define the local IP address on the VTEP for VXLAN tunnel termination. First, find the physical switch name as recorded in OVSDB:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl list-ps  
vtep7
```

Then set the tunnel source IP address of the VTEP. This is the datapath address of the VTEP, which is typically an address on a loopback interface on the switch that is reachable from the underlying L3 network:

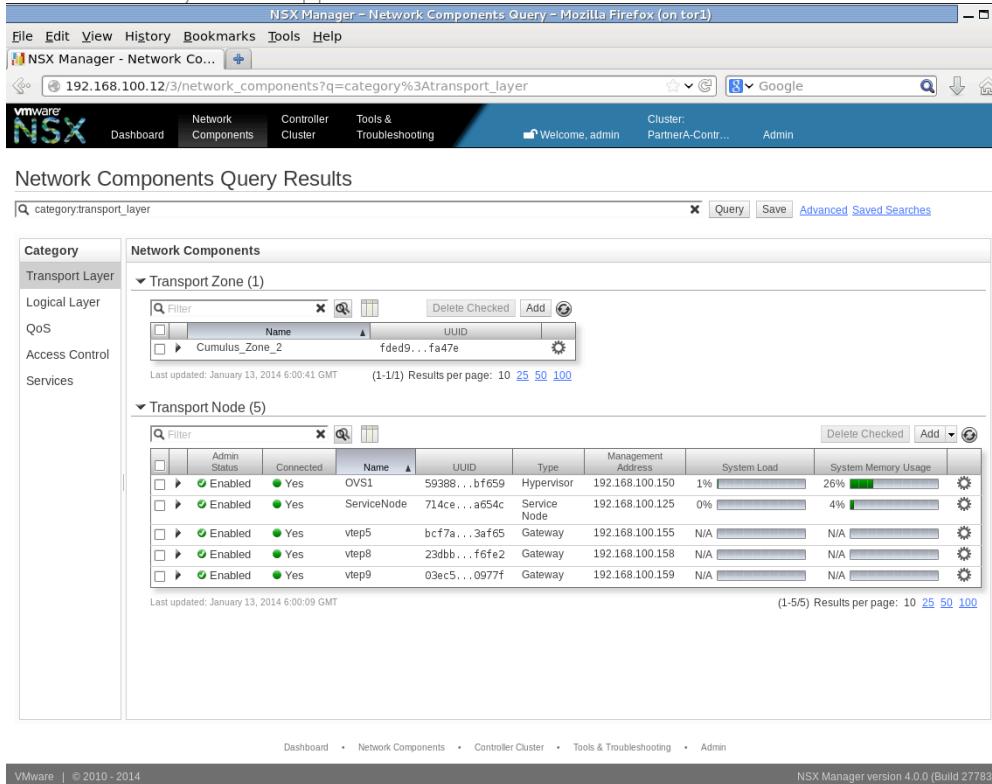
```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set Physical_Switch vtep7  
tunnel_ips=172.16.20.157
```

Once you finish generating the certificate, keep the terminal session active, as you need to paste the certificate into NSX Manager when you configure the VTEP gateway.

## ***Configuring the Switch as a VTEP Gateway***

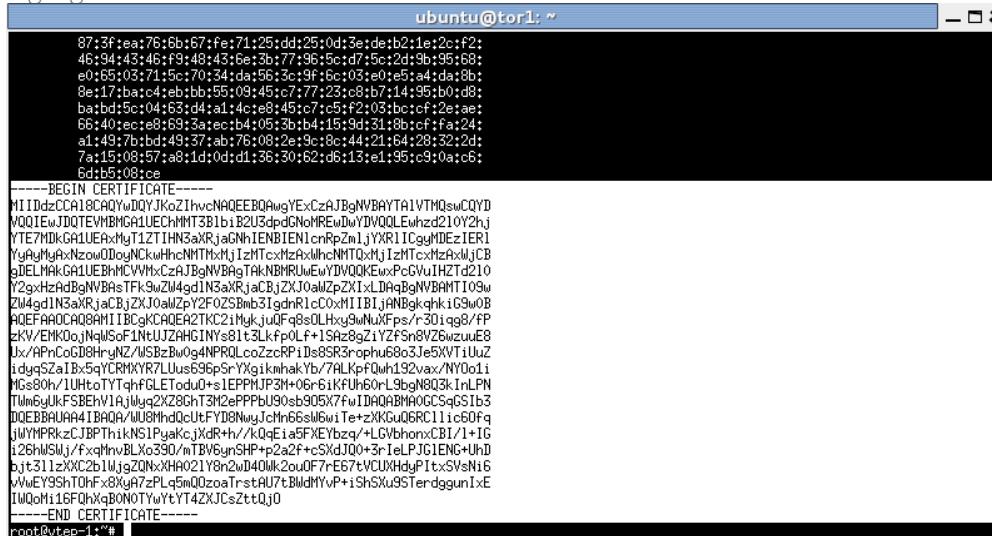
After you create a certificate, connect to NSX Manager in a browser to configure a Cumulus Linux switch as a VTEP gateway. In this example, the IP address of the NSX manager is 192.168.100.12.

- In NSX Manager, add a new gateway. Click the **Network Components** tab, then the **Transport Layer** category. Under **Transport Node**, click **Add**, then select **Manually Enter All Fields**. The Create Gateway wizard appears.



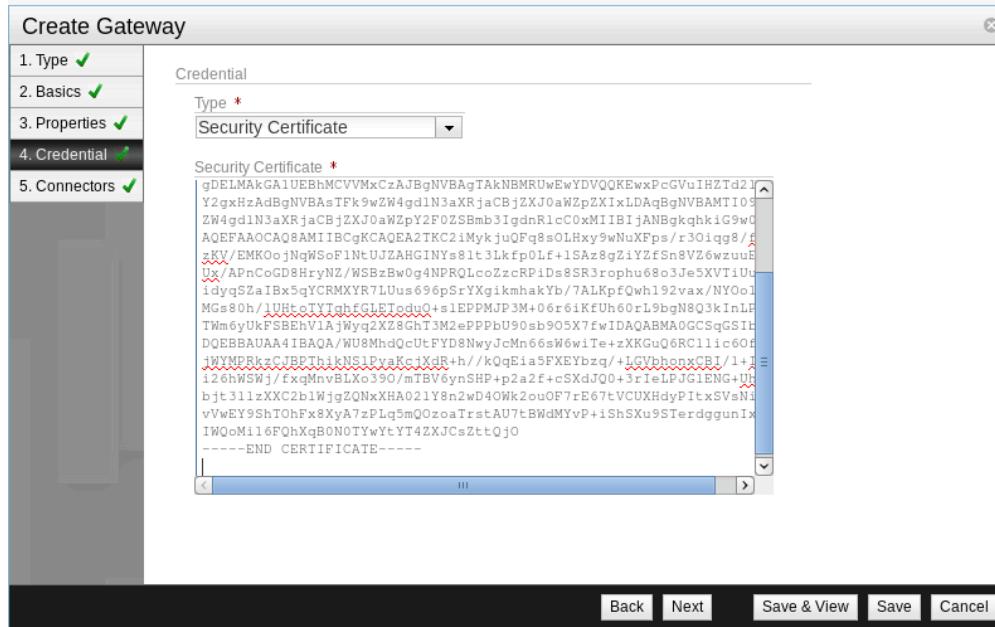
The screenshot shows the NSX Manager interface for Network Components Query. The top navigation bar includes File, Edit, View, History, Bookmarks, Tools, and Help. Below the bar, there's a search bar with the URL 192.168.100.12/3/network\_components?q=category%3Atransport\_layer. The main content area has tabs for Dashboard, Network Components, Controller Cluster, Tools & Troubleshooting, and Admin. The Network Components tab is selected. Under the Network Components section, the Transport Layer category is expanded, showing a table for Transport Zone (1) with one entry: Cumulus\_Zone\_2. The Transport Node (5) category is also expanded, showing a table with five entries: OVS1, ServiceNode, vtep5, vtep8, and vtep9. Both tables have filters, delete checked, and add buttons. At the bottom, there are links for Last updated: January 13, 2014 6:00:41 GMT and Results per page: 10, 25, 50, 100.

- In the Create Gateway dialog, select **Gateway** for the **Transport Node Type**, then click **Next**.
- In the **Display Name** field, give the gateway a name, then click **Next**.
- Enable the VTEP service. Select the **VTEP Enabled** checkbox, then click **Next**.
- From the terminal session connected to the switch where you generated the certificate, copy the certificate and paste it into the **Security Certificate** text field. Copy only the bottom portion, including the BEGIN CERTIFICATE and END CERTIFICATE lines. For example, copy all the highlighted text in the terminal:



```
ubuntu@tor1: ~
87:3f:ea;76:8b:67:fe:71:25:dd:25:0d:3e:de:b2:1e:2c:f2;
46:94:43:46:f9:48:43:6e:3b:77:96:5e:d7:5c:2d:9b:95:68;
e0:65:03:71:5c:70:34:da:56:3c:9f:6e:03:e0:45:da:8b;
8e:17:ba:c4:eb:bb:59:09:45:c7:77:23:c8:b7:14:95:b0:d8;
ba:bd:5c:04:63:41:a1:c4:e8:45:c7:c5:f2:03:bc:c7:2e:ae;
66:40:ec:e8:69:3a:ec:b4:05:3b:b4:15:9d:31:b8:cfc:faf:24;
a1:49:7b:bd:49:37:ab:76:08:2e:9c:8c:44:21:64:28:32:2d;
7a:19:08:57:a8:1d:0d:0d:36:30:62:db:13:e1:95:c9:0:a:c6;
6d:b5:08:ce
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIBdCCA18CAQYDQJKzQIwvNA0QEEB0AwgYExCzATBgNVBAYTA1VTM0swCQD
M0Q1EwJJOtEVMBGALUECHMT3B1b1B2U3dpdGNoMREwDwYDVQQLEuhzd210V2hj
YtE7MDkgA1UEAxMt1ZT1HN3aXRjaGhNIEBNEN1cnRpZnlyXR11CsgyIDEzER1
YgAuMyAxNzowOByNCkuUhNMTHxkjIzTcxMzAxJhJhMTQ-MjIzM2TxhzxhJjCB
gDELMAgCA1UEBhMCVWhCcRAJBgNVBAsTdkkNBMRUwEYDVQKExwPcGVwH2Td210
Y2gxHzAdBgNVBAsTFKw9uZl44gdIN3aXpJaC8ZXJ0alZpZXIxLxDqBgwVBANT109w
Zl44gdIN3aXpJaC8ZXJ0alZp2F02SRmb31gdR1cOwM1B1JAnBgkqhkiGw0B
9QEFAAOCAQ8M1IBCaKCAQEA2TKC2iMyjQFq8s0LHxy3wNuXfps/r30iq98/FP
zKV/EMK0oJNdsf1htUJZAHGINy81t3LkfplF+1Sa28g21YzFSn8VZ6zuuE8
Jx/APnCoGdBhNz2/WSbzBw0g4NPnQlco2zcRP1DsS93r0phu683jeXVt1UuZ
jdqg5za1bx5qYCRMXYR7LUsos96p5YXgimkahYb/7HLkpQ0uh192vax/NY0oi
MG80h1UHt0TYTghGLETodu0+sLEPPNJP3M+06:61kFuhs6:L9bgN803kInLPN
TlW6UkFSEhV1Ajjuqg2XZ8GhT3M2ePPBbJ9Osbs05X7fuID9QBMhAGGScGS1b3
DOEBBaUa44IBaQ9/wU8MhdclcUtFYD8NwJcm6sdlwJte+zXGw06RC11ic60fq
jWYMPRkzCJBPThiKNSIPyaKcjXdr+/-KQeia5FKEYbzq/+LGvbhnxCB1/1+1G
i26hW5UJ/fxmnvBLko390/nTBw6unSHP+2a2f+c5xdJ00+3r1eLPJG1ENG+UnD
bJt311zXc2b1wJg2UNxHA021Y8w2u040lk2uoF7rB7tVCLXHdyItxsVsN16
vWvEY9ShTOHfx3uA7zPLq5m02ozaTrstAU7tBldMyvP+ShSXu9STerDggunIxE
IWQoM16F0hkaBONOTyWYT4ZJC0s2ztQj0
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
root@vtep-1:~#
```

And paste it into NSX Manager:



Then click **Next**.

6. In the Connectors dialog, click **Add Connector** to add a transport connector. This defines the tunnel endpoint that terminates the VXLAN tunnel and connects NSX to the physical gateway. You must choose a tunnel **Transport Type** of **VXLAN**. Choose an existing transport zone for the connector, or click **Create** to create a new transport zone.
7. Define the connector's IP address (that is, the underlay IP address on the switch for tunnel termination).
8. Click **OK** to save the connector, then click **Save** to save the gateway.

Once communication is established between the switch and the controller, a `controller.cacert` file will be downloaded onto the switch.

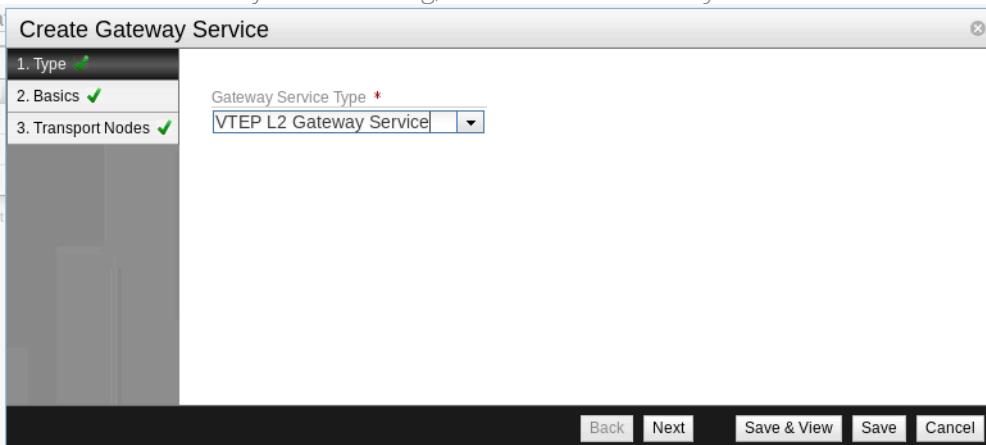
Verify the controller and switch handshake is successful. In a terminal connected to the switch, run this command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovswitch-client dump -f list | grep -A 7 "Manager"
Manager table
_uuid : 505f32af-9acb-4182-a315-022e405aa479
_inactivity_probe : 30000
_is_connected : true
_max_backoff : []
_other_config : {}
_status : {sec_since_connect="18223",
sec_since_disconnect="18225", state=ACTIVE}
_target : "ssl:192.168.100.17:6632"
```

## Configuring the Transport Layer

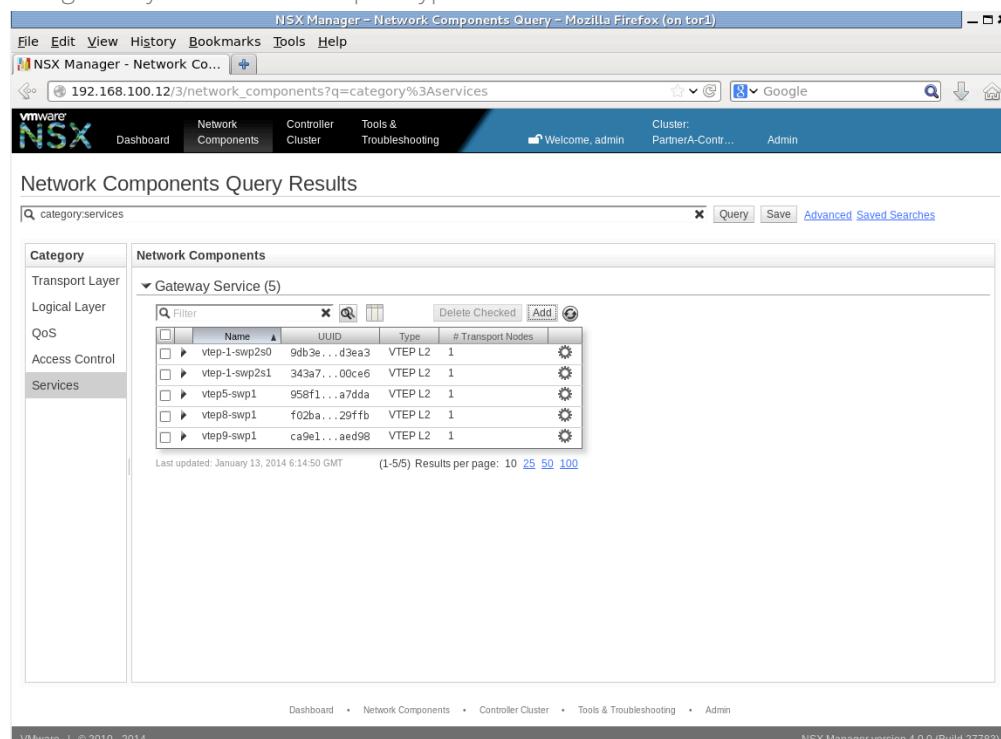
After you finish bootstrapping the NSX integration, you need to configure the transport layer. For each host-facing switch port that is to be associated with a VXLAN instance, define a **Gateway Service** for the port.

1. In NSX Manager, add a new gateway service. Click the **Network Components** tab, then the **Services** category. Under **Gateway Service**, click **Add**. The Create Gateway Service wizard appears.
2. In the Create Gateway Service dialog, select **VTEP L2 Gateway Service** as the **Gateway Service Type**.



3. Give the service a **Display Name** to represent the VTEP in NSX.
4. Click **Add Gateway** to associate the service with the gateway you created earlier.
5. In the **Transport Node** field, choose the name of the gateway you created earlier.
6. In the **Port ID** field, choose the physical port on the gateway (for example, swp10) that will connect to a logical L2 segment and carry data traffic.
7. Click **OK** to save this gateway in the service, then click **Save** to save the gateway service.

The gateway service shows up as type **VTEP L2** in NSX.



Name	UUID	Type	# Transport Nodes
vtep-1-swp2s0	9db3e...d3ea3	VTEP L2	1
vtep-1-swp2s1	343a7...00ce6	VTEP L2	1
vtep5-swp1	958f1...a7ddc	VTEP L2	1
vtep8-swp1	f02ba...29ffb	VTEP L2	1
vtep9-swp1	c9e1...aaed98	VTEP L2	1

Next, you will configure the logical layer on NSX.

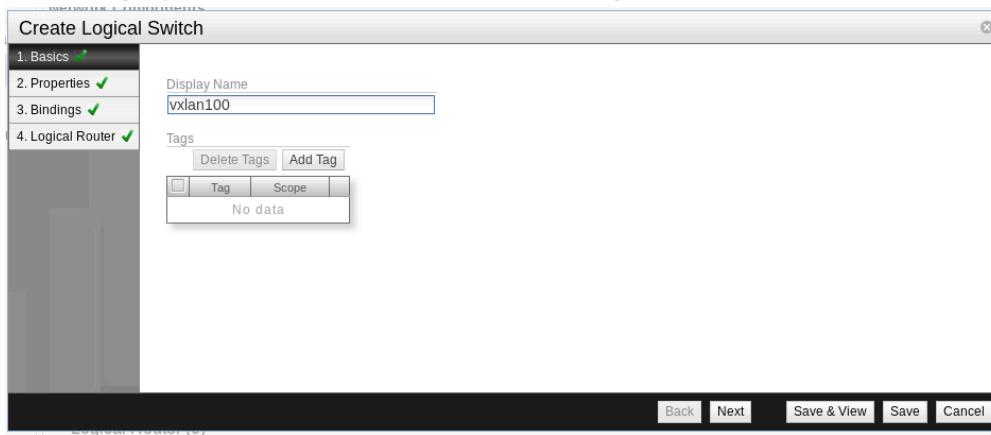
## Configuring the Logical Layer

To complete the integration with NSX, you need to configure the logical layer, which requires defining a logical switch (the VXLAN instance) and all the logical ports needed.

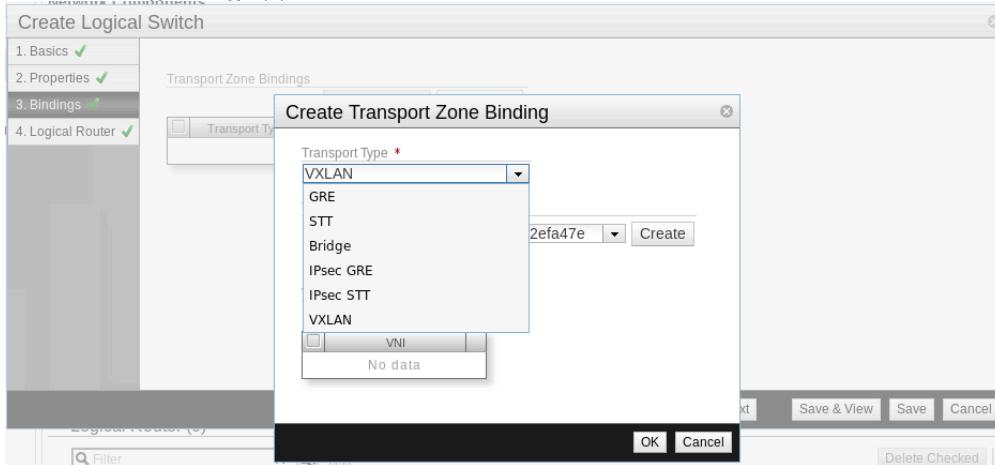
### Defining Logical Switches

To define the logical switch, do the following:

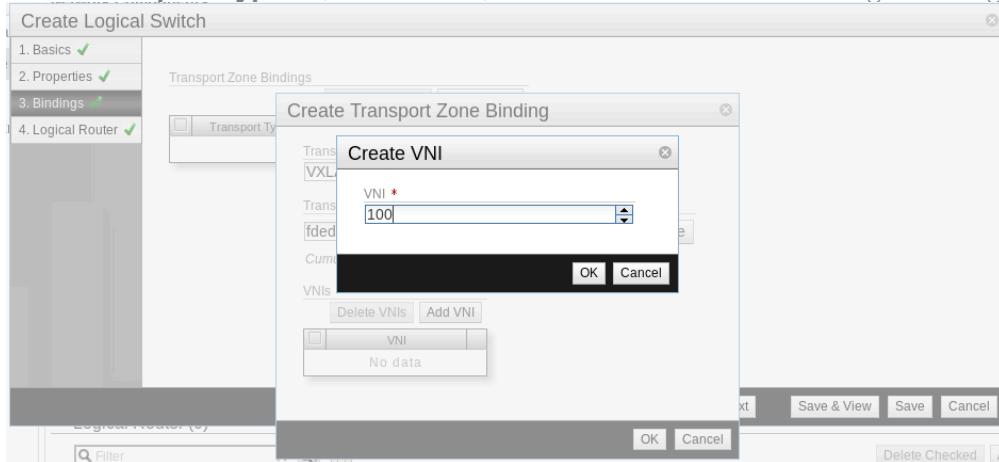
1. In NSX Manager, add a new logical switch. Click the **Network Components** tab, then the **Logical Layer** category. Under **Logical Switch**, click **Add**. The Create Logical Switch wizard appears.
2. In the **Display Name** field, enter a name for the logical switch, then click **Next**.



3. Under **Replication Mode**, select **Service Nodes**, then click **Next**.
4. Specify the transport zone bindings for the logical switch. Click **Add Binding**. The Create Transport Zone Binding dialog appears.



5. In the **Transport Type** list, select **VXLAN**, then click **OK** to add the binding to the logical switch.

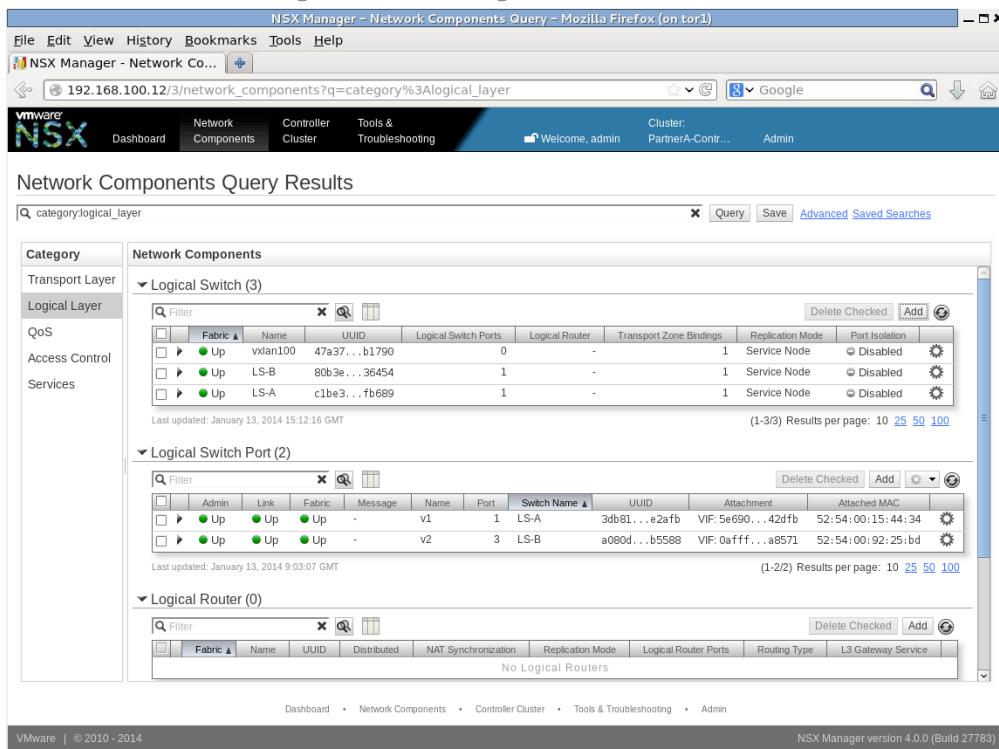


6. In the **VNI** field, assign the switch a VNI ID, then click **OK**.



Do not use 0 or 16777215 as the VNI ID, as they are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.

7. Click **Save** to save the logical switch configuration.



Logical Switch (3)									
Fabric	Name	UUID	Logical Switch Ports	Logical Router	Transport Zone Bindings	Replication Mode	Port Isolation		
Up	vxian100	47a37...b1790	0	-	1	Service Node	Disabled		
Up	LS-B	80b3e...36454	1	-	1	Service Node	Disabled		
Up	LS-A	c1be3...fb689	1	-	1	Service Node	Disabled		

Logical Switch Port (2)										
Fabric	Admin	Link	Fabric	Message	Name	Port	Switch Name	UUID	Attachment	Attached MAC
Up	Up	Up	Up	-	v1	1	LS-A	3db81...e2afb	VIF:5e690...42dfb	52:54:00:15:44:34
Up	Up	Up	Up	-	v2	3	LS-B	a080d...b5588	VIF:0afff...a8571	52:54:00:92:25:bd

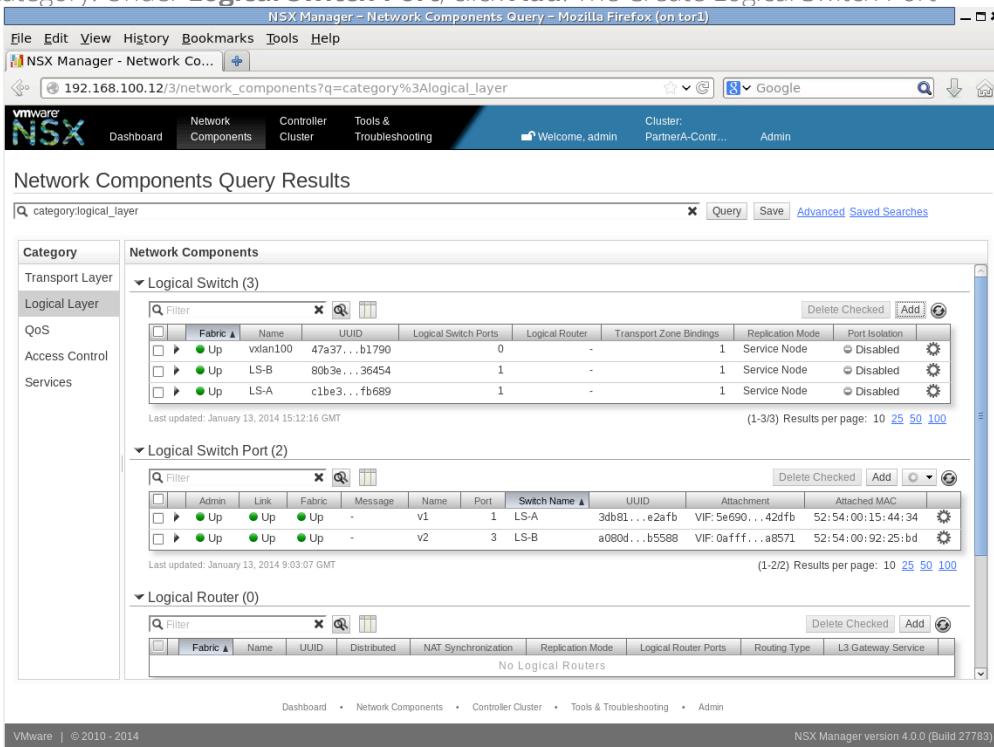
Logical Router (0)									
Fabric	Name	UUID	Distributed	NAT Synchronization	Replication Mode	Logical Router Ports	Routing Type	L3 Gateway Service	
No Logical Routers									

## Defining Logical Switch Ports

As the final step, define the logical switch ports. They can be virtual machine VIF interfaces from a registered OVS, or a VTEP gateway service instance on this switch, as defined above in the Configuring the Transport Layer. A VLAN binding can be defined for each VTEP gateway service associated with the particular logical switch.

To define the logical switch ports, do the following:

- In NSX Manager, add a new logical switch port. Click the **Network Components** tab, then the **Logical Layer** category. Under **Logical Switch Port**, click **Add**. The Create Logical Switch Port



The screenshot shows the NSX Manager interface with the following details:

- Network Components Query Results** page.
- Category** sidebar: Transport Layer, Logical Layer (selected), QoS, Access Control, Services.
- Logical Layer** section:
  - Logical Switch (3)** table:
 

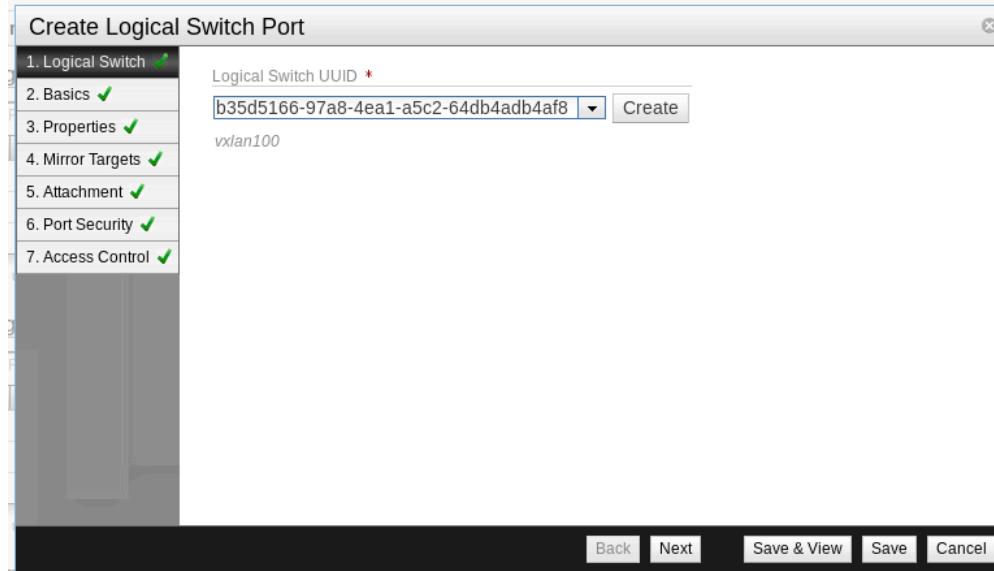
Fabric	Name	UUID	Logical Switch Ports	Logical Router	Transport Zone Bindings	Replication Mode	Port Isolation
vxlan100	47a37...b1790		0	-	1	Service Node	Disabled
LS-B	80b3e...36454		1	-	1	Service Node	Disabled
LS-A	c1be3...fb689		1	-	1	Service Node	Disabled
  - Logical Switch Port (2)** table:
 

Admin	Link	Fabric	Message	Name	Port	Switch Name	UUID	Attachment	Attached MAC
Up	Up	Up	-	v1	1	LS-A	3db81...62afb	VIF: 5e690...42dfb	52:54:00:15:44:34
Up	Up	Up	-	v2	3	LS-B	a080d...b5588	VIF: 0afff...a8571	52:54:00:92:25:bd
  - Logical Router (0)** table:
 

Fabric	Name	UUID	Distributed	NAT Synchronization	Replication Mode	Logical Router Ports	Routing Type	L3 Gateway Service
No Logical Routers								

wizard appears.

- In the **Logical Switch UUID** list, select the logical switch you created above, then click **Create**.



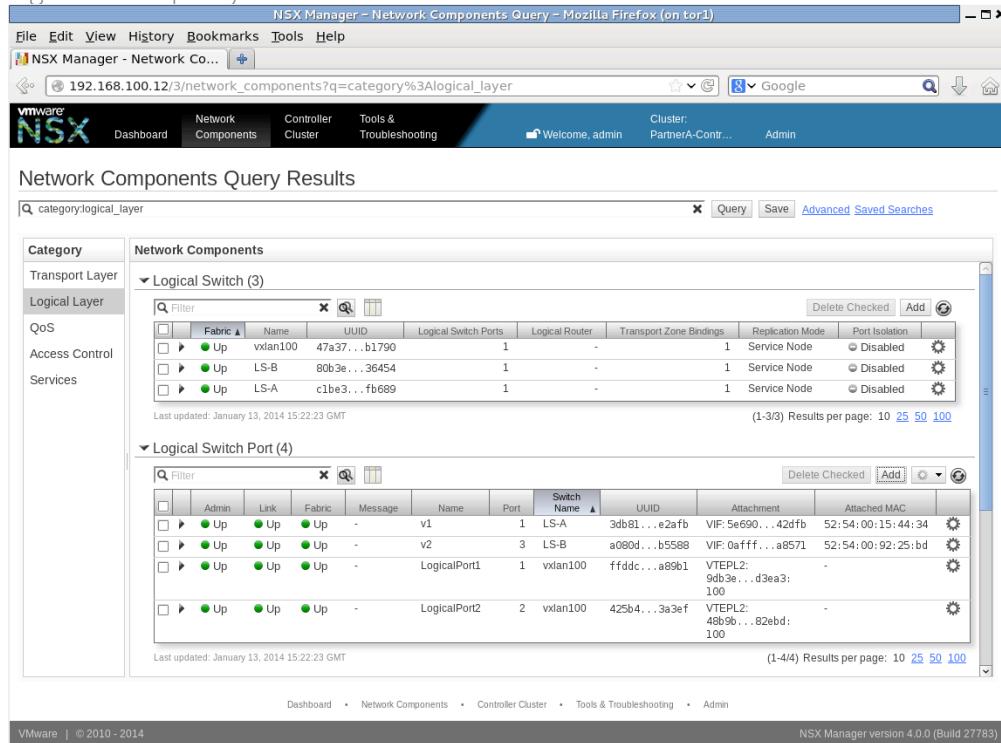
The screenshot shows the 'Create Logical Switch Port' wizard step 2: Basics. The left sidebar lists steps 1 through 7, with step 2 selected. The main area shows:

- Logical Switch UUID \***: b35d5166-97a8-4ea1-a5c2-64db4adb4af8
- Display Name**: vxlan100

At the bottom are buttons: Back, Next, Save & View, Save, Cancel.

- In the **Display Name** field, give the port a name that indicates it is the port that connects the gateway, then click **Next**.
- In the **Attachment Type** list, select **VTEP L2 Gateway**.
- In the **VTEP L2 Gateway Service UUID** list, choose the name of the gateway service you created earlier.
- In the **VLAN** list, you can optionally choose a VLAN if you wish to connect only traffic on a specific VLAN of the physical network. Leave it blank to handle all traffic.

7. Click **Save** to save the logical switch port. Connectivity is established. Repeat this procedure for each logical switch port you want to define.



The screenshot shows the NSX Manager interface for Network Components Query. The left sidebar has categories: Transport Layer, Logical Layer (selected), QoS, Access Control, and Services. The main area displays two tables:

- Logical Switch (3)**: Shows three entries:
 

Fabric	Name	UUID	Logical Switch Ports	Logical Router	Transport Zone Bindings	Replication Mode	Port Isolation
Up	vxlan100	47a37...b1790	1	-	1 Service Node	Disabled	
Up	LS-B	80b3e...36454	1	-	1 Service Node	Disabled	
Up	LS-A	c1be3...fb689	1	-	1 Service Node	Disabled	

 Last updated: January 13, 2014 15:22:23 GMT
- Logical Switch Port (4)**: Shows four entries:
 

Admin	Link	Fabric	Message	Name	Port	Switch Name	UUID	Attachment	Attached MAC
Up	Up	Up	-	v1	1	LS-A	3db81...e2af	VIF: 5e690...42dfb	52:54:00:15:44:34
Up	Up	Up	-	v2	3	LS-B	a080d...b5588	VIF: 0afff...a8571	52:54:00:92:25:bd
Up	Up	Up	-	LogicalPort1	1	vxlan100	ffddc...a89b1	VTEPL2: 9db3e...d3ea3: 100	
Up	Up	Up	-	LogicalPort2	2	vxlan100	425b4...3a3ef	VTEPL2: 4899b...82ebd: 100	

 Last updated: January 13, 2014 15:22:23 GMT

At the bottom, there are navigation links: Dashboard, Network Components, Controller Cluster, Tools & Troubleshooting, Admin, and a note: VMware | © 2010 - 2014 NSX Manager version 4.0.0 (Build 27783)

## Verifying the VXLAN Configuration

Once configured, you can verify the VXLAN configuration using these Cumulus Linux commands in a terminal connected to the switch:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip -d link show vxln100
71: vxln100: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
  master br-vxln100 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
    link/ether d2:ca:78:bb:7c:9b brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    vxlan id 100 local 172.16.20.157 port 32768 61000 nolearning
      ageing 300 svchnode 172.16.21.125
```

or

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo bridge fdb show
52:54:00:ae:2a:e0 dev vxln100 dst 172.16.21.150 self permanent
d2:ca:78:bb:7c:9b dev vxln100 permanent
90:e2:ba:3f:ce:34 dev swp2s1.100
90:e2:ba:3f:ce:35 dev swp2s0.100
44:38:39:00:48:0e dev swp2s1.100 permanent
44:38:39:00:48:0d dev swp2s0.100 permanent
```

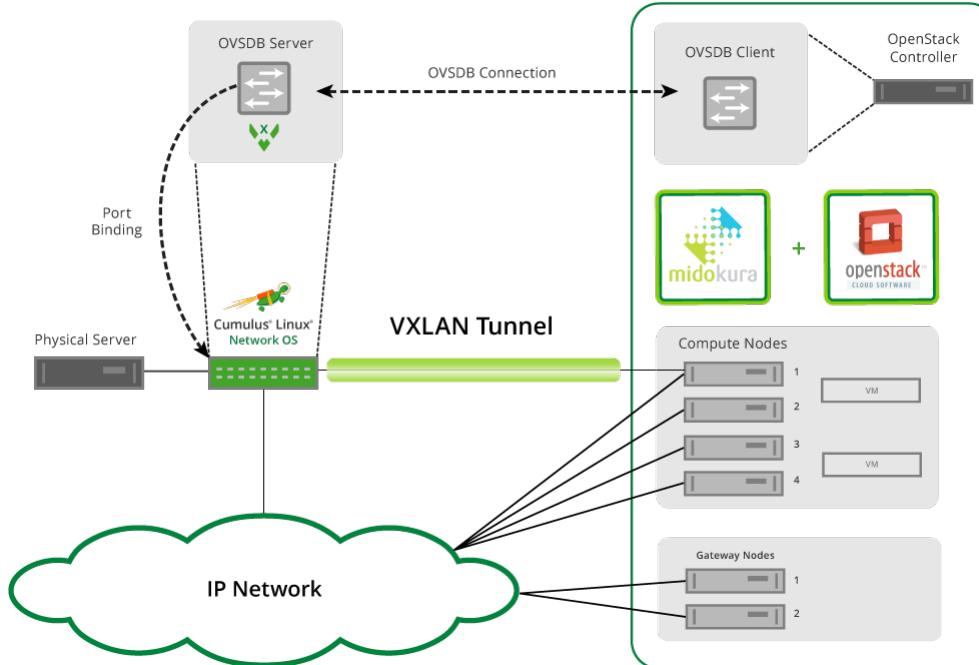
## Troubleshooting VXLANs in NSX

Use `ovsdb-client dump` to troubleshoot issues on the switch. It verifies that the controller and switch handshake is successful. This command works only for VXLANs integrated with NSX:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovsdb-client dump -f list | grep -A 7 "Manager"
Manager table
_uuid : 505f32af-9acb-4182-a315-022e405aa479
_inactivity_probe : 30000
_is_connected : true
_max_backoff : []
_other_config : {}
_status : {sec_since_connect="18223",
sec_since_disconnect="18225", state=ACTIVE}
_target : "ssl:192.168.100.17:6632"
```

## Integrating Hardware VTEPs with Midokura MidoNet and OpenStack

Cumulus Linux seamlessly integrates with the MidoNet OpenStack infrastructure, where the switches provide the VTEP gateway for terminating VXLAN tunnels from within MidoNet. MidoNet connects to the OVSDB server running on the Cumulus Linux switch, and exchanges information about the VTEPs and MAC addresses associated with the OpenStack Neutron networks. This provides seamless Ethernet connectivity between virtual and physical server infrastructures.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Getting Started (see page 316)
  - Caveats and Errata (see page 316)

- Preparing for the MidoNet Integration (see page 317)
  - Enabling the ovsdb-vtep Package (see page 317)
- Bootstrapping the OVSDB Server and VTEP (see page 317)
  - Automating with the Bootstrap Script (see page 317)
  - Manually Bootstrapping (see page 318)
- Configuring MidoNet VTEP and Port Bindings (see page 319)
  - Using the MidoNet Manager GUI (see page 319)
  - Using the MidoNet CLI (see page 322)
- Troubleshooting MidoNet and Cumulus VTEPs (see page 324)
  - Troubleshooting the Control Plane (see page 324)
    - Verifying VTEP and OVSDB Services (see page 324)
    - Verifying OVSDB-server Connections (see page 325)
    - Verifying the VXLAN Bridge and VTEP Interfaces (see page 325)
  - Datapath Troubleshooting (see page 326)
    - Verifying IP Reachability (see page 326)
    - MidoNet VXLAN Encapsulation (see page 326)
  - Inspecting the OVSDB (see page 327)
    - Using VTEP-CTL (see page 327)
    - Getting Open Vswitch Database (OVSDB) Data (see page 328)

## Getting Started

Before you create VXLANs with MidoNet, make sure you have the following components:

- A switch (L2 gateway) with a Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II chipset running Cumulus Linux 2.0 and later
- OVSDB server (`ovsdb-server`), included in Cumulus Linux 2.0 and later
- VTEPd (`ovs-vtep`), included in Cumulus Linux 2.0 and later

Integrating a VXLAN with MidoNet involves:

- Preparing for the MidoNet integration
- Bootstrapping the OVS and VTEP
- Configuring the MidoNet VTEP binding
- Verifying the VXLAN configuration

## Caveats and Errata

- There is no support for VXLAN routing in the Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II chipsets; use a loopback interface or external router.
- For more information about MidoNet, see the MidoNet Operations Guide, version 1.8 or later.

## **Preparing for the MidoNet Integration**

Before you start configuring the MidoNet tunnel zones, VTEP binding and connecting virtual ports to the VXLAN, you need to complete the bootstrap process on each switch to which you plan to build VXLAN tunnels. This creates the VTEP gateway and initializes the OVS database server. You only need to do the bootstrapping once, before you begin the MidoNet integration.

## **Enabling the `openvswitch-vtep` Package**

Before you start bootstrapping the integration, you need to enable the `openvswitch-vtep` package, since it is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux.

1. Edit the `/etc/default/openvswitch-vtep` file, changing the `START` option from `no` to `yes`. This simple `sed` command does this, and creates a backup as well:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo sed -i.bak s/START=no/START=yes/g /etc/default/openvswitch-vtep
```

2. Start the daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start openvswitch-vtep.service
```

## **Bootstrapping the OVSDB Server and VTEP**

### **Automating with the Bootstrap Script**

The `vtep-bootstrap` script is available so you can do the bootstrapping automatically. For information, read `man vtep-bootstrap`. This script requires three parameters, in this order:

- Switch name: The name of the switch that is the VTEP gateway.
- Tunnel IP address: The datapath IP address of the VTEP.
- Management IP address: The IP address of the switch's management interface.

For example, click [here](#) ...

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-bootstrap sw11 10.111.1.1 10.50.20.21 --no_encryption
Executed:
define physical switch
().
Executed:
define local tunnel IP address on the switch
().
Executed:
define management IP address on the switch
```

```
( ).  
Executed:  
  restart a service  
    (Killing ovs-vtep (28170).  
    Killing ovsdb-server (28146).  
    Starting ovsdb-server.  
    Starting ovs-vtep.).
```

**⚠** Since MidoNet does not have a controller, you need to use a dummy IP address (for example, 1.1.1.1) for the controller parameter in the bootstrap script. After the script completes, delete the VTEP manager, since it is not needed and will otherwise fill the logs with inconsequential error messages:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl del-manager
```

## Manually Bootstrapping

If you don't use the bootstrap script, then you must initialize the OVS database instance manually, and create the VTEP.

Perform the following commands in order (see the automated bootstrapping example above for values):

1. Define the switch in OVSDB:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl add-ps <switch_name>
```

2. Define the VTEP tunnel IP address:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set Physical_switch  
<switch_name> tunnel_ips=<tunnel_ip>
```

3. Define the management interface IP address:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set Physical_switch  
<switch_name> management_ips=<management_ip>
```

4. Restart the OVSDB server and vtep:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart openvswitch-vtep.service
```

At this point, the switch is ready to connect to MidoNet. The rest of the configuration is performed in the MidoNet Manager GUI, or using the MidoNet API.

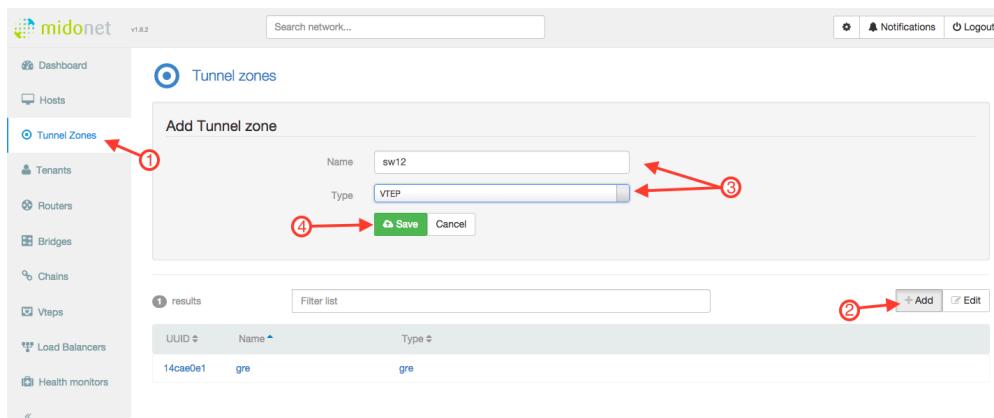
## Configuring MidoNet VTEP and Port Bindings

This part of the configuration sets up MidoNet and OpenStack to connect the virtualization environment to the Cumulus Linux switch. The `midonet-agent` is the networking component that manages the VXLAN, while the Open Virtual Switch (OVS) client on the OpenStack controller node communicates MAC address information between the `midonet-agent` and the Cumulus Linux OVS database (OVSDB) server.

### Using the MidoNet Manager GUI

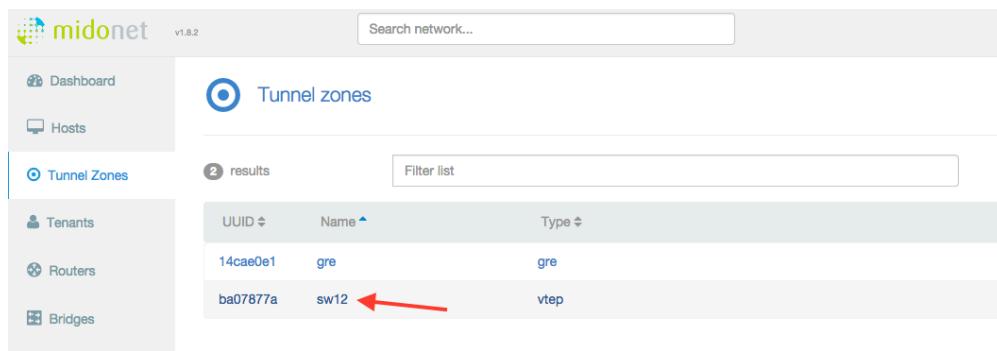
Creating a Tunnel Zone

1. Click **Tunnel Zones** in the menu on the left side.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Give the tunnel zone a **Name** and select "**VTEP**" for the **Type**.
4. Click **Save**.



Adding Hosts to a Tunnel Zone

Once the tunnel zone is created, click the name of the tunnel zone to view the hosts table.



UUID	Name	Type
14cae0e1	gre	gre
ba07877a	sw12	vtep

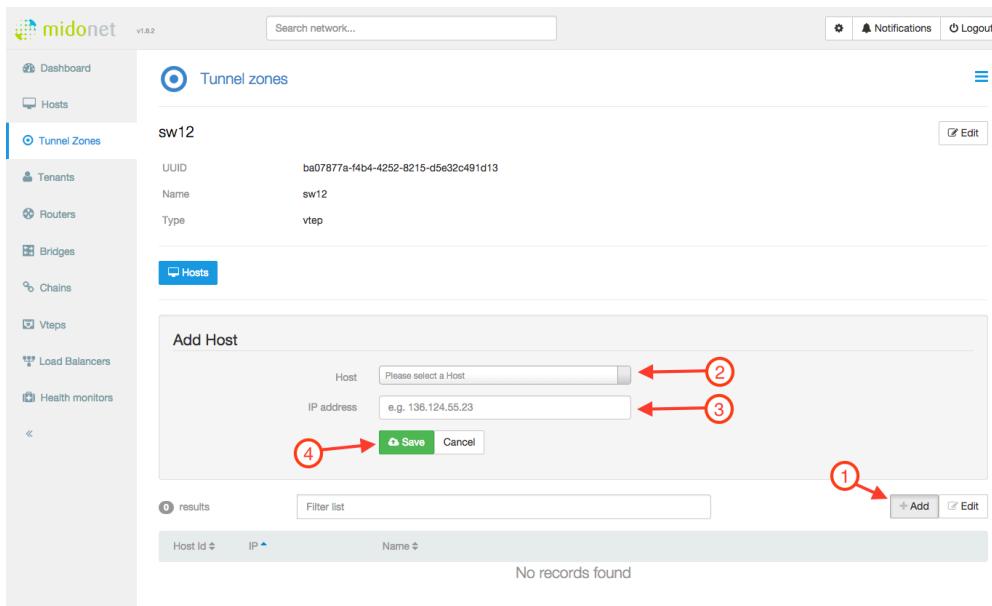
The tunnel zone is a construct used to define the VXLAN source address used for the tunnel. This host's address is used for the source of the VXLAN encapsulation, and traffic will transit into the routing domain from this point. Thus, the host must have layer 3 reachability to the Cumulus Linux switch tunnel IP.

Next, add a host entry to the tunnel zone:

1. Click **Add**.
2. Select a host from the **Host** list.

3. Provide the tunnel source **IP Address** to use on the selected host.

4. Click **Save**.

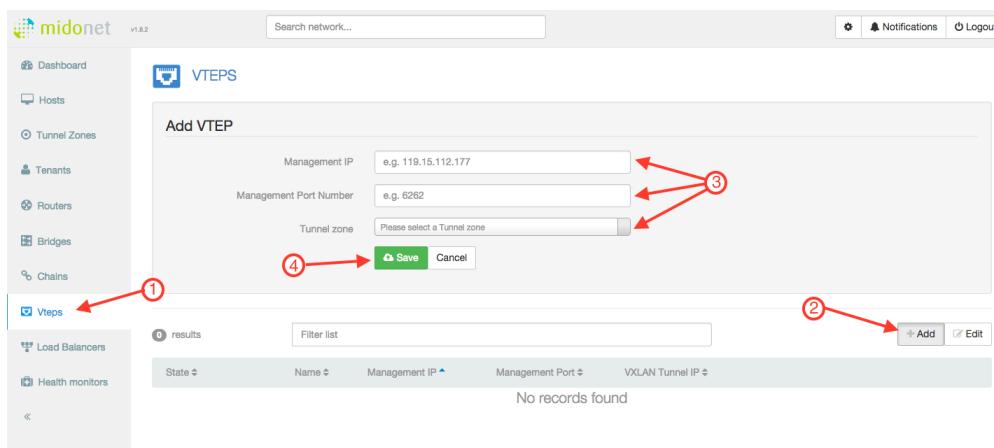


The host list now displays the new entry:



## Creating the VTEP

1. Click the **Vtep** menu on the left side.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Fill out the fields using the same information you used earlier on the switch for the bootstrap procedure:
  - **Management IP** is typically the eth0 address of the switch. This tells the OVS-client to connect to the OVSDB-server on the Cumulus Linux switch.
  - **Management Port Number** is the PTCP port you configured in the `ovs-ctl-vtep` script earlier (the example uses 6632).
  - **Tunnel Zone** is the name of the zone you created in the previous procedure.
4. Click **Save**.



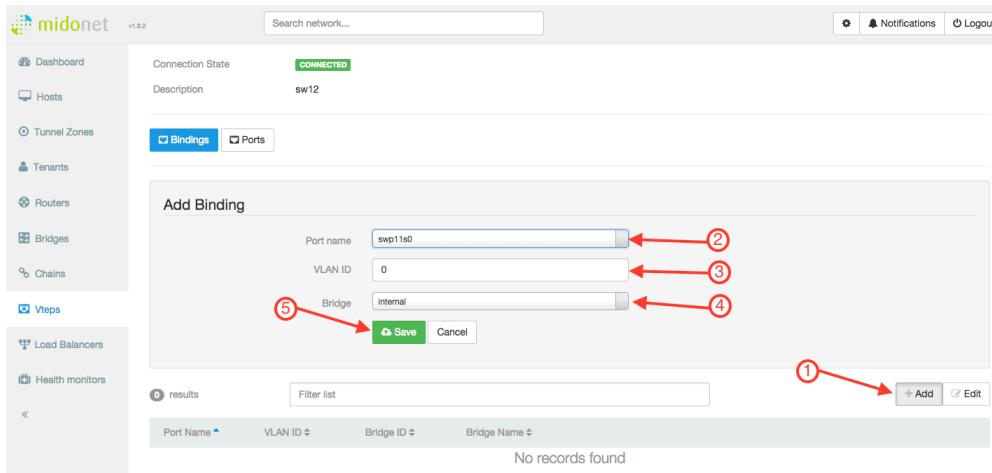
The new VTEP appears in the list below. MidoNet then initiates a connection between the OpenStack Controller and the Cumulus Linux switch. If the OVS client is successfully connected to the OVSDB server, the VTEP entry should display the switch name and VXLAN tunnel IP address, which you specified during the bootstrapping process.

VTEPs				
State	Name	Management IP	Management Port	VXLAN Tunnel IP
CONNECTED	sw11	10.50.20.21	6632	10.111.1.1
CONNECTED	sw12	10.50.20.22	6632	10.111.1.2

### Binding Ports to the VTEP

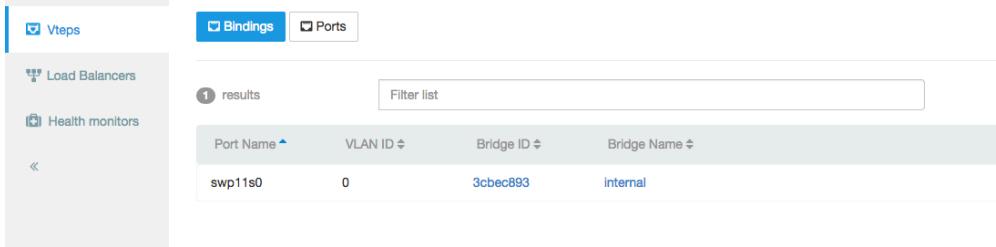
Now that connectivity is established to the switch, you need to add a physical port binding to the VTEP on the Cumulus Linux switch:

1. Click **Add**.
2. In the **Port Name** list, select the port on the Cumulus Linux switch that you are using to connect to the VXLAN segment.
3. Specify the **VLAN ID** (enter 0 for untagged).
4. In the **Bridge** list, select the MidoNet bridge that the instances (VMs) are using in OpenStack.
5. Click **Save**.



The screenshot shows the MidoNet Manager interface. On the left, there's a sidebar with options like Dashboard, Hosts, Tunnel Zones, Tenants, Routers, Bridges, Chains, Vteps, Load Balancers, and Health monitors. The main area shows a 'Connections' section with 'Connection State' set to 'CONNECTED' and 'Description' set to 'sw12'. Below this is a 'Bindings' tab, which is selected. An 'Add Binding' dialog box is open, prompting for 'Port name' (swp11s0), 'VLAN ID' (0), and 'Bridge' (internal). At the bottom of the dialog are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons. A red arrow labeled 1 points to the 'Add' button in the bottom right corner of the dialog. Red arrows labeled 2, 3, 4, and 5 point to the respective input fields: Port name, VLAN ID, Bridge, and Save.

You should see the port binding displayed in the binding table under the VTEP.



The screenshot shows the 'VTEPs' tab selected in the sidebar. Under it, the 'Bindings' tab is active. A table lists port bindings with the following data:

Port Name	VLAN ID	Bridge ID	Bridge Name
swp11s0	0	3cbe893	internal

A red arrow labeled 1 points to the 'Add' button located at the top right of the table header.

Once the port is bound, this automatically configures a VXLAN bridge interface, and includes the VTEP interface and the port bound to the bridge. Now the OpenStack instances (VMs) should be able to ping the hosts connected to the bound port on the Cumulus switch. The Troubleshooting section below demonstrates the verification of the VXLAN data and control planes.

## Using the MidoNet CLI

To get started with the MidoNet CLI, you can access the CLI prompt on the OpenStack Controller:

```
root@os-controller:~# midonet-cli
midonet>
```

Now from the MidoNet CLI, the commands explained in this section perform the same operations depicted in the previous section with the MidoNet Manager GUI.

1. Create a tunnel zone with a name and type vtep:

```
midonet> tunnel-zone create name sw12 type vtep
tzone1
```

2. The tunnel zone is a construct used to define the VXLAN source address used for the tunnel. This host's address is used for the source of the VXLAN encapsulation, and traffic will transit into the routing domain from this point. Thus, the host must have layer 3 reachability to the Cumulus Linux switch tunnel IP.

- First, get the list of available hosts connected to the Neutron network and the MidoNet bridge.
- Next, get a listing of all the interfaces.
- Finally, add a host entry to the tunnel zone ID returned in the previous step, and specify which interface address to use.

```

midonet> list host
host host0 name os-compute1 alive true
host host1 name os-network alive true
midonet> host host0 list interface
iface midonet host_id host0 status 0 addresses [] mac 02:4b:
38:92:dd:ce mtu 1500 type Virtual endpoint DATAPATH
iface lo host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'127.0.0.1', u'1
69.254.169.254', u'0:0:0:0:0:0:0:1'] mac 00:00:00:00:00:00
mtu 65536 type Virtual endpoint LOCALHOST
iface virbr0 host_id host0 status 1 addresses [u'192.168.122
.1'] mac 22:6e:63:90:1f:69 mtu 1500 type Virtual endpoint
UNKNOWN
iface tap7cf84c-26 host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'fe8
0:0:0:0:e822:94ff:fee2:d41b'] mac ea:22:94:e2:d4:1b mtu 6500
0 type Virtual endpoint DATAPATH
iface eth1 host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'10.111.0.182'
, u'fe80:0:0:0:5054:ff:fe85:acd6'] mac 52:54:00:85:ac:d6
mtu 1500 type Physical endpoint PHYSICAL
iface tapfd4abcea-df host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'fe8
0:0:0:0:14b3:45ff:fe94:5b07'] mac 16:b3:45:94:5b:07 mtu 6500
0 type Virtual endpoint DATAPATH
iface eth0 host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'10.50.21.182'
, u'fe80:0:0:0:5054:ff:feef:c5dc'] mac 52:54:00:ef:c5:dc
mtu 1500 type Physical endpoint PHYSICAL
midonet> tunnel-zone tzone0 add member host host0 address 10
.111.0.182
zone tzone0 host host0 address 10.111.0.182

```

Repeat this procedure for each OpenStack host connected to the Neutron network and the MidoNet bridge.

3. Create a VTEP and assign it to the tunnel zone ID returned in the previous step. The management IP address (the destination address for the VXLAN/remote VTEP) and the port must be the same ones you configured in the `vtep-bootstrap` script or the manual bootstrapping:

```

midonet> vtep add management-ip 10.50.20.22 management-port 6632
tunnel-zone tzone0
name sw12 description sw12 management-ip 10.50.20.22 management-
port 6632 tunnel-zone tzone0 connection-state CONNECTED

```

In this step, MidoNet initiates a connection between the OpenStack Controller and the Cumulus Linux switch. If the OVS client is successfully connected to the OVSDB server, the returned values should show the name and description matching the `switch-name` parameter specified in the bootstrap process.



Verify the connection-state as CONNECTED, otherwise if ERROR is returned, you must debug. Typically this only fails if the `management-ip` and/or `management-port` settings are wrong.

4. The VTEP binding uses the information provided to MidoNet from the OVSDB server, providing a list of ports that the hardware VTEP can use for layer 2 attachment. This binding virtually connects the physical interface to the overlay switch, and joins it to the Neutron bridged network.

First, get the UUID of the Neutron network behind the MidoNet bridge:

```
midonet> list bridge
bridge bridge0 name internal state up
bridge bridge1 name internal2 state up
midonet> show bridge bridge1 id
6c9826da-6655-4fe3-a826-4dcba6477d2d
```

Next, create the VTEP binding, using the UUID and the switch port being bound to the VTEP on the remote end. If there is no VLAN ID, set `vlan` to 0:

```
midonet> vtep name sw12 binding add network-id 6c9826da-6655-4
fe3-a826-4dcba6477d2d physical-port swp11s0 vlan 0
management-ip 10.50.20.22 physical-port swp11s0 vlan 0 network-
id 6c9826da-6655-4fe3-a826-4dcba6477d2d
```

At this point, the VTEP should be connected, and the layer 2 overlay should be operational. From the openstack instance (VM), you should be able to ping a physical server connected to the port bound to the hardware switch VTEP.

## **Troubleshooting MidoNet and Cumulus VTEPs**

As with any complex system, there is a control plane and data plane.

### **Troubleshooting the Control Plane**

In this solution, the control plane consists of the connection between the OpenStack Controller, and each Cumulus Linux switch running the `ovsdb-server` and `vtep` daemons.

### **Verifying VTEP and OVSDB Services**

First, it is important that the OVSDB server and `ovs-vtep` daemon are running. Verify this is the case:

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ systemctl status openvswitch-vtep.service
ovsdb-server is running with pid 17440
ovs-vtep is running with pid 17444
```

## Verifying OVSDB-server Connections

From the OpenStack Controller host, verify that it can connect to the ovsdb-server. Telnet to the switch IP address on port 6632:

```
root@os-controller:~# telnet 10.50.20.22 6632
Trying 10.50.20.22...
Connected to 10.50.20.22.
Escape character is '^]'.
<Ctrl+c>
Connection closed by foreign host.
```

If the connection fails, verify IP reachability from the host to the switch. If that succeeds, it is likely the bootstrap process did not set up port 6632. Redo the bootstrapping procedures above.

```
root@os-controller:~# ping -c1 10.50.20.22
PING 10.50.20.22 (10.50.20.22) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.50.20.22: icmp_seq=1 ttl=63 time=0.315 ms
--- 10.50.20.22 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 1 received, 0% packet loss, time 0ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.315/0.315/0.315/0.000 ms
```

## Verifying the VXLAN Bridge and VTEP Interfaces

After creating the VTEP in Midonet and adding an interface binding, you should see **br-vxln** and **vxln** interfaces on the switch. You can verify that the VXLAN bridge and VTEP interface are created and UP:

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ sudo brctl show
bridge name      bridge id          STP      enabled interfaces
br-vxln10006  8000.00e0ec2749a2    no       swp11s0
                                         vxln10006
cumulus@switch12:~$ sudo ip -d link show vxln10006
55: vxln10006: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
        master br-vxln10006 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
        link/ether 72:94:eb:b6:6c:c3 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        vxlan id 10006 local 10.111.1.2 port 32768 61000 nolearning ageing 3
        00 svcnode 10.111.0.182
        bridge_slave
```

Next, look at the bridging table for the VTEP and the forwarding entries. The bound interface and the VTEP should be listed along with the MAC addresses of those interfaces. When the hosts attached to the bound port send data, those MACs are learned, and entered into the bridging table, as well as the OVSDB.

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ brctl showmacs br-vxln10006
port name      mac addr          vlan  is local?   ageing timer
swp11s0        00:e0:ec:27:49:a2    0     yes        0.00
swp11s0        64:ae:0c:32:f1:41    0     no         0.01
vxln10006      72:94:eb:b6:6c:c3    0     yes        0.00

cumulus@switch12:~$ sudo bridge fdb show br-vxln10006
fa:16:3e:14:04:2e dev vxln10004 dst 10.111.0.182 vlan 65535 self
permanent
00:e0:ec:27:49:a2 dev swp11s0 vlan 0 master br-vxln10004 permanent
b6:71:33:3b:a7:83 dev vxln10004 vlan 0 master br-vxln10004 permanent
64:ae:0c:32:f1:41 dev swp11s0 vlan 0 master br-vxln10004
```

## Datapath Troubleshooting

If you have verified the control plane is correct, and you still cannot get data between the OpenStack instances and the physical nodes on the switch, there may be something wrong with the data plane. The data plane consists of the actual VXLAN encapsulated path, between one of the OpenStack nodes running the `midolman` service. This is typically the compute nodes, but can include the MidoNet gateway nodes. If the OpenStack instances can ping the tenant router address but cannot ping the physical device connected to the switch (or vice versa), then something is wrong in the data plane.

## Verifying IP Reachability

First, there must be IP reachability between the encapsulating node, and the address you bootstrapped as the tunnel IP on the switch. Verify the OpenStack host can ping the tunnel IP. If this doesn't work, check the routing design, and fix the layer 3 problem first.

```
root@os-compute1:~# ping -c1 10.111.1.2
PING 10.111.1.2 (10.111.1.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.111.1.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=62 time=0.649 ms
--- 10.111.1.2 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 1 received, 0% packet loss, time 0ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.649/0.649/0.649/0.000 ms
```

## MidoNet VXLAN Encapsulation

If the instance (VM) cannot ping the physical server, or the reply is not returning, look at the packets on the OpenStack node. Initiate a ping from the OpenStack instance, then using `tcpdump`, hopefully you can see the VXLAN data. This example displays what it looks like when it is working.

```
root@os-compute1:~# tcpdump -i eth1 -l -nnn -vvv -X -e port 4789
52:54:00:85:ac:d6 > 00:e0:ec:26:50:36, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800),
length 148: (tos 0x0, ttl 255, id 7583, offset 0, flags [none], proto
UDP (17), length 134)
```

```

10.111.0.182.41568 > 10.111.1.2.4789: [no cksum] VXLAN, flags [I] (0x
08), vni 10008
fa:16:3e:14:04:2e > 64:ae:0c:32:f1:41, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800),
length 98: (tos 0x0, ttl 64, id 64058, offset 0, flags [DF], proto
ICMP (1), length 84)
 10.111.102.104 > 10.111.102.2: ICMP echo request, id 15873, seq 0,
length 64
 0x0000: 4500 0086 1d9f 0000 ff11 8732 0a6f 00b6 E.....2.o..
 0x0010: 0a6f 0102 a260 12b5 0072 0000 0800 0000 .o...`....r....
 0x0020: 0027 1800 64ae 0c32 f141 fa16 3e14 042e .'..d..2.A..>...
 0x0030: 0800 4500 0054 fa3a 4000 4001 5f26 0a6f ..E..T.:@.._.&.o
 0x0040: 6668 0a6f 6602 0800 f9de 3e01 0000 4233 fh.of.....>...B3
 0x0050: 7dec 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 }.....
 0x0060: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 .....
 0x0070: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 .....
 0x0080: 0000 0000 0000 .....  

00:e0:ec:26:50:36 > 52:54:00:85:ac:d6, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800),
length 148: (tos 0x0, ttl 62, id 2689, offset 0, flags [none], proto
UDP (17), length 134)
 10.111.1.2.63385 > 10.111.0.182.4789: [no cksum] VXLAN, flags [I] (0x
08), vni 10008
64:ae:0c:32:f1:41 > fa:16:3e:14:04:2e, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800),
length 98: (tos 0x0, ttl 255, id 64058, offset 0, flags [DF], proto
ICMP (1), length 84)
 10.111.102.2 > 10.111.102.104: ICMP echo reply, id 15873, seq 0,
length 64
 0x0000: 4500 0086 0a81 0000 3e11 5b51 0a6f 0102 E.....>.[Q.o..
 0x0010: 0a6f 00b6 f799 12b5 0072 0000 0800 0000 .o.....r.....
 0x0020: 0027 1800 fa16 3e14 042e 64ae 0c32 f141 .'....>..d..2.A
 0x0030: 0800 4500 0054 fa3a 4000 ff01 a025 0a6f ..E..T.:@....%o
 0x0040: 6602 0a6f 6668 0000 01df 3e01 0000 4233 f..ofh....>...B3
 0x0050: 7dec 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 }.....
 0x0060: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 .....
 0x0070: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 .....
 0x0080: 0000 0000 0000 .....  


```

## Inspecting the OVSDB

### Using VTEP-CTL

These commands show you the information installed in the OVSDB. This database is structured using the *physical switch ID*, with one or more *logical switch IDs* associated with it. The bootstrap process creates the physical switch, and MidoNet creates the logical switch after the control session is established.

Listing the Physical Switch

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ vtep-ctl list-ps
sw12
```

## Listing the Logical Switch

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ vtep-ctl list-ls
mn-6c9826da-6655-4fe3-a826-4dcba6477d2d
```

## Listing Local or Remote MAC Addresses

These commands show the MAC addresses learned from the connected port bound to the logical switch, or the MAC addresses advertised from MidoNet. The *unknown-dst* entries are installed to satisfy the ethernet flooding of unknown unicast, and important for learning.

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ vtep-ctl list-local-macs mn-6c9826da-6655-4fe3-
a826-4dcba6477d2d
ucast-mac-local
  64:ae:0c:32:f1:41 -> vxlan_over_ipv4/10.111.1.2
mcast-mac-local
  unknown-dst -> vxlan_over_ipv4/10.111.1.2

cumulus@switch12:~$ vtep-ctl list-remote-macs mn-6c9826da-6655-4fe3-
a826-4dcba6477d2d
ucast-mac-remote
  fa:16:3e:14:04:2e -> vxlan_over_ipv4/10.111.0.182
mcast-mac-remote
  unknown-dst -> vxlan_over_ipv4/10.111.0.182oh
```

## **Getting Open Vswitch Database (OVSDB) Data**

The `ovsdb-client dump` command is large, but shows all of the information and tables that are used in communication between the OVS client and server.

Click to expand the output ...

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ ovsdb-client dump
Arp_Sources_Local table
_uuid locator src_mac
-----
Arp_Sources_Remote table
_uuid locator src_mac
-----
Global table
_uuid managers switches
-----
-----
76672d6a-2740-4c8d-9618-9e8dfb4b0bd7 [] [6d459554-0c75-4170-bb3d-
117eb4ce1f4d]
Logical_Binding_Stats table
_uuid bytes_from_local bytes_to_local packets_from_local
packets_to_local
```

```

-----
d2e378b4-61c1-4daf-9aec-a7fd352d3193 5782569 1658250 21687 14589
Logical_Router table
_uuid description name static_routes switch_binding
-----
Logical_Switch table
_uuid description name tunnel_key
-----
44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec "" "mn-6c9826da-6655-4fe3-a826-
4dcba6477d2d" 10006
Manager table
_uuid inactivity_probe is_connected max_backoff other_config status
target
-----
Mcast_Macs_Local table
MAC _uuid ipaddr locator_set logical_switch
-----
unknown-dst 25eaf29a-c540-46e3-8806-3892070a2de5 "" 7a4c000a-244e-
4b37-8f25-fd816c1a80dc 44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec
Mcast_Macs_Remote table
MAC _uuid ipaddr locator_set logical_switch
-----
unknown-dst b122b897-5746-449e-83ba-fa571a64b374 "" 6c04d477-18d0-
41df-8d52-dc7b17845ebe 44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec
Physical_Locator table
_uuid dst_ip encapsulation_type
-----
2fcf8b7e-e084-4bcb-b668-755ae7ac0bfb "10.111.0.182" "vxlan_over_ipv4"
3f78dbb0-9695-42ef-a31f-aaaf525147f1 "10.111.1.2" "vxlan_over_ipv4"
Physical_Locator_Set table
_uuid locators
-----
6c04d477-18d0-41df-8d52-dc7b17845ebe [2fcf8b7e-e084-4bcb-b668-
755ae7ac0bfb]
7a4c000a-244e-4b37-8f25-fd816c1a80dc [3f78dbb0-9695-42ef-a31f-
aaaf525147f1]
Physical_Port table
_uuid description name port_fault_status vlan_bindings vlan_stats
-----
bf69fcbb-36b3-4dbc-a90d-fc7412e57076 "swp1" "swp1" [] {} {}
bf38137d-3a14-454e-8df0-9c56e4b4e640 "swp10" "swp10" [] {} {}

```

```

69585fff-4360-4177-901d-8360ade5391b "swp11s0" "swp11s0" [ ] { 0=44d162d
c-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec} { 0=d2e378b4-61c1-4daf-9aec-
a7fd352d3193}
2a2d04fa-7190-41fe-8cee-318fcbafb2ea "swp11s1" "swp11s1" [ ] {} {}
684f99d5-426c-45c8-b964-211489f45599 "swp11s2" "swp11s2" [ ] {} {}
47cc66fb-ef8a-4a9b-a497-1844b89f7d32 "swp11s3" "swp11s3" [ ] {} {}
5be3a052-be0f-4258-94cb-5e8be9afb896 "swp12" "swp12" [ ] {} {}
631b19bd-3022-4353-bb2d-f498b0c1cb17 "swp13" "swp13" [ ] {} {}
3001c904-b152-4dc4-9d8e-718f24ffa439 "swp14" "swp14" [ ] {} {}
a6f8a88a-3877-4f81-b9b4-d75394a09d2c "swp15" "swp15" [ ] {} {}
7cb681f4-2206-4c70-85b7-23b60963cd21 "swp16" "swp16" [ ] {} {}
3943fb6a-0b49-4806-a014-2bcd4d469537 "swp17" "swp17" [ ] {} {}
109a9911-d6c7-4142-b6c9-7c985506abb4 "swp18" "swp18" [ ] {} {}
93b85c31-be38-4384-8b7a-9696764f9ba9 "swp19" "swp19" [ ] {} {}
bcfb2920-6676-494c-9dc8-b474123b7e59 "swp2" "swp2" [ ] {} {}
4223559a-dal1c-4c34-b8bf-bff7ced376ad "swp20" "swp20" [ ] {} {}
6bbccda8-d7e5-4b19-b978-4ec7f5b868e0 "swp21" "swp21" [ ] {} {}
c6876886-8386-4e34-a307-931909fc58f "swp22" "swp22" [ ] {} {}
c5a88dd6-d931-4b2c-9baa-a0abfb9d41f5 "swp23" "swp23" [ ] {} {}
124d1e01-a187-4427-819f-21de66e76f13 "swp24" "swp24" [ ] {} {}
55b49814-b5c5-405e-8e9f-898f3df4f872 "swp25" "swp25" [ ] {} {}
b2b2cd14-662d-45a5-87c1-277acbccdf7fd "swp26" "swp26" [ ] {} {}
c35f55f5-8ec6-4fed-bef4-49801cd0934c "swp27" "swp27" [ ] {} {}
a44c5402-6218-4f09-bf1e-518f41a5546e "swp28" "swp28" [ ] {} {}
a9294152-2b32-4058-8796-23520ff7379 "swp29" "swp29" [ ] {} {}
e0ee993a-8383-4701-a766-d425654dbb7f "swp3" "swp3" [ ] {} {}
d9db91a6-1c10-4154-9269-84877faa79b4 "swp30" "swp30" [ ] {} {}
b26ce4dd-b771-4d7b-8647-41fa97aa40e3 "swp31" "swp31" [ ] {} {}
652c6cd1-0823-4585-bb78-658e6ca2abfc "swp32" "swp32" [ ] {} {}
5b15372b-89f0-4e14-a50b-b6c6f937d33d "swp4" "swp4" [ ] {} {}
e00741f1-ba34-47c5-ae23-9269c5d1a871 "swp5" "swp5" [ ] {} {}
7096abaf-eebf-4ee3-b0cc-276224bc3e71 "swp6" "swp6" [ ] {} {}
439afb62-067e-4bbe-a0d9-ee33a23d2a9c "swp7" "swp7" [ ] {} {}
54f6c9df-01a1-4d96-9dcf-3035a33ffb3e "swp8" "swp8" [ ] {} {}
c85ed6cd-a7d4-4016-b3e9-34df592072eb "swp9s0" "swp9s0" [ ] {} {}
cf382ed6-60d3-43f5-8586-81f4f0f2fb28 "swp9s1" "swp9s1" [ ] {} {}
c32a9ff9-fd11-4399-815f-806322f26ff5 "swp9s2" "swp9s2" [ ] {} {}
9a7e42c4-228f-4b55-b972-7c3b8352c27d "swp9s3" "swp9s3" [ ] {} {}

Physical_Switch table
_uuid description management_ips name ports switch_fault_status
tunnel_ips tunnels
-----
-----
```



```
-----  
-----  
-----  
"64:ae:0c:32:f1:41" 47a83a7c-bd2d-4c02-9814-8222229c592f "" 3f78dbb0-9  
695-42ef-a31f-aaaf525147f1 44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec  
Ucast_Macs_Remote table  
MAC _uuid ipaddr locator logical_switch  
-----  
-----  
-----  
"fa:16:3e:14:04:2e" 65605488-9ee5-4c8e-93e5-7b1cc15cfcc7 "" 2fcf8b7e-  
e084-4bcb-b668-755ae7ac0bfb 44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec
```

## ***Lightweight Network Virtualization - LNV***

Lightweight Network Virtualization (LNV) is a technique for deploying [VXLANs](#) (see page 300) without a central controller on bare metal switches. This solution requires no external controller or software suite; it runs the VXLAN service and registration daemons on Cumulus Linux itself. The data path between bridge entities is established on top of a layer 3 fabric by means of a simple service node coupled with traditional MAC address learning.

To see an example of a full solution before reading the following background information, [please read this chapter](#) (see page 391).



LNV is a lightweight controller option. Please [contact Cumulus Networks](#) with your scale requirements so we can make sure this is the right fit for you. There are also other controller options that can work on Cumulus Linux.

## ***Contents***

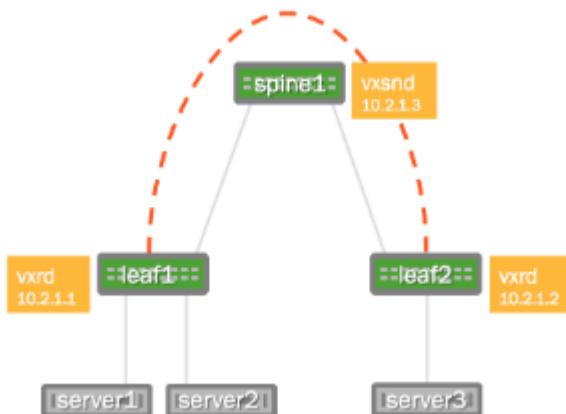
This chapter covers ...

- Understanding LNV Concepts (see page 333)
  - Acquiring the Forwarding Database at the Service Node (see page 334)
  - MAC Learning and Flooding (see page 334)
  - Handling BUM Traffic (see page 334)
- Requirements (see page 335)
  - Hardware Requirements (see page 335)
  - Configuration Requirements (see page 335)
  - Installing the LNV Packages (see page 335)
- Sample LNV Configuration (see page 335)
  - Network Connectivity (see page 336)
  - Layer 3 IP Addressing (see page 336)
  - Layer 3 Fabric (see page 337)
  - Host Configuration (see page 339)
- Configuring the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping (see page 340)

- Verifying the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping (see page 341)
- Enabling and Managing Service Node and Registration Daemons (see page 342)
  - Enabling the Service Node Daemon (see page 342)
  - Enabling the Registration Daemon (see page 342)
  - Checking the Daemon Status (see page 343)
- Configuring the Registration Node (see page 343)
- Configuring the Service Node (see page 345)
- Verification and Troubleshooting (see page 347)
  - Verifying the Registration Node Daemon (see page 347)
  - Verifying the Service Node Daemon (see page 348)
  - Verifying Traffic Flow and Checking Counters (see page 348)
  - Pinging to Test Connectivity (see page 349)
  - Troubleshooting with MAC Addresses (see page 351)
  - Checking the Service Node Configuration (see page 351)
- Creating a Layer 3 Gateway (see page 351)
- Advanced LNV Usage (see page 352)
  - Scaling LNV by Load Balancing with Anycast (see page 352)
  - Restarting Network Removes vxsnd Anycast IP Address from Loopback Interface (see page 357)
- Additional Resources (see page 358)
- See Also (see page 358)

## ***Understanding LNV Concepts***

To best describe this feature, consider the following example deployment:



The two switches running Cumulus Linux, called leaf1 and leaf2, each have a bridge configured. These two bridges contain the physical switch port interfaces connecting to the servers as well as the logical VXLAN interface associated with the bridge. By creating a logical VXLAN interface on both leaf switches, the switches become *VTEPs* (virtual tunnel end points). The IP address associated with this VTEP is most commonly configured as its loopback address — in the image above, the loopback address is 10.2.1.1 for leaf1 and 10.2.1.2 for leaf2.

## Acquiring the Forwarding Database at the Service Node

In order to connect these two VXLANs together and forward BUM (Broadcast, Unknown-unicast, Multicast) packets to members of a VXLAN, the service node needs to acquire the addresses of all the VTEPs for every VXLAN it serves. The service node daemon does this through a registration daemon running on each leaf switch that contains a VTEP participating in LNV. The registration process informs the service node of all the VXLANs to which the switch belongs.

## MAC Learning and Flooding

With LNV, as with traditional bridging of physical LANs or VLANs, a bridge automatically learns the location of hosts as a side effect of receiving packets on a port.

For example, when server1 sends an L2 packet to server3, leaf2 learns that server1's MAC address is located on that particular VXLAN, and the VXLAN interface learns that the IP address of the VTEP for server1 is 10.2.1.1. So when server3 sends a packet to server1, the bridge on leaf2 forwards the packet out of the port to the VXLAN interface and the VXLAN interface sends it, encapsulated in a UDP packet, to the address 10.2.1.1.

But what if server3 sends a packet to some address that has yet to send it a packet (server2, for example)? In this case, the VXLAN interface sends the packet to the service node, which sends a copy to every other VTEP that belongs to the same VXLAN.

## Handling BUM Traffic

Cumulus Linux has two ways of handling BUM (Broadcast Unknown-unicast and Multicast) traffic:

- Head end replication
- Service node replication

Head end replication is enabled by default in Cumulus Linux.



You cannot have both service node and head end replication configured simultaneously, as this causes the BUM traffic to be duplicated — both the source VTEP and the service node sending their own copy of each packet to every remote VTEP.

## Head End Replication

The Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II chipsets are capable of head end replication — the ability to generate all the BUM traffic in hardware. The most scalable solution available with LNV is to have each VTEP (top of rack switch) generate all of its own BUM traffic rather than relying on an external service node.

Cumulus Linux verified support for up to 128 VTEPs with head end replication.

To disable head end replication, edit `/etc/vxrd.conf` and set `head_rep` to `False`.

## Service Node Replication

Cumulus Linux also supports service node replication for VXLAN BUM packets. This is useful with LNV if you have more than 128 VTEPs. However, it is not recommended because it forces the spine switches running the `vxsnd` (service node daemon) to replicate the packets in software instead of in hardware, unlike head end replication. If you're not using a controller but have more than 128 VTEPs, contact [Cumulus Networks](#).

To enable service node replication:

1. Disable head end replication; set `head_rep` to *False* in `/etc/vxrd.conf`.
2. Edit `/etc/network/interfaces` and configure a service node IP address for VXLAN interfaces using `vxrd-svcnode-ip <>`.
3. Edit `/etc/vxsnd.conf`, and configure the following:
  - Set the same service node IP address that you did in the previous step:

```
svcnode_ip = <>
```

- To forward VXLAN data traffic, set the following variable to *True*:

```
enable_vxlan_listen = true
```

## Requirements

### Hardware Requirements

- Switches with a Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II chipset running Cumulus Linux 2.5.4 or later. Please refer to the Cumulus Networks [hardware compatibility list](#) for a list of supported switch models.

### Configuration Requirements

- The VXLAN has an associated **VXLAN Network Identifier (VNI)**, also interchangeably called a VXLAN ID.
- The VNI should not be 0 or 16777215, as these two numbers are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.
- The VXLAN link and physical interfaces are added to the bridge to create the association between the port, VLAN and VXLAN instance.
- Each bridge on the switch has only one VXLAN interface. Cumulus Linux does not support more than one VXLAN link in a bridge; however, a switch can have multiple bridges.
- An SVI (Switch VLAN Interface) or L3 address on the bridge is not supported. For example, you can't ping from the leaf1 SVI to the leaf2 SVI via the VXLAN tunnel; you would need to use server1 and server2 to verify. See [Creating a Layer 3 Gateway \(see page 351\)](#) below for more information.

### Installing the LNV Packages

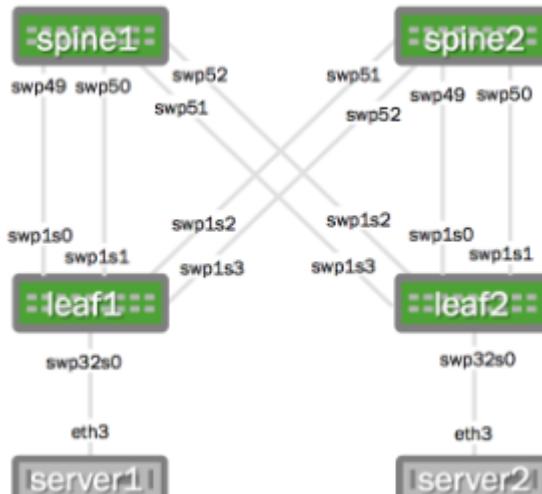
The LNV packages are not installed automatically if you upgrade Cumulus Linux. You can install LNV in one of two ways:

- Do a [binary image install \(see page 18\)](#) of Cumulus Linux, using [ONIE](#)
- Install the LNV packages for the registration and service node daemons using `apt-get install vxfld-vxrd` and/or `apt-get install vxflid-vxsnd`, depending upon how you intend to use LNV

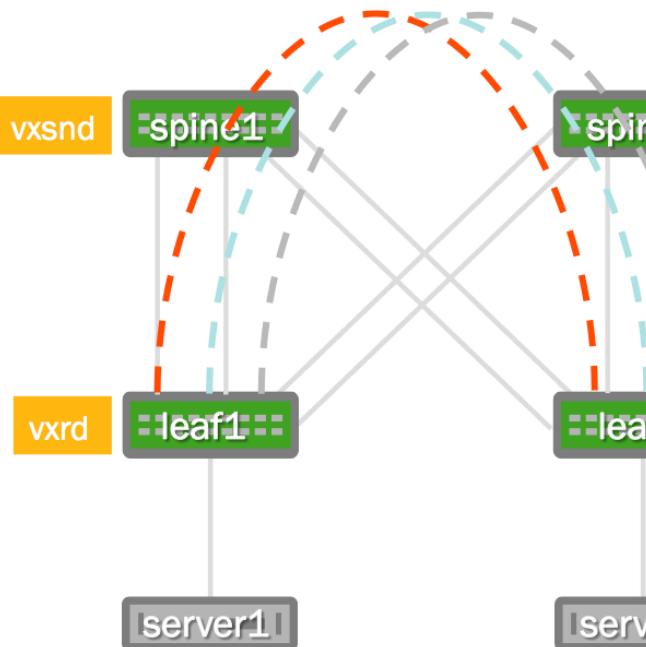
## Sample LNV Configuration

The following images illustrate the configuration that is referenced throughout this chapter.

Physical Cabling Diagram



Network Virtualization Diagram



Want to try out configuring LNV and don't have a Cumulus Linux switch? Check out [Cumulus VX](#).

## Network Connectivity

There must be full network connectivity before you can configure LNV. The layer 3 IP addressing information as well as the OSPF configuration (`/etc/quagga/Quagga.conf`) below is provided to make the LNV example easier to understand.



OSPF is not a requirement for LNV, LNV just requires L3 connectivity. With Cumulus Linux this can be achieved with static routes, OSPF or BGP.

## Layer 3 IP Addressing

Here is the configuration for the IP addressing information used in this example.

**spine1:** /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
```

**spine2:** /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
```

```

address 10.2.1.3/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp49
iface swp49
    address 10.1.1.2/30

auto swp50
iface swp50
    address 10.1.1.6/30

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.1.1.50/30

auto swp52
iface swp52
    address 10.1.1.54/30

```

```

address 10.2.1.4/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp49
iface swp49
    address 10.1.1.18/30

auto swp50
iface swp50
    address 10.1.1.22/30

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.1.1.34/30

auto swp52
iface swp52
    address 10.1.1.38/30

```

#### **leaf1:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.1/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp1s0
iface swp1s0
    address 10.1.1.1/30

auto swp1s1
iface swp1s1
    address 10.1.1.5/30

auto swp1s2
iface swp1s2
    address 10.1.1.33/30

auto swp1s3
iface swp1s3
    address 10.1.1.37/30

```

#### **leaf2:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.2/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp1s0
iface swp1s0
    address 10.1.1.17/30

auto swp1s1
iface swp1s1
    address 10.1.1.21/30

auto swp1s2
iface swp1s2
    address 10.1.1.49/30

auto swp1s3
iface swp1s3
    address 10.1.1.53/30

```

## Layer 3 Fabric

The service nodes and registration nodes must all be routable between each other. The L3 fabric on Cumulus Linux can either be [BGP](#) (see page 469) or [OSPF](#) (see page 451). In this example, OSPF is used to demonstrate full reachability. Expand the Quagga configurations below.

Quagga configuration using OSPF:

**spine1**

```
interface lo
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp49
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp50
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp51
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp52
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.3
router ospf
 ospf router-id 10.2.1.3
```

**spine2**

```
interface lo
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp49
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp50
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp51
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp52
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.4
router ospf
 ospf router-id 10.2.1.4
```

**leaf1**

```
interface lo
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp1s0
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
```

**leaf2**

```
interface lo
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp1s0
 ip ospf network point-to-
point
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
```

```

interface swp1s1
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s2
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s3
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.1
router ospf
  ospf router-id 10.2.1.1

```

```

interface swp1s1
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s2
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s3
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.2
router ospf
  ospf router-id 10.2.1.2

```

## Host Configuration

In this example, the servers are running Ubuntu 14.04. There needs to be a trunk mapped from server1 and server2 to the respective switch. In Ubuntu this is done with subinterfaces. You can expand the configurations below.

**server1**

```

auto eth3.10
iface eth3.10 inet
static
  address 10.10.10.1/24

auto eth3.20
iface eth3.20 inet
static
  address 10.10.20.1/24

auto eth3.30
iface eth3.30 inet
static
  address 10.10.30.1/24

```

**server2**

```

auto eth3.10
iface eth3.10 inet
static
  address 10.10.10.2/24

auto eth3.20
iface eth3.20 inet
static
  address 10.10.20.2/24

auto eth3.30
iface eth3.30 inet
static
  address 10.10.30.2/24

```

On Ubuntu it is more reliable to use `ifup` and `if down` to bring the interfaces up and down individually, rather than restarting networking entirely (that is, there is no equivalent to `if reload` like there is in Cumulus Linux):

```
cumulus@server1:~$ sudo ifup eth3.10
Set name-type for VLAN subsystem. Should be visible in /proc/net/vlan
/config
Added VLAN with VID == 10 to IF -:eth3:-
cumulus@server1:~$ sudo ifup eth3.20
Set name-type for VLAN subsystem. Should be visible in /proc/net/vlan
/config
Added VLAN with VID == 20 to IF -:eth3:-
cumulus@server1:~$ sudo ifup eth3.30
Set name-type for VLAN subsystem. Should be visible in /proc/net/vlan
/config
Added VLAN with VID == 30 to IF -:eth3:-
```

## **Configuring the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping**

Configure the VLANS and associated VXLANs. In this example, there are 3 VLANS and 3 VXLAN IDs (VNIs). VLANs 10, 20 and 30 are used and associated with VNIs 10, 2000 and 30 respectively. The loopback address, used as the `vxlan-local-tunnelip`, is the only difference between leaf1 and leaf2 for this demonstration.

For leaf1:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo nano /etc
/network/interfaces
```

Add the following to the loopback stanza

```
auto lo
iface lo
  vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.1
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.2.1.3
```

Now append the following for the VXLAN configuration itself:

```
leaf1: /etc/network/interfaces

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1
```

For leaf2:

```
cumulus@leaf2$ sudo nano /etc
/network/interfaces
```

Add the following to the loopback stanza

```
auto lo
iface lo
  vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.2
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.2.1.3
```

Now append the following for the VXLAN configuration itself:

```
leaf2: /etc/network/interfaces

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2
```

```
mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-2000
iface vni-2000
    vxlan-id 2000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-30
iface vni-30
    vxlan-id 30
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto br-10
iface br-10
    bridge-ports swp32s0.10 vni-10

auto br-20
iface br-20
    bridge-ports swp32s0.20 vni-2000

auto br-30
iface br-30
    bridge-ports swp32s0.30 vni-30
```

To bring up the bridges and VNIs, use the `ifreload` command:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo ifreload -a
```

```
mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-2000
iface vni-2000
    vxlan-id 2000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-30
iface vni-30
    vxlan-id 30
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto br-10
iface br-10
    bridge-ports swp32s0.10 vni-10

auto br-20
iface br-20
    bridge-ports swp32s0.20 vni-2000

auto br-30
iface br-30
    bridge-ports swp32s0.30 vni-30
```

To bring up the bridges and VNIs, use the `ifreload` command:

```
cumulus@leaf2$ sudo ifreload -a
```



Why is br-20 not vni-20? For example, why not tie VLAN 20 to VNI 20, or why was 2000 used? VXLANs and VLANs do not need to be the same number. This was done on purpose to highlight this fact. However if you are using fewer than 4096 VLANs, there is no reason not to make it easy and correlate VLANs to VXLANs. It is completely up to you.

## Verifying the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping

Use the `brctl show` command to see the physical and logical interfaces associated with that bridge:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ brctl show
bridge name      bridge id      STP enabled      interfaces
br-10           8000.443839008404    no            swp32s0.10
                                         vni-10
br-20           8000.443839008404    no            swp32s0.20
                                         vni-2000
br-30           8000.443839008404    no            swp32s0.30
                                         vni-30
```

As with any logical interfaces on Linux, the name does not matter (other than a 15-character limit). To verify the associated VNI for the logical name, use the `ip -d link show` command:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ ip -d link show vni-10
43: vni-10: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
  master br-10 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 02:ec:ec:bd:7f:c6 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    vxlan id 10 srcport 32768 dstport 4789 ageing 300
      bridge_slave
```

The `vxlan id 10` indicates the VXLAN ID/VNI is indeed 10 as the logical name suggests.

## **Enabling and Managing Service Node and Registration Daemons**

Every VTEP must run the registration daemon (`vxrd`). Typically, every leaf switch acts as a VTEP. A minimum of 1 switch (a switch not already acting as a VTEP) must run the service node daemon (`vxsnd`). The instructions for enabling these daemons follows.

### **Enabling the Service Node Daemon**

The service node daemon (`vxsnd`) is included in the Cumulus Linux repository as `vxflid-vxsnd`. The service node daemon can run on any switch running Cumulus Linux as long as that switch is not also a VXLAN VTEP. In this example, enable the service node only on the spine1 switch, then reboot it.

```
cumulus@spine1$ sudo systemctl enable vxsnd.service
cumulus@spine1$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```



Do not run `vxsnd` on a switch that is already acting as a VTEP.

### **Enabling the Registration Daemon**

The registration daemon (`vxrd`) is included in the Cumulus Linux package as `vxflid-vxrd`. The registration daemon must run on each VTEP participating in LNV, so you must enable it on every TOR (leaf) switch acting as a VTEP, then reboot the `vxrd` daemon. For example, on leaf1:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo systemctl enable vxrd.service
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

Then enable and reboot the vxrd daemon on leaf2:

```
cumulus@leaf2$ sudo systemctl enable vxrd.service
cumulus@leaf2$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

## **Checking the Daemon Status**

To determine if the daemon is running, use the `systemctl status <daemon name>.service` command.

For the service node daemon:

```
cumulus@spine1$ sudo systemctl status vxsnd.service
vxsnd.service - Lightweight Network Virt Discovery Svc and Replicator
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/vxsnd.service; enabled)
   Active: active (running) since Wed 2016-05-11 11:42:55 UTC; 10min
            ago
     Main PID: 774 (vxsnd)
       CGroup: /system.slice/vxsnd.service
                 774 /usr/bin/python /usr/bin/vxsnd

May 11 11:42:55 cumulus vxsnd[774]: INFO: Starting (pid 774) ...
```

For the registration daemon:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo systemctl status vxrd.service
vxrd.service - Lightweight Network Virtualization Peer Discovery
Daemon
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/vxrd.service; enabled)
   Active: active (running) since Wed 2016-05-11 11:42:55 UTC; 10min
            ago
     Main PID: 929 (vxrd)
       CGroup: /system.slice/vxrd.service
                 929 /usr/bin/python /usr/bin/vxrd

May 11 11:42:55 cumulus vxrd[929]: INFO: Starting (pid 929) ...
```

## **Configuring the Registration Node**

The registration node was configured earlier in `/etc/network/interfaces` in the [VXLAN mapping](#) (see [page 340](#)) section above; no additional configuration is typically needed. However, if you need to modify the registration node configuration, edit `/etc/vxrd.conf`.

Alternate location for configuration and additional knobs for the registration node are found in /etc/vxrd.conf

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo nano /etc/vxrd.conf
```

Then edit the `svcnod_ip` variable:

```
svcnod_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

Then perform the same on leaf2:

```
cumulus@leaf2$ sudo nano /etc/vxrd.conf
```

And again edit the `svcnod_ip` variable:

```
svcnod_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

Enable, then restart the registration node daemon for the change to take effect:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo systemctl enable vxrd.service
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

Restart the daemon on leaf2:

```
cumulus@leaf2$ sudo systemctl enable vxrd.service
cumulus@leaf2$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

The complete list of options you can configure is listed below:

Name	Description	Default
loglevel	The log level, which can be DEBUG, INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL.	INFO
logdest	The destination for log messages. It can be a file name, <code>stdout</code> or <code>syslog</code> .	syslog
logfilesize	Log file size in bytes. Used when <code>logdest</code> is a file name.	512000
logbackupcount	Maximum number of log files stored on the disk. Used when <code>logdest</code> is a file name.	14

Name	Description	Default
pidfile	The PIF file location for the <code>vxrd</code> daemon.	/var/run/ /vxrd. pid
udsfile	The file name for the Unix domain socket used for management.	/var/run/ /vxrd. sock
vxfld_port	The UDP port used for VXLAN control messages.	10001
svcnod_ip	The address to which registration daemons send control messages for registration and/or BUM packets for replication. This can also be configured under <code>/etc/network/interfaces</code> with the <code>vxrd-svcnode-ip</code> keyword.	
holdtime	Hold time (in seconds) for soft state, which is how long the service node waits before ageing out an IP address for a VNI. The <code>vxrd</code> includes this in the register messages it sends to a <code>vxsnd</code> .	90 seconds
src_ip	Local IP address to bind to for receiving control traffic from the service node daemon.	
refresh_rate	Number of times to refresh within the hold time. The higher this number, the more lost UDP refresh messages can be tolerated.	3 seconds
config_check_rate	The number of seconds to poll the system for current VXLAN membership.	5 seconds
head_rep	Enables self replication. Instead of using the service node to replicate BUM packets, it will be done in hardware on the VTEP switch.	true



Use `1`, `yes`, `true` or `on` for True for each relevant option. Use `0`, `no`, `false` or `off` for False.

## Configuring the Service Node

To configure the service node daemon, edit the `/etc/vxsnd.conf` configuration file.



For the example configuration, default values are used, except for the `svcnod_ip` field.

```
cumulus@spine1$ sudo nano /etc/vxsnd.conf
```

The address field is set to the loopback address of the switch running the `vxsnd` dameon.

```
svcnod_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

Enable, then restart the service node daemon for the change to take effect:

```
cumulus@spine1$ sudo systemctl enable vxsnd.service
cumulus@spine1$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```

The complete list of options you can configure is listed below:

Name	Description	Default
loglevel	The log level, which can be DEBUG, INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL.	INFO
logdest	Destination for log messages. It can be a file name, <code>stdout</code> or <code>syslog</code> .	syslog
logfilesize	The log file size in bytes. Used when <code>logdest</code> is a file name.	512000
logbackupcount	Maximum number of log files stored on disk. Used when <code>logdest</code> is a file name.	14
pidfile	The PID file location for the <code>vxrd</code> daemon.	/var/run/vxrd.pid
udsfile	The file name for the Unix domain socket used for management.	/var/run/vxrd.sock
vxfld_port	The UDP port used for VXLAN control messages.	10001
svcnod_ip	This is the address to which registration daemons send control messages for registration and/or BUM packets for replication.	0.0.0.0
holdtime	Holddate (in seconds) for soft state. It is used when sending a register message to peers in response to learning a <vn, addr> from a VXLAN data packet.	90
src_ip	Local IP address to bind to for receiving inter-vxsnd control traffic.	0.0.0.0
svcnod_peers	Space-separated list of IP addresses with which the <code>vxsnd</code> shares its state.	
enable_vxlan_listen	When set to true, the service node listens for VXLAN data traffic.	true

Name	Description	Default
install_svcnode_ip	When set to true, the <code>snd_peer_address</code> gets installed on the loopback interface. It gets withdrawn when the <code>vxsnd</code> is not in service. If set to true, you must define the <code>snd_peer_address</code> configuration variable.	false
age_check	Number of seconds to wait before checking the database to age out stale entries.	90 seconds



Use `1, yes, true` or `on` for True for each relevant option. Use `0, no, false` or `off` for False.

## Verification and Troubleshooting

### Verifying the Registration Node Daemon

Use the `vxrdctl vxlans` command to see the configured VNIs, the local address being used to source the VXLAN tunnel and the service node being used.

```
cumulus@leaf1$ vxrdctl vxlans
VNI      Local Addr      Svc
Node
===
=====
10       10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
30       10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
2000     10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
```

```
cumulus@leaf2$ vxrdctl vxlans
VNI      Local Addr      Svc
Node
===
=====
10       10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
30       10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
2000     10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
```

Use the `vxrdctl peers` command to see configured VNIs and all VTEPs (leaf switches) within the network that have them configured.

```
cumulus@leaf1$ vxrdctl peers
VNI      Peer Addrs
===
10       10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
30       10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
```

```
cumulus@leaf2$ vxrdctl peers
VNI      Peer Addrs
===
10       10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
30       10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
```

2000	10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2	

2000	10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2	



When head end replication mode is disabled, the command won't work.

Use the `vxrdctl peers` command to see the other VTEPs (leaf switches) and what VNIs are associated with them. This does not show anything unless you enabled head end replication mode by setting the `head_rep` option to *True*. Otherwise, replication is done by the service node.

```
cumulus@leaf2$ vxrdctl peers
Head-end replication is turned off on this device.
This command will not provide any output
```

## Verifying the Service Node Daemon

Use the `vxsndctl fdb` command to verify which VNIs belong to which VTEP (leaf switches).

```
cumulus@spine1$ vxsndctl fdb
VNI      Address      Ageout
====      =====      =====
 10      10.2.1.1      82
 10      10.2.1.2      77
 30      10.2.1.1      82
 30      10.2.1.2      77
2000     10.2.1.1      82
2000     10.2.1.2      77
```

## Verifying Traffic Flow and Checking Counters

VXLAN transit traffic information is stored in a flat file located at `/cumulus/switchd/run/stats/vxlan/all`.

```
cumulus@leaf1$ cat /cumulus/switchd/run/stats/vxlan/all
VNI                      : 10
Network In Octets          : 1090
Network In Packets         : 8
Network Out Octets         : 1798
Network Out Packets        : 13
Total In Octets             : 2818
Total In Packets            : 27
Total Out Octets            : 3144
Total Out Packets           : 39
```

```

VN Interface : vni: 10, swp32s0.10
Total In Octets : 1728
Total In Packets : 19
Total Out Octets : 552
Total Out Packets : 18
VNI : 30
Network In Octets : 828
Network In Packets : 6
Network Out Octets : 1224
Network Out Packets : 9
Total In Octets : 2374
Total In Packets : 23
Total Out Octets : 2300
Total Out Packets : 32
VN Interface : vni: 30, swp32s0.30
Total In Octets : 1546
Total In Packets : 17
Total Out Octets : 552
Total Out Packets : 17
VNI : 2000
Network In Octets : 676
Network In Packets : 5
Network Out Octets : 1072
Network Out Packets : 8
Total In Octets : 2030
Total In Packets : 20
Total Out Octets : 2042
Total Out Packets : 30
VN Interface : vni: 2000, swp32s0.20
Total In Octets : 1354
Total In Packets : 15
Total Out Octets : 446

```

## Pinging to Test Connectivity

To test the connectivity across the VXLAN tunnel with an ICMP echo request (ping), make sure to ping from the server rather than the switch itself.



As mentioned above, SVIs (switch VLAN interfaces) are not supported when using VXLAN. That is, there cannot be an IP address on the bridge that also contains a VXLAN.

Following is the IP address information used in this example configuration.

VNI	server1	server2
10	10.10.10.1	10.10.10.2
2000	10.10.20.1	10.10.20.2

VNI	server1	server2
30	10.10.30.1	10.10.30.2

To test connectivity between VNI 10 connected servers by pinging from server1:

```
cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.10.2
PING 10.10.10.2 (10.10.10.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=3.90 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.202 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.195 ms
^C
--- 10.10.10.2 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss, time 2002ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.195/1.432/3.900/1.745 ms
cumulus@server1:~$
```

The other VNIs were also tested and can be viewed in the expanded output below.

Test connectivity between VNI-2000 connected servers by pinging from server1:

```
cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.20.2
PING 10.10.20.2 (10.10.20.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.81 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.194 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.206 ms
^C
--- 10.10.20.2 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss, time 2000ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.194/0.739/1.819/0.763 ms
```

Test connectivity between VNI-30 connected servers by pinging from server1:

```
cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.30.2
PING 10.10.30.2 (10.10.30.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.85 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.239 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.185 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=0.212 ms
^C
--- 10.10.30.2 ping statistics ---
4 packets transmitted, 4 received, 0% packet loss, time 3000ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.185/0.622/1.853/0.711 ms
```

## Troubleshooting with MAC Addresses

Since there is no SVI, there is no way to ping from the server to the directly attached leaf (top of rack) switch without cabling the switch to itself (see [Creating a Layer 3 Gateway \(see page 351\)](#) below). The easiest way to see if the server can reach the leaf switch is to check the MAC address table of the leaf switch.

First, get the MAC address of the server:

```
cumulus@server1:~$ ip addr show eth3.10 | grep ether
link/ether 90:e2:ba:55:f0:85 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

Next, check the MAC address table of the leaf switch:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ brctl showmacs br-10
port name mac addr      vlan   is local?    ageing timer
vni-10  46:c6:57:fc:1f:54  0     yes          0.00
swp32s0.10 90:e2:ba:55:f0:85  0     no           75.87
vni-10  90:e2:ba:7e:a9:c1  0     no           75.87
swp32s0.10 ec:f4:bb:fc:67:a1  0     yes          0.00
```

90:e2:ba:55:f0:85 appears in the MAC address table, which indicates that connectivity is occurring between leaf1 and server1.

## Checking the Service Node Configuration

Use `ip -d link show` to verify the service node, VNI and administrative state of a particular logical VNI interface:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ ip -d link show vni-10
35: vni-10: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master br-10 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
        link/ether 46:c6:57:fc:1f:54 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        vxlan id 10 remote 10.2.1.3 local 10.2.1.1 srcport 32768 dstport 61000
        dstport 4789 ageing 300 svcnode 10.2.1.3
        bridge_slave
```

## Creating a Layer 3 Gateway

The Trident II ASIC has a limitation because of a restriction in the hardware, where an IP address cannot be configured on the same bridge of which a VXLAN is also a part. This limitation will not exist in future ASICs. For example, the Trident II+ has the RIOT (Routing In/Out of Tunnels) feature.

For the Trident II, this limitation means a physical cable must be attached from one port on leaf1 to another port on leaf1. One port is an L3 port while the other is a member of the bridge. For example, following the configuration above, in order for a layer 3 address to be used as the gateway for vni-10, you could configure the following on leaf1:

```
auto swp47
iface swp47
alias 12 port connected to swp48

auto swp48
iface swp48
alias gateway
address 10.10.10.3/24

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
vxlan-id 10
vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1
mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto br-10
iface br-10
bridge-ports swp47 swp32s0.10 vni-10
```

A loopback cable must be connected between swp47 and swp48 for this to work. This will be addressed in a future version of Cumulus Linux so a physical port does not need to be used for this purpose.

## ***Advanced LNV Usage***

### ***Scaling LNV by Load Balancing with Anycast***

The above configuration assumes a single service node. A single service node can quickly be overwhelmed by BUM traffic. To load balance BUM traffic across multiple service nodes, use [Anycast](#). Anycast enables BUM traffic to reach the topologically nearest service node rather than overwhelming a single service node.

### ***Enabling the Service Node Daemon on Additional Spine Switches***

In this example, spine1 already has the service node daemon enabled. Enable it on the spine2 switch, then reboot the `vxsnd` daemon:

```
cumulus@spine2$ sudo systemctl enable vxsnd.service
cumulus@spine2$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```

## **Configuring the AnyCast Address on All Participating Service Nodes**

### **spine1**

Use a text editor to edit the network configuration:

```
cumulus@spine1$ sudo nano /etc
/network/interfaces
```

Add the 10.10.10.10/32 address to the loopback address:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.3/32
    address 10.10.10.10/32
```

Run ifreload -a:

```
cumulus@spine1$ sudo ifreload -
a
```

Verify the IP address is configured:

```
cumulus@spine1$ ip addr show lo
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP>
mtu 16436 qdisc noqueue state
UNKNOWN
    link/loopback 00:00:00:00:
00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00
        inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope
host lo
    inet 10.2.1.3/32 scope
global lo
    inet 10.10.10.10/32 scope
global lo
    inet6 ::1/128 scope host
        valid_lft forever
preferred_lft forever
```

### **spine2**

Use a text editor to edit the network configuration:

```
cumulus@spine2$ sudo nano /etc
/network/interfaces
```

Add the 10.10.10.10/32 address to the loopback address:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.4/32
    address 10.10.10.10/32
```

Run ifreload -a:

```
cumulus@spine2$ sudo ifreload -
a
```

Verify the IP address is configured:

```
cumulus@spine2$ ip addr show lo
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP>
mtu 16436 qdisc noqueue state
UNKNOWN
    link/loopback 00:00:00:00:
00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00
        inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope
host lo
    inet 10.2.1.4/32 scope
global lo
    inet 10.10.10.10/32 scope
global lo
    inet6 ::1/128 scope host
        valid_lft forever
preferred_lft forever
```

## Configuring the Service Node vxsnd.conf File

### spine1

Use a text editor to edit the network configuration:

```
cumulus@spine1$ sudo nano /etc/vxsnd.conf
```

Change the following values:

```
svcnod_ip = 10.10.10.10  
svcnod_peers = 10.2.1.4  
src_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

- i** This sets the address on which the service node listens to VXLAN messages to the configured Anycast address and sets it to sync with spine2.

Enable, then restart the vxsnd daemon:

```
cumulus@spine1$ sudo systemctl enable vxsnd.service  
cumulus@spine1$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```

### spine2

Use a text editor to edit the network configuration:

```
cumulus@spine2$ sudo nano /etc/vxsnd.conf
```

Change the following values:

```
svcnod_ip = 10.10.10.10  
svcnod_peers = 10.2.1.3  
src_ip = 10.2.1.4
```

- i** This sets the address on which the service node listens to VXLAN messages to the configured Anycast address and sets it to sync with spine1.

Enable, then restart the vxsnd daemon:

```
cumulus@spine1$ sudo systemctl enable vxsnd.service  
cumulus@spine1$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```

## Reconfiguring the VTEPs (Leafs) to Use the Anycast Address

### leaf1

Use a text editor to edit the network configuration:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo nano /etc/network/interfaces
```

Change the `vxrd-svcnode-ip` field to the Anycast address:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.1
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
```

Run `ifreload -a`:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Verify the new service node is configured:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ ip -d link show vni-10
35: vni-10: <BROADCAST, MULTICAST, UP, LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br-10 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 46:c6:57:fc:1f:04 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    vxlan id 10 remote 10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.1 srcport 32768 dstport 4789 ageing 300 svcnode 10.10.10.10
        bridge_slave
```

```
cumulus@leaf1$ ip -d link show vni-2000
39: vni-2000: <BROADCAST, MULTICAST, UP, LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br-20 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
```

### leaf2

Use a text editor to edit the network configuration:

```
cumulus@leaf2$ sudo nano /etc/network/interfaces
```

Change the `vxrd-svcnode-ip` field to the Anycast address:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.2
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
```

Run `ifreload -a`:

```
cumulus@leaf2$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Verify the new service node is configured:

```
cumulus@leaf2$ ip -d link show vni-10
35: vni-10: <BROADCAST, MULTICAST, UP, LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br-10 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 4e:03:a7:47:a7:9d brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    vxlan id 10 remote 10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.2 srcport 32768 dstport 4789 ageing 300 svcnode 10.10.10.10
        bridge_slave
```

```
cumulus@leaf2$ ip -d link show vni-2000
39: vni-2000: <BROADCAST, MULTICAST, UP, LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br-20 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
```

```

link/ether 4a:fd:88:c3:fa:
df brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  vxlan id 2000 remote
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.1
srcport 32768 61000 dstport
4789 ageing 300 svcnode
10.10.10.10
  bridge_slave
  
```

```

cumulus@leaf1$ ip -d link show
vni-30
37: vni-30: <BROADCAST,
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu
1500 qdisc noqueue master br-
30 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
  link/ether 3e:b3:dc:f3:bd:
2b brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  vxlan id 30 remote
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.1
srcport 32768 61000 dstport
4789 ageing 300 svcnode
10.10.10.10
  bridge_slave
  
```

**⚠** The svcnode 10.10.10.10 means the interface has the correct service node configured.

Use the `vxrdctl vxlans` command to check the service node:

```

cumulus@leaf1$ vxrdctl vxlans
VNI      Local Addr      Svc
Node
===
=====
10        10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
30        10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
2000      10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
  
```

```

link/ether 72:3a:bd:06:00:
b7 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  vxlan id 2000 remote
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.2
srcport 32768 61000 dstport
4789 ageing 300 svcnode
10.10.10.10
  bridge_slave
  
```

```

cumulus@leaf2$ ip -d link show
vni-30
37: vni-30: <BROADCAST,
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu
1500 qdisc noqueue master br-
30 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
  link/ether 22:65:3f:63:08:
bd brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
  vxlan id 30 remote
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.2
srcport 32768 61000 dstport
4789 ageing 300 svcnode
10.10.10.10
  bridge_slave
  
```

**⚠** The svcnode 10.10.10.10 means the interface has the correct service node configured.

Use the `vxrdctl vxlans` command to check the service node:

```

cumulus@leaf2$ vxrdctl vxlans
VNI      Local Addr      Svc
Node
===
=====
10        10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
30        10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
2000      10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
  
```

## Testing Connectivity

Repeat the ping tests from the previous section. Here is the table again for reference:

VNI	server1	server2
10	10.10.10.1	10.10.10.2
2000	10.10.20.1	10.10.20.2
30	10.10.30.1	10.10.30.2

```
cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.10.2
PING 10.10.10.2 (10.10.10.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=5.32 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.206 ms
^C
--- 10.10.10.2 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.206/2.767/5.329/2.562 ms

PING 10.10.20.2 (10.10.20.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.64 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.187 ms
^C
--- 10.10.20.2 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.187/0.914/1.642/0.728 ms

cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.30.2
PING 10.10.30.2 (10.10.30.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.63 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.191 ms
^C
--- 10.10.30.2 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.191/0.913/1.635/0.722 ms
```

## Restarting Network Removes vxsnd Anycast IP Address from Loopback Interface

If you have not configured a loopback anycast IP address in /etc/network/interfaces, but you have enabled the vxsnd (service node daemon) log to automatically add anycast IP addresses, when you restart networking (with `sudo systemctl restart networking`), the anycast IP address gets removed from the loopback interface.

To prevent this issue from occurring, you should specify an anycast IP address for the loopback interface in both `/etc/network/interfaces` and `vxsnd.conf`. This way, in case `vxsnd` fails, you can withdraw the IP address.

## Additional Resources

Both `vxsnd` and `vxrd` have man pages in Cumulus Linux.

For `vxsnd`:

```
cumulus@spine1$ man vxsnd
```

For `vxrd`:

```
cumulus@leaf1$ man vxrd
```

## See Also

- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7348](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7348)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anycast](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anycast)

## LNV VXLAN Active-Active Mode

LNV active-active mode allows a pair of MLAG (see page 273) switches to act as a single VTEP, providing active-active VXLAN termination for bare metal as well as virtualized workloads.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Terminology and Definitions (see page 359)
- Configuring LNV Active-Active Mode (see page 360)
  - active-active VTEP Anycast IP Behavior (see page 360)
  - Failure Scenario Behaviors (see page 361)
  - Checking VXLAN Interface Configuration Consistency (see page 361)
  - Configuring the Anycast IP Address (see page 362)
- Example VXLAN Active-Active Configuration (see page 363)
  - Quagga Configuration (see page 363)
  - Layer 3 IP Addressing (see page 363)
  - Quagga Configuration (see page 369)
  - Host Configuration (see page 373)
  - Enable the Registration Daemon (see page 374)
  - Configuring a VTEP (see page 374)

- Enable the Service Node Daemon (see page 374)
- Configuring the Service Node (see page 374)
- North-South Traffic in an LNV Environment (Advanced) (see page 376)
- Considerations for Virtual Topologies Using Cumulus VX (see page 388)
  - Node ID (see page 388)
  - Bonds with Vagrant (see page 389)
- Troubleshooting with LNV Active-Active (see page 389)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 391)
- See Also (see page 391)

## **Terminology and Definitions**

Term	Definition
vxrd	VXLAN registration daemon. Runs on the switch that is mapping VLANs to VXLANS. The vxrd daemon needs to be configured to register to a service node. This turns the switch into a VTEP.
VTEP	Virtual tunnel endpoint. This is an encapsulation and decapsulation point for VXLANS.
active-active VTEP	A pair of switches acting as a single VTEP.
ToR	Top of rack switch. Also referred to as a leaf or access switch.
Spine	The aggregation switch for multiple leafs. Specifically used when a data center is using a <a href="#">Clos network architecture</a> . Read more about spine-leaf architecture in this <a href="#">white paper</a> .
vxsnd	VXLAN service node daemon, that can be run to register multiple VTEPs.
vxsn	The switch running vxsnd. Also known as the VXLAN service node.
exit leaf	A switch dedicated to peering the Clos network to an outside network. Also referred to as border leafs, service leafs or edge leafs.
anycast	When an IP address is advertised from multiple locations. Allows multiple devices to share the same IP and effectively load balance traffic across them. With LNV, anycast is used in 2 places: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To share a VTEP IP address between a pair of MLAG switches.</li> <li>2. To load balance traffic for service nodes (e.g. service nodes share an IP address).</li> </ol>
ASIC	Application-specific integrated circuit. Also referred to as hardware, or hardware accelerated. Encapsulation and decapsulation are required for the best performance VXLAN-supported ASIC.

Term	Definition
RIOT	Routing in and out of tunnels. Allows a VXLAN bridge to have a switch VLAN interface associated with it, and traffic to exit a VXLAN into the layer 3 fabric.

## Configuring LNV Active-Active Mode

LNV requires the following underlying technologies to work correctly.

Technology	More Information
MLAG	Refer to the <a href="#">MLAG chapter (see page )</a> for more detailed configuration information. Configurations for the demonstration are provided below.
OSPF or BGP	Refer to the <a href="#">OSPF chapter (see page 451)</a> or the <a href="#">BGP Chapter</a> for more detailed configuration information. Configurations for the demonstration are provided below.
LNV	Refer to the <a href="#">LNV chapter (see page 358)</a> for more detailed configuration information. Configurations for the demonstration are provided below.
STP	<a href="#">BPDU filter and BPDU guard (see page )</a> should be enabled in the VXLAN interfaces if <a href="#">STP (see page 358)</a> is enabled in the bridge that is connected to the VXLAN. Configurations for the demonstration are provided below.

## active-active VTEP Anycast IP Behavior

Each individual switch within an MLAG pair should be provisioned with a virtual IP address in the form of an anycast IP address for VXLAN data-path termination. The VXLAN termination address is an anycast IP address that you configure as a `c1agd` parameter (`c1agd-vxlan-anycast-ip`) under the loopback interface. `c1agd` dynamically adds and removes this address as the loopback interface address as follows:

1	When the switches boot up, <code>ifupdown2</code> places all VXLAN interfaces in a <a href="#">PROTO_DOWN state (see page )</a> . The configured anycast addresses are not configured yet.
2	MLAG peering takes place, and a successful VXLAN interface consistency check between the switches occurs.
3	<code>c1agd</code> (the daemon responsible for MLAG) adds the anycast address to the loopback interface. It then changes the local IP address of the VXLAN interface from a unique address to the anycast virtual IP address and puts the interface in an UP state.

## Failure Scenario Behaviors

Scenario	Behavior
The peer link goes down.	The primary MLAG switch continues to keep all VXLAN interfaces up with the anycast IP address while the secondary switch brings down all VXLAN interfaces and places them in a PROTO_DOWN state. The secondary MLAG switch removes the anycast IP address from the loopback interface and changes the local IP address of the VXLAN interface to the configured unique IP address.
One of the switches goes down.	The other operational switch continues to use the anycast IP address.
c1agd is stopped.	All VXLAN interfaces are put in a PROTO_DOWN state. The anycast IP address is removed from the loopback interface and the local IP addresses of the VXLAN interfaces are changed from the anycast IP address to unique non-virtual IP addresses.
MLAG peering could not be established between the switches.	c1agd brings up all the VXLAN interfaces after the reload timer expires with the configured unique IP address. This allows the VXLAN interface to be up and running on both switches even though peering is not established.
When the peer link goes down but the peer switch is up (i.e. the backup link is active).	All VXLAN interfaces are put into a PROTO_DOWN state on the secondary switch.
A configuration mismatch between the MLAG switches	The VXLAN interface is placed into a PROTO_DOWN state on the secondary switch.

## Checking VXLAN Interface Configuration Consistency

The LNV active-active configuration for a given VXLAN interface has to be consistent between the MLAG switches for correct traffic behavior. MLAG ensures that the configuration consistency is met before bringing up the VXLAN interfaces.

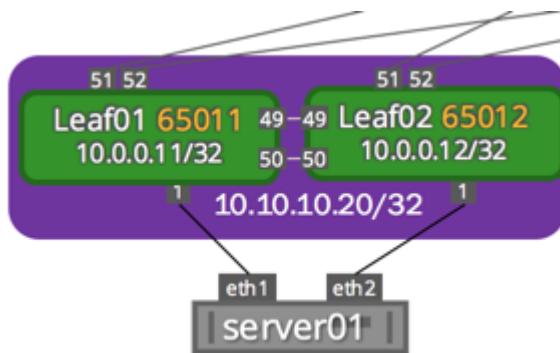
The consistency checks include:

- The anycast virtual IP address for VXLAN termination must be the same on each pair of switches.
- A VXLAN interface with the same VXLAN ID must be configured and administratively up on both switches.

You can use the `c1agctl` command to check if any VXLAN switches are in a PROTO\_DOWN state.

## Configuring the Anycast IP Address

With MLAG peering, both switches use an anycast IP address for VXLAN encapsulation and decapsulation. This allows remote VTEPs to learn the host MAC addresses attached to the MLAG switches against one logical VTEP, even though the switches independently encapsulate and decapsulate layer 2 traffic originating from the host. The anycast address under the loopback interface can be configured as shown below.



**leaf01:** /etc/network/interfaces snippet

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.11/32
  vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.11
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
  clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip 10.10.10.20
```

**leaf02:** /etc/network/interfaces snippet

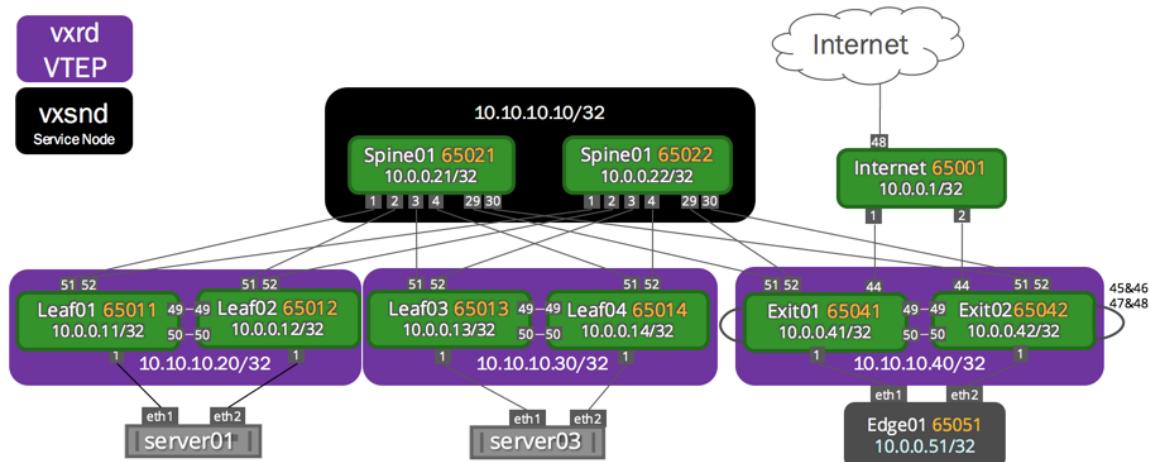
```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.12/32
  vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.12
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
  clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip 10.10.10.20
```

### Explanation of Variables

Variable	Explanation
vxrd-src-ip	The unique IP address for the vxrd to bind to.

Variable	Explanation
<code>vxrd-svcnode-ip</code>	The service node anycast IP address in the topology. In this demonstration, this is an anycast IP address being shared by both spine switches.
<code>clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip</code>	The anycast address for the MLAG pair to share and bind to when MLAG is up and running.

## Example VXLAN Active-Active Configuration



Note the configuration of the local IP address in the VXLAN interfaces below. They are configured with individual IP addresses, which `clagd` changes to anycast upon MLAG peering.

## Quagga Configuration

The layer 3 fabric can be configured using [BGP](#) (see page 358) or [OSPF](#) (see page 358). The following example uses BGP Unnumbered. The MLAG switch configuration for the topology above is shown below.

## Layer 3 IP Addressing

The IP address configuration for this example:

**spine01:** /etc/network/interfaces

**spine02:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.21/32
  address 10.10.10.10/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4

auto swp29
iface swp29

auto swp30
iface swp30
  
```

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.22/32
  address 10.10.10.10/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4

auto swp29
iface swp29

auto swp30
iface swp30
  
```

**leaf01:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.11/32
  vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.11
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
  clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
  10.10.10.20

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49

auto swp50
iface swp50
  
```

**leaf02:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.12/32
  vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.12
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
  clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
  10.10.10.20

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49

auto swp50
iface swp50
  
```

```

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-use-carrier 1
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.1/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.12
    clagd-sys-mac 44:39:39:FF:40:
94

# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 1
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1

# bridges / vlan that contain
# peerlink and downlinks for L2
# connectivity

auto native
iface native
    bridge-ports peerlink bond0
    vxlan1
        bridge-stp on
        mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
    vxlan1=yes
        mstpcctl-bpduguard vxlan1=yes

auto vlan10
iface vlan10

```

```

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-use-carrier 1
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.2/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.1
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.11
    clagd-sys-mac 44:39:39:FF:40:
94

# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 1
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1

# bridges / vlan that contain
# peerlink and downlinks for L2
# connectivity

auto native
iface native
    bridge-ports peerlink bond0
    vxlan1
        bridge-stp on
        mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
    vxlan1=yes
        mstpcctl-bpduguard vxlan1=yes

auto vlan10
iface vlan10

```

```

bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes

auto vlan20
iface vlan20
  bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes

#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
  vxlan-id 1
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11

auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11

auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11

# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52
  
```

```

bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes

auto vlan20
iface vlan20
  bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes

#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
  vxlan-id 1
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12

auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12

auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12

# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52
  
```

**leaf3:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.13/32
  
```

**leaf4:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.14/32
  
```

```

vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.13
vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
10.10.10.30

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49

auto swp50
iface swp50

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
bond-slaves swp49 swp50
bond-mode 802.3ad
bond-miimon 100
bond-use-carrier 1
bond-lacp-rate 1
bond-min-links 1
bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
address 169.254.1.1/30
clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.14
clagd-sys-mac 44:39:39:FF:40:
95

# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto bond0
iface bond0
bond-slaves swp1
clag-id 1
bond-miimon 100
bond-min-links 1
bond-mode 802.3ad
bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
bond-lacp-rate 1

```

```

vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.14
vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
10.10.10.30

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49

auto swp50
iface swp50

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
bond-slaves swp49 swp50
bond-mode 802.3ad
bond-miimon 100
bond-use-carrier 1
bond-lacp-rate 1
bond-min-links 1
bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
address 169.254.1.2/30
clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.1
clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.13
clagd-sys-mac 44:39:39:FF:40:
95

# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto bond0
iface bond0
bond-slaves swp1
clag-id 1
bond-miimon 100
bond-min-links 1
bond-mode 802.3ad
bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
bond-lacp-rate 1

```

```

# bridges / vlan that contain
peerlink and downlinks for L2
connectivity

auto native
iface native
  bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes

auto vlan10
iface vlan10
  bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes

auto vlan20
iface vlan20
  bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes

#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
  vxlan-id 1
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.13

auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.13

auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.13

```

```

# bridges / vlan that contain
peerlink and downlinks for L2
connectivity

auto native
iface native
  bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes

auto vlan10
iface vlan10
  bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes

auto vlan20
iface vlan20
  bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20
  bridge-stp on
  mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
  mstpcctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes

#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
  vxlan-id 1
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.14

auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.14

auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.14

```

```
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52
```

```
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52
```

## Quagga Configuration

The service nodes and registration nodes must all be routable between each other. The L3 fabric on Cumulus Linux can either be [BGP \(see page 358\)](#) or [OSPF \(see page 358\)](#). In this example, OSPF is used to demonstrate full reachability.

The Quagga configuration using OSPF:

**spine01:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp1
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp2
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp3
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp4
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp29
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp30
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65020
bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
network 10.0.0.21/32
network 10.10.10.10/32
bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
```

**spine02:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp1
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp2
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp3
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp4
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp29
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp30
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65020
bgp router-id 10.0.0.22
network 10.0.0.22/32
network 10.10.10.10/32
bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
```

```

bgp bestpath compare-routerid
bgp default show-hostname
neighbor FABRIC peer-group
neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
  neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
  neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
  neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
  neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor FABRIC prefix-list
dc-spine in
  neighbor FABRIC prefix-list
dc-spine out
  neighbor swp1 interface
  neighbor swp1 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp2 interface
  neighbor swp2 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp3 interface
  neighbor swp3 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp4 interface
  neighbor swp4 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp29 interface
  neighbor swp29 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp30 interface
  neighbor swp30 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10
permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 15
permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20
permit 10.10.10.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 30
permit 172.16.1.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 40
permit 172.16.2.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 50
permit 172.16.3.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 60
permit 172.16.4.0/24

```

```

bgp bestpath compare-routerid
bgp default show-hostname
neighbor FABRIC peer-group
neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
  neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
  neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
  neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
  neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor FABRIC prefix-list
dc-spine in
  neighbor FABRIC prefix-list
dc-spine out
  neighbor swp1 interface
  neighbor swp1 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp2 interface
  neighbor swp2 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp3 interface
  neighbor swp3 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp4 interface
  neighbor swp4 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp29 interface
  neighbor swp29 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp30 interface
  neighbor swp30 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10
permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 15
permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20
permit 10.10.10.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 30
permit 172.16.1.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 40
permit 172.16.2.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 50
permit 172.16.3.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 60
permit 172.16.4.0/24

```

```
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq
500 deny any
!
```

```
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq
500 deny any
!
```

**leaf01:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp51
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp52
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65011
bgp router-id 10.0.0.11
network 10.0.0.11/32
network 172.16.1.0/24
network 10.10.10.20/32
bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
bgp bestpath compare-routerid
bgp default show-hostname
neighbor FABRIC peer-group
neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
neighbor FABRIC filter-list
dc-leaf-out out
neighbor swp51 interface
neighbor swp51 peer-group
FABRIC
neighbor swp52 interface
neighbor swp52 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip as-path access-list dc-leaf-
out permit ^$
```

**leaf02:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp51
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp52
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65012
bgp router-id 10.0.0.12
network 10.0.0.12/32
network 172.16.1.0/24
network 10.10.10.20/32
bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
bgp bestpath compare-routerid
bgp default show-hostname
neighbor FABRIC peer-group
neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
neighbor FABRIC filter-list
dc-leaf-out out
neighbor swp51 interface
neighbor swp51 peer-group
FABRIC
neighbor swp52 interface
neighbor swp52 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip as-path access-list dc-leaf-
out permit ^$
```

**leaf03:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp51
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp52
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65013
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.13
  network 10.0.0.13/32
  network 172.16.3.0/24
  network 10.10.10.30/32
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  bgp bestpath compare-routerid
  bgp default show-hostname
  neighbor FABRIC peer-group
  neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
  neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
  neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
  neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
  neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor FABRIC filter-list
dc-leaf-out out
  neighbor swp51 interface
  neighbor swp51 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp52 interface
  neighbor swp52 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip as-path access-list dc-leaf-
out permit ^$
```

**leaf04:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp51
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp52
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65014
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.14
  network 10.0.0.14/32
  network 172.16.3.0/24
  network 10.10.10.30/32
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  bgp bestpath compare-routerid
  bgp default show-hostname
  neighbor FABRIC peer-group
  neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
  neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
  neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
  neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
  neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor FABRIC filter-list
dc-leaf-out out
  neighbor swp51 interface
  neighbor swp51 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp52 interface
  neighbor swp52 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip as-path access-list dc-leaf-
out permit ^$
```

## Host Configuration

In this example, the servers are running Ubuntu 14.04. A layer2 bond must be mapped from server01 and server03 to the respective switch. In Ubuntu this is done with subinterfaces.

**server01**

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

auto lo
iface lo inet static
    address 10.0.0.31/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto eth1
iface eth1 inet manual
    bond-master bond0

auto eth2
iface eth2 inet manual
    bond-master bond0

auto bond0
iface bond0 inet static
    bond-slaves none
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    address 172.16.1.101/24

auto bond0.10
iface bond0.10 inet static
    address 172.16.10.101/24

auto bond0.20
iface bond0.20 inet static
    address 172.16.20.101/24

```

**server03**

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

auto lo
iface lo inet static
    address 10.0.0.33/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto eth1
iface eth1 inet manual
    bond-master bond0

auto eth2
iface eth2 inet manual
    bond-master bond0

auto bond0
iface bond0 inet static
    bond-slaves none
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    address 172.16.1.103/24

auto bond0.10
iface bond0.10 inet static
    address 172.16.10.103/24

auto bond0.20
iface bond0.20 inet static
    address 172.16.20.103/24

```

## Enable the Registration Daemon

The registration daemon (`vxrd`) must be enabled on each ToR switch acting as a VTEP, that is participating in LNV. The daemon is installed by default.

1. Open the `/etc/default/vxrd` configuration file in a text editor.
2. Enable the daemon, then save the file.

```
START=yes
```

3. Restart the `vxrd` daemon.

```
cumulus@leaf:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

## Configuring a VTEP

The registration node was configured earlier in `/etc/network/interfaces`; no additional configuration is typically needed. Alternatively, the configuration can be done in `/etc/vxrd.conf`, which has additional configuration knobs available.

## Enable the Service Node Daemon

1. Open the `/etc/default/vxsnd` configuration file in a text editor.
2. Enable the daemon, then save the file:

```
START=yes
```

3. Restart the daemon.

```
cumulus@spine:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```

## Configuring the Service Node

To configure the service node daemon, edit the `/etc/vxsnd.conf` configuration file:

<b>spine01:</b> /etc/vxsnd.conf	<b>spine02:</b> /etc/vxsnd.conf
<pre>svcnod_ip = 10.10.10.10</pre>	<pre>svcnod_ip = 10.10.10.10</pre>
<pre>src_ip = 10.0.0.21</pre>	<pre>src_ip = 10.0.0.22</pre>

```
svcnodes_peers = 10.0.0.21
10.0.0.22
```

Full configuration of vxsnd.conf

```
[common]
# Log level is one of DEBUG,
INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL
#loglevel = INFO
# Destination for log
message. Can be a file name,
'stdout', or 'syslog'
#logdest = syslog
# log file size in bytes. Used
when logdest is a file
#logfilesize = 512000
# maximum number of log files
stored on disk. Used when
logdest is a file
#logbackupcount = 14
# The file to write the pid.
If using monit, this must
match the one
# in the vxsnd.rc
#pidfile = /var/run/vxsnd.pid
# The file name for the unix
domain socket used for mgmt.
#udsfile = /var/run/vxsnd.sock
# UDP port for vxflid control
messages
#vxflid_port = 10001
# This is the address to which
registration daemons send
control messages for
# registration and/or BUM
packets for replication
svcnodes_ip = 10.10.10.10
# Holdtime (in seconds) for
soft state. It is used when
sending a
# register msg to peers in
response to learning a <vnii,
addr> from a
# VXLAN data pkt
#holdtime = 90
# Local IP address to bind to
for receiving inter-vxsnd
control traffic
src_ip = 10.0.0.21
```

```
svcnodes_peers = 10.0.0.21
10.0.0.22
```

Full configuration of vxsnd.conf

```
[common]
# Log level is one of DEBUG,
INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL
#loglevel = INFO
# Destination for log
message. Can be a file name,
'stdout', or 'syslog'
#logdest = syslog
# log file size in bytes. Used
when logdest is a file
#logfilesize = 512000
# maximum number of log files
stored on disk. Used when
logdest is a file
#logbackupcount = 14
# The file to write the pid.
If using monit, this must
match the one
# in the vxsnd.rc
#pidfile = /var/run/vxsnd.pid
# The file name for the unix
domain socket used for mgmt.
#udsfile = /var/run/vxsnd.sock
# UDP port for vxflid control
messages
#vxflid_port = 10001
# This is the address to which
registration daemons send
control messages for
# registration and/or BUM
packets for replication
svcnodes_ip = 10.10.10.10
# Holdtime (in seconds) for
soft state. It is used when
sending a
# register msg to peers in
response to learning a <vnii,
addr> from a
# VXLAN data pkt
#holdtime = 90
# Local IP address to bind to
for receiving inter-vxsnd
control traffic
src_ip = 10.0.0.22
```

```
[vxsnd]
# Space separated list of IP
addresses of vxsnd to share
state with
svcnode_peers = 10.0.0.21
10.0.0.22
# When set to true, the
service node will listen for
vxlan data traffic
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#enable_vxlan_listen = true
# When set to true, the
svcnode_ip will be installed
on the loopback
# interface, and it will be
withdrawn when the vxsnd is no
longer in
# service. If set to true,
the svcnode_ip configuration
# variable must be defined.
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#install_svcnode_ip = false
# Seconds to wait before
checking the database to age
out stale entries
#age_check = 90
```

```
[vxsnd]
# Space separated list of IP
addresses of vxsnd to share
state with
svcnode_peers = 10.0.0.21
10.0.0.22
# When set to true, the
service node will listen for
vxlan data traffic
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#enable_vxlan_listen = true
# When set to true, the
svcnode_ip will be installed
on the loopback
# interface, and it will be
withdrawn when the vxsnd is no
longer in
# service. If set to true,
the svcnode_ip configuration
# variable must be defined.
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#install_svcnode_ip = false
# Seconds to wait before
checking the database to age
out stale entries
#age_check = 90
```

## **North-South Traffic in an LNV Environment (Advanced)**

The following configuration is recommended for advanced users, because it describes a non-standard configuration where the service node and registration node reside on the same switch, which is not the supported use case.

Click here to reveal advanced configuration ...

The table below covers some of the scenarios for configuring VXLAN gateways (for traffic to exit a L2 VXLAN), as well as a few advantages/caveats of each:

Gateway is Configured	Advantages	Caveats
Using a pair of Exit Leafs	This is the simplest configuration available. Many large data centers use exit leafs to allow for consolidation of network services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exit leafs should be able to handle all VXLANs simultaneously (since they have to act as a gateway for every VXLAN configured).</li> </ul>

Gateway is Configured	Advantages	Caveats
	(firewalls, load balancers, etc); performing the VXLAN gateway on the exit leafs is thus a logical choice. None of the caveats for the other two configuration methods exist for exit leafs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The bandwidth that the data center holistically has to service providers should be able to be handled by the exit leafs.</li> <li>In high bandwidth scenarios these caveats can be mitigated by having multiple pairs of exit leafs.</li> </ul>
Using every pair of Leafs	Any pair of Leafs can allow traffic to exit to the internet.	If VXLAN tenant separation must be maintained (e.g. VXLAN10 can't talk to VXLAN20 ever without going through a firewall), iptables/ACLs or VRFs must be used to separate traffic, to ensure it can't bypass security policies. This increases complexity on the rest of the network, as policies must exist on all devices to keep traffic segregated. If there is no segregation requirements, this caveat does not exist.
Using a pair of Spines	Configuration complexity only exists on the Spine switches, Leaf switches have no configuration changes from a default LNV configuration. This also works for small Data Centers or a PoP (Point of Presence) where exit leafs are out of scope.	<p>The vxrd and vxsnd daemon must be on the same pair of switches. This means that 4 IP addresses must be used on conjunction and distributed into the fabric:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One unique loopback IP address for vxrd</li> <li>One anycast for vxrd</li> <li>One unique loopback IP address for vxsnd</li> <li>One anycast for vxsnd</li> </ul> <p>This is because vxrd and vxsnd use the same port to communicate, and need another set of IP addresses to make a different socket (IP Address + Port) to allow communication to happen between the vxrd and vxsnd daemons properly.</p>

## Using a Pair of Exit Leafs

One method of exiting a network is using the gateway on the exit leafs themselves.

### Exiting a VXLAN with a Broadcom Trident II

The Trident II ASIC has a limitation where a L2 bridge that contains a VXLAN interface can not also have an IP address assigned to it. This is an expected limitation with this ASIC, because of the ordering of the decapsulation. A packet that is decapsulated will already have passed the portion of the ASIC capable of reading the IP address lookup (e.g. VXLAN lookup happens before IP address lookup).

Refer to the [Cumulus Networks Hardware Compatibility List](#) to determine which ASIC is running on the switch.

The code snippet below illustrates this concept:

```
auto example_bridge
```

```

iface example_bridge
  bridge-ports VXLAN10
  address 5.5.5.1/24
auto VXLAN10
iface VXLAN10
  vxlan-id 10
  
```



The above snippet will not work on ASICs not capable of RIOT. This will not work on the Broadcom Trident II.

To solve this issue in environments where the Broadcom Trident II is used, a loop back cable can be configured (e.g. literally take a cable and attach both ends to the same switch). This will allow the switch to attach an IP address to a bridge that also contains a VXLAN. If additional bandwidth is required for the gateway, a bond (also known as an etherchannel) can be configured as well.

The example configurations below represent a reference topology for exit leafs with Broadcom Trident II ASICs:

**exit01: /etc/network/interfaces snippet**

```

#interface for T2 configured
as loopback cable
auto hyperloopin
iface hyperloopin
  bond-slaves swp45 swp47
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
auto hyperloopout
iface hyperloopout
  bond-slaves swp46 swp48
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
auto vlan1svi
iface vlan1svi
  bridge-ports hyperloopout
  address 172.16.1.2/24
  address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
01:01 172.16.1.1/24
auto native
iface native
  
```

**exit02: /etc/network/interfaces snippet**

```

#interface for T2 configured
as loopback cable
auto hyperloopin
iface hyperloopin
  bond-slaves swp45 swp47
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
auto hyperloopout
iface hyperloopout
  bond-slaves swp46 swp48
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
auto vlan1svi
iface vlan1svi
  bridge-ports hyperloopout
  address 172.16.1.3/24
  address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
01:01 172.16.1.1/24
auto native
iface native
  
```

```

bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1 hyperloopin
bridge-stp on
mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes

```

Full Configuration for /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.41/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.41
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
    10.10.10.40
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49
auto swp50
iface swp50
auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-use-carrier 1
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.1/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.42
    clagd-sys-mac 44:39:39:FF:40:
96
# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1
auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 1
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1

```

```

bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1 hyperloopin
bridge-stp on
mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes

```

Full Configuration for /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.42/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.42
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
    10.10.10.40
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49
auto swp50
iface swp50
auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-use-carrier 1
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.2/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.1
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.41
    clagd-sys-mac 44:39:39:FF:40:
96
# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1
auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 1
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1

```

```

bond-mode 802.3ad
bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
#interface for T2 configured
as loopback cable
auto hyperloopin
iface hyperloopin
  bond-slaves swp45 swp47
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
auto hyperloopout
iface hyperloopout
  bond-slaves swp46 swp48
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
auto vlan1svi
iface vlan1svi
  bridge-ports hyperloopout
  address 172.16.1.2/24
  address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
01:01 172.16.1.1/24
auto vlan10svi
iface vlan10svi
  bridge-ports hyperloopout.10
  address 172.16.10.2/24
  address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
10:10 172.16.10.1/24
auto vlan20svi
iface vlan20svi
  bridge-ports hyperloopout.20
  address 172.16.20.2/24
  address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
20:20 172.16.20.1/24
# bridges / vlan that contain
peerlink and downlinks for L2
connectivity
auto native
iface native
  bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1 hyperloopin
  bridge-stp on

```

```

bond-mode 802.3ad
bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
#interface for T2 configured
as loopback cable
auto hyperloopin
iface hyperloopin
  bond-slaves swp45 swp47
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
auto hyperloopout
iface hyperloopout
  bond-slaves swp46 swp48
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
  bond-lacp-rate 1
auto vlan1svi
iface vlan1svi
  bridge-ports hyperloopout
  address 172.16.1.3/24
  address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
01:01 172.16.1.1/24
auto vlan10svi
iface vlan10svi
  bridge-ports hyperloopout.10
  address 172.16.10.3/24
  address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
10:10 172.16.10.1/24
auto vlan20svi
iface vlan20svi
  bridge-ports hyperloopout.20
  address 172.16.20.3/24
  address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
20:20 172.16.20.1/24
# bridges / vlan that contain
peerlink and downlinks for L2
connectivity
auto native
iface native
  bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1 hyperloopin
  bridge-stp on

```

```

mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes
auto vlan10
iface vlan10
  bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10 hyperloopin.10
  bridge-stp on
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes
auto vlan20
iface vlan20
  bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20 hyperloopin.20
  bridge-stp on
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes
#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
  vxlan-id 1
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.41
auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.41
auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.41
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51
auto swp52
iface swp52
#internet
auto swp44
iface swp44

```

```

mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes
auto vlan10
iface vlan10
  bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10 hyperloopin.10
  bridge-stp on
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes
auto vlan20
iface vlan20
  bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20 hyperloopin.20
  bridge-stp on
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes
#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
  vxlan-id 1
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.42
auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.42
auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.42
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51
auto swp52
iface swp52
#internet
auto swp44
iface swp44

```

One of the caveats of doing this is that each pair of exit leafs is restricted to 4094 tags to keep traffic separated (for example. 802.1q tags need to be utilized on the hyperloop/loopback to keep traffic separated).

Exiting a VXLAN with a RIOT capable ASIC

**exit01:** /etc/network/interfaces **snippet**

```

auto native
iface native
  bridge-ports peerlink bond0
  vxlan1 hyperloopin
    bridge-stp on
    address 172.16.1.2/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:01:01 172.16.1.1/24
    mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
  vxlan1=yes
    mstpcctl-bpduguard
  vxlan1=yes
  auto vxlan1
  iface vxlan1
    vxlan-id 1
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
  10.0.0.41

```

**exit02:** /etc/network/interfaces **snippet**

```

auto native
iface native
  bridge-ports peerlink bond0
  vxlan1 hyperloopin
    bridge-stp on
    address 172.16.1.3/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:01:01 172.16.1.1/24
    mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
  vxlan1=yes
    mstpcctl-bpduguard
  vxlan1=yes
  auto vxlan1
  iface vxlan1
    vxlan-id 1
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
  10.0.0.42

```

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.41/32
  vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.41
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
  clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
  10.10.10.40
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49
auto swp50
iface swp50
auto peerlink
iface peerlink
  bond-slaves swp49 swp50
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-use-carrier 1
  bond-lACP-rate 1
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
  address 169.254.1.1/30

```

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.42/32
  vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.42
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
  clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
  10.10.10.40
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49
auto swp50
iface swp50
auto peerlink
iface peerlink
  bond-slaves swp49 swp50
  bond-mode 802.3ad
  bond-miimon 100
  bond-use-carrier 1
  bond-lACP-rate 1
  bond-min-links 1
  bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
  address 169.254.1.2/30

```

```

clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.42
clagd-sys-mac 44:39:39:FF:40:
96
# bridges / vlan that contain
peerlink and downlinks for L2
connectivity
auto native
iface native
    bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1 hyperloopin
    bridge-stp on
    address 172.16.1.2/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
01:01 172.16.1.1/24
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes
auto vlan10
iface vlan10
    bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10 hyperloopin.10
    bridge-stp on
    address 172.16.10.2/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
10:10 172.16.10.1/24
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes
auto vlan20
iface vlan20
    bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20 hyperloopin.20
    bridge-stp on
    address 172.16.20.2/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
20:20 172.16.20.1/24
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes
#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
    vxlan-id 1
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.41
auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
    vxlan-id 10

```

```

clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.1
clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.41
clagd-sys-mac 44:39:39:FF:40:
96
# bridges / vlan that contain
peerlink and downlinks for L2
connectivity
auto native
iface native
    bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1 hyperloopin
    bridge-stp on
    address 172.16.1.3/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
01:01 172.16.1.1/24
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes
auto vlan10
iface vlan10
    bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10 hyperloopin.10
    bridge-stp on
    address 172.16.10.3/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
10:10 172.16.10.1/24
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes
auto vlan20
iface vlan20
    bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20 hyperloopin.20
    bridge-stp on
    address 172.16.20.3/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:
20:20 172.16.20.1/24
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes
#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
    vxlan-id 1
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.42
auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
    vxlan-id 10

```

```

vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.41
auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.41
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51
auto swp52
iface swp52
#internet
auto swp44
iface swp44

```

```

vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.42
auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.42
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51
auto swp52
iface swp52
#internet
auto swp44
iface swp44

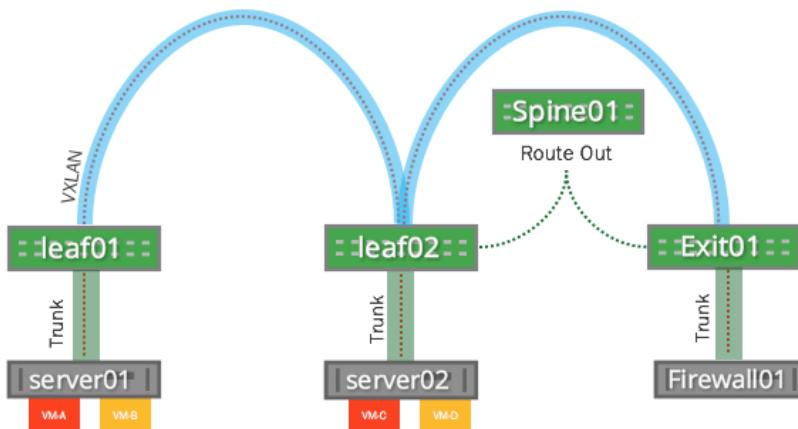
```

## Using Every Pair of Leafs

The configuration for using multiple or all leafs is the same as for [exit leafs \(see page 377\)](#), but with more switch pairs. However, as gateways are present in the form of SVIs, traffic between certain tenants can occur unintentionally. The figure below shows an example of this:



This is a different example than the main demonstration; these servers are single attached to make the diagram simple and easy for clarification.



The figure above shows the following:

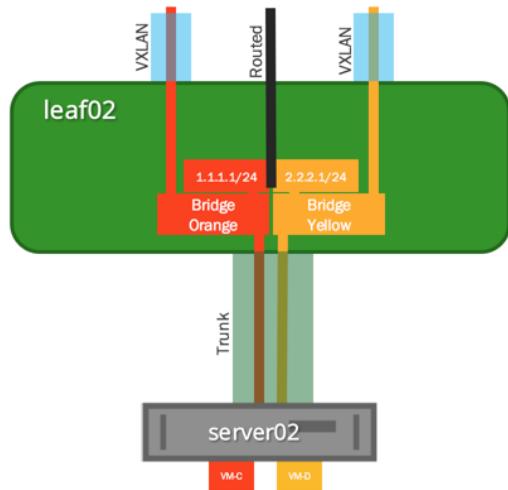
VM Name	VXLAN	Server
VM-A	Orange	server01

VM Name	VXLAN	Server
VM-B	Yellow	server01
VM-C	Orange	server02
VM-D	Yellow	server02

- VM-A has a layer 2 adjacency across the VXLAN tunnel to VM-C.
- VM-B has a layer 2 adjacency across the VXLAN tunnel to VM-D.
- All VMs have a layer 2 adjacency to Firewall01.

However, Leaf02 also has a gateway configured (either with a loopback cable or RIOT support). This means that if VM-C wants to talk to VM-D, they could talk directly on the same switch. This could be undesired behavior, depending on the environment and network architecture design, as the path of the packet could be:

VM-C -> VLAN Orange -> Bridge Orange with both an IP address and VXLAN configured. This creates a scenario where traffic has two possible paths - either the VXLAN tunnel, or the gateway. If VM-C chooses to use the gateway 1.1.1.1/24, traffic could bypass the VXLAN altogether, which may be undesired behavior.



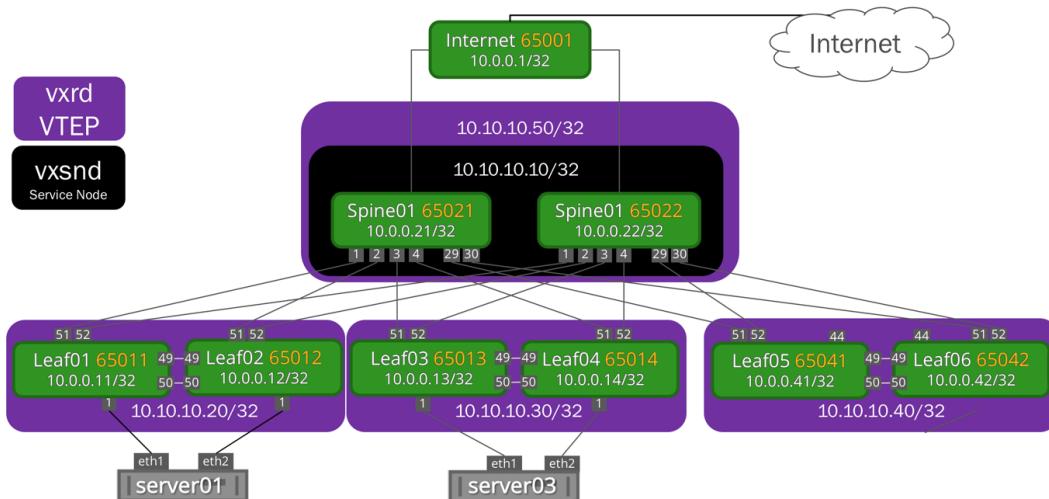
The network architecture may be configured for all traffic to go to the firewall before it is allowed to go to another tenant (in the form of a VXLAN). This can be accomplished in multiple ways, but the two most popular methods are:

- Using [VRF \(see page 525\)](#) (available on Cumulus Linux 3.0 and newer).
- Forcing the gateway for the VXLAN to be the firewall's IP address.
  - Enforce this with [cl-acltool \(see page 98\)](#) (for example, ACLs and iptables).

In the above example, Bridge Orange and Bridge Yellow would be placed into their own VRF so that they have no awareness of the other route table, or iptables rules via `cl-acltool` could be enforced to deny any traffic between the 1.1.1.X/24 and 2.2.2.X/24 subnets. This adds some complexity to network configuration and does not always add benefits; as such, exit leafs are often used as the only gateway for a VXLAN.

## Using a Pair of Spines

The vxrd and vxsnd services can run on the same switch. This can be on a pair of leafs or on a pair of spines. The main limitation is that only two switches can be in a MLAG pair.



### Spine01: /etc/network/interfaces snippet

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.21/32
    address 10.10.10.10/32
    address 10.2.1.23/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.21
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
10.10.10.50
```

### Spine01: /etc/vxsnd.conf

```
[common]
svcnod_ip=10.10.10.10
src_ip=10.2.1.23
[vxsnd]
svcnod_peers = 10.2.1.23
10.2.1.24
```

### Spine02: /etc/network/interfaces snippet

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.22/32
    address 10.10.10.10/32
    address 10.2.1.24/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.22
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
10.10.10.50
```

### Spine02 : /etc/vxsnd.conf

```
[common]
svcnod_ip=10.10.10.10
src_ip=10.2.1.24
[vxsnd]
svcnod_peers = 10.2.1.23
10.2.1.24
```

Explanation of variables configured on Spine01:

Variable and Value	Explanation
<pre>address 10.2.1.2 1/32</pre>	<p>This is a statically configured IP address. This is used by vxrd as indicated below by the <code>vxrd-src-ip</code>.</p>
<pre>address 10.10.10 .10/32</pre>	<p>This is a statically configured IP address. This is used by vxsnd.conf for the anycast address.</p>
<pre>address 10.2.1.2 3/32</pre>	<p>This is a statically configured IP address. This is used by vxsnd.conf for the unique IP address.</p>
<pre>vxrd- src-ip 10.2.1.2 1</pre>	<p>The registration daemon (<code>vxrd</code>) will bind to the IP address 10.2.1.12.</p>
<pre>vxrd- svcnode- ip 10.10.10 .10</pre>	<p>The service node that the registration node registers to is 10.10.10.10. In this scenario the IP is on the same switch so it just registers to itself. The <code>vxsnd</code> propagates this information to all other VTEPs so they are aware of this switch also.</p>
	<p>Shared VTEP address for MLAG pair is using 10.10.10.50 virtual IP address.</p>

Variable and Value	Explanation
<pre>clagd- vxlan- anycast- ip 10.10.10 .50</pre>	

## Considerations for Virtual Topologies Using Cumulus VX

### Node ID

vxrd requires a unique `node_id` for each individual switch. This `node_id` is based off of the first interface's MAC address; when using certain virtual topologies like Vagrant, both leaf switches within an MLAG pair can generate the same exact unique `node_id`. One of the `node_ids` must then be configured manually (or make sure the first interface always has a unique MAC address), as they are not unique.

To verify the `node_id` that gets configured by your switch, use the `vxrdctl get config` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01$ vxrdctl get config
{
    "concurrency": 1000,
    "config_check_rate": 60,
    "debug": false,
    "eventlet_backdoor_port": 9000,
    "head_rep": true,
    "holdtime": 90,
    "logbackupcount": 14,
    "logdest": "syslog",
    "logfilesize": 512000,
    "loglevel": "INFO",
    "max_packet_size": 1500,
    "node_id": 13,
    "pidfile": "/var/run/vxrd.pid",
    "refresh_rate": 3,
    "src_ip": "10.2.1.50",
    "svcnode_ip": "10.10.10.10",
    "udsfile": "/var/run/vxrd.sock",
    "vxfld_port": 10001
}
```

To set the `node_id` manually:

1. Open `/etc/vxrd.conf` in a text editor.
2. Set the `node_id` value within the `common` section, then save the file:

```
[common]
node_id = 13
```



Ensure that each leaf has a separate `node_id` so that LNV can function correctly.

## Bonds with Vagrant

Bonds (or LACP Etherchannels) fail to work in a Vagrant setup unless the link is set to promiscuous mode. This is a limitation on virtual topologies only, and is not needed on real hardware.

```
auto swp49
iface swp49
    #for vagrant so bonds work correctly
    post-up ip link set $IFACE promisc on

auto swp50
iface swp50
    #for vagrant so bonds work correctly
    post-up ip link set $IFACE promisc on
```

For more information on using Cumulus VX and Vagrant, refer to the [Cumulus VX documentation](#).

## Troubleshooting with LNV Active-Active

In addition to the troubleshooting for single-attached LNV (see page 347), there is now the MLAG daemon (`clagd`) to consider. The `clagctl` command gives the output of MLAG behavior and any inconsistencies that may arise between a MLAG pair.

```
cumulus@leaf01$ clagctl
The peer is alive
    Our Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:35 primary
    Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:36 secondary
        Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.1.2
            VxLAN Anycast IP: 10.10.10.30
                Backup IP: 10.0.0.14 (inactive)
                    System MAC: 44:39:39:ff:40:95

CLAG Interfaces
Our Interface      Peer Interface      CLAG Id
Conflicts          Proto-Down Reason
```

-	bond0	bond0	1
-	vxlan20	vxlan20	-
-	vxlan1	vxlan1	-
-	vxlan10	vxlan10	-
-			-

The additions to normal MLAG behavior are the following:

Output	Explanation
VXLAN Anycast IP: 10.10.10.30	The anycast IP address being shared by the MLAG pair for VTEP termination is in use and is 10.10.10.30.
Conflicts: -	There are no conflicts for this MLAG Interface.
Proto-Down Reason: -	The VXLAN is up and running (there is no Proto-Down).

In the next example the `vxlan-id` on VXLAN10 was switched to the wrong `vxlan-id`. When the `clagctl` command is run, you will see that VXLAN10 went down because this switch was the secondary switch and the peer switch took control of VXLAN. The reason code is `vxlan-single` indicating that there is a `vxlan-id` mis-match on VXLAN10

```
cumulus@leaf02$ clagctl
The peer is alive
  Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:11 primary
  Our Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:12 secondary
    Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.1.1
    VXLAN Anycast IP: 10.10.10.20
                  Backup IP: 10.0.0.11 (inactive)
                  System MAC: 44:39:39:ff:40:94

CLAG Interfaces
Our Interface      Peer Interface      CLAG Id
Conflicts          Proto-Down        Reason
-----            -----           -----
-----            -----           -----
```

	bond0	bond0	1
-		-	-
-	vxlan20	vxlan20	-
-		-	-
-	vxlan1	vxlan1	-
-		-	-
-	vxlan10	-	-
-		vxlan-single	

## Caveats and Errata

- The VLAN used for the peer link layer 3 subinterface should not be reused for any other interface in the system. A high VLAN ID value is recommended. For more information on VLAN ID ranges, refer to [the section above \(see page \)](#).
- Active-active mode only works with LNV in this release. Integration with controller-based VXLANS such as VMware NSX and Midokura MidoNet will be supported in the future.

## See Also

- [Lightweight Network Virtualization \(see page 332\)](#)
- [LNV Full Example \(Single Attached\) \(see page 391\)](#)

## LNV Full Example

Lightweight Network Virtualization (LNV) is a technique for deploying [VXLANS \(see page 300\)](#) without a central controller on bare metal switches. This a full example complete with diagram. Please reference the [Lightweight Network Virtualization chapter \(see page 332\)](#) for more detailed information. This full example uses the **recommended way** of deploying LNV, which is to use Anycast to load balance the service nodes.



LNV is a lightweight controller option. Please [contact Cumulus Networks](#) with your scale requirements and we can make sure this is the right fit for you. There are also other controller options that can work on Cumulus Linux.

## Contents

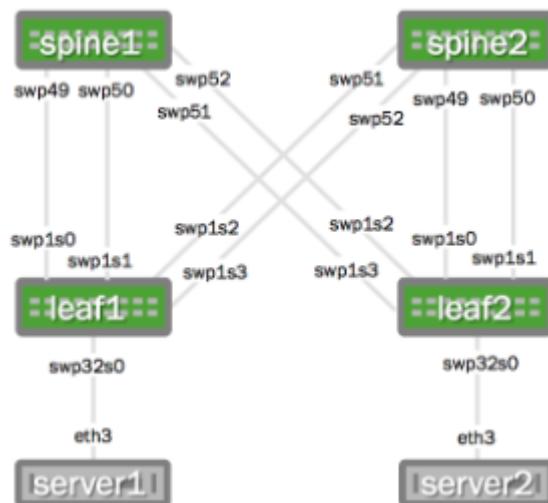
This chapter covers ...

- [Example LNV Configuration \(see page 391\)](#)
  - [Layer 3 IP Addressing \(see page 392\)](#)
  - [Quagga Configuration \(see page 394\)](#)
  - [Host Configuration \(see page 396\)](#)
  - [Service Node Configuration \(see page 397\)](#)
- [See Also \(see page 398\)](#)

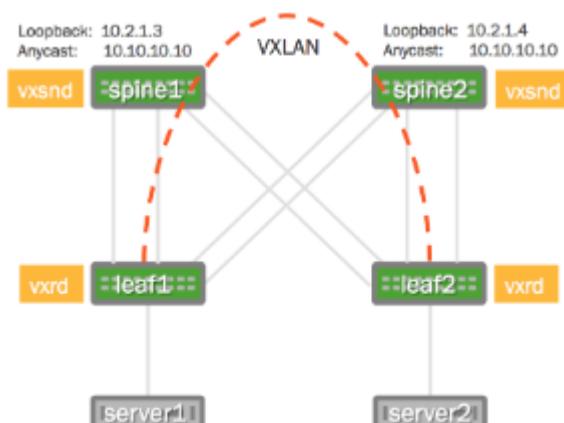
## Example LNV Configuration

The following images illustrate the configuration:

Physical Cabling Diagram



Network Virtualization Diagram



 Want to try out configuring LNV and don't have a Cumulus Linux switch? Check out [Cumulus VX](#).



Feeling Overwhelmed? Come join a [Cumulus Boot Camp](#) and get instructor-led training!

## Layer 3 IP Addressing

Here is the configuration for the IP addressing information used in this example:

**spine1:** /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.2.1.3/32
  address 10.10.10.10/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp49
iface swp49
  address 10.1.1.2/30

auto swp50
iface swp50
```

**spine2:** /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.2.1.4/32
  address 10.10.10.10/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp49
iface swp49
  address 10.1.1.18/30

auto swp50
iface swp50
```

```

address 10.1.1.6/30

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.1.1.50/30

auto swp52
iface swp52
    address 10.1.1.54/30

```

```

address 10.1.1.22/30

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.1.1.34/30

auto swp52
iface swp52
    address 10.1.1.38/30

```

**leaf1:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.1/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.1
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10

```

```

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

```

```

auto swp1s0
iface swp1s0
    address 10.1.1.1/30

```

```

auto swp1s1
iface swp1s1
    address 10.1.1.5/30

```

```

auto swp1s2
iface swp1s2
    address 10.1.1.33/30

```

```

auto swp1s3
iface swp1s3
    address 10.1.1.37/30

```

```

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
    vxlan-id 10
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1
    mstpcl-bpduguard yes
    mstpcl-portbpdufilter yes

```

```

auto vni-2000
iface vni-2000
    vxlan-id 2000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1

```

**leaf2:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.2/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.2
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10

```

```

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

```

```

auto swp1s0
iface swp1s0 inet static
    address 10.1.1.17/30

```

```

auto swp1s1
iface swp1s1 inet static
    address 10.1.1.21/30

```

```

auto swp1s2
iface swp1s2 inet static
    address 10.1.1.49/30

```

```

auto swp1s3
iface swp1s3 inet static
    address 10.1.1.53/30

```

```

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
    vxlan-id 10
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2
    mstpcl-bpduguard yes
    mstpcl-portbpdufilter yes

```

```

auto vni-2000
iface vni-2000
    vxlan-id 2000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2

```

```

mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-30
iface vni-30
  vxlan-id 30
  vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1
  mstpctl-bpduguard yes
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto br-10
iface br-10
  bridge-ports swp32s0.10 vni-10

auto br-20
iface br-20
  bridge-ports swp32s0.20 vni-2000

auto br-30
iface br-30
  bridge-ports swp32s0.30 vni-30
  
```

```

mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-30
iface vni-30
  vxlan-id 30
  vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2
  mstpctl-bpduguard yes
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto br-10
iface br-10
  bridge-ports swp32s0.10 vni-10

auto br-20
iface br-20
  bridge-ports swp32s0.20 vni-2000

auto br-30
iface br-30
  bridge-ports swp32s0.30 vni-30
  
```

## Quagga Configuration

The service nodes and registration nodes must all be routable between each other. The L3 fabric on Cumulus Linux can either be [BGP](#) (see page 469) or [OSPF](#) (see page 451). In this example, OSPF is used to demonstrate full reachability.

Here is the Quagga configuration using OSPF:

**spine1:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```

interface lo
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp49
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp50
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp51
  
```

**spine2:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```

interface lo
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp49
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp50
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp51
  
```

```

ip ospf network point-to-
point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp52
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.3
router ospf
  ospf router-id 10.2.1.3

```

```

ip ospf network point-to-
point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp52
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.4
router ospf
  ospf router-id 10.2.1.4

```

**leaf1:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```

interface lo
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp1s0
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s1
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s2
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s3
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.1
router ospf
  ospf router-id 10.2.1.1

```

**leaf2:** /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```

interface lo
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp1s0
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s1
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s2
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s3
  ip ospf network point-to-
  point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.2
router ospf
  ospf router-id 10.2.1.2

```

## Host Configuration

In this example, the servers are running Ubuntu 14.04. A trunk must be mapped from server1 and server2 to the respective switch. In Ubuntu this is done with subinterfaces.

### server1

```
auto eth3.10
iface eth3.10 inet
static
    address 10.10.10.1/24

auto eth3.20
iface eth3.20 inet
static
    address 10.10.20.1/24

auto eth3.30
iface eth3.30 inet
static
    address 10.10.30.1/24
```

### server2

```
auto eth3.10
iface eth3.10 inet
static
    address 10.10.10.2/24

auto eth3.20
iface eth3.20 inet
static
    address 10.10.20.2/24

auto eth3.30
iface eth3.30 inet
static
    address 10.10.30.2/24
```

## Service Node Configuration

**spine1**: /etc/vxsnd.conf

```
[common]
# Log level is one of DEBUG,
INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL
#loglevel = INFO
# Destination for log
message. Can be a file name, '
stdout', or 'syslog'
#logdest = syslog
# log file size in bytes. Used
when logdest is a file
#logfilesize = 512000
# maximum number of log files
stored on disk. Used when
logdest is a file
#logbackupcount = 14
# The file to write the pid.
If using monit, this must
match the one
# in the vxsnd.rc
#pidfile = /var/run/vxsnd.pid
# The file name for the unix
domain socket used for mgmt.
#udsfile = /var/run/vxsnd.sock
# UDP port for vxfld control
messages
#vxfld_port = 10001
# This is the address to which
registration daemons send
control messages for
# registration and/or BUM
packets for replication
svcnode_ip = 10.10.10.10
# Holdtime (in seconds) for
soft state. It is used when
sending a
# register msg to peers in
response to learning a <vni,
addr> from a
# VXLAN data pkt
#holdtime = 90
# Local IP address to bind to f
or receiving inter-vxsnd
control traffic
src_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

**spine2**: /etc/vxsnd.conf

```
[common]
# Log level is one of DEBUG,
INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL
#loglevel = INFO
# Destination for log
message. Can be a file name, '
stdout', or 'syslog'
#logdest = syslog
# log file size in bytes. Used
when logdest is a file
#logfilesize = 512000
# maximum number of log files
stored on disk. Used when
logdest is a file
#logbackupcount = 14
# The file to write the pid.
If using monit, this must
match the one
# in the vxsnd.rc
#pidfile = /var/run/vxsnd.pid
# The file name for the unix
domain socket used for mgmt.
#udsfile = /var/run/vxsnd.sock
# UDP port for vxfld control
messages
#vxfld_port = 10001
# This is the address to which
registration daemons send
control messages for
# registration and/or BUM
packets for replication
svcnode_ip = 10.10.10.10
# Holdtime (in seconds) for
soft state. It is used when
sending a
# register msg to peers in
response to learning a <vni,
addr> from a
# VXLAN data pkt
#holdtime = 90
# Local IP address to bind to f
or receiving inter-vxsnd
control traffic
src_ip = 10.2.1.4
```

```
[vxsnd]
# Space separated list of IP
addresses of vxsnd to share
state with
svcnode_peers = 10.2.1.4
# When set to true, the
service node will listen for
vxlan data traffic
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#enable_vxlan_listen = true
# When set to true, the
svcnode_ip will be installed
on the loopback
# interface, and it will be
withdrawn when the vxsnd is no
longer in
# service. If set to true,
the svcnode_ip configuration
# variable must be defined.
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#install_svcnode_ip = false
# Seconds to wait before
checking the database to age
out stale entries
#age_check = 90
```

```
[vxsnd]
# Space separated list of IP
addresses of vxsnd to share
state with
svcnode_peers = 10.2.1.3
# When set to true, the
service node will listen for
vxlan data traffic
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#enable_vxlan_listen = true
# When set to true, the
svcnode_ip will be installed
on the loopback
# interface, and it will be
withdrawn when the vxsnd is no
longer in
# service. If set to true,
the svcnode_ip configuration
# variable must be defined.
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#install_svcnode_ip = false
# Seconds to wait before
checking the database to age
out stale entries
#age_check = 90
```

## See Also

- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7348](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7348)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anycast](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anycast)
- Detailed LNV Configuration Guide (see page 332)
- Cumulus Networks Training

## Static MAC Bindings with VXLAN

Cumulus Linux includes native Linux VXLAN kernel support.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Requirements (see page 399)

- Example VXLAN Configuration (see page 399)
- Configuring the Static MAC Bindings VXLAN (see page 399)
- Troubleshooting VXLANs in Cumulus Linux (see page 403)

## Requirements

A VXLAN configuration requires a switch with a Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II chipset running Cumulus Linux 2.0 or later.

For a basic VXLAN configuration, you should ensure that:

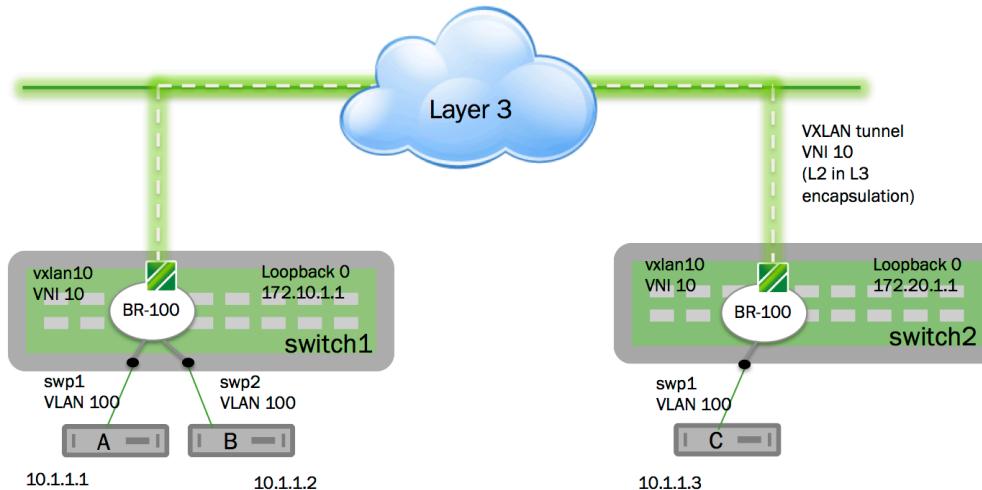
- The VXLAN has a network identifier (VNI); do not use 0 or 16777215 as the VNI ID, as they are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.
- The VXLAN link and local interfaces are added to bridge to create the association between port, VLAN and VXLAN instance.
- Each bridge on the switch has only one VXLAN interface. Cumulus Linux does not support more than one VXLAN link in a bridge; however a switch can have multiple bridges.



VXLANs are not supported on switches with [Spectrum ASICs](#).

## Example VXLAN Configuration

Consider the following example:



Preconfiguring remote MAC addresses does not scale. A better solution is to use the Cumulus Networks [Lightweight Network Virtualization](#) feature, or a controller-based option like [Midokura MidoNet](#) and [OpenStack](#) or [VMware NSX](#).

## Configuring the Static MAC Bindings VXLAN

To configure the example illustrated above, edit `/etc/network/interfaces` with a text editor like vi, nano or zile.

Add the following configuration to the /etc/network/interfaces file on switch1:

```
auto vtep1000
iface vtep1000
  vxlan-id 1000
  vxlan-local-tunnelip 172.10.1.1

auto br-100
iface br-100
  bridge-ports swp1.100 swp2.100 vtep1000
  post-up bridge fdb add 0:00:10:00:00:0C dev vtep1000 dst 172.20.1.1
  vni 1000
```

Add the following configuration to the /etc/network/interfaces file on switch2:

```
auto vtep1000
iface vtep1000
  vxlan-id 1000
  vxlan-local-tunnelip 172.20.1.1

auto br-100
iface br-100
  bridge-ports swp1.100 swp2.100 vtep1000
  post-up bridge fdb add 0:00:10:00:00:0A dev vtep1000 dst 172.10.1.1
  vni 1000
  post-up bridge fdb add 0:00:10:00:00:0B dev vtep1000 dst 172.10.1.1
  vni 1000
```

#### Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration is non-persistent, which means the configuration you create here does not persist after you reboot the switch.

In general, to configure a VXLAN in Cumulus Linux without a controller, run the following commands in a terminal connected to the switch:

1. Create a VXLAN link:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip link add <name> type vxlan id <vnid>
local <ip addr> [group <mcast group address>] [no] nolearning
[ttl] [tos] [dev] [port MIN MAX] [ageing <value>] remote
[replicator addr]
```



If you are specifying `ageing`, you **must** specify the replicator (`remote`).

2. Add a VXLAN link to a bridge:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo brctl addif br-vxlan <name>
```

3. Install a static MAC binding to a remote tunnel IP:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo bridge fdb add <mac addr> dev <device>
dst <ip addr> vni <vnii> port <port> via <device>
```

4. Show VXLAN link and FDB:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ ip -d link show
cumulus@switch1:~$ bridge fdb show
```

To create a runtime configuration that matches the image above, do the following:

1. Configure hosts A and B as part of the same tenant as C (VNI 10) on switch1. Hosts A and B are part of VLAN 100. To configure the VTEP interface with VNI 10, run the following commands in a terminal connected to switch1 running Cumulus Linux:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip link add link swp1 name swp1.100 type
vlan id 100
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip link add link swp2 name swp2.100 type
vlan id 100
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip link add vtep1000 type vxlan id 10
local 172.10.1.1 nolearning
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip link set swp1 up
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip link set swp2 up
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip link set vtep1000 up
```

2. Configure VLAN 100 and VTEP 1000 to be part of the same bridge br-100 on switch1:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo brctl addbr br-100
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip link set br-100 up
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo brctl addif br-100 swp1.100 swp2.100
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo brctl addif br-100 vtep1000
```

3. Install a static MAC binding to a remote tunnel IP, assuming the MAC address for host C is 00:00:10:00:00:0C:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo bridge fdb add 00:00:10:00:00:0C dev
vtep1000 dst 172.20.1.1
```

4. Configure host C as part of the same tenant as hosts A and B on switch2:

```
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo ip link add link swp1 name swp1.100 type
vlan id 100
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo ip link add name vtep1000 type vxlan id 1
0 local 172.20.1.1 nolearning
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo ip link set swp1 up
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo ip link set vtep1000 up
```

5. Configure VLAN 100 and VTEP 1000 to be part of the same bridge br-100 on switch2:

```
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo brctl addbr br-100
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo ip link set br-100 up
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo brctl addif br-100 swp1.100
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo brctl addif br-100 vtep1000
```

6. Install a static MAC binding to a remote tunnel IP on switch2, assuming the MAC address for host A is 00:00:10:00:00:0A and the MAC address for host B is 00:00:10:00:00:0B:

```
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo bridge fdb add 00:00:10:00:00:0A dev
vtep1000 dst 172.10.1.1
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo bridge fdb add 00:00:10:00:00:0B dev
vtep1000 dst 172.10.1.1
```

7. Verify the configuration on switch1, then on switch2:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ ip -d link show
cumulus@switch1:~$ bridge fdb show
cumulus@switch2:~$ ip -d link show
cumulus@switch2:~$ bridge fdb show
```

8. Set the static arp for hosts B and C on host A:

```
root@hostA:~# sudo arp -s 10.1.1.3 00:00:10:00:00:0C
```

9. Set the static arp for hosts A and C on host B:

```
root@hostB:~# sudo arp -s 10.1.1.3 00:00:10:00:00:0C
```

10. Set the static arp for hosts A and B on host C:

```
root@hostC:~# arp -s 10.1.1.1 00:00:10:00:00:0A
```

```
root@hostC:~# arp -s 10.1.1.2 00:00:10:00:00:0B
```

## Troubleshooting VXLANS in Cumulus Linux

Use the following commands to troubleshoot issues on the switch:

- `brctl show`: Verifies the VXLAN configuration in a bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl show
bridge name      bridge id          STP enabled
interfaces
br-vxln100       8000.44383900480d    no
swp2s0.100
00
                                         swp2s1.1
                                         vxln100
```

- `bridge fdb show`: Displays the list of MAC addresses in an FDB:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ bridge fdb show
52:54:00:ae:2a:e0 dev vxln100 dst 172.16.21.150 self permanent
d2:ca:78:bb:7c:9b dev vxln100 permanent
90:e2:ba:3f:ce:34 dev swp2s1.100
90:e2:ba:3f:ce:35 dev swp2s0.100
44:38:39:00:48:0e dev swp2s1.100 permanent
44:38:39:00:48:0d dev swp2s0.100 permanent
```

- `ip -d link show`: Displays information about the VXLAN link:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ ip -d link show vxln100
71: vxln100: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master br-vxln100 state UP
        mode DEFAULT group default
        link/ether d2:ca:78:bb:7c:9b brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        promiscuity 1
        vxlan id 100 local 36.0.0.11 srcport 0 0 dstport 4789 ageing 300
            bridge_slave state forwarding priority 32 cost 100 hairpin off guard off root_block off
            fastleave off learning on flood on port_id 0x8001 port_no 0x1
            designated_port 32769
            designated_cost 0 designated_bridge 8000.c4:54:44:bd:1:71 designated_root 8000.c4:54:44:bd:1:71
            hold_timer 0.00 message_age_timer 0.00
            forward_delay_timer 0.00
            topology_change_ack 0 config_pending 0 proxy_arp off
            proxy_arp_wifi off mcast_router 1
```

```
mcast_fast_leave off addrgenmode eui64
```

## Ethernet Virtual Private Network - EVPN

### ➊ Early Access Feature

EVPN is an [early access feature](#) in Cumulus Linux 3.1.1. Before you can install EVPN, you must enable the Early Access repository. For more information about the Cumulus Linux repository, read [this knowledge base article](#).

Ethernet Virtual Private Network (EVPN) is an early access feature in Cumulus Linux 3.1.x. EVPN acts as a control plane for [VXLAN \(see page 300\)](#) in Cumulus Linux, rather than acting as a generic layer 2 VPN solution. The early access release implements VNI membership exchange on VTEPs using the EVPN type-3, or Inclusive Multicast Ethernet Tag (IMET), route. The available functionality includes the following characteristics:

- Auto-derivation of [BGP \(see page 469\)](#) route distinguishers (RD) and route targets (RT) for the EVPN route, while allowing for manual configuration/override.
- Either eBGP or iBGP may be used to exchange EVPN routes; peering sessions can be either numbered or unnumbered.
- Either eBGP or OSPF can be used as the underlay routing protocol.
- VXLANs can be configured using either VLAN-aware bridge mode, or per-VXLAN-bridge mode.
- MAC learning over the VXLAN tunnels still occurs in the data plane.
- Head end replication is used for handling BUM traffic.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Installing the EVPN Package \(see page 405\)](#)
- [Enabling Quagga \(see page 405\)](#)
- [Example Configuration \(see page 406\)](#)
  - [leaf01 and leaf02 Configurations \(see page 407\)](#)
  - [spine01 and spine02 Configurations \(see page 410\)](#)
  - [server01 and server02 Configurations \(see page 412\)](#)
- [EVPN Provisioning \(see page 412\)](#)
  - [Enable EVPN with Automatic RDs and RTs \(see page 412\)](#)
  - [Enable EVPN with User-defined RDs and RTs for Some VNIs \(see page 413\)](#)
- [Testing Connectivity between Servers \(see page 413\)](#)
- [BGP Output Commands \(see page 413\)](#)
- [EVPN BGP Output Commands \(see page 414\)](#)
  - [Displaying EVPN address-family Peers \(see page 414\)](#)
  - [Displaying VNIs \(see page 415\)](#)
  - [Displaying EVPN VXLANs \(see page 416\)](#)

- Displaying BGP EVPN Routes (see page 416)
- Displaying a Specific EVPN Route (see page 418)
- Caveats (see page 419)

## ***Installing the EVPN Package***

To install EVPN on a switch:

1. Open the /etc/apt/sources.list file in a text editor.
2. Uncomment the early access repo lines and save the file:

```
#deb      http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com/repo CumulusLinux-3-
early-access cumulus
#deb-src  http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com/repo CumulusLinuz-3-
early-access cumulus
```

3. Run the following commands to install the EVPN package in Cumulus Linux:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ apt-get install cumulus-evpn
cumulus@switch:~$ apt-get upgrade
```

4. Check your Quagga version using the dpkg -l quagga command. Please make sure you are running 0.99.24+cl3eau5 or newer

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ dpkg -l quagga
Desired=Unknown/Install/Remove/Purge/Hold
| Status=Not/Inst/Conf-files/Unpacked/half-conf/Half-inst/trig-
aWait/Trig-pend
| / Err?=(none)/Reinst-required (Status,Err: uppercase=bad)
||/ Name          Version       Architecture
Description
=====
ii  quagga        0.99.24+cl3eau5   amd64
BGP/OSPF/RIP routing daemon
```

## ***Enabling Quagga***

Quagga needs to be enabled prior to using EVPN.

1. Open /etc/quagga/daemons file in a text editor:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/quagga/daemons
```

2. Change the `no` to `yes` for `zebra` and `bgpd`, then save the file:

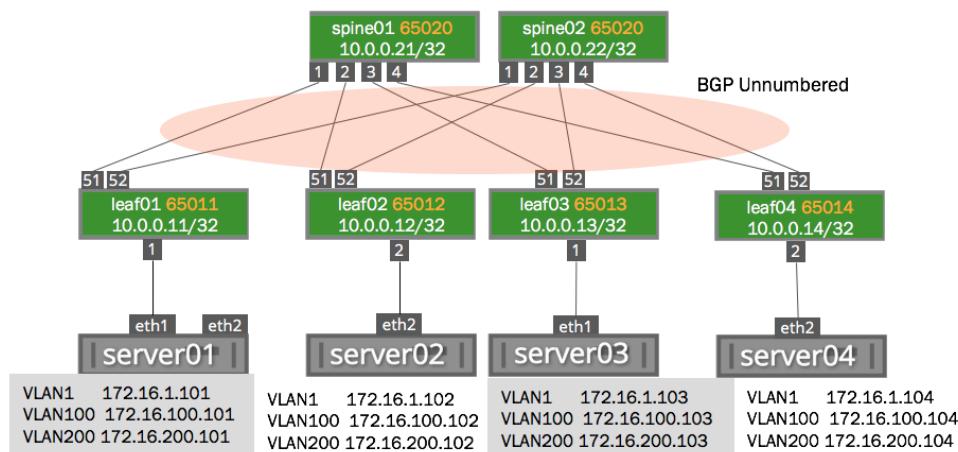
```
zebra=yes
bgpd=yes
```

3. Enable and start Quagga using the `sudo systemctl` commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable quagga.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start quagga.service
```

## Example Configuration

The following configurations are used throughout this chapter. You can find the flat-file configurations for the network devices in the Cumulus Networks [GitHub repository](#). Only a subset is shown here for brevity (not shown are configurations for leaf03, leaf04, server03, server04). Here is the topology diagram:



## ***leaf01 and leaf02 Configurations***

leaf01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.11/32
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51
auto swp52
iface swp52
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports swp1
vxlan10001 vxlan10100
vxlan10200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vids 1 100 200
    bridge-pvid 1
auto vxlan10001
iface vxlan10001
    vxlan-id 10001
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 1
auto vxlan10100
iface vxlan10100
    vxlan-id 10100
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 100
auto vxlan10200
iface vxlan10200
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 200
```

leaf02 /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.12/32
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51
auto swp52
iface swp52
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports swp2
vxlan10001 vxlan10100
vxlan10200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vids 1 100 200
    bridge-pvid 1
auto vxlan10001
iface vxlan10001
    vxlan-id 10001
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12
    bridge-access 1
auto vxlan10100
iface vxlan10100
    vxlan-id 10100
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12
    bridge-access 100
auto vxlan10200
iface vxlan10200
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12
    bridge-access 200
```

leaf01 /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp51
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
```

leaf02 /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp51
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
```

```

no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp52
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65011
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.11
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  neighbor fabric peer-group
  neighbor fabric remote-as
external
  neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp51 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp52 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.11/32
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
dc-leaf-in in
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
dc-leaf-out out
  exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family evpn
  neighbor fabric activate
  advertise-vni
exit-address-family
exit
!
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
10 permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
500 deny any
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-out seq
20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-out seq
500 deny any

```

```

no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp52
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65012
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.12
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  neighbor fabric peer-group
  neighbor fabric remote-as
external
  neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp51 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp52 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.12/32
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
dc-leaf-in in
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
dc-leaf-out out
  exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family evpn
  neighbor fabric activate
  advertise-vni
exit-address-family
exit
!
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
10 permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
500 deny any
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-out seq
20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-out seq
500 deny any

```

```
!
line vty
!
end
```

```
!
line vty
!
end
```

## spine01 and spine02 Configurations

spine01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.21/32
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1
auto swp2
iface swp2
auto swp3
iface swp3
auto swp4
iface swp4
```

spine02 /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.22/32
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1
auto swp2
iface swp2
auto swp3
iface swp3
auto swp4
iface swp4
```

spine01 /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp1
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp2
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp3
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp4
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65020
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
  bgp bestpath as-path
  multipath-relax
    neighbor fabric peer-group
    neighbor fabric remote-as
    external
```

spine02 /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf

```
!
interface swp1
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp2
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp3
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp4
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65020
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.22
  bgp bestpath as-path
  multipath-relax
    neighbor fabric peer-group
    neighbor fabric remote-as
    external
```

```

neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
neighbor swp1 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp2 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp3 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp4 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.21/32
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
  dc-spine in
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
  dc-spine out
  exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family evpn
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
exit
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10
permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20
permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq
500 deny any
!
line vty
!
end

```

```

neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
neighbor swp1 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp2 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp3 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp4 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.22/32
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
  dc-spine in
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
  dc-spine out
  exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family evpn
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
exit
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10
permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20
permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq
500 deny any
!
line vty
!
end

```

## ***server01 and server02 Configurations***

server01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
#configuration is for Cumulus
VX
#in real life this is a server
OS
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
auto eth1
iface eth1
    address 172.16.1.101/24
auto eth1.100
iface eth1.100
    address 172.16.100.101/24
auto eth1.200
iface eth1.200
    address 172.16.200.101/24
```

server02 /etc/network/interfaces

```
#configuration is for Cumulus
VX
#in real life this is a server
OS
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
auto eth2
iface eth2
    address 172.16.1.102/24
auto eth2.100
iface eth2.100
    address 172.16.100.102/24
auto eth2.200
iface eth2.200
    address 172.16.200.102/24
```

## ***EVPN Provisioning***

EVPN can be provisioned with either RDs and RTs automatically configured, or by manually defining them. The output below shows example [Quagga configuration](#) (see page 438) for these two provisioning options:

### ***Enable EVPN with Automatic RDs and RTs***

```
router bgp 65011
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.11

  ...
  ... #code removed for brevity

  !
  address-family evpn
    neighbor fabric activate
    advertise-vni
  exit-address-family
  exit
```

## ***Enable EVPN with User-defined RDs and RTs for Some VNIs***

```
router bgp 65100
  address-family evpn
    neighbor swp1 activate
    advertise-vni
    vni 10200
      rd 172.16.10.1:20
      route-target both 65100:20
```

## ***Testing Connectivity between Servers***

SSH to server01 and ping the VLAN1 IP address on server02:

```
user@server01:~$ ping 172.16.1.102
PING 172.16.1.102 (172.16.1.102) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 172.16.1.102: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=2.52 ms
64 bytes from 172.16.1.102: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=2.74 ms
^C
--- 172.16.1.102 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 2.528/2.638/2.749/0.121 ms
```

The following table lists all the servers IP addresses to test connectivity across the L3 fabric:

	<b>server01</b>	<b>server02</b>	<b>server03</b>	<b>server04</b>
VLAN1	172.16.1.101	172.16.1.102	172.16.1.103	172.16.1.104
VLAN100	172.16.100.101	172.16.100.102	172.16.100.103	172.16.100.104
VLAN200	172.16.200.101	172.16.200.102	172.16.200.103	172.16.200.104

## ***BGP Output Commands***

The following commands are not unique to EVPN but help troubleshoot connectivity and route propagation. You can display the L3 fabric by running the Quagga `show ip bgp summary` command on one of the spines:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ sudo vtysh
spine01# show ip bgp sum
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.21, local AS number 65020 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 7
```

```
RIB entries 9, using 1152 bytes of memory
Peers 4, using 83 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 72 bytes of memory
Neighbor          V           AS MsgRcvd MsgSent     TblVer  InQ OutQ Up
/Down  State/PfxRcd
leaf01(swp1)    4 65011      1038   1012        0       0     0 00:49:
11             1
leaf02(swp2)    4 65012      1042   1018        0       0     0 00:49:
30             1
leaf03(swp3)    4 65013      1013   995        0       0     0 00:41:
20             1
leaf04(swp4)    4 65014      1026   1012        0       0     0 00:49:
10             1
Total number of neighbors 4
```

You can see the loopback addresses for all the network devices participating in BGP by running the `show ip bgp` command:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ sudo vtysh
spine01# show ip bgp
BGP table version is 7, local router ID is 10.0.0.21
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =
multipath,
                  i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
Network          Next Hop            Metric LocPrf Weight Path
*> 10.0.0.11/32  swp1              0          0 65011 i
*> 10.0.0.12/32  swp2              0          0 65012 i
*> 10.0.0.13/32  swp3              0          0 65013 i
*> 10.0.0.14/32  swp4              0          0 65014 i
*> 10.0.0.21/32  0.0.0.0           0          0 32768 i
Displayed 5 out of 5 total prefixes
```

## **EVPN BGP Output Commands**

The following commands are unique to EVPN address-families and VXLAN. Note that just because two network nodes are BGP peers does not mean they are EVPN address-family peers or are exchanging VXLAN information.

### **Displaying EVPN address-family Peers**

The network device participating in BGP EVPN address-family can be shown using the `show bgp evpn summary` command

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ sudo vtysh
spine01# show bgp evpn summary
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.21, local AS number 65020 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 0
```

```
RIB entries 23, using 2944 bytes of memory
Peers 4, using 83 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 72 bytes of memory
Neighbor          V        AS MsgRcvd MsgSent    TblVer  InQ OutQ Up
/Down  State/PfxRcd
leaf01(swp1)     4 65011    1103   1077      0       0       0 00:52:
24            3
leaf02(swp2)     4 65012    1106   1082      0       0       0 00:52:
43            3
leaf03(swp3)     4 65013    1078   1060      0       0       0 00:44:
33            3
leaf04(swp4)     4 65014    1090   1076      0       0       0 00:52:
23            3
Total number of neighbors 4
```

## Displaying VNIs

You can display the configured VNIs on a network device participating in BGP EVPN by running the `show bgp evpn vni` command. The following example examines leaf01, where 3 VXLANs are configured:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo vtysh
leaf01# show bgp evpn vni
BGP EVPN INFORMATION
Advertise VNI flag: Enabled
VNI: 10200
RD: 10.0.0.11:10200
Originator IP: 10.0.0.11
Import Route Target:
  65011:10200
Export Route Target:
  65011:10200
VNI: 10001
RD: 10.0.0.11:10001
Originator IP: 10.0.0.11
Import Route Target:
  65011:10001
Export Route Target:
  65011:10001
VNI: 10100
RD: 10.0.0.11:10100
Originator IP: 10.0.0.11
Import Route Target:
  65011:10100
Export Route Target:
  65011:10100
```

Notice that the spine01 switch is sharing VNI information but does not have any VNIs configured on itself:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ sudo vtysh
spine01# show bgp evpn vni
BGP EVPN INFORMATION
Advertise VNI flag: Enabled
```

## Displaying EVPN VXLANs

Run the `show evpn vni` command to list all local configured VXLANs and remote VTEPs:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo vtysh
leaf01# show evpn vni
VNI: 10200
  VxLAN interface: vxlan10200 ifIndex: 15 VTEP IP: 10.0.0.11
  Remote VTEPs for this VNI:
    10.0.0.13
    10.0.0.12
    10.0.0.14
VNI: 10001
  VxLAN interface: vxlan10001 ifIndex: 16 VTEP IP: 10.0.0.11
  Remote VTEPs for this VNI:
    10.0.0.13
    10.0.0.12
    10.0.0.14
VNI: 10100
  VxLAN interface: vxlan10100 ifIndex: 14 VTEP IP: 10.0.0.11
  Remote VTEPs for this VNI:
    10.0.0.13
    10.0.0.12
    10.0.0.14
```

## Displaying BGP EVPN Routes

Run the `show bgp evpn route` command to display all EVPN routes at the same time:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo vtysh
leaf01# show bgp evpn route
BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 10.0.0.11
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i -
internal
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

      Network          Next Hop           Metric LocPrf Weight Path
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.11:10001
*> [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.11]                               32768 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.11:10100
*> [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.11]
```

```

32768 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.11:10200
*> [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.11]

32768 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.12:10001
* [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.12]
* > [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.12]          0 65020 65012 i
                                         0 65020 65012 i

Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.12:10100
* [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.12]
* > [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.12]          0 65020 65012 i
                                         0 65020 65012 i

Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.12:10200
* [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.12]
* > [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.12]          0 65020 65012 i
                                         0 65020 65012 i

Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:10001
* [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.13]
* > [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.13]          0 65020 65013 i
                                         0 65020 65013 i

Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:10100
* [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.13]
* > [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.13]          0 65020 65013 i
                                         0 65020 65013 i

Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:10200
* [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.13]
* > [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.13]          0 65020 65013 i
                                         0 65020 65013 i

Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.14:10001
* [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.14]
* > [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.14]          0 65020 65014 i
                                         0 65020 65014 i

Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.14:10100
* [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.14]
* > [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.14]          0 65020 65014 i
                                         0 65020 65014 i

Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.14:10200
* [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.14]
* > [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.14]          0 65020 65014 i
                                         0 65020 65014 i

```

Displayed 21 out of 21 total prefixes

## Output Explained

- The output `*> [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.14]` is explained as follows:

Output	Explanation
[3]	Type 3 EVPN route
[0]	Ethernet tag
[4]	IP address length of 4 bytes
10.0.0.14	IPv4 address originating this route

- The output `Displayed 21 out of 21 total prefixes` is derived as follows: 4 VTEPs (leaf01, leaf02, leaf03, leaf04) x 3 VXLANs each = 12 VXLANs. There are two spine switches (for [ECMP \(see page 507\)](#)), giving us 24 total prefixes. However, three of them are originating, so  $24-3 = 21$  prefixes.

## Displaying a Specific EVPN Route

To drill down on a specific route for more information, run the `show bgp evpn route rd <VTEP:VXLAN>` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo vtysh
leaf01# show bgp evpn route rd 10.0.0.14:10100
BGP routing table entry for 10.0.0.14:10100
Paths: (2 available, best #2)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
    spine01(swp51) spine02(swp52)
Route [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.14]
  65020 65014
    10.0.0.14 from spine02(swp52) (10.0.0.22)
      Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external
      Extended Community: RT:65014:10100
      AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 54
      Last update: Thu Nov  3 16:01:43 2016
Route [3]:[0]:[4]:[10.0.0.14]
  65020 65014
    10.0.0.14 from spine01(swp51) (10.0.0.21)
      Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external, bestpath-from-AS
      65020, best
      Extended Community: RT:65014:10100
      AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 26
      Last update: Thu Nov  3 15:33:48 2016
```

## Caveats

The following caveats are in place for the early access release:

- EVPN is only supported on platforms with Broadcom chipsets — same as for VXLAN itself.
- [VXLAN active-active mode \(see page 358\)](#) is not supported.
- Only VNI values less than 65535 are supported.
- There is no support for route reflection of EVPN routes.
- When iBGP is used to exchange EVPN routes between VTEPs, OSPF (or static routing) has to be used as the underlay routing protocol.
- Cannot interoperate with other vendors' EVPN implementations. While the type-3 route exchanged adheres to the RFC/draft, there is insufficient functionality for a successful interop.

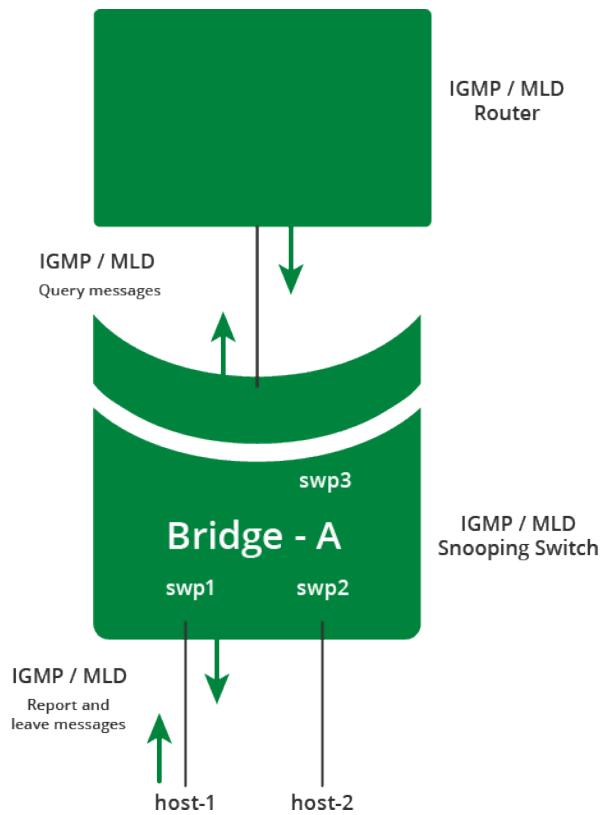
## IGMP and MLD Snooping

IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) and MLD (Multicast Listener Discovery) snooping functionality is implemented in the bridge driver in the Cumulus Linux kernel and are enabled by default. IGMP snooping processes IGMP v1/v2/v3 reports received on a bridge port in a bridge to identify the hosts which would like to receive multicast traffic destined to that group.

When an IGMPv2 leave message is received, a group specific query is sent to identify if there are any other hosts interested in that group, before the group is deleted.

An IGMP query message received on a port is used to identify the port that is connected to a router and is interested in receiving multicast traffic.

MLD snooping processes MLD v1/v2 reports, queries and v1 done messages for IPv6 groups. If IGMP or MLD snooping is disabled, multicast traffic will be flooded to all the bridge ports in the bridge. The multicast group IP address is mapped to a multicast MAC address and a forwarding entry is created with a list of ports interested in receiving multicast traffic destined to that group.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 420)
- Configuring IGMP/MLD Querier (see page 420)
- Disabling IGMP and MLD Snooping (see page 421)
- Debugging IGMP/MLD Snooping (see page 422)
- Configuration Files (see page 423)
- Man Pages (see page 423)
- Useful Links (see page 424)

## Commands

- `brctl`
- `bridge`

## Configuring IGMP/MLD Querier

If no multicast router is sending queries to configure IGMP/MLD querier on the switch, you can add a configuration similar to the following in `/etc/network/interfaces`. To enable IGMP and MLD snooping for a bridge, set `bridge-mcquerier` to 1 in the bridge stanza. By default, the source IP address of IGMP queries is 0.0.0.0. To set the source IP address of the queries to be the bridge IP address, configure `bridge-mcqifaddr 1`.

For an explanation of the relevant parameters, see the `ifupdown-addons-interfaces` man page.

For a bridge in [traditional mode](#) (see page 244), use a configuration like the following:

```
auto br0
iface br0
    address 192.0.2.10/24
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3
    bridge-vlan-aware no
    bridge-mcquerier 1
    bridge-mcqifaddr 1
```

For a [VLAN-aware bridge](#) (see page 264), use a configuration like the following:

```
auto br0.100
vlan br0.100
    bridge-igmp-querier-src 123.1.1.1

auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-mcquerier 1
```

For a VLAN-aware bridge, like br0 in the above example, to enable querier functionality for VLAN 100 in the bridge, set `bridge-mcquerier` to 1 in the bridge stanza and set `bridge-igmp-querier-src` to 123.1.1.1 in the br0.100 stanza.

You can specify a range of VLANs as well. For example:

```
auto bridge.[1-200]
vlan bridge.[1-200]
    bridge-igmp-querier-src 123.1.1.1
```

## ***Disabling IGMP and MLD Snooping***

To disable IGMP and MLD snooping, set `bridge-mcsnoop` to 0 in /etc/network/interfaces.

```
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3
    bridge-mcsnoop 0
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-mcquerier 1
```

## Debugging IGMP/MLD Snooping

To get the IGMP/MLD snooping bridge state, run `brctl showstp <bridge>`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl showstp br0
br0
bridge id          8000.7072cf8c272c
designated root    8000.7072cf8c272c
root port          0
cost               0
max age            20.00
age                20.00
hello time         2.00
time               2.00
forward delay      15.00
delay              15.00
ageing time        300.00
hello timer        0.00
timer              0.00
topology change timer 0.00
timer              263.70
hash elasticity    4096
max                4096
mc last member count 2
count              2
mc router          1
snooping           1
mc last member timer 1.00
timer              260.00
mc querier timer   255.00
interval           125.00
mc response interval 10.00
interval           31.25
mc querier          0
ifaddr             0
flags

swp1 (1)
port id            8001
forwarding
designated root    8000.7072cf8c272c
cost               2
designated bridge  8000.7072cf8c272c
timer              0.00
designated port    8001
timer              0.00
designated cost    0
timer              0.00
```

```

mc router          1           mc fast
leave             0
flags

swp2 (2)
port id          8002         state
forwarding
designated root  8000.7072cf8c272c path
cost              2
designated bridge 8000.7072cf8c272c message age
timer             0.00
designated port   8002         forward delay
timer             0.00
designated cost   0            hold
timer             0.00
mc router          1           mc fast
leave             0
flags

swp3 (3)
port id          8003         state
forwarding
designated root  8000.7072cf8c272c path
cost              2
designated bridge 8000.7072cf8c272c message age
timer             0.00
designated port   8003         forward delay
timer             8.98
designated cost   0            hold
timer             0.00
mc router          1           mc fast
leave             0
flags

```

To get the groups and bridge port state, use the `bridge mdb show` command. To display router ports and group information use the `bridge -d -s mdb show` command:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bridge -d -s mdb show
dev br0 port swp2 grp 234.10.10.10 temp 241.67
dev br0 port swp1 grp 238.39.20.86 permanent 0.00
dev br0 port swp1 grp 234.1.1.1 temp 235.43
dev br0 port swp2 grp ff1a::9 permanent 0.00
router ports on br0: swp3

```

## Configuration Files

- /etc/network/interfaces

## ***Man Pages***

- brctl(8)
- bridge(8)
- ifupdown-addons-interfaces(5)

## ***Useful Links***

- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge#Snooping](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge#Snooping)
- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4541](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4541)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IGMP\\_snooping](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IGMP_snooping)
- [tools.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2236.txt](http://tools.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2236.txt)
- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3376](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3376)
- [tools.ietf.org/search/rfc2710](http://tools.ietf.org/search/rfc2710)
- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3810](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3810)

# Layer 3 Features

## Routing

This chapter discusses routing on switches running Cumulus Linux.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 425)
- Static Routing via ip route (see page 425)
- Static Routing via Quagga (see page 427)
- Supported Route Table Entries (see page 429)
  - Forwarding Table Profiles (see page 430)
  - Number of Supported Route Entries, by Platform (see page 430)
- Configuration Files (see page 431)
- Useful Links (see page 431)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 431)
  - Don't Delete Routes via Linux Shell (see page 431)
  - Adding IPv6 Default Route with src Address on eth0 Fails without Adding Delay (see page 431)

### Commands

- ip route

### Static Routing via ip route

A static route can be persistently added by adding up `ip route add ..` into `/etc/network/interfaces`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
# This file describes the network interfaces available on your system
# and how to activate them. For more information, see interfaces(5).

# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

auto swp3
iface swp3
    address 198.51.100.1/24
    up ip route add 203.0.113.0/24 via 198.51.100.2
```

-  Notice the simpler configuration of swp3 due to `ifupdown2`. For more information, see [Configuring and Managing Network Interfaces \(see page 153\)](#).

 If an IPv6 address is assigned to a DOWN interface, the associated route is still installed into the routing table. The type of IPv6 address doesn't matter: link local, site local and global all exhibit the same problem.

If the interface is bounced up and down, then the routes are no longer in the route table.

The `ip route` command allows manipulating the kernel routing table directly from the Linux shell. See `man ip(8)` for details. `quagga` monitors the kernel routing table changes and updates its own routing table accordingly.

To display the routing table:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route show
default via 10.0.1.2 dev eth0
10.0.1.0/24 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 10.0.1.52
192.0.2.0/24 dev swp1 proto kernel scope link src 192.0.2.12
192.0.2.10/24 via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.20/24 proto zebra metric 20
    nexthop via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 weight 1
    nexthop via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 weight 1
192.0.2.30/24 via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.40/24 dev swp2 proto kernel scope link src 192.0.2.42
192.0.2.50/24 via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.60/24 via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.70/24 proto zebra metric 30
    nexthop via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 weight 1
    nexthop via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 weight 1
198.51.100.0/24 dev swp3 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.1
198.51.100.10/24 dev swp4 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.11
198.51.100.20/24 dev br0 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.21
```

Runtime configuration (Advanced)

-  A runtime configuration does not persist across reboots of the switch.

To add a static route:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip route add 203.0.113.0/24 via 198.51.100.2
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route
default via 10.0.1.2 dev eth0
10.0.1.0/24 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 10.0.1.52
192.0.2.0/24 dev swp1 proto kernel scope link src 192.0.2.12
192.0.2.10/24 via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 proto zebra metric 20
```

```

192.0.2.20/24 proto zebra metric 20
    nexthop via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 weight 1
    nexthop via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 weight 1
192.0.2.30/24 via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.40/24 dev swp2 proto kernel scope link src 192.0.2.42
192.0.2.50/24 via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.60/24 via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.70/24 proto zebra metric 30
    nexthop via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 weight 1
    nexthop via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 weight 1
198.51.100.0/24 dev swp3 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.1
198.51.100.10/24 dev swp4 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.11
198.51.100.20/24 dev br0 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.21
203.0.113.0/24 via 198.51.100.2 dev swp3

```

To delete a static route:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip route del 203.0.113.0/24
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route
default via 10.0.1.2 dev eth0
10.0.1.0/24 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 10.0.1.52
192.0.2.0/24 dev swp1 proto kernel scope link src 192.0.2.12
192.0.2.10/24 via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.20/24 proto zebra metric 20
    nexthop via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 weight 1
    nexthop via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 weight 1
192.0.2.30/24 via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.40/24 dev swp2 proto kernel scope link src 192.0.2.42
192.0.2.50/24 via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.60/24 via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.70/24 proto zebra metric 30
    nexthop via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 weight 1
    nexthop via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 weight 1
198.51.100.0/24 dev swp3 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.1
198.51.100.10/24 dev swp4 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.11
198.51.100.20/24 dev br0 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.21

```

## Static Routing via Quagga

You can also manage static routes via `vtysh`, the Quagga CLI. The routes are added to the `quagga` routing table, and then will be updated into the kernel routing table as well.

However, creating routes in this manner is non-persistent, so they do not remain after you reboot the switch. To save the running configuration so it persists between reboots, run `write mem` in the `vtysh` CLI:

```

switch# write mem
Configuration saved to /etc/quagga/zebra.conf
switch# end

```

To add a static route in Quagga (does not persist across reboot):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3.0).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

switch# conf t
switch(config)# ip route 203.0.113.0/24 198.51.100.2
switch(config)# end
switch# show ip route
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route

K>* 0.0.0.0/0 via 10.0.1.2, eth0
C>* 10.0.1.0/24 is directly connected, eth0
O 192.0.2.0/24 [110/10] is directly connected, swp1, 00:13:25
C>* 192.0.2.0/24 is directly connected, swp1
O>* 192.0.2.10/24 [110/20] via 192.0.2.1, swp1, 00:13:09
O>* 192.0.2.20/24 [110/20] via 192.0.2.1, swp1, 00:13:09
  *
    via 192.0.2.41, swp2, 00:13:09
O>* 192.0.2.30/24 [110/20] via 192.0.2.1, swp1, 00:13:09
O 192.0.2.40/24 [110/10] is directly connected, swp2, 00:13:25
C>* 192.0.2.40/24 is directly connected, swp2
O>* 192.0.2.50/24 [110/20] via 192.0.2.41, swp2, 00:13:09
O>* 192.0.2.60/24 [110/20] via 192.0.2.41, swp2, 00:13:09
O>* 192.0.2.70/24 [110/30] via 192.0.2.1, swp1, 00:13:09
  *
    via 192.0.2.41, swp2, 00:13:09
O 198.51.100.0/24 [110/10] is directly connected, swp3, 00:13:22
C>* 198.51.100.0/24 is directly connected, swp3
O 198.51.100.10/24 [110/10] is directly connected, swp4, 00:13:22
C>* 198.51.100.10/24 is directly connected, swp4
O 198.51.100.20/24 [110/10] is directly connected, br0, 00:13:22
C>* 198.51.100.20/24 is directly connected, br0
S>* 203.0.113.0/24 [1/0] via 198.51.100.2, swp3
C>* 127.0.0.0/8 is directly connected, lo
```

To delete a static route in Quagga (does not persist across reboot):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3.0).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

switch# conf t
switch(config)# no ip route 203.0.113.0/24 198.51.100.2
switch(config)# end
switch# show ip route
```

```

Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route

K>* 0.0.0.0/0 via 10.0.1.2, eth0
C>* 10.0.1.0/24 is directly connected, eth0
O 192.0.2.0/24 [110/10] is directly connected, swp1, 00:13:55
C>* 192.0.2.0/24 is directly connected, swp1
O>* 192.0.2.10/24 [110/20] via 11.0.0.1, swp1, 00:13:39
O>* 192.0.2.20/24 [110/20] via 11.0.0.1, swp1, 00:13:39
*           via 11.0.4.1, swp2, 00:13:39
O>* 192.0.2.30/24 [110/20] via 11.0.0.1, swp1, 00:13:39
O 192.0.2.40/24 [110/10] is directly connected, swp2, 00:13:55
C>* 192.0.2.40/24 is directly connected, swp2
O>* 192.0.2.50/24 [110/20] via 11.0.4.1, swp2, 00:13:39
O>* 192.0.2.60/24 [110/20] via 11.0.4.1, swp2, 00:13:39
O>* 192.0.2.70/24 [110/30] via 11.0.0.1, swp1, 00:13:39
*           via 11.0.4.1, swp2, 00:13:39
O 198.51.100.0/24 [110/10] is directly connected, swp3, 00:13:52
C>* 198.51.100.0/24 is directly connected, swp3
O 198.51.100.10/24 [110/10] is directly connected, swp4, 00:13:52
C>* 198.51.100.10/24 is directly connected, swp4
O 198.51.100.20/24 [110/10] is directly connected, br0, 00:13:52
C>* 198.51.100.20/24 is directly connected, br0
C>* 127.0.0.0/8 is directly connected, lo
switch#

```

## ***Supported Route Table Entries***

Cumulus Linux — via `switchd` — advertises the maximum number of route table entries that are supported on a given switch architecture, including:

- L3 IPv4 LPM (longest prefix match) entries, which have a mask that is less than /32
- L3 IPv6 LPM entries, which have a mask that is /64 or less
- L3 IPv6 LPM entries, which have a mask that is greater than /64
- L3 IPv4 neighbor (or host) entries, which are the next hops seen in `ip neighbor`
- L3 IPv6 neighbor entries, which are the next hops seen in `ip -6 neighbor`
- ECMP next hops, which are IP address entries in a router's routing table that specify the next closest /most optimal router in its routing path
- MAC addresses

In addition, switches on the Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II platforms are configured to manage route table entries using Algorithm Longest Prefix Match (ALPM). In ALPM mode, the hardware can store significantly more route entries.

You can use `cl-resource-query` (see page 563) to determine the current table sizes on a given switch.

## Forwarding Table Profiles

Mellanox Spectrum and some Broadcom ASICs provide the ability to configure the allocation of forwarding table resources and mechanisms. Cumulus Linux 3.1.0 provides a number of generalized profiles for the platforms described below. These profiles work only with layer 2 and layer 3 unicast forwarding.

Cumulus Linux defines these profiles as *default*, *l2-heavy*, *v4-lpm-heavy* and *v6-lpm-heavy*. Choose the profile that best suits your network architecture and specify the profile name for the `forwarding_table.profile` variable in the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf | grep
forwarding_table -B 4
# Manage shared forwarding table allocations
# Valid profiles -
# default, l2-heavy, v4-lpm-heavy, v6-lpm-heavy
#
forwarding_table.profile = default
```

After you specify a different profile, restart `switchd` (see page 141) for the change to take effect. You can see the forwarding table profile when you run `cl-resource-query`.



Broadcom chips other than Tomahawk and Trident II/Trident II+ support only the *default* profile.

## Number of Supported Route Entries, by Platform

The following tables list the number of MAC addresses, layer 3 neighbors and LPM routes validated for each forwarding table profile for the various supported platforms. If you are not specifying any profiles as described above, the *default* values are the ones that the switch will use.

### Mellanox Spectrum Switches

Profile	MAC Addresses	L3 Neighbors	Longest Prefix Match (LPM)
default	40k	32k (IPv4) and 8k (IPv6)	64k (IPv4) or 8k (IPv6-long)
l2-heavy	72k	32k (IPv4) and 24k (IPv6)	8k (IPv4) and 8k (IPv6-long)
v4-lpm-heavy	8k	8k (IPv4) and 8k (IPv6)	80k (IPv4) and 8k (IPv6-long)
v4-lpm-heavy-1	8k	8k (IPv4) and 2k (IPv6)	128k (IPv4) and 2k (IPv6-long)
v6-lpm-heavy	8k	8k (IPv4) and 8k (IPv6)	8k (IPv4) and 40k (IPv6-long)

## Broadcom Tomahawk Switches

Profile	MAC Addresses	L3 Neighbors	Longest Prefix Match (LPM)
default	40k	40k	64k (IPv4) or 8k (IPv6-long)
l2-heavy	72k	72k	8k (IPv4) or 2k (IPv6-long)
v4-lpm-heavy, v6-lpm-heavy	8k	8k	128k (IPv4) or 20k (IPv6-long)

## Broadcom Trident II/Trident II+ Switches

Profile	MAC Addresses	L3 Neighbors	Longest Prefix Match (LPM)
default	32k	16k	128k (IPv4) or 20k (IPv6-long)
l2-heavy	160k	96k	8k (IPv4) or 2k (IPv6-long)
v4-lpm-heavy, v6-lpm-heavy	32k	16k	128k (IPv4) or 20k (IPv6-long)

## Configuration Files

- /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
- /etc/network/interfaces
- /etc/quagga/zebra.conf

## Useful Links

- [linux-ip.net/html/tools-ip-route.html](http://linux-ip.net/html/tools-ip-route.html)
- [www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#Static-Route-Commands](http://www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#Static-Route-Commands)

## Caveats and Errata

### Don't Delete Routes via Linux Shell

Static routes added via Quagga can be deleted via Linux shell. This operation, while possible, should be avoided. Routes added by Quagga should only be deleted by Quagga, otherwise Quagga might not be able to clean up all its internal state completely and incorrect routing can occur as a result.

### Adding IPv6 Default Route with src Address on eth0 Fails without Adding Delay

Attempting to install an IPv6 default route on eth0 with a source address fails at reboot or when running ifup on eth0.

The first execution of `ifup -dv` returns this warning and does not install the route:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup -dv eth0
warning: eth0: post-up cmd '/sbin/ip route add default via 2001:620:5cal:160::1 /
src 2001:620:5cal:160::45 dev eth0' failed (RTNETLINK answers:
Invalid argument)<<<<<<
```

Running `ifup` a second time on `eth0` successfully installs the route.

There are two ways you can work around this issue.

- Add a sleep 2 to the `eth0` stanza in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
iface eth0 inet6 static
    address 2001:620:5cal:160::45/64
    post-up /bin/sleep 2s
    post-up /sbin/ip route add default via 2001:620:5cal:160::1
    src 2001:620:5cal:160::45 dev eth0
```

- Exclude the `src` parameter to the `ip route add` that causes the need for the delay. If the `src` parameter is removed, the route is added correctly.

```
iface eth0 inet6 static
    address 2001:620:5cal:160::45/64
    post-up /sbin/ip route add default via 2001:620:5cal:160::1
    dev eth0
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ifdown eth0
Stopping NTP server: ntpd.
Starting NTP server: ntpd.
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -6 r s
cumulus@switch:~$ ifup eth0
Stopping NTP server: ntpd.
Starting NTP server: ntpd.
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -6 r s
2001:620:5cal:160::/64 dev eth0 proto kernel metric 256
fe80::/64 dev eth0 proto kernel metric 256
default via 2001:620:5cal:160::1 dev eth0 metric 1024
```

## Introduction to Routing Protocols

This chapter discusses the various routing protocols, and how to configure them.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Defining Routing Protocols (see page 433)
- Configuring Routing Protocols (see page 433)
- Protocol Tuning (see page 433)
- Configuration Files (see page 434)

## Defining Routing Protocols

A *routing protocol* dynamically computes reachability between various end points. This enables communication to work around link and node failures, and additions and withdrawals of various addresses.

*IP routing protocols* are typically distributed; that is, an instance of the routing protocol runs on each of the routers in a network.



Cumulus Linux does **not** support running multiple instances of the same protocol on a router.

*Distributed routing protocols* compute reachability between end points by disseminating relevant information and running a routing algorithm on this information to determine the routes to each end station. To scale the amount of information that needs to be exchanged, routes are computed on address prefixes rather than on every end point address.

## Configuring Routing Protocols

A routing protocol needs to know three pieces of information, at a minimum:

- Who am I (my identity)
- To whom to disseminate information
- What to disseminate

Most routing protocols use the concept of a router ID to identify a node. Different routing protocols answer the last two questions differently.

The way they answer these questions affects the network design and thereby configuration. For example, in a link-state protocol such as OSPF (see [Open Shortest Path First \(OSPF\) Protocol \(see page 451\)](#)) or IS-IS, complete local information (links and attached address prefixes) about a node is disseminated to every other node in the network. Since the state that a node has to keep grows rapidly in such a case, link-state protocols typically limit the number of nodes that communicate this way. They allow for bigger networks to be built by breaking up a network into a set of smaller subnetworks (which are called areas or levels), and by advertising summarized information about an area to other areas.

Besides the two critical pieces of information mentioned above, protocols have other parameters that can be configured. These are usually specific to each protocol.

## Protocol Tuning

Most protocols provide certain tunable parameters that are specific to convergence during changes.

Wikipedia defines **convergence** as the “state of a set of routers that have the same topological information about the network in which they operate”. It is imperative that the routers in a network have the same topological state for the proper functioning of a network. Without this, traffic can be blackholed, and thus not reach its destination. It is normal for different routers to have differing topological states during

changes, but this difference should vanish as the routers exchange information about the change and recompute the forwarding paths. Different protocols converge at different speeds in the presence of changes.

A key factor that governs how quickly a routing protocol converges is the time it takes to detect the change. For example, how quickly can a routing protocol be expected to act when there is a link failure. Routing protocols classify changes into two kinds: hard changes such as link failures, and soft changes such as a peer dying silently. They're classified differently because protocols provide different mechanisms for dealing with these failures.

It is important to configure the protocols to be notified immediately on link changes. This is also true when a node goes down, causing all of its links to go down.

Even if a link doesn't fail, a routing peer can crash. This causes that router to usually delete the routes it has computed or worse, it makes that router impervious to changes in the network, causing it to go out of sync with the other routers in the network because it no longer shares the same topological information as its peers.

The most common way to detect a protocol peer dying is to detect the absence of a heartbeat. All routing protocols send a heartbeat (or "hello") packet periodically. When a node does not see a consecutive set of these hello packets from a peer, it declares its peer dead and informs other routers in the network about this. The period of each heartbeat and the number of heartbeats that need to be missed before a peer is declared dead are two popular configurable parameters.

If you configure these timers very low, the network can quickly descend into instability under stressful conditions when a router is not able to keep sending the heartbeats quickly as it is busy computing routing state; or the traffic is so much that the hellos get lost. Alternately, configuring this timer to very high values also causes blackholing of communication because it takes much longer to detect peer failures. Usually, the default values initialized within each protocol are good enough for most networks. Cumulus Networks recommends you do not adjust these settings.

## Configuration Files

- /etc/quagga/daemons

## Network Topology

In computer networks, *topology* refers to the structure of interconnecting various nodes. Some commonly used topologies in networks are star, hub and spoke, leaf and spine, and broadcast.

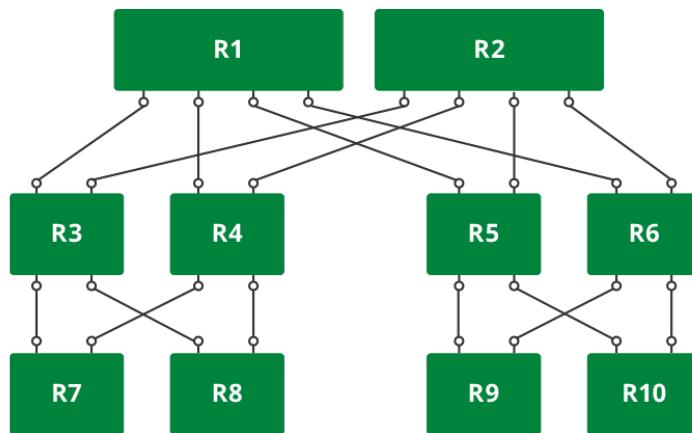
## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Clos Topologies (see page 434)
- Over-Subscribed and Non-Blocking Configurations (see page 435)
- Containing the Failure Domain (see page 435)
- Load Balancing (see page 436)

## Clos Topologies

In the vast majority of modern data centers, **Clos or fat tree topology** is very popular. This topology is shown in the figure below. It is also commonly referred to as leaf-spine topology. We shall use this topology throughout the routing protocol guide.



This topology allows the building of networks of varying size using nodes of different port counts and/or by increasing the tiers. The picture above is a three-tiered Clos network. We number the tiers from the bottom to the top. Thus, in the picture, the lowermost layer is called tier 1 and the topmost tier is called tier 3.

The number of end stations (such as servers) that can be attached to such a network is determined by a very simple mathematical formula.

In a 2-tier network, if each node is made up of  $m$  ports, then the total number of end stations that can be connected is  $m^2/2$ . In more general terms, if tier-1 nodes are  $m$ -port nodes and tier-2 nodes are  $n$ -port nodes, then the total number of end stations that can be connected are  $(m*n)/2$ . In a three tier network, where tier-3 nodes are  $o$ -port nodes, the total number of end stations that can be connected are  $(m*n*o)/2^{(\text{number of tiers}-1)}$ .

Let's consider some practical examples. In many data centers, it is typical to connect 40 servers to a top-of-rack (ToR) switch. The ToRs are all connected via a set of spine switches. If a ToR switch has 64 ports, then after hooking up 40 ports to the servers, the remaining 24 ports can be hooked up to 24 spine switches of the same link speed or to a smaller number of higher link speed switches. For example, if the servers are all hooked up as 10GE links, then the ToRs can connect to the spine switches via 40G links. So, instead of connecting to 24 spine switches with 10G links, the ToRs can connect to 6 spine switches with each link being 40G. If the spine switches are also 64-port switches, then the total number of end stations that can be connected is 2560 ( $40*64$ ) stations.

In a three tier network of 64-port switches, the total number of servers that can be connected are  $(40*64*64)/2 = 81920$ . As you can see, this kind of topology can serve quite a large network with three tiers.

## ***Over-Subscribed and Non-Blocking Configurations***

In the above example, the network is *over-subscribed*; that is, 400G of bandwidth from end stations (40 servers \* 10GE links) is serviced by only 240G of inter-rack bandwidth. The over-subscription ratio is 0.6 ( $240/400$ ).

This can lead to congestion in the network and hot spots. Instead, if network operators connected 32 servers per rack, then 32 ports are left to be connected to spine switches. Now, the network is said to be *rearrangeably non-blocking*. Now any server in a rack can talk to any other server in any other rack without necessarily blocking traffic between other servers.

In such a network, the total number of servers that can be connected are  $(64*64)/2 = 2048$ . Similarly, a three-tier version of the same can serve up to  $(64*64*64)/4 = 65536$  servers.

## ***Containing the Failure Domain***

Traditional data centers were built using just two spine switches. This means that if one of those switches fails, the network bandwidth is cut in half, thereby greatly increasing network congestion and adversely affecting many applications. To avoid this, vendors typically try and make the spine switches resilient to

failures by providing such features as dual control line cards and attempting to make the software highly available. However, as Douglas Adams famously noted, ">>>". In many cases, HA is among the top two or three causes of software failure (and thereby switch failure).

To support a fairly large network with just two spine switches also means that these switches have a large port count. This can make the switches quite expensive.

If the number of spine switches were to be merely doubled, the effect of a single switch failure is halved. With 8 spine switches, the effect of a single switch failure only causes a 12% reduction in available bandwidth.

So, in modern data centers, people build networks with anywhere from 4 to 32 spine switches.

## **Load Balancing**

In a Clos network, traffic is load balanced across the multiple links using equal cost multi-pathing (ECMP).

Routing algorithms compute shortest paths between two end stations where shortest is typically the lowest path cost. Each link is assigned a metric or cost. By default, a link's cost is a function of the link speed. The higher the link speed, the lower its cost. A 10G link has a higher cost than a 40G or 100G link, but a lower cost than a 1G link. Thus, the link cost is a measure of its traffic carrying capacity.

In the modern data center, the links between tiers of the network are homogeneous; that is, they have the same characteristics (same speed and therefore link cost) as the other links. As a result, the first hop router can pick any of the spine switches to forward a packet to its destination (assuming that there is no link failure between the spine and the destination switch). Most routing protocols recognize that there are multiple equal-cost paths to a destination and enable any of them to be selected for a given traffic flow.

## **Quagga Overview**

Cumulus Linux uses Cumulus Quagga, a fork of the open source routing software suite, to provide the routing protocols for dynamic routing. Cumulus Quagga runs the latest Quagga version, 0.99.23.1+cl3u2. Quagga is a fork of the [GNU Zebra](#) project.

Quagga provides many routing protocols, of which Cumulus Linux supports the following:

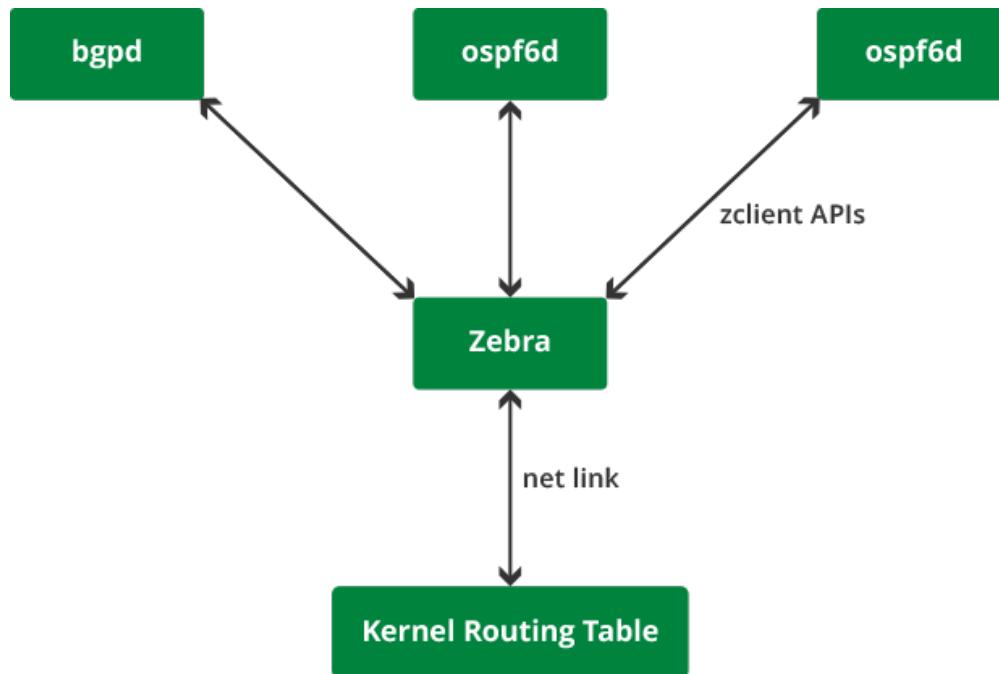
- Open Shortest Path First ([v2 \(see page 451\)](#) and [v3 \(see page 466\)](#))
- Border Gateway Protocol ([see page 469](#))

## **Contents**

This chapter covers ...

- [Architecture \(see page 437\)](#)
- [Zebra \(see page 437\)](#)
- [Configuration Files \(see page 437\)](#)
- [Useful Links \(see page 437\)](#)

## Architecture



As shown in the figure above, the Quagga routing suite consists of various protocol-specific daemons and a protocol-independent daemon called **zebra**. Each of the protocol-specific daemons are responsible for running the relevant protocol and building the routing table based on the information exchanged.

It is not uncommon to have more than one protocol daemon running at the same time. For example, at the edge of an enterprise, protocols internal to an enterprise (called IGP for Interior Gateway Protocol) such as [OSPF \(see page 451\)](#) or RIP run alongside the protocols that connect an enterprise to the rest of the world (called EGP or Exterior Gateway Protocol) such as [BGP \(see page 469\)](#).

**zebra** is the daemon that resolves the routes provided by multiple protocols (including static routes specified by the user) and programs these routes in the Linux kernel via **netlink** (in Linux). **zebra** does more than this, of course.

## Zebra

The [Quagga documentation](#) defines **zebra** as the IP routing manager for **quagga** that "provides kernel routing table updates, interface lookups, and redistribution of routes between different routing protocols."

## Configuration Files

- /etc/quagga/bgpd.conf
- /etc/quagga/debian.conf
- /etc/quagga/ospf6d.conf
- /etc/quagga/ospfd.conf
- /etc/quagga/vtysh.conf
- /etc/quagga/zebra.conf

## Useful Links

- [www.quagga.net/](http://www.quagga.net/)
- [packages.debian.org/quagga](http://packages.debian.org/quagga)

## Configuring Quagga

This section provides an overview of configuring Cumulus Quagga, the Cumulus Networks-enhanced version of the Quagga routing software package that provides a suite of routing protocols so you can configure routing on your switch.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuration Files (see page 438)
- Configuring Cumulus Quagga (see page 439)
  - Enabling and Starting Cumulus Quagga (see page 439)
  - Understanding Integrated Configurations (see page 440)
  - Restoring the Default Configuration (see page 441)
- Interface IP Addresses and VRFs (see page 441)
- Using the vtysh Modal CLI (see page 441)
- Using the Cumulus Linux Non-Modal CLI (see page 446)
- Reloading the Quagga Configuration (see page 446)
  - Debugging (see page 447)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 447)
  - Configuring route-reflector-client Requires Specific Order (see page 447)
- Useful Links (see page 448)

## Configuration Files

At startup, Quagga reads a set of files to determine the startup configuration. The files and what they contain are specified below:

File	Description
Quagga.conf	The default, integrated, single configuration file for all <code>quagga</code> daemons.
daemons	Contains the list of <code>quagga</code> daemons that must be started.
zebra.conf	Configuration file for the <code>zebra</code> daemon.
ospfd.conf	Configuration file for the OSPFv2 daemon.
ospf6d.conf	Configuration file for the OSPFv3 daemon.

File	Description
bgpd.conf	Configuration file for the BGP daemon.
ripd.conf	Configuration file for the RIP daemon. Cumulus Networks has not tested RIP.
ripngd.conf	Configuration file for the IPv6 RIP daemon. Cumulus Networks has not tested RIPv6.
isisd.conf	Configuration file for the IS-IS daemon. Cumulus Networks has not tested IS-IS.



The individual configuration files are not present unless you disable `integrated-vtysh-config`; [see below \(see page 440\)](#) for details.

## Configuring Cumulus Quagga

Cumulus Quagga does not start by default in Cumulus Linux. Before you run Cumulus Quagga, make sure all you have enabled relevant daemons that you intend to use — `zebra`, `bgpd`, `ospfd`, `ospf6d`, `ripd`, `ripngd`, `isisd` — in the `/etc/quagga/daemons` file.

The `zebra` daemon must always be enabled. The others you can enable according to how you plan to route your network — using [BGP \(see page 469\)](#) for example, instead of [OSPF \(see page 451\)](#).

Before you start Cumulus Quagga, you need to enable the corresponding daemons. Edit the `/etc/quagga/daemons` file and set to yes each daemon you are enabling.

```
zebra=yes (* this one is mandatory to bring the others up)
bgpd=yes
ospfd=no
ospf6d=no
ripd=no
ripngd=no
isisd=no
babeld=no
```

## Enabling and Starting Cumulus Quagga

Once you enable the appropriate daemons, then you need to enable and start the Cumulus Quagga service.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable quagga.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start quagga.service
```



All the routing protocol daemons (`bgpd`, `ospfd`, `ospf6d`, `ripd`, `ripngd` and `isisd`) are dependent on `zebra`. When you start `quagga`, `systemd` determines whether `zebra` is running; if `zebra` is not running, it starts `zebra`, then starts the dependent service, such as `bgpd`.

In general, if you restart a service, its dependent services also get restarted. For example, running `systemctl restart quagga.service` restarts any of the routing protocol daemons that are enabled and running.

For more information on the `systemctl` command and changing the state of daemons, read [Managing Application Daemons \(see page 134\)](#).

## ***Understanding Integrated Configurations***

By default in Cumulus Linux, Quagga saves the configuration of all daemons in a single integrated configuration file, `Quagga.conf`.

You can disable this mode by running:

```
switch(config)# no service integrated-vtysh-config
```

To enable the integrated configuration file mode again, run:

```
switch(config)# service integrated-vtysh-config
```

If you disable the integrated configuration mode, Quagga saves each daemon-specific configuration file in a separate file. At a minimum for a daemon to start, that daemon must be enabled and its daemon-specific configuration file must be present, even if that file is empty.

You can save the current configuration by running:

```
switch# write mem
Building Configuration...
Integrated configuration saved to /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf
[OK]
```



You can use `write file` instead of `write mem`.

When the integrated configuration mode disabled, the output looks like this:

```
switch# write mem
Building Configuration...
Configuration saved to /etc/quagga/zebra.conf
Configuration saved to /etc/quagga/bgpd.conf
[OK]
```

## Restoring the Default Configuration

If you need to restore the Quagga configuration to the default running configuration, you need to delete the `Quagga.conf` file and restart the `quagga` service. You should back up `Quagga.conf` (or any configuration files you may remove, see the note below) before proceeding.

1. Confirm service `integrated-vtysh-config` is enabled:

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo cl-rctl running-config |grep integrated  
service integrated-vtysh-config
```

2. Remove `/etc/quagga/Quagga.conf`:

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo rm /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf
```

3. Restart Quagga:

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo systemctl restart quagga.service
```



If for some reason `service integrated-vtysh-config` is not configured, then you should remove all the configuration files (such as `zebra.conf` or `ospf6d.conf`) instead of `Quagga.conf` in step 2 above.

## Interface IP Addresses and VRFs

Quagga inherits the IP addresses and any associated routing tables for the network interfaces from the `/etc/network/interfaces` file. This is the recommended way to define the addresses; do **not** create interfaces using Quagga. For more information, see [Configuring IP Addresses \(see page 157\)](#) and [Virtual Routing and Forwarding - VRF \(see page 525\)](#).

## Using the vtysh Modal CLI

Quagga provides a CLI – `vtysh` – for configuring and displaying the state of the protocols. It is invoked by running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh  
  
Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).  
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.  
  
switch#
```

vtysh provides a Cisco-like modal CLI, and many of the commands are similar to Cisco IOS commands. By modal CLI, we mean that there are different modes to the CLI, and certain commands are only available within a specific mode. Configuration is available with the `configure terminal` command, which is invoked thus:

```
switch# configure terminal  
switch(config)#
```

The prompt displays the mode the CLI is in. For example, when the interface-specific commands are invoked, the prompt changes to:

```
switch(config)# interface swp1  
switch(config-if)#
```

When the routing protocol specific commands are invoked, the prompt changes to:

```
switch(config)# router ospf  
switch(config-router)#
```

At any level, "?" displays the list of available top-level commands at that level:

```
switch(config-if)# ?  
bandwidth      Set bandwidth informational parameter  
description    Interface specific description  
end           End current mode and change to enable mode  
exit          Exit current mode and down to previous mode  
ip            IP Information  
ipv6          IPv6 Information  
isis          IS-IS commands  
link-detect   Enable link detection on interface  
list          Print command list  
mpls-te       MPLS-TE specific commands  
multicast     Set multicast flag to interface  
no            Negate a command or set its defaults  
ptm-enable    Enable neighbor check with specified topology  
quit          Exit current mode and down to previous mode  
shutdown      Shutdown the selected interface
```

?-based completion is also available to see the parameters that a command takes:

```
switch(config-if)# bandwidth ?  
<1-10000000> Bandwidth in kilobits  
switch(config-if)# ip ?  
address      Set the IP address of an interface  
irdp        Alter ICMP Router discovery preference this interface
```

ospf	OSPF <b>interface</b> commands
rip	Routing Information Protocol
router	IP router <b>interface</b> commands

Displaying state can be done at any level, including the top level. For example, to see the routing table as seen by `zebra`, you use:

```
switch# show ip route
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, T - Table,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
B>* 0.0.0.0/0 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:11:57
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:11:57
B>* 10.0.0.1/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:11:57
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:11:57
B>* 10.0.0.11/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:11:57
B>* 10.0.0.12/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:11:58
B>* 10.0.0.13/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:11:59
B>* 10.0.0.14/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:11:59
C>* 10.0.0.21/32 is directly connected, lo
B>* 10.0.0.51/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:11:57
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:11:57
B>* 172.16.1.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:11:57
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:11:57
B>* 172.16.3.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:11:59
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:11:59
```

To run the same command at a config level, you prepend `do` to it:

```
switch(config-router)# do show ip route
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, T - Table,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
B>* 0.0.0.0/0 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:05:17
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:05:17
B>* 10.0.0.1/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:05:17
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:05:17
B>* 10.0.0.11/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:05:17
B>* 10.0.0.12/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:05:18
B>* 10.0.0.13/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:05:18
B>* 10.0.0.14/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:05:18
C>* 10.0.0.21/32 is directly connected, lo
B>* 10.0.0.51/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:05:17
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:05:17
B>* 172.16.1.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:05:17
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:05:17
B>* 172.16.3.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:05:18
  *
    via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:05:18
```

Running single commands with `vtysh` is possible using the `-c` option of `vtysh`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh -c 'sh ip route'
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route

K>* 0.0.0.0/0 via 192.168.0.2, eth0
C>* 192.0.2.11/24 is directly connected, swp1
C>* 192.0.2.12/24 is directly connected, swp2
B>* 203.0.113.30/24 [200/0] via 192.0.2.2, swp1, 11:05:10
B>* 203.0.113.31/24 [200/0] via 192.0.2.2, swp1, 11:05:10
B>* 203.0.113.32/24 [200/0] via 192.0.2.2, swp1, 11:05:10
C>* 127.0.0.0/8 is directly connected, lo
C>* 192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, eth0
```

Running a command multiple levels down is done thus:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh -c 'configure terminal' -c 'router ospf'
-c 'area 0.0.0.1 range 10.10.10.0/24'
```

Notice that the commands also take a partial command name (for example, `sh ip route` above) as long as the partial command name is not aliased:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh -c 'sh ip r'
% Ambiguous command.
```

A command or feature can be disabled by prepending the command with `no`. For example:

```
switch(config-router)# no area 0.0.0.1 range 10.10.10.0/24
```

The current state of the configuration can be viewed using the `show running-config` command:

```
switch# show running-config
Building configuration...

Current configuration:
!
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!
vrf mgmt
!
interface lo
```

```

link-detect
!
interface swp1
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  link-detect
!
interface swp2
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  link-detect
!
interface swp3
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  link-detect
!
interface swp4
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  link-detect
!
interface swp29
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  link-detect
!
interface swp30
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  link-detect
!
interface swp31
  link-detect
!
interface swp32
  link-detect
!
interface vagrant
  link-detect
!
interface eth0 vrf mgmt
  ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  link-detect
!
interface mgmt vrf mgmt
  link-detect
!
router bgp 65020
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
  bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
  bgp bestpath compare-routerid
  neighbor fabric peer-group
  neighbor fabric remote-as external
  neighbor fabric description Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor fabric capability extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp1 interface peer-group fabric
  neighbor swp2 interface peer-group fabric

```

```

neighbor swp3 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp4 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp29 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp30 interface peer-group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.21/32
  neighbor fabric activate
  neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-spine in
  neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-spine out
exit-address-family
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10 permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 30 permit 172.16.1.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 40 permit 172.16.2.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 50 permit 172.16.3.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 60 permit 172.16.4.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 500 deny any
!
ip forwarding
ipv6 forwarding
!
line vty
!
end

```



If you attempt to configure a routing protocol that has not been started, `vtysh` silently ignores those commands.

## Using the Cumulus Linux Non-Modal CLI

Alternately, if you do not want to use a modal CLI to configure Quagga, you can use a suite of Cumulus Linux-specific commands (see page 448) instead.

### Reloading the Quagga Configuration

If you make a change to your routing configuration, you need to reload Quagga so your changes take place. *Quagga reload* enables you to apply only the modifications you make to your Quagga configuration, synchronizing its running state with the configuration in `/etc/quagga/Quagga.conf`. This is useful for optimizing automation of Quagga in your environment or to apply changes made at runtime.



Quagga reload only applies to an integrated service configuration, where your Quagga configuration is stored in a single `Quagga.conf` file instead of one configuration file per Quagga daemon (like `zebra` or `bgpd`).

To reload your Quagga configuration after you've modified `/etc/quagga/Quagga.conf`, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl reload quagga.service
```

Examine the running configuration and verify that it matches the config in /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-rctl running-config
```

## Debugging

If the running configuration is not what you expected, please [submit a support request](#) and supply the following information:

- The current running configuration (run `sudo cl-rctl running-config` and output the contents to a file)
- The contents of `/etc/quagga/Quagga.conf`
- The contents of `/var/log/quagga/quagga-reload.log`

## Caveats and Errata

### Configuring route-reflector-client Requires Specific Order

When configuring a route to be a route reflector client, the Quagga configuration must be specified in a specific order; otherwise, the router will not be a route reflector client.

The `neighbor <IPv4/IPv6> route-reflector-client` command must be done after the `neighbor <IPv4/IPv6> activate` command; otherwise, the `route-reflector-client` command is ignored. For example:

```
address-family ipv4 unicast
neighbor 14.0.0.9 activate
neighbor 14.0.0.9 next-hop-self
neighbor 14.0.0.9 route-reflector-client >>> Must be after activate
exit-address-family
neighbor 2001:ded:beef:2::1 remote-as 65000
address-family ipv6 unicast
redistribute connected
maximum-paths 4
maximum-paths ibgp 4
neighbor 2001:ded:beef:2::1 activate
neighbor 2001:ded:beef:2::1 next-hop-self
neighbor 2001:ded:beef:2::1 route-reflector-client >>> Must be after
activate
exit-address-family
Runtime status after change:
```

## Useful Links

- [www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#BGP](http://www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#BGP)
- [www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#IPv6-Support](http://www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#IPv6-Support)
- [www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#Zebra](http://www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#Zebra)

## Cumulus Linux Quagga Commands

Using the `vtysh` modal CLI is the primary way to [configure Quagga](#) (see page 438) in Cumulus Linux. However, an alternative exists in the form of a non-modal CLI containing a suite of Cumulus Linux-specific commands, structured similar to the Linux `ip` command. The available commands are as follows:

Command	Description
cl-bgp	BGP (see page 469) commands. See <code>man cl-bgp</code> for details.
cl-ospf	OSPFv2 (see page 451) commands. For example: <code>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo cl-ospf area 0.0.0.1 range 10.10.10.0/24</code>
cl-ospf6	OSPFv3 (see page 466) commands.
cl-ra	Route advertisement commands. See <code>man cl-ra</code> for details.
cl-rctl	Zebra and non-routing protocol-specific commands. See <code>man cl-rctl</code> for details.

## Comparing vtysh and Cumulus Linux Commands

The following table compares the various Quagga commands with their Cumulus Linux CLI counterparts.

Action	Quagga Commands	Cumulus Linux Commands
Display the routing table	<code>switch# show ip route</code>	<code>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo cl-rctl route</code>
Create a new neighbor	<code>switch(config)# router bgp 65002</code>	<code>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo cl-bgp as 65002 neighbor add 14.0.0.22</code>

Action	Quagga Commands	Cumulus Linux Commands
	<pre>switch(config-router)# neighbor 14.0.0.22</pre>	
Redistribute routing information from static route entries into RIP tables	<pre>switch(config) # router bgp 6 5002 switch(config-router)# redistribute static</pre>	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-bgp as 65002 redistribute add static</pre>
Define a static route	<pre>switch(config) # ip route 155.1.2.20/24 br2 45</pre> <p><b>!</b> If you intend to use static routes, you only need to enable the zebra daemon.</p>	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-rctl ip route add 175.0.0.0/28 interface br1 distance 25</pre>
Configure an IPv6 address	<pre>switch(config) # int br3 switch(config-if)# ipv6 address 3002:2123:1234:1abc::21/64</pre>	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-rctl interface add swp3 ipv6 address 3002:2123:abcd:2120::41/64</pre>
Enable topology checking ( <a href="#">PTM (see page 229)</a> )	<pre>switch(config) # ptm-enable</pre>	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-rctl ptm-enable set</pre>
Configure <a href="#">MTU (see page 171)</a> in IPv6 network discovery for an interface		

Action	Quagga Commands	Cumulus Linux Commands
	<pre>switch(config) # int swp3 switch(config-if)# ipv6 nd mtu 9000</pre>	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-ra interface swp3 set mtu 9000</pre>
Set the OSPF interface priority	<pre>switch(config) # int swp3 switch(config-if)# ip ospf priority 120</pre>	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-ospf interface set swp3 priority 120</pre>
Configure timing for OSPF SPF calculations	<pre>switch(config) # router ospf6 switch(config-ospf6)# timer throttle spf 4 0 50 60</pre>	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-ospf6 timer add throttle spf 40 5 0 60</pre>
Configure the OSPF Hello packet interval in number of seconds for an interface	<pre>switch(config) # int swp4 switch(config-if)# ipv6 ospf6 hello- interval 60</pre>	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-ospf6 interface set swp4 hello- interval 60</pre>
Display OSPF debugging status	<pre>switch# show debugging ospf</pre>	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-ospf debug show</pre>
Display BGP (see page 469) information	<pre>switch# show ip bgp summary</pre>	

Action	Quagga Commands	Cumulus Linux Commands
		<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-bgp summary</pre>

## Open Shortest Path First - OSPF - Protocol

OSPFv2 is a [link-state routing protocol](#) for IPv4. OSPF maintains the view of the network topology conceptually as a directed graph. Each router represents a vertex in the graph. Each link between neighboring routers represents a unidirectional edge. Each link has an associated weight (called cost) that is either automatically derived from its bandwidth or administratively assigned. Using the weighted topology graph, each router computes a shortest path tree (SPT) with itself as the root, and applies the results to build its forwarding table. The computation is generally referred to as *SPF computation* and the resultant tree as the *SPF tree*.

An LSA (*link-state advertisement*) is the fundamental quantum of information that OSPF routers exchange with each other. It seeds the graph building process on the node and triggers SPF computation. LSAs originated by a node are distributed to all the other nodes in the network through a mechanism called *flooding*. Flooding is done hop-by-hop. OSPF ensures reliability by using link state acknowledgement packets. The set of LSAs in a router's memory is termed *link-state database* (LSDB), a representation of the network graph. Thus, OSPF ensures a consistent view of LSDB on each node in the network in a distributed fashion (eventual consistency model); this is key to the protocol's correctness.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Scalability and Areas (see page 452)
- Configuring OSPFv2 (see page 452)
  - Enabling the OSPF and Zebra Daemons (see page 453)
  - Configuring OSPF (see page 453)
  - Defining (Custom) OSPF Parameters on the Interfaces (see page 455)
  - OSP SPF Timer Defaults (see page 455)
  - Configure MD5 Authentication for OSPF Neighbors (see page 455)
- Scaling Tips (see page 456)
  - Summarization (see page 456)
  - Stub Areas (see page 457)
  - Running Multiple ospfd Instances (see page 458)
- Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 462)
- ECMP (see page 463)
- Topology Changes and OSPF Reconvergence (see page 463)
  - Example Configurations (see page 464)
- Debugging OSPF (see page 464)

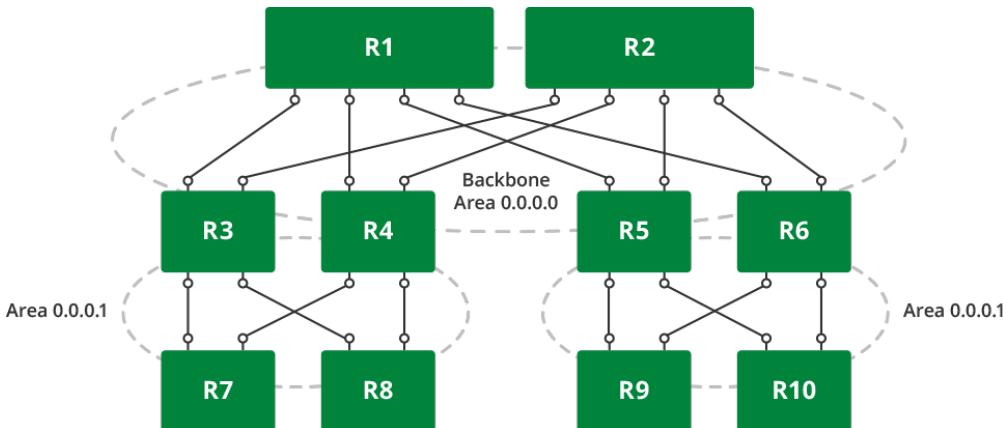
- Configuration Files (see page 466)
- Supported RFCs (see page 466)
- Useful Links (see page 466)

## Scalability and Areas

An increase in the number of nodes affects OSPF scalability in the following ways:

- Memory footprint to hold the entire network topology,
- Flooding performance,
- SPF computation efficiency.

The OSPF protocol advocates hierarchy as a *divide and conquer* approach to achieve high scale. The topology may be divided into areas, resulting in a two-level hierarchy. Area 0 (or 0.0.0.0), called the backbone area, is the top level of the hierarchy. Packets traveling from one non-zero area to another must go via the backbone area. As an example, the leaf-spine topology we have been referring to in the routing section can be divided into areas as follows:



Here are some points to note about areas and OSPF behavior:

- Routers that have links to multiple areas are called *area border routers* (ABR). For example, routers R3, R4, R5, R6 are ABRs in the diagram. An ABR performs a set of specialized tasks, such as SPF computation per area and summarization of routes across areas.
- Most of the LSAs have an area-level flooding scope. These include router LSA, network LSA, and summary LSA.



In the diagram, we reused the same non-zero area address. This is fine since the area address is only a scoping parameter provided to all routers within that area. It has no meaning outside the area. Thus, in the cases where ABRs do not connect to multiple non-zero areas, the same area address can be used, thus reducing the operational headache of coming up with area addresses.

## Configuring OSPFv2

Configuring OSPF involves the following tasks:

- Enabling the OSPF daemon
- Enabling OSPF
- Defining (Custom) OSPF parameters on the interfaces

## **Enabling the OSPF and Zebra Daemons**

To enable OSPF, enable the `zebra` and `ospf` daemons, as described in [Configuring Quagga](#) (see page 438), then start the Quagga service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable quagga.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start quagga.service
```

## **Configuring OSPF**

As we discussed in [Introduction to Routing Protocols](#) (see page 432), there are three steps to the configuration:

1. Identifying the router with the router ID.
2. With whom should the router communicate?
3. What information (most notably the prefix reachability) to advertise?

There are two ways to achieve (2) and (3) in the Quagga OSPF:

1. The `network` statement under `router ospf` does both. The statement is specified with an IP subnet prefix and an area address. All the interfaces on the router whose IP address matches the `network` subnet are put into the specified area. OSPF process starts bringing up peering adjacency on those interfaces. It also advertises the interface IP addresses formatted into LSAs (of various types) to the neighbors for proper reachability.

From the `vtysh` shell:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3.0).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

R3# configure terminal
R3(config)# router ospf
R3(config-router)# router-id 0.0.0.1
R3(config-router)# network 10.0.0.0/16 area 0.0.0.0
R3(config-router)# network 192.0.2.0/16 area 0.0.0.1
R3(config-router)#
```

Or through `cl-ospf`, from the Cumulus Linux shell:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf router set id 0.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf router set network 10.0.0.0/16
area 0.0.0.0
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf router set network 192.0.2.0/16
area 0.0.0.1
```

The subnets in the `network` subnet can be as coarse as possible to cover the most number of interfaces on the router that should run OSPF.

There may be interfaces where it's undesirable to bring up OSPF adjacency. For example, in a data center topology, the host-facing interfaces need not run OSPF; however the corresponding IP addresses should still be advertised to neighbors. This can be achieved using the `passive-interface` construct.

From the `vytsh/quagga` CLI:

```
R3# configure terminal
R3(config)# router ospf
R3(config-router)# passive-interface swp10
R3(config-router)# passive-interface swp11
```

Or use the `passive-interface default` command to put all interfaces as passive and selectively remove certain interfaces to bring up protocol adjacency:

```
R3# configure terminal
R3(config)# router ospf
R3(config-router)# passive-interface default
R3(config-router)# no passive-interface swp1
```

2. Explicitly enable OSPF for each interface by configuring it under the interface configuration mode:

```
R3# configure terminal
R3(config)# interface swp1
R3(config-if)# ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
```

If OSPF adjacency bringup is not desired, you should configure the corresponding interfaces as passive as explained above.

This model of configuration is required for unnumbered interfaces as discussed later in this guide.

For achieving step (3) alone, the `quagga` configuration provides another method: *redistribution*. For example:

```
R3# configure terminal
R3(config)# router ospf
R3(config-router)# redistribute connected
```

Redistribution, however, unnecessarily loads the database with type-5 LSAs and should be limited to generating real external prefixes (for example, prefixes learned from BGP). In general, it is a good practice to generate local prefixes using `network` and/or `passive-interface` statements.



The OSPF setting `log-adjacency-changes` is enabled by default. It logs a single message when a peer transitions to/from FULL state.

## Defining (Custom) OSPF Parameters on the Interfaces

1. Network type, such as point-to-point, broadcast.
2. Timer tuning, like hello interval.
3. For unnumbered interfaces (see below), enable OSPF.

Using Quagga's vtysh:

```
R3(config)# interface swp1
R3(config-if)# ospf network point-to-point
R3(config-if)# ospf hello-interval 5
```

Or through cl-ospf, from the Cumulus Linux shell:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf interface swp1 set network point-to-
point
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf interface swp1 set hello-interval 5
```

The OSPF configuration is saved in /etc/quagga/ospfd.conf.

## OSPF SPF Timer Defaults

OSPF uses the following three timers as an exponential backoff, to prevent consecutive SPFs from hammering the CPU:

- 0 ms from initial event until SPF runs
- 50 ms between consecutive SPF runs (the number doubles with each SPF, until it reaches the value of C)
- 5000 ms maximum between SPFs

## Configure MD5 Authentication for OSPF Neighbors

Simple text passwords have largely been deprecated in Quagga, in favor of MD5 hash authentication; the following section covers the setup configuration for MD5 authentication on Cumulus Linux switches:

1. Enter the Quagga CLI on the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
```

2. Change into the CLI's configuration mode:

```
switch# configure terminal
```

3. Run the authentication command to specify MD5 authentication is used:

```
switch(config)# ip ospf authentication message-digest
```

4. Use the `message-digest-key` command to create a key and key ID for md5:



In the example input below, `KEYID` represents the key used to create the message digest. This must be consistent across all routers on a link.

`KEY` represents the actual message digest key, and is associated to the given `KEYID`. This value has an upper range of 16 characters. Longer strings will be truncated.

```
switch(config)# ip ospf message-digest-key KEYID md5 KEY
```



Existing MD5 authentication hashes can be removed with the `no ip ospf message-digest-key` command.

## Scaling Tips

Here are some tips for how to scale out OSPF.

### Summarization

By default, an ABR creates a summary (type-3) LSA for each route in an area and advertises it in adjacent areas. Prefix range configuration optimizes this behavior by creating and advertising one summary LSA for multiple routes.

To configure a range:

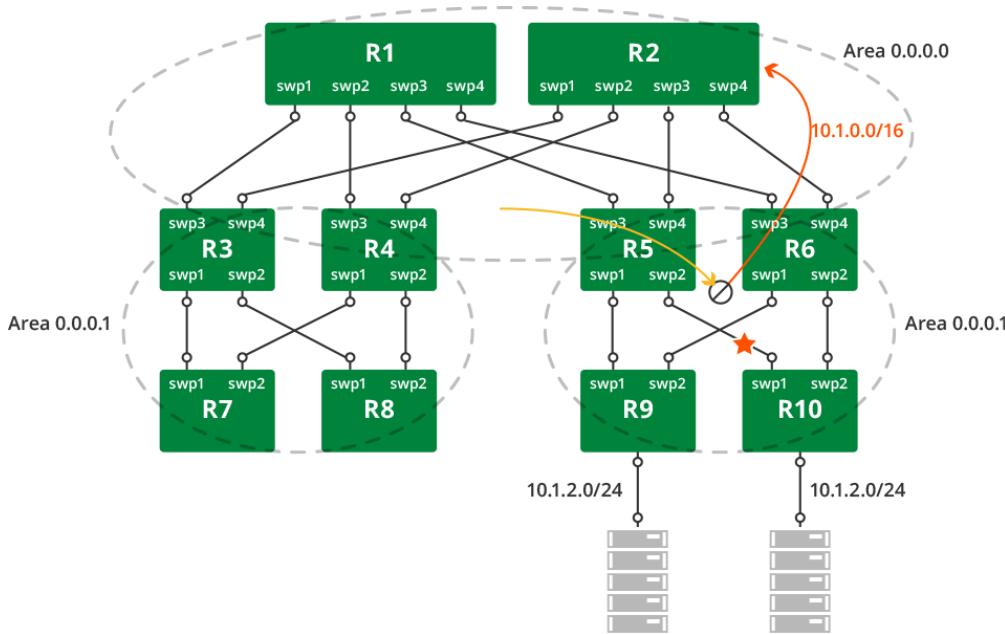
```
R3(config)# router ospf  
R3(config-router)# area 0.0.0.1 range 30.0.0.0/8
```



Summarize in the direction to the backbone. The backbone receives summarized routes and injects them to other areas already summarized.



Summarization can cause non-optimal forwarding of packets during failures. Here is an example scenario:



As shown in the diagram, the ABRs in the right non-zero area summarize the host prefixes as 10.1.0.0/16. When the link between R5 and R10 fails, R5 will send a worse metric for the summary route (metric for the summary route is the maximum of the metrics of intra-area routes that are covered by the summary route). Upon failure of the R5-R10 link, the metric for 10.1.2.0/24 goes higher at R5 as the path is R5-R9-R6-R10). As a result, other backbone routers shift traffic destined to 10.1.0.0/16 towards R6. This breaks ECMP and is an under-utilization of network capacity for traffic destined to 10.1.1.0/24.

## Stub Areas

Nodes in an area receive and store intra-area routing information and summarized information about other areas from the ABRs. In particular, a good summarization practice about inter-area routes through prefix range configuration helps scale the routers and keeps the network stable.

Then there are external routes. External routes are the routes redistributed into OSPF from another protocol. They have an AS-wide flooding scope. In many cases, external link states make up a large percentage of the LSDB.

*Stub areas* alleviate this scaling problem. A stub area is an area that does not receive external route advertisements.

To configure a stub area:

```
R3(config)# router ospf
R3(config-router)# area 0.0.0.1 stub
```

Stub areas still receive information about networks that belong to other areas of the same OSPF domain. Especially, if summarization is not configured (or is not comprehensive), the information can be overwhelming for the nodes. *Totally stubby areas* address this issue. Routers in totally stubby areas keep in their LSDB information about routing within their area, plus the default route.

To configure a totally stubby area:

```
R3(config)# router ospf
```

```
R3(config-router)# area 0.0.0.1 stub no-summary
```

Here is a brief tabular summary of the area type differences:

Type	Behavior
Normal non-zero area	LSA types 1, 2, 3, 4 area-scoped, type 5 externals, inter-area routes summarized
Stub area	LSA types 1, 2, 3, 4 area-scoped, No type 5 externals, inter-area routes summarized
Totally stubby area	LSA types 1, 2 area-scoped, default summary, No type 3, 4, 5 LSA types allowed

## Running Multiple ospfd Instances

You can configure OSPF to run multiple instances of its `ospfd` daemon. By doing so, Quagga act as if were managing multiple routers on the same switch, one for each OSPF process.

You can run multiple `ospfd` instances with OSPFv2 only, not with OSPFv3. The functional equivalent for [BGP \(see page 469\)](#) is a VRF, which provides for multiple BGP router statements, although only one instance of the `bgpd` daemon is running on the switch. Cumulus Quagga supports up to 5 instances currently, and the instance ID must be within the range of 1 through 65535.

To configure multiple `ospfd` instances, do the following:

1. Edit `/etc/quagga/daemons` and add `ospfd_instances="instance1 instance2 ..."` to the `ospfd` line, specifying an instance ID for each separate instance. For example, the following configuration has OSPF enabled with 2 `ospfd` instances, 11 and 22:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/quagga/daemons
zebra=yes
bgpd=no
ospfd=yes ospfd_instances="11 22"
ospf6d=no
ripd=no
ripngd=no
isisd=no
```

2. After you modify the `daemons` file, restart Quagga:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart quagga
```

3. Use `vtysh` to configure each instance:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# conf t
switch(config)# int swp1
```

```

switch(config-if)# ip ospf 11 area 0.0.0.0
switch(config-if)# router ospf 11
switch(config-router)# ospf router-id 1.1.1.1

...
switch(config)# int swp2
switch(config-if)# ip ospf 22 area 0.0.0.0
switch(config-if)# router ospf 11
switch(config-router)# ospf router-id 1.1.1.1

```

4. Confirm the configuration with the `show running` command:

```

switch# sh run
Building configuration...
Current configuration:
!
hostname zebra
log file /var/log/quagga/zebra.log
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!
interface eth0
    ipv6 nd suppress-ra
    link-detect
!
interface lo
    link-detect
!
interface swp1
    ip ospf 11 area 0.0.0.0
    link-detect
!
interface swp2
    ip ospf 22 area 0.0.0.0
    link-detect
!
interface swp45
    link-detect
!
interface swp46
    link-detect
!
interface swp47
    link-detect
!
interface swp48
    link-detect
!
```

```

interface swp49
  link-detect
!
interface swp50
  link-detect
!
interface swp51
  link-detect
!
interface swp52
  link-detect
!
interface vagrant
  link-detect
!
router ospf 11
  ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
!
router ospf 22
  ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
!
ip forwarding
ipv6 forwarding
!
line vty
!
end

```

5. After you exit vtysh, you can confirm that all the OSPF instances are running:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ ps -ax | grep ospf
21135 ? Sss 0:00 /usr/lib/quagga/ospfd --daemon -A 127.
0.0.1 -n 11
21139 ? Sss 0:00 /usr/lib/quagga/ospfd --daemon -A 127.
0.0.1 -n 22
21160 ? Sss 0:01 /usr/lib/quagga/watchquagga -adz -r
/usr/sbin/servicebBquaggabBrestartbB%s -s /usr/sbin
/servicebBquaggabBstartbB%s -k /usr/sbin/servicebBquaggabBstopbB%
s -b bB -t 30 zebra ospfd-11 ospfd-22 pimd
22021 pts/3 S+ 0:00 grep ospf

```

## Caveats

You can use the `redistribute ospf` option in your Quagga.conf file works with this so you can route between the instances. Specify the instance ID for the other OSPF instance. For example:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf
hostname zebra

```

```

log file /var/log/quagga/zebra.log
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!

...
!

router ospf 11
  ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
!
router ospf 22
  ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
  redistribute ospf 11
!
...

```



Don't specify a process ID unless you are using multi-instance OSPF.



If you disabled the [integrated](#) (see page 440) Quagga configuration, you must create a separate `ospfd` configuration file for each instance. The `ospfd.conf` file must include the instance ID in the file name. Continuing with our example, you would create `/etc/quagga/ospfd-11.conf` and `/etc/quagga/ospfd-22.conf`.

```

cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/quagga/ospfd-11.conf
!
hostname zebra
log file /var/log/quagga/zebra.log
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!
interface eth0
  ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  link-detect
!
interface lo
  link-detect
!
interface swp1
  ip ospf 11 area 0.0.0.0
  link-detect
!
interface swp2

```

```
ip ospf 22 area 0.0.0.0
link-detect
!
interface swp45
link-detect
!
interface swp46
link-detect
!
interface swp47
link-detect
!
interface swp48
link-detect
!
interface swp49
link-detect
!
interface swp50
link-detect
!
interface swp51
link-detect
!
interface swp52
link-detect
!
interface vagrant
link-detect
!
router ospf 11
ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
!
router ospf 22
ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
!
ip forwarding
ipv6 forwarding
!
line vty
!
```

## Unnumbered Interfaces

Unnumbered interfaces are interfaces without unique IP addresses. In OSPFv2, configuring unnumbered interfaces reduces the links between routers into pure topological elements, which dramatically simplifies network configuration and reconfiguration. In addition, the routing database contains only the real networks, so the memory footprint is reduced and SPF is faster.



 Unnumbered is usable for point-to-point interfaces only.

 If there is a `network <network number>/<mask>` `area <area ID>` command present in the Quagga configuration, the `ip ospf area <area ID>` command is rejected with the error "Please remove network command first." This prevents you from configuring other areas on some of the unnumbered interfaces. You can use either the `network` `area` command or the `ospf` `area` command in the configuration, but not both.

 Unless the Ethernet media is intended to be used as a LAN with multiple connected routers, we recommend configuring the interface as point-to-point. It has the additional advantage of a simplified adjacency state machine; there is no need for DR/BDR election and *LSA reflection*. See [RFC5309](#) for a more detailed discussion.

To configure an unnumbered interface, take the IP address of another interface (called the *anchor*) and use that as the IP address of the unnumbered interface:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 192.0.2.1/32

auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 192.0.2.1/32

auto swp2
iface swp2
    address 192.0.2.1/32
```

To enable OSPF on an unnumbered interface from within Quagga's vtysh:

```
R3(config)# interface swp1
R3(config-if)# ip ospf area 0.0.0.1
```

## ECMP

During SPF computation for an area, if OSPF finds multiple paths with equal cost (metric), all those paths are used for forwarding. For example, in the reference topology diagram, R8 uses both R3 and R4 as next hops to reach a destination attached to R9.

## Topology Changes and OSPF Reconvergence

Topology changes usually occur due to one of four events:

1. Maintenance of a router node

2. Maintenance of a link
3. Failure of a router node
4. Failure of a link

For the maintenance events, operators typically raise the OSPF administrative weight of the link(s) to ensure that all traffic is diverted from the link or the node (referred to as *costing out*). The speed of reconvergence does not matter. Indeed, changing the OSPF cost causes LSAs to be reissued, but the links remain in service during the SPF computation process of all routers in the network.

For the failure events, traffic may be lost during reconvergence; that is, until SPF on all nodes computes an alternative path around the failed link or node to each of the destinations. The reconvergence depends on layer 1 failure detection capabilities and at the worst case *DeadInterval* OSPF timer.

## **Example Configurations**

Example configuration for event 1, using vtysh:

```
R3(config)# router ospf
R3(config-router)# max-metric router-lsa administrative
```

Or, with the non-modal shell command approach:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf router set max-metric router-lsa
administrative
```

Example configuration for event 2, using vtysh:

```
R3(config)# interface swp1
R3(config-if)# ospf cost 65535
```

Or, with the non-modal shell command approach:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf interface swp1 set cost 65535
```

## **Debugging OSPF**

**OperState** lists all the commands to view the operational state of OSPF.

The three most important states while troubleshooting the protocol are:

1. Neighbors, with `show ip ospf neighbor`. This is the starting point to debug neighbor states (also see `tcpdump` below).
2. Database, with `show ip ospf database`. This is the starting point to verify that the LSDB is, in fact, synchronized across all routers in the network. For example, sweeping through the output of `show ip ospf database router` taken from all routers in an area will ensure if the topology graph building process is complete; that is, every node has seen all the other nodes in the area.

3. Routes, with `show ip ospf route`. This is the outcome of SPF computation that gets downloaded to the forwarding table, and is the starting point to debug, for example, why an OSPF route is not being forwarded correctly.



Compare the route output with kernel by using `show ip route | grep zebra` and with the hardware entries using `cl-route-check -V`.

Using `cl-ospf`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf neighbor show [all | detail]

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf database show [asbr-summary | network
| opaque-area |
| external | |
| opaque-link | summary |
| nssa-external | opaque-as |
router]

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf route show
```

[Debugging-OSPF](#) lists all of the OSPF debug options.

Using `cl-ospf`:

```
Usage: cl-ospf debug { COMMAND | help }

COMMANDS
{ set | clear } (all | event | ism | ism [OBJECT] | lsa | lsa
[OBJECT] |
nsm | nsm [OBJECT] | nssa | packet | packet
[OBJECT] |
zebra [OBJECT] | zebra all)
```

Using `zebra` under `vtysh`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
R3# show [zebra]

IOBJECT := { events | status | timers }
OOBJECT := { interface | redistribute }
POBJECT := { all | dd | hello | ls-ack | ls-request | ls-update }
ZOBJECT := { all | events | kernel | packet | rib |
```

Using `tcpdump` to capture OSPF packets:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tcpdump -v -i swp1 ip proto ospf
```

## Configuration Files

- /etc/quagga/ospfd.conf

## Supported RFCs

- RFC2328
- RFC3137
- RFC5309

## Useful Links

- Bidirectional forwarding detection (see page 502) (BFD) and OSPF
- en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open\_Shortest\_Path\_First
- www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#OSPFv2
- Perlman, Radia (1999). Interconnections: Bridges, Routers, Switches, and Internetworking Protocols (2 ed.). Addison-Wesley.
- Moy, John T. OSPF: Anatomy of an Internet Routing Protocol. Addison-Wesley.

# Open Shortest Path First v3 - OSPFv3 - Protocol

OSPFv3 is a revised version of OSPFv2 to support the IPv6 address family. Refer to [Open Shortest Path First \(OSPF\) Protocol \(see page 451\)](#) for a discussion on the basic concepts, which remain the same between the two versions.

OSPFv3 has changed the formatting in some of the packets and LSAs either as a necessity to support IPv6 or to improve the protocol behavior based on OSPFv2 experience. Most notably, v3 defines a new LSA, called intra-area prefix LSA to separate out the advertisement of stub networks attached to a router from the router LSA. It is a clear separation of node topology from prefix reachability and lends itself well to an optimized SPF computation.



IETF has defined extensions to OSPFv3 to support multiple address families (that is, both IPv6 and IPv4). [Quagga \(see page 436\)](#) does not support it yet.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring OSPFv3 (see page 467)
- Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 468)
- Debugging OSPF (see page 468)
- Configuration Files (see page 468)
- Supported RFCs (see page 468)

- Useful Links (see page 468)

## Configuring OSPFv3

Configuring OSPFv3 involves the following tasks:

1. Enabling the `zebra` and `ospf6` daemons, as described in [Configuring Quagga](#) (see page 438) then start the Quagga service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable quagga.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start quagga.service
```

2. Enabling OSPF6 and map interfaces to areas. From Quagga's `vtysh` shell:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3.0).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

switch# conf t
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# router ospf6
switch(config-router)# router-id 0.0.1
switch(config-router)# interface swp1 area 0.0.0.0
switch(config-router)# interface swp2 area 0.0.0.1
switch(config-router)#
```

Or through `cl-ospf6`, from the Cumulus Linux shell:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf6 router set id 0.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf6 interface swp1 set area 0.0.0.0
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf6 interface swp2 set area 0.0.0.1
```

3. Defining (custom) OSPF6 parameters on the interfaces:

- a. Network type (such as point-to-point, broadcast)
- b. Timer tuning (for example, hello interval)

Using Quagga's `vtysh`:

```
switch(config)# interface swp1
switch(config-if)# ipv6 ospf6 network point-to-point
switch(config-if)# ipv6 ospf6 hello-interval 5
```

Or through `cl-ospf6`, from the Cumulus Linux shell:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf6 interface swp1 set network point-to-point
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-ospf6 interface swp1 set hello-interval 5
```

The OSPFv3 configuration is saved in /etc/quagga/ospf6d.conf.

## **Unnumbered Interfaces**

Unlike OSPFv2, OSPFv3 intrinsically supports unnumbered interfaces. Forwarding to the next hop router is done entirely using IPv6 link local addresses. Therefore, you are not required to configure any global IPv6 address to interfaces between routers.

## **Debugging OSPF**

See [Debugging OSPF \(see page 464\)](#) for OSPFv2 for the troubleshooting discussion. The equivalent commands are:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# show ipv6 ospf6 neighbor
switch# show ipv6 ospf6 database [detail | dump | internal |
                                         as-external | group-
                                         membership |
                                         inter-prefix | inter-router |
                                         intra-prefix | link |
                                         network |
                                         router |
                                         originated]
                                         linkstate-id | self-
                                         originated]
switch# show ip ospf route
```

Another helpful command is `show ipv6 ospf6 [area <id>] spf tree`. It dumps the node topology as computed by SPF to help visualize the network view.

## **Configuration Files**

- /etc/quagga/ospf6d.conf

## **Supported RFCs**

- RFC5340
- RFC3137

## **Useful Links**

- Bidirectional forwarding detection (see page 502) (BFD) and OSPF
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open\\_Shortest\\_Path\\_First](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open_Shortest_Path_First)

- [www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#OSPFv3](http://www.nongnu.org/quagga/docs/docs-info.html#OSPFv3)

## Border Gateway Protocol - BGP

BGP is the routing protocol that runs the Internet. It is an increasingly popular protocol for use in the data center as it lends itself well to the rich interconnections in a Clos topology. Specifically:

- It does not require routing state to be periodically refreshed unlike OSPF.
- It is less chatty than its link-state siblings. For example, a link or node transition can result in a bestpath change, causing BGP to send updates.
- It is multi-protocol and extensible.
- There are many robust vendor implementations.
- The protocol is very mature and comes with many years of operational experience.

This IETF draft provides further details of the use of BGP within the data center.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 470)
- Autonomous System Number (ASN) (see page 470)
- eBGP and iBGP (see page 471)
- Route Reflectors (see page 471)
- ECMP with BGP (see page 472)
  - Maximum Paths (see page 472)
  - BGP for Both IPv4 and IPv6 (see page 472)
- Configuring BGP (see page 472)
- Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 474)
  - BGP and Extended Next-hop Encoding (see page 474)
  - Configuring BGP Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 474)
  - Managing Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 475)
  - How traceroute Interacts with BGP Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 477)
  - Advanced: Understanding How Next-hop Fields Are Set (see page 477)
  - Limitations (see page 478)
- BGP add-path (see page 478)
  - BGP add-path RX (see page 479)
  - BGP add-path TX (see page 480)
- Fast Convergence Design Considerations (see page 483)
  - Specifying the Interface Name in the neighbor Command (see page 483)
- Using Peer Groups to Simplify Configuration (see page 484)
- Configuring BGP Dynamic Neighbors (see page 484)
- Configuring BGP Peering Relationships across Switches (see page 485)

- Configure MD5-enabled BGP Neighbors (see page 486)
  - Manually configure an MD5-enabled BGP Neighbor (see page 486)
  - Configure an MD5-enabled BGP Neighbor using vtysh (see page 488)
- Configure BGP TTL Security (see page 489)
- Configuration Tips (see page 491)
  - BGP Advertisement Best Practices (see page 491)
  - Utilizing Multiple Routing Tables and Forwarding (see page 491)
  - Additional Default Settings (see page 491)
  - Configuring BGP Neighbor maximum-prefixes (see page 492)
- Troubleshooting BGP (see page 492)
  - Debugging Tip: Logging Neighbor State Changes (see page 494)
  - Troubleshooting Link-local Addresses (see page 495)
- Enabling Read-only Mode (see page 498)
- Applying a Route Map for Route Updates (see page 498)
- Protocol Tuning (see page 498)
  - Converging Quickly On Link Failures (see page 499)
  - Converging Quickly On Soft Failures (see page 499)
  - Reconnecting Quickly (see page 500)
  - Advertisement Interval (see page 500)
- Configuration Files (see page 501)
- Useful Links (see page 501)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 501)
  - ttl-security Issue (see page 501)

## ***Commands***

Cumulus Linux:

- bgp
- systemctl
- vtysh

Quagga:

- bgp
- neighbor
- router
- show

## ***Autonomous System Number (ASN)***

One of the key concepts in BGP is an *autonomous system number* or ASN. An *autonomous system* is defined as a set of routers under a common administration. Since BGP was originally designed to peer between independently managed enterprises and/or service providers, each such enterprise is treated as an

autonomous system, responsible for a set of network addresses. Each such autonomous system is given a unique number called its ASN. ASNs are handed out by a central authority (ICANN). However, ASNs between 64512 and 65535 are reserved for private use. Using BGP within the data center relies on either using this number space or else using the single ASN you own.

The ASN is central to how BGP builds a forwarding topology. A BGP route advertisement carries with it not only the originator's ASN, but also the list of ASNs that this route advertisement has passed through. When forwarding a route advertisement, a BGP speaker adds itself to this list. This list of ASNs is called the *AS path*. BGP uses the AS path to detect and avoid loops.

ASNs were originally 16-bit numbers, but were later modified to be 32-bit. Quagga supports both 16-bit and 32-bit ASNs, but most implementations still run with 16-bit ASNs.

## eBGP and iBGP

When BGP is used to peer between autonomous systems, the peering is referred to as *external BGP* or eBGP. When BGP is used within an autonomous system, the peering used is referred to as *internal BGP* or iBGP. eBGP peers have different ASNs while iBGP peers have the same ASN.

While the heart of the protocol is the same when used as eBGP or iBGP, there is a key difference in the protocol behavior between use as eBGP and iBGP: an iBGP node does not forward routing information learned from one iBGP peer to another iBGP peer. It expects the originating iBGP peer to send this information to all iBGP peers.

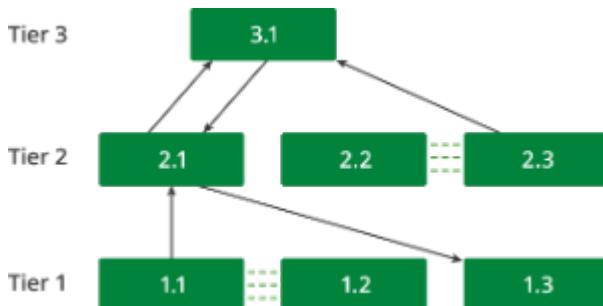
This implies that iBGP peers are all connected to each other. In a large network, this requirement can quickly become unscalable. The most popular method to avoid this problem is to introduce a *route reflector*.

## Route Reflectors

Route reflectors are quite easy to understand in a Clos topology. In a two-tier Clos network, the leaf (or tier 1) switches are the only ones connected to end stations. Subsequently, this means that the spines themselves do not have any routes to announce. They're merely **reflecting** the routes announced by one leaf to the other leaves. Thus, the spine switches function as route reflectors while the leaf switches serve as route reflector clients.

In a three-tier network, the tier 2 nodes (or mid-tier spines) act as both route reflector servers and route reflector clients. They act as route reflectors because they announce the routes learned from the tier 1 nodes to other tier 1 nodes and to tier 3 nodes. They also act as route reflector clients to the tier 3 nodes, receiving routes learned from other tier 2 nodes. Tier 3 nodes act only as route reflectors.

In the following illustration, tier 2 node 2.1 is acting as a route reflector server, announcing the routes between tier 1 nodes 1.1 and 1.2 to tier 1 node 1.3. It is also a route reflector client, learning the routes between tier 2 nodes 2.2 and 2.3 from the tier 3 node, 3.1.



## ECMP with BGP

If a BGP node hears a prefix **p** from multiple peers, it has all the information necessary to program the routing table to forward traffic for that prefix **p** through all of these peers. Thus, BGP supports equal-cost multipathing (ECMP).

In order to perform ECMP in BGP, you may need to configure *multipath relax* (if you're using eBGP).

## Maximum Paths

In Cumulus Linux, the BGP `maximum-paths` setting is enabled by default, so multiple routes are already installed. The default setting is 64 paths.

## BGP for Both IPv4 and IPv6

Unlike OSPF, which has separate versions of the protocol to announce IPv4 and IPv6 routes, BGP is a multi-protocol routing engine, capable of announcing both IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes. It supports announcing IPv4 prefixes over an IPv4 session and IPv6 prefixes over an IPv6 session. It also supports announcing prefixes of both these address families over a single IPv4 session or over a single IPv6 session.

## Configuring BGP

1. Enable the BGP and Zebra daemons:

- Enable the `zebra` and `bgpd` daemons, as described in [Configuring Quagga](#) (see page 438), then start Quagga:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable quagga.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start quagga.service
```

- Touch an empty `bgpd` configuration file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo touch /etc/quagga/bgpd.conf
```

A slightly more useful configuration file would contain the following lines:

```
hostname R7
log timestamp precision 6
log file /var/log/quagga/bgpd.log
```

The most important information here is the specification of the location of the log file, where the BGP process can log debugging and other useful information. A common convention is to store the log files under `/var/log/quagga`.

You must restart the `bgpd` daemon when you update the BGP configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo /usr/lib/quagga/quagga restart bgpd
```

- Identify the BGP node by assigning an ASN and `router-id`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+c13u2).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

R7# configure terminal
R7(config)# router bgp 65000
R7(config-router)# bgp router-id 0.0.0.1
```

- Specify to whom it must disseminate routing information:

```
R7(config-router)# neighbor 10.0.0.2 external
```

If it is an iBGP session, the `remote-as` is the same as the local AS:

```
R7(config-router)# neighbor 10.0.0.2 remote-as internal
```

Specifying the peer's IP address allows BGP to set up a TCP socket with this peer, but it doesn't distribute any prefixes to it, unless it is explicitly told that it must via the `activate` command:

```
R7(config-router)# address-family ipv4 unicast
R7(config-router-af)# neighbor 10.0.0.2 activate
R7(config-router-af)# exit
R7(config-router)# address-family ipv6
R7(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:db8:0002::0a00:0002 activate
R7(config-router-af)# exit
```

As you can see, `activate` has to be specified for each address family that is being announced by the BGP session.

- Specify some properties of the BGP session:

```
R7(config-router)# neighbor 10.0.0.2 next-hop-self
R7(config-router)# address-family ipv4 unicast
```

If this is a route-reflector client, it can be specified as follows:

```
R3(config-router-af)# neighbor 10.0.0.1 route-reflector-client
```



It is node R3, the route reflector, on which the peer is specified as a client.

5. Specify what prefixes to originate:

```
R7(config-router)# address-family ipv4 unicast
R7(config-router-af)# network 192.0.2.0/24
R7(config-router-af)# network 203.0.113.1/24
```

## **Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces**

Unnumbered interfaces are interfaces without unique IP addresses. In BGP, you configure unnumbered interfaces using *extended next-hop encoding* (ENHE), which is defined by [RFC 5549](#). BGP unnumbered interfaces provide a means of advertising an IPv4 route with an IPv6 next-hop. Prior to RFC 5549, an IPv4 route could be advertised only with an IPv4 next-hop.

BGP unnumbered interfaces are particularly useful in deployments where IPv4 prefixes are advertised through BGP over a section without any IPv4 address configuration on links. As a result, the routing entries are also IPv4 for destination lookup and have IPv6 next-hops for forwarding purposes.

## **BGP and Extended Next-hop Encoding**

Once enabled and active, BGP makes use of the available IPv6 next-hops for advertising any IPv4 prefixes. BGP learns the prefixes, calculates the routes and installs them in IPv4 AFI to IPv6 AFI format. However, ENHE in Cumulus Linux does not install routes into the kernel in IPv4 prefix to IPv6 next-hop format. For link-local peerings enabled by dynamically learning the other end's link-local address using IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements, an IPv6 next-hop is converted into an IPv4 link-local address and a static neighbor entry is installed for this IPv4 link-local address with the MAC address derived from the link-local address of the other end.



It is assumed that the IPv6 implementation on the peering device will use the MAC address as the interface ID when assigning the IPv6 link-local address, as suggested by RFC 4291.

## **Configuring BGP Unnumbered Interfaces**

Configuring a BGP unnumbered interface requires enabling IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements. The `interval` you specify is measured in seconds, and defaults to 600 seconds. Extended next-hop encoding is sent only for the link-local address peerings:

```
router bgp 65020
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
  bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
  bgp bestpath compare-routerid
  neighbor fabric peer-group
  neighbor fabric remote-as external
  neighbor fabric description Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor fabric capability extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp1 interface peer-group fabric
```

```

neighbor swp2 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp3 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp4 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp29 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp30 interface peer-group fabric
!
```

For an unnumbered configuration, you can use a single command to configure a neighbor and attach it to a peer group (see page 484):

```
# neighbor <swpX> interface peer-group <group name>
```

## Managing Unnumbered Interfaces

All the relevant BGP commands are now capable of showing IPv6 next-hops and/or the interface name for any IPv4 prefix:

```

# show ip bgp
BGP table version is 15, local router ID is 10.0.0.21
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =
multipath,
                  i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
      Network          Next Hop            Metric LocPrf Weight Path
*= 0.0.0.0          swp30              0       65051  i
*>                 swp29              0       65051  i
*> 10.0.0.1/32     swp29              0       65051  65001 i
*=                 swp30              0       65051  65001 i
*> 10.0.0.11/32    swp1               0       65011  i
*> 10.0.0.12/32    swp2               0       65012  i
*> 10.0.0.13/32    swp3               0       65013  i
*> 10.0.0.14/32    swp4               0       65014  i
*> 10.0.0.21/32    0.0.0.0             0           32768 i
*= 10.0.0.51/32    swp30              0       65051  i
*>                 swp29              0       65051  i
*> 172.16.1.0/24   swp1               0       65011  i
*=                 swp2               0       65012  i
*> 172.16.3.0/24   swp3               0       65013  i
*=                 swp4               0       65014  i
Total number of prefixes 10
```

Quagga RIB commands are also modified:

```

# show ip route
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, T - Table,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
```

```
B>* 0.0.0.0/0 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:11:41
  *
  *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:11:41
B>* 10.0.0.1/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:11:41
  *
  *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:11:41
B>* 10.0.0.11/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:11:41
B>* 10.0.0.12/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:11:42
B>* 10.0.0.13/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:11:42
B>* 10.0.0.14/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:11:42
C>* 10.0.0.21/32 is directly connected, lo
B>* 10.0.0.51/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:11:41
  *
  *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:11:41
B>* 172.16.1.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:11:41
  *
  *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:11:41
B>* 172.16.3.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:11:42
  *
  *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:11:42
```

The following commands show how the IPv4 link-local address 169.254.0.1 is used to install the route and static neighbor entry to facilitate proper forwarding without having to install an IPv4 prefix with IPv6 next-hop in the kernel:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route show 10.0.0.1
10.0.0.1 proto zebra metric 20
  nexthop via 169.254.0.1 dev swp29 weight 1 onlink
  nexthop via 169.254.0.1 dev swp30 weight 1 onlink
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip neighbor
169.254.0.1 dev swp29 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:0c PERMANENT
169.254.0.1 dev swp3 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:57 PERMANENT
169.254.0.1 dev swp30 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:52 PERMANENT
169.254.0.1 dev swp2 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:2e PERMANENT
192.168.0.254 dev eth0 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:5f REACHABLE
169.254.0.1 dev swp4 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:43 PERMANENT
169.254.0.1 dev swp1 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:5b PERMANENT
fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52 dev swp30 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:52 router
REACHABLE
fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c dev swp29 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:0c router
REACHABLE
fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e dev swp2 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:2e router
REACHABLE
fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43 dev swp4 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:43 router
REACHABLE
fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57 dev swp3 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:57 router
REACHABLE
fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b dev swp1 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:5b router
REACHABLE
```

## How traceroute Interacts with BGP Unnumbered Interfaces

Every router or end host must have an IPv4 address in order to complete a `traceroute` of IPv4 addresses. In this case, the IPv4 address used is that of the loopback device.

Even if ENHE is not used in the data center, link addresses are not typically advertised. This is because:

- Link addresses take up valuable FIB resources. In a large Clos environment, the number of such addresses can be quite large.
- Link addresses expose an additional attack vector for intruders to use to either break in or engage in DDOS attacks.

Therefore, assigning an IP address to the loopback device is essential.

## Advanced: Understanding How Next-hop Fields Are Set

This section describes how the IPv6 next-hops are set in the MP\_REACH\_NLRI (multiprotocol reachable NLRI) initiated by the system, which applies whether IPv6 prefixes or IPv4 prefixes are exchanged with ENHE. There are two main aspects to determine — how many IPv6 next-hops are included in the MP\_REACH\_NLRI (since the RFC allows either one or two next-hops) and the values of the next-hop(s). This section also describes how a received MP\_REACH\_NLRI is handled as far as processing IPv6 next-hops.

- Whether peering to a global IPv6 address or link-local IPv6 address, the determination whether to send one or two next-hops is as follows:
  1. If reflecting the route, two next-hops are sent only if the peer has `nexthop-local unchanged` configured and the attribute of the received route has an IPv6 link-local next-hop; otherwise, only one next-hop is sent.
  2. Otherwise (if it's not reflecting the route), two next-hops are sent if explicitly configured (`nexthop-local unchanged`) or the peer is directly connected (that is, either peering is on link-local address or the global IPv4 or IPv6 address is *directly connected*) and the route is either a local/self-originated route or the peer is an eBGP peer.
  3. In all other cases, only one next-hop gets sent, unless an outbound route map adds another next-hop.
- `route-map` can impose two next-hops in scenarios where Cumulus Linux would only send one next-hop — by specifying `set ipv6 nexthop link-local`.
- For all routes to eBGP peers and self-originated routes to iBGP peers, the global next-hop (first value) is the peering address of the local system. If the peering is on the link-local address, this is the global IPv6 address on the peering interface, if present; otherwise, it is the link-local IPv6 address on the peering interface.
- For other routes to iBGP peers (eBGP to iBGP or reflected), the global next-hop will be the global next-hop in the received attribute.



If this address were a link-local IPv6 address, it would get reset so that the link-local IPv6 address of the eBGP peer is not passed along to an iBGP peer, which most likely may be on a different link.

- `route-map` and/or the peer configuration can change the above behavior. For example, `route-map` can set the global IPv6 next-hop or the peer configuration can set it to `self` — which is relevant for *iBGP* peers. The route map or peer configuration can also set the next-hop to `unchanged`, which ensures the source IPv6 global next-hop is passed around — which is relevant for *eBGP* peers.

- Whenever two next-hops are being sent, the link-local next-hop (the second value of the two) is the link-local IPv6 address on the peering interface unless it is due to `nh-local-unchanged` or `route-map` has set the link-local next-hop.
- Network administrators cannot set **martian values** for IPv6 next-hops in `route-map`. Also, global and link-local next-hops are validated to ensure they match the respective address types.
- In a received update, a martian check is imposed for the IPv6 global next-hop. If the check fails, it gets treated as an implicit withdraw.
- If two next-hops are received in an update and the second next-hop is not a link-local address, it gets ignored and the update is treated as if only one next-hop was received.
- Whenever two next-hops are received in an update, the second next-hop is used to install the route into `zebra`. As per the previous point, it is already assured that this is a link-local IPv6 address. Currently, this is assumed to be reachable and is not registered with NHT.
- When `route-map` specifies the next-hop as `peer-address`, the global IPv6 next-hop as well as the link-local IPv6 next-hop (if it's being sent) is set to the `peering address`. If the peering is on a link-local address, the former could be the link-local address on the peering interface, unless there is a global IPv6 address present on this interface.

The above rules imply that there are scenarios where a generated update has two IPv6 next-hops, and both of them are the IPv6 link-local address of the peering interface on the local system. If you are peering with a switch or router that is not running Cumulus Linux and expects the first next-hop to be a global IPv6 address, a route map can be used on the sender to specify a global IPv6 address. This conforms with the recommendations in the Internet draft [draft-kato-bgp-ipv6-link-local-00.txt](#), "BGP4+ Peering Using IPv6 Link-local Address".

## ***Limitations***

- Interface-based peering with separate IPv4 and IPv6 sessions is not supported.
- ENHE is sent for IPv6 link-local peerings only.
- If an IPv4 /30 or /31 IP address is assigned to the interface IPv4 peering will be used over IPv6 link-local peering.
- If the default router lifetime in the generated IPv6 route advertisements (RA) is set to 0, the receiving Quagga instance will drop the RA if it is on a Cumulus Linux **2.5.z** switch. To work around this issue, either:
  - Explicitly configure the switch to advertise a router lifetime of 0, unless a value is specifically set by the operator — with the assumption that the host is running Cumulus Linux 3.y.z version of Quagga. When hosts see an IPv6 RA with a router lifetime of 0, they won't make that router a default router.
  - Use the `sysctl` on the host — `net.ipv6.conf.all.accept_ra_defrtr`. However, this requires applying this setting on all hosts, which may mean many hosts, especially if Quagga is run on the hosts.

## ***BGP add-path***

In Cumulus Linux 3.0 and later, BGP and static routing (IPv4 and IPv6) are supported within a VRF context. For more information, refer to [Virtual Routing and Forwarding - VRF](#) (see page 525).

## **BGP add-path RX**

*BGP add-path RX* allows BGP to receive multiple paths for the same prefix. A path identifier is used so that additional paths do not override previously advertised paths. No additional configuration is required for BGP add-path RX.

BGP advertises the add-path RX capability by default. Add-Path TX requires an administrator to enable it. Enabling TX will reset the session.

To view the existing capabilities, run `show ip bgp neighbors`. They can be seen listed in the subsection `Add Path;` below `Neighbor capabilities:`

```
r7# show ip bgp neighbors

BGP neighbor on swp1: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, remote AS 65011, local
AS 65020, external link
Hostname: leaf01
Member of peer-group fabric for session parameters
BGP version 4, remote router ID 10.0.0.11
BGP state = Established, up for 00:59:17
Last read 00:00:02, Last write 00:59:16
Hold time is 9, keepalive interval is 3 seconds
Neighbor capabilities:
  4 Byte AS: advertised and received
  AddPath:
    IPv4 Unicast: RX advertised IPv4 Unicast and received
    Extended nexthop: advertised and received
    Address families by peer:
      IPv4 Unicast
    Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
    Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
    Hostname Capability: advertised and received
    Graceful Restart Capabilty: advertised and received
    Remote Restart timer is 120 seconds
    Address families by peer:
      none
...
```

The example output above shows that additional BGP paths can be sent and received (TX and RX are advertised). It also shows that the BGP neighbor, fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, supports both

To view the current additional paths, run `show ip bgp <network>`. The example output shows five additional paths that have been added by the TX node for receiving. All the paths have a unique AddPath ID.

```
r7# show ip bgp 1.1.1.1/32  
BGP routing table entry for 1.1.1.1/32
```

```
Paths: ( 6 available, best #6, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
500
 10.7.6.2 from r6(10.7.6.2) (10.0.0.6)
    Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external
    Community: 6:6
    AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 7
    Last update: Thu Jun  2 00:57:16 2016

500
 10.7.5.2 from r5(10.7.5.2) (10.0.0.5)
    Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, bestpath-
from-AS 500
    Community: 5:5
    AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 6
    Advertised to: r8(10.7.8.2)
    Last update: Thu Jun  2 00:57:16 2016

300
 10.7.4.2 from r4(10.7.4.2) (10.0.0.4)
    Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external
    Community: 4:4
    AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 5
    Last update: Thu Jun  2 00:57:16 2016

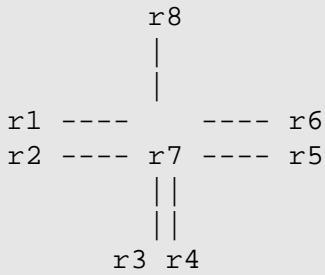
300
 10.7.3.2 from r3(10.7.3.2) (10.0.0.3)
    Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, bestpath-
from-AS 300
    Community: 3:3
    AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 4
    Advertised to: r8(10.7.8.2)
    Last update: Thu Jun  2 00:57:16 2016

100
 10.7.2.2 from r2(10.7.2.2) (10.0.0.2)
    Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, multipath
    Community: 2:2
    AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 3
    Last update: Thu Jun  2 00:57:16 2016

100
 10.7.1.2 from r1(10.7.1.2) (10.0.0.1)
    Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external,
    multipath, bestpath-from-AS 100, best
    Community: 1:1
    AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 2
    Advertised to: r1(10.7.1.2) r2(10.7.2.2) r3(10.7.3.2) r4(10.7.4.
2) r5(10.7.5.2) r6(10.7.6.2) r8(10.7.8.2)
    Last update: Thu Jun  2 00:57:16 2016
```

## BGP add-path TX

AddPath TX allows BGP to advertise more than just the bestpath for a prefix. Consider the following topology:



In this topology:

- r1 and r2 are in AS 100
- r3 and r4 are in AS 300
- r5 and r6 are in AS 500
- r7 is in AS 700
- r8 is in AS 800
- r7 learns 1.1.1.1/32 from r1, r2, r3, r4, r5, and r6. Among these r7 picks the path from r1 as the bestpath for 1.1.1.1/32

The example below configures the r7 session to advertise the bestpath learned from each AS. In this case, this means a path from AS 100, a path from AS 300, and a path from AS 500. The `show ip bgp 1.1.1.1/32` from r7 has "bestpath-from-AS 100" so the user can see what the bestpath is from each AS:

```

r7# conf t
r7(config)# router bgp 700
r7(config-router)# neighbor 192.0.2.2 addpath-tx-bestpath-per-AS
r7(config-router)#
  
```

The output below shows the result on r8:

```

r8# show ip bgp 1.1.1.1/32
BGP routing table entry for 1.1.1.1/32
Paths: (3 available, best #3, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
    r7(10.7.8.1)
    700 100
      10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)
        Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external
        Community: 1:1
        AddPath ID: RX 2, TX 4
        Last update: Thu Jun  2 00:57:14 2016
    700 300
  
```

```

10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)
  Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external
  Community: 3:3
  AddPath ID: RX 4, TX 3
  Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016

700 500
  10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)
    Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external, bestpath-from-AS 700
  , best
    Community: 5:5
    AddPath ID: RX 6, TX 2
    Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016

r8#
  
```

The example below shows the results if r7 is configured to advertise all paths to r8:

```

r7# conf t
r7(config)# router bgp 700
r7(config-router)# neighbor 192.0.2.2 addpath-tx-all-paths
r7(config-router)#
  
```

The output below shows the result on r8:

```

r8# show ip bgp 1.1.1.1/32
BGP routing table entry for 1.1.1.1/32
Paths: (3 available, best #3, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
    r7(10.7.8.1)
    700 100
      10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)
        Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external
        Community: 1:1
        AddPath ID: RX 2, TX 4
        Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016

    700 300
      10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)
        Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external
        Community: 3:3
        AddPath ID: RX 4, TX 3
        Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016

    700 500
      10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)
        Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external, bestpath-from-AS 700
  , best
        Community: 5:5
  
```

```
AddPath ID: RX 6, TX 2
Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016
```

r8#

## **Fast Convergence Design Considerations**

Without getting into the why (see the IETF draft cited in Useful Links below that talks about BGP use within the data center), we strongly recommend the following use of addresses in the design of a BGP-based data center network:

- Use of interface addresses: Set up BGP sessions only using interface-scoped addresses. This allows BGP to react quickly to link failures.
- Use of next-hop-self: Every BGP node says that it knows how to forward traffic to the prefixes it is announcing. This reduces the requirement to announce interface-specific addresses and thereby reduces the size of the forwarding table.

## **Specifying the Interface Name in the neighbor Command**

When you are configuring BGP for the neighbors of a given interface, you can specify the interface name instead of its IP address. All the other `neighbor` command options remain the same.

This is equivalent to BGP peering to the link-local IPv6 address of the neighbor on the given interface. The link-local address is learned via IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements.

Consider the following example configuration:

```
router bgp 65000
  bgp router-id 0.0.0.1
  neighbor swp1 interface
  neighbor swp1 remote-as internal
  neighbor swp1 next-hop-self
!
  address-family ipv6
  neighbor swp1 activate
  exit-address-family
```



By default, Cumulus Linux sends IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements. Cumulus Networks recommends you adjust the router advertisement's interval to a shorter value (`ipv6 nd ra-interval <interval>`) to address scenarios when nodes come up and miss router advertisement processing to relay the neighbor's link-local address to BGP. The `interval` is measured in seconds and defaults to 600 seconds.

## Using Peer Groups to Simplify Configuration

When there are many peers to connect to, the amount of redundant configuration becomes overwhelming. For example, repeating the `activate` and `next-hop-self` commands for even 60 neighbors makes for a very long configuration file. Using `peer-group` addresses this problem.

Instead of specifying properties of each individual peer, Quagga allows for defining one or more peer groups and associating all the attributes common to that peer session to a peer group. A peer needs to be attached to a peer group only once, when it then inherits all address families activated for that peer group.

After doing this, the only task is to associate an IP address with a peer group. Here is an example of defining and using peer groups:

```
R7(config-router)# neighbor tier-2 peer-group
R7(config-router)# address-family ipv4 unicast
R7(config-router-af)# neighbor tier-2 activate
R7(config-router-af)# neighbor tier-2 next-hop-self
R7(config-router-af)# exit
R7(config-router)# neighbor 10.0.0.2 peer-group tier-2
R7(config-router)# neighbor 192.0.2.2 peer-group tier-2
```



BGP peer-group restrictions have been replaced with update-groups, which dynamically examine all peers, and group them if they have the same outbound policy.

## Configuring BGP Dynamic Neighbors

The *BGP dynamic neighbor* feature provides BGP peering to a group of remote neighbors within a specified range of IPv4 or IPv6 addresses for a BGP peer group. You can configure each range as a subnet IP address.

You configure dynamic neighbors using the `bgp listen range <IP address> peer-group <GROUP>` command. Once they are configured, a BGP speaker can listen for and form peer relationships with any neighbor in the IP address range and mapped to a peer group.

```
leaf01# configure terminal
leaf01(config)# router bgp 65001
leaf01(config-router)# bgp listen range 10.1.1.0/24 peer-group SPINE
```

You can limit the number of dynamic peers by specifying that limit in the `bgp listen limit` command:

```
leaf01(config-router)# bgp listen limit 5
```

A sample configuration for IPv4 would look like this:

```
router bgp 65001
```

```

neighbor SPINE peer-group
neighbor SPINE remote-as 65000
  bgp listen limit 5
  bgp listen range 10.1.1.0/24 peer-group SPINE

```

## **Configuring BGP Peering Relationships across Switches**

A BGP peering relationship is typically initiated with the `neighbor x.x.x.x remote-as [internal|external]` command.

Specifying *internal* signifies an iBGP peering; that is, the neighbor will only create or accept a connection with the specified neighbor if the remote peer AS number matches this BGP's AS number.

Specifying *external* signifies an eBGP peering; that is, the neighbor will only create a connection with the neighbor if the remote peer AS number does **not** match this BGP AS number.

You can make this distinction using the `neighbor` command or the `peer-group` command.

In general, use the following syntax with the `neighbor` command:

```
neighbor (ipv4 addr|ipv6 addr|WORD) remote-as [internal|external]
```

Some example configurations follow.

To connect to **the same AS** using the `neighbor` command, modify your configuration similar to the following:

```

router bgp 500
neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as internal

```

To connect to a **different AS** using the `neighbor` command, modify your configuration similar to the following:

```

router bgp 500
neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as external

```

To connect to **the same AS** using the `peer-group` command, modify your configuration similar to the following:

```

router bgp 500
neighbor swp1 interface
neighbor IBGP peer-group
neighbor IBGP remote-as internal
neighbor swp1 peer-group IBGP
neighbor 192.0.2.3 peer-group IBGP
neighbor 192.0.2.4 peer-group IBGP

```

To connect to a **different AS** using the `peer-group` command, modify your configuration similar to the following:

```
router bgp 500
neighbor swp2 interface
neighbor EBGP peer-group
neighbor EBGP remote-as external
neighbor 192.0.2.2 peer-group EBGP
neighbor swp2 peer-group EBGP
neighbor 192.0.2.4 peer-group EBGP
```

## Configure MD5-enabled BGP Neighbors

The following sections outline how to configure an MD5-enabled bgp neighbor, either using the Quagga CLI vtysh, or by manually editing the configuration files. Each process assumes that Quagga is used as the routing platform, and consists of two switches (AS 65000 and AS 65001), connected by the link 192.0.2.100/30, with the following configurations:

### **switch1**

```
quagga# show ip bgp sum
BGP router identifier 192.0.2.5, local AS number 65000
RIB entries 0, using 0 bytes of memory
Peers 1, using 6652 bytes of memory
Neighbor V AS MsgRcvd MsgSent TblVer InQ OutQ Up/Down State/PfxRcd
192.0.2.101 4 65001 2 3 0 0 0 00:00:04 0
Total number of neighbors 1
```

### **switch2**

```
quagga# show ip bgp sum
BGP router identifier 192.0.2.2, local AS number 65001
RIB entries 0, using 0 bytes of memory
Peers 1, using 6652 bytes of memory
Neighbor V AS MsgRcvd MsgSent TblVer InQ OutQ Up/Down State/PfxRcd
192.0.2.102 4 65000 2 3 0 0 0 00:00:04 0
Total number of neighbors 1
```

## Manually configure an MD5-enabled BGP Neighbor

1. SSH into switch1.
2. Open `Quagga.conf` in a text editor.
3. Add the line `neighbor 192.0.2.102 password mypassword` below the BGP configuration lines, and save the file:

### switch1

```
router bgp 65001
bgp router-id 192.0.2.5
neighbor 192.0.2.102 remote-as 65000
192.0.2.102 password mypassword
```

4. Restart Quagga:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ systemctl restart quagga
```



This will bring down any other layer 3 sessions and affect network traffic.

5. Confirm the configuration has been implemented with the `cl-bgp summary` command:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo cl-bgp summary
BGP router identifier 192.0.2.5, local AS number 65000
RIB entries 0, using 0 bytes of memory
Peers 1, using 6652 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V     AS MsgRcvd MsgSent      TblVer  InQ OutQ Up
/Down  State/PfxRcd
192.0.2.101      4 65001       200        227          0      0      0 00:00:
03                0

Total number of neighbors 1
```

6. SSH into switch2.
7. Open `Quagga.conf` in a text editor.
8. Add the line `neighbor 192.0.2.101 password mypassword` below the BGP configuration lines, and save the file:

```
router bgp 65000
bgp router-id 192.0.2.2
neighbor 192.0.2.101 remote-as 65001
neighbor 192.0.2.101 password mypassword
```

9. Restart Quagga:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ systemctl restart quagga
```



This will bring down any other layer 3 sessions and affect network traffic.

10. Confirm the configuration has been implemented with the `cl-bgp summary` command:

```
BGP router identifier 192.0.2.2, local AS number 65001
RIB entries 0, using 0 bytes of memory
Peers 1, using 6652 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V     AS MsgRcvd MsgSent      TblVer  InQ OutQ Up
/Down  State/PfxRcd
192.0.2.102      4 65000       255       282           0      0    0 00:06:
29               0

Total number of neighbors 1
```

## **Configure an MD5-enabled BGP Neighbor using vtysh**

1. SSH into switch1.
2. Start the vtysh CLI:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo vtysh
```

3. Run the following commands in the Quagga CLI, replacing `mypassword` as appropriate:

```
quagga# configure terminal
quagga(config)# router bgp 65001
quagga(config-router)# neighbor 192.0.2.102 password mypassword
```

4. SSH into switch2.
5. Start the vtysh CLI:

```
cumulus@switch2:~$ sudo vtysh
```

6. Run the following commands in the Quagga CLI, replacing `mypassword` as appropriate:

```
quagga# configure terminal
quagga(config)# router bgp 65000
quagga(config-router)# neighbor 192.0.2.101 password mypassword
```

7. When both sides are configured properly, BGP should reestablish automatically. Confirm that this is the case using the `show ip bgp summary` command. The output below is from switch1:

```

quagga# show ip bgp summary
BGP router identifier 192.0.2.5, local AS number 65000
RIB entries 0, using 0 bytes of memory
Peers 1, using 6652 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V     AS MsgRcvd MsgSent   TblVer  InQ OutQ Up
/Down  State/PfxRcd
192.0.2.101      4 65001       257       284        0      0      0 00:08:
11                0

Total number of neighbors 1

```

- Once Quagga is configured correctly, run the `write memory` command on each switch to persist the changes after Quagga is next restarted.

## Configure BGP TTL Security

The steps below cover how to configure BGP ttl security on Cumulus Linux, using a leaf (leaf01), and spine (spine01) for the example output:

- SSH into leaf01.
- Run the Quagga CLI vtysh:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo vtysh
```

- Configure leaf01 for ttl security:

```

leaf01# configure terminal
leaf01(config)# router bgp 65000
leaf01(config-router)# neighbor [spine01-IP] ttl-security hops
[value]

```

- SSH into spine01.
- Run the Quagga CLI vtysh:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ sudo vtysh
```

- Configure spine01:

```

spine01# configure terminal
spine01(config)# router bgp 65001
spine01(config-router)# neighbor [leaf01-IP] ttl-security hops
[value]

```

BGP ttl security is now configured. To review the resulting configuration, run the `show ip bgp neighbor` command.

Example `show ip bgp neighbor` output

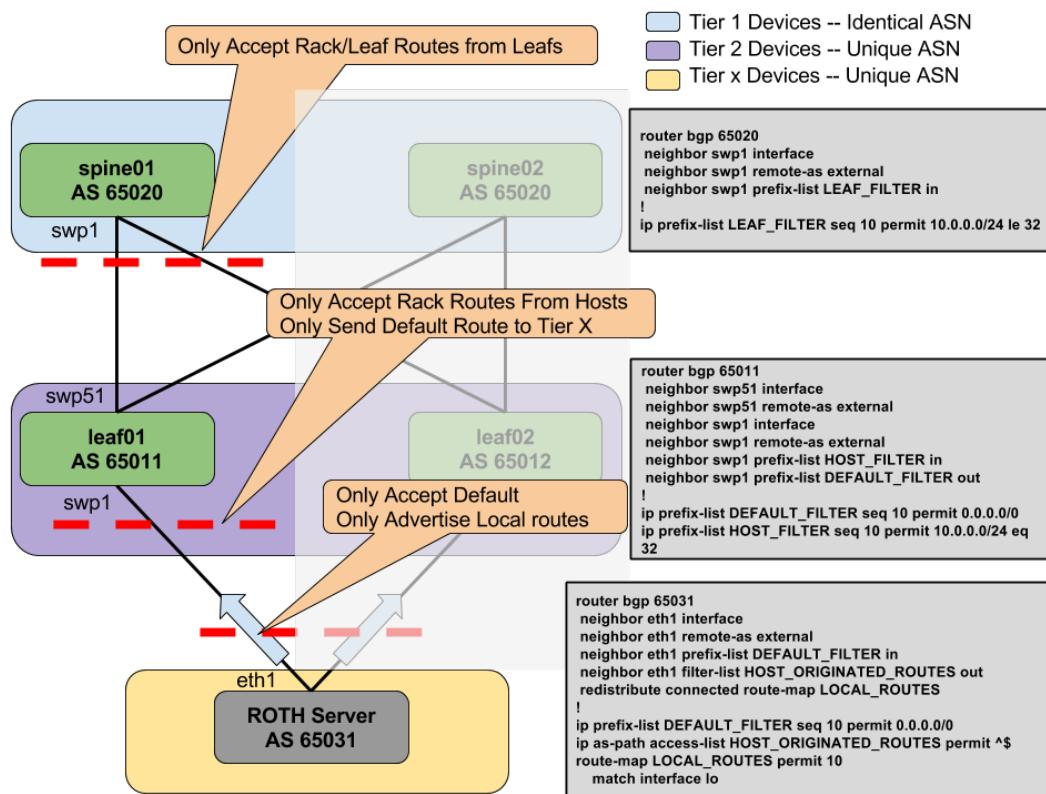
```
spine01#show ip bgp neighbor
BGP neighbor is 10.1.2.1, remote AS 65001, local AS 65002, external
link
Hostname: leaf02
BGP version 4, remote router ID 1.1.1.2
BGP state = Established, up for 00:01:23
Last read 00:00:02, Last write 00:01:23
Hold time is 9, keepalive interval is 3 seconds
Neighbor capabilities:
 4 Byte AS: advertised and received
AddPath:
IPv4 Unicast: RX advertised IPv4 Unicast and received
Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
Hostname Capability: advertised and received
Graceful Restart Capabilty: advertised and received
Remote Restart timer is 120 seconds
Address families by peer:
none
Graceful restart informations:
End-of-RIB send: IPv4 Unicast
End-of-RIB received: IPv4 Unicast
Message statistics:
Inq depth is 0
Outq depth is 0
Sent Rcvd
Opens: 32 2
Notifications: 31 0
Updates: 2 2
Keepalives: 51 49
Route Refresh: 0 0
Capability: 0 0
Total: 116 53
Minimum time between advertisement runs is 0 seconds
For address family: IPv4 Unicast
Update group 2, subgroup 2
Packet Queue length 0
Community attribute sent to this neighbor(both)
0 accepted prefixes
Connections established 2; dropped 1
Last reset 00:06:35, due to NOTIFICATION sent (Hold Timer Expired)
External BGP neighbor may be up to 1 hops away.
Local host: 10.1.2.2, Local port: 53059
Foreign host: 10.1.2.1, Foreign port: 179
Nexthop: 10.1.2.2
Nexthop global: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2f
```

```
Nexthop local: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2f
BGP connection: shared network
BGP Connect Retry Timer in Seconds: 10
Read thread: on Write thread: off
```

## Configuration Tips

### BGP Advertisement Best Practices

Limiting the exchange of routing information at various parts in the network is a best practice you should follow. The following image illustrates one way you can do so in a typical Clos architecture:



### Utilizing Multiple Routing Tables and Forwarding

You can run multiple routing tables (one for in-band/data plane traffic and one for out-of-band/management plane traffic) on the same switch using [management VRF](#) (see page 544) (multiple routing tables and forwarding).

### Additional Default Settings

Other default settings not discussed in detail in this chapter include the following; they're all enabled by default:

- `bgp deterministic-med`, which ensures path ordering no longer impacts bestpath selection.
- `bgp show-hostname`, which displays the hostname in show command output.
- `bgp network import-check`, which enables the advertising of the BGP network in IGP.

## Configuring BGP Neighbor maximum-prefixes

The maximum number of route announcements, or prefixes, allowed by a BGP neighbor can be configured using the `maximum-prefixes` command in the CLI. Replace the `PEER` input with the relevant peer, and replace `NUMBER` with the maximum number of prefixes desired:

```
quagga(config)# neighbor PEER maximum-prefix NUMBER
```

## Troubleshooting BGP

The most common starting point for troubleshooting BGP is to view the summary of neighbors connected to and some information about these connections. A sample output of this command is as follows:

```
R7# show ip bgp summary
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.21, local AS number 65020 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 15
RIB entries 17, using 2040 bytes of memory
Peers 6, using 97 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 56 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V     AS MsgRcvd MsgSent      TblVer  InQ OutQ Up/Down
State/PfxRcd
leaf01(swp1)    4 65011   2684   2693        0       0     0 02:14:04
2
leaf02(swp2)    4 65012   2684   2694        0       0     0 02:14:05
2
leaf03(swp3)    4 65013   2684   2693        0       0     0 02:14:04
2
leaf04(swp4)    4 65014   2684   2694        0       0     0 02:14:05
2
edge01(swp29)   4 65051   8058   8054        0       0     0 02:14:06
3
edge01(swp30)   4 65051   8055   8052        0       0     0 02:14:04
3

Total number of neighbors 6
```



You can determine whether the sessions above are iBGP or eBGP sessions by looking at the ASNs.

It is also useful to view the routing table as defined by BGP:

```
R7# show ip bgp
BGP table version is 15, local router ID is 10.0.0.21
```

```

Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =
multipath,
                i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

      Network          Next Hop            Metric LocPrf Weight Path
*= 0.0.0.0          swp30                  0  65051  i
*>                 swp29                  0  65051  i
*> 10.0.0.1/32     swp29                  0  65051  65001 i
*=                 swp30                  0  65051  65001 i
*> 10.0.0.11/32    swp1       0          0  65011  i
*> 10.0.0.12/32    swp2       0          0  65012  i
*> 10.0.0.13/32    swp3       0          0  65013  i
*> 10.0.0.14/32    swp4       0          0  65014  i
*> 10.0.0.21/32    0.0.0.0      0          0          32768 i
*= 10.0.0.51/32    swp30      0          0  65051  i
*>                 swp29      0          0  65051  i
*> 172.16.1.0/24   swp1       0          0  65011  i
*=                 swp2       0          0  65012  i
*> 172.16.3.0/24   swp3       0          0  65013  i
*=                 swp4       0          0  65014  i

Total number of prefixes 10

```

A more detailed breakdown of a specific neighbor can be obtained using `show ip bgp neighbor <neighbor ip address>`:

```

R7# show ip bgp neighbor 10.0.0.2
BGP neighbor is 10.0.0.2, remote AS 65000, local AS 65000, internal
link
BGP version 4, remote router ID 0.0.0.5
BGP state = Established, up for 00:14:03
Last read 14:52:31, hold time is 18, keepalive interval is 6 seconds
Neighbor capabilities:
  4 Byte AS: advertised and received
  Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
  Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
Message statistics:
  Inq depth is 0
  Outq depth is 0
                    Sent        Rcvd
  Opens:           1          1
  Notifications: 0          0
  Updates:         1          3
  Keepalives:      16         15
  Route Refresh:   0          0
  Capability:      0          0
  Total:           18         19
Minimum time between advertisement runs is 5 seconds

```

```

For address family: IPv4 Unicast
  NEXT_HOP is always this router
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor(both)
    3 accepted prefixes

  Connections established 1; dropped 0
  Last reset never
  Local host: 10.0.0.1, Local port: 35258
  Foreign host: 10.0.0.2, Foreign port: 179
  Nexthop: 10.0.0.1
  Nexthop global: fe80::202:ff:fe00:19
  Nexthop local: ::

  BGP connection: non shared network
  Read thread: on  Write thread: off
  
```

To see the details of a specific route such as from whom it was received, to whom it was sent, and so forth, use the `show ip bgp <ip address/prefix>` command:

```

R7# show ip bgp 192.0.2.0
BGP routing table entry for 192.0.2.0/24
Paths: (2 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Local
    10.0.0.2 (metric 1) from 10.0.0.2 (0.0.0.10)
      Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, internal, best
      Originator: 0.0.0.10, Cluster list: 0.0.0.5
      Last update: Mon Jul  8 10:12:17 2013
  Local
    192.0.2.2 (metric 1) from 192.0.2.2 (0.0.0.10)
      Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, internal
      Originator: 0.0.0.10, Cluster list: 0.0.0.6
      Last update: Mon Jul  8 10:12:17 2013
  
```

This shows that the routing table prefix seen by BGP is 192.0.2.0/24, that this route was not advertised to any neighbor, and that it was heard by two neighbors, 10.0.0.2 and 192.0.2.2.

Here is another output of the same command, on a different node in the network:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh -c 'sh ip bgp 192.0.2.0'
BGP routing table entry for 192.0.2.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
    10.0.0.1 192.0.2.21 192.0.2.22
  Local, (Received from a RR-client)
    203.0.113.1 (metric 1) from 203.0.113.1 (0.0.0.10)
      Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, internal, best
      Last update: Mon Jul  8 09:07:41 2013
  
```

## Debugging Tip: Logging Neighbor State Changes

It is very useful to log the changes that a neighbor goes through to troubleshoot any issues associated with that neighbor. This is done using the `log-neighbor-changes` command, which is enabled by default:

```
R7(config-router)# bgp log-neighbor-changes
```

The output is sent to the specified log file, usually `/var/log/quagga/bgpd.log`, and looks like this:

```
2016/07/08 10:12:06.572827 BGP: %NOTIFICATION: sent to neighbor 10.0.0.2 6/3 (Cease/Peer Unconfigured) 0 bytes
2016/07/08 10:12:06.572954 BGP: Notification sent to neighbor 10.0.0.2 : type 6/3
2016/07/08 10:12:16.682071 BGP: %ADJCHANGE: neighbor 192.0.2.2 Up
2016/07/08 10:12:16.682660 BGP: %ADJCHANGE: neighbor 10.0.0.2 Up
```

## Troubleshooting Link-local Addresses

To verify that quagga learned the neighboring link-local IPv6 address via the IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements on a given interface, use the `show interface <if-name>` command. If `ipv6 nd suppress-ra` isn't enabled on both ends of the interface, then `Neighbor address(s):` should have the other end's link-local address. That is the address that BGP would use when BGP is enabled on that interface.



IPv6 route advertisements (RAs) are automatically enabled on an interface with IPv6 addresses, so the step `no ipv6 nd suppress-ra` is no longer needed for BGP unnumbered. The timer interval for RAs remains 600s, which may need to be adjusted to bring up peers quickly.

Use vtysh to verify the configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

R7# show interface swp1
Interface swp1 is up, line protocol is up
  Link ups:      0    last: (never)
  Link downs:    0    last: (never)
  PTM status: disabled
  vrf: Default-IP-Routing-Table
  index 4 metric 0 mtu 1500
  flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  HWaddr: 44:38:39:00:00:5c
  inet6 fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c/64
  ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
```

```
ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
ND router advertisements are sent every 10 seconds
ND router advertisements lifetime tracks ra-interval
ND router advertisement default router preference is medium
Hosts use stateless autoconfig for addresses.
Neighbor address(s):
inet6 fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b/128
```

Instead of the IPv6 address, the peering interface name is displayed in the `show ip bgp summary` command and wherever else applicable:

```
R7# show ip bgp summary
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.21, local AS number 65020 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 15
RIB entries 17, using 2040 bytes of memory
Peers 6, using 97 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 56 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V   AS MsgRcvd MsgSent      TblVer  InQ OutQ Up/Down
State/PfxRcd
leaf01(swp1)     4 65011  2834    2843        0       0     0 02:21:35
2
leaf02(swp2)     4 65012  2834    2844        0       0     0 02:21:36
2
leaf03(swp3)     4 65013  2834    2843        0       0     0 02:21:35
2
leaf04(swp4)     4 65014  2834    2844        0       0     0 02:21:36
2
edge01(swp29)   4 65051  8509    8505        0       0     0 02:21:37
3
edge01(swp30)   4 65051  8506    8503        0       0     0 02:21:35
3

Total number of neighbors 6
```

Most of the show commands can take the interface name instead of the IP address, if that level of specificity is needed:

```
R7# show ip bgp neighbors ?
<cr>
A.B.C.D  Neighbor to display information about
WORD      Neighbor on bgp configured interface
X:X::X:X  Neighbor to display information about
json      JavaScript Object Notation
```

```
R7# show ip bgp neighbors swp1
```

```

BGP neighbor on swp1: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, remote AS 65011, local
AS 65020, external link
Hostname: leaf01
Member of peer-group fabric for session parameters
BGP version 4, remote router ID 10.0.0.11
BGP state = Established, up for 02:23:10
Last read 00:00:01, Last write 02:23:09
Hold time is 9, keepalive interval is 3 seconds
Neighbor capabilities:
  4 Byte AS: advertised and received
AddPath:
  IPv4 Unicast: RX advertised IPv4 Unicast and received
  Extended nexthop: advertised and received
    Address families by peer:
      IPv4 Unicast
      Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
      Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
      Hostname Capability: advertised and received
      Graceful Restart Capabilty: advertised and received
        Remote Restart timer is 120 seconds
    Address families by peer:
      none
Graceful restart informations:
  End-of-RIB send: IPv4 Unicast
  End-of-RIB received: IPv4 Unicast
Message statistics:
  Inq depth is 0
  Outq depth is 0
          Sent          Rcvd
  Opens:           1           1
  Notifications:  0           0
  Updates:         10          2
  Keepalives:      2864        2863
  Route Refresh:   0           0
  Capability:     0           0
  Total:          2875        2866
Minimum time between advertisement runs is 0 seconds
For address family: IPv4 Unicast
  fabric peer-group member
  Update group 1, subgroup 1
  Packet Queue length 0
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor(both)
  Inbound path policy configured
  Outbound path policy configured
  Incoming update prefix filter list is *dc-spine
  Outgoing update prefix filter list is *dc-spine
  2 accepted prefixes
  Connections established 1; dropped 0
  Last reset never
Local host: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, Local port: 43327
Foreign host: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, Foreign port: 179
Nexthop: 10.0.0.21

```

```
Nexthop global: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c
Nexthop local: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c
BGP connection: shared network
Read thread: on Write thread: off
```

## Enabling Read-only Mode

You can enable read-only mode for when the BGP process restarts or when the BGP process is cleared using `clear ip bgp *`. When enabled, read-only mode begins as soon as the first peer reaches its *established* state and a timer for `<max-delay>` seconds is started.

While in read-only mode, BGP doesn't run best-path or generate any updates to its peers. This mode continues until:

- All the configured peers, except the shutdown peers, have sent an explicit EOR (End-Of-RIB) or an implicit EOR. The first keep-alive after BGP has reached the established state is considered an implicit EOR. If the `<establish-wait>` option is specified, then BGP will wait for peers to reach the established state from the start of the `update-delay` until the `<establish-wait>` period is over; that is, the minimum set of established peers for which EOR is expected would be peers established during the `establish-wait` window, not necessarily all the configured neighbors.
- The `max-delay` period is over.

Upon reaching either of these two conditions, BGP resumes the decision process and generates updates to its peers.

To enable read-only mode:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo bgp update-delay <max-delay in seconds>
[<establish-wait in seconds>]
```

The default `<max-delay>` is 0 — the feature is off by default.

Use output from `show ip bgp summary` for information about the state of the update delay.

This feature can be useful in reducing CPU/network usage as BGP restarts/clears. It's particularly useful in topologies where BGP learns a prefix from many peers. Intermediate best paths are possible for the same prefix as peers get established and start receiving updates at different times. This feature is also valuable if the network has a high number of such prefixes.

## Applying a Route Map for Route Updates

You can apply a route map on route updates from BGP to Zebra. All the applicable match operations are allowed, such as match on prefix, next-hop, communities, and so forth. Set operations for this attach-point are limited to metric and next-hop only. Any operation of this feature does not affect BGPs internal RIB.

Both IPv4 and IPv6 address families are supported. Route maps work on multi-paths as well. However, the metric setting is based on the best path only.

To apply a route map for route updates:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo cl-bgp table-map <route-map-name>
```

## Protocol Tuning

### Converging Quickly On Link Failures

In the Clos topology, we recommend that you only use interface addresses to set up peering sessions. This means that when the link fails, the BGP session is torn down immediately, triggering route updates to propagate through the network quickly. This requires the following commands be enabled for all links: `link-detect` and `ttl-security hops <hops>`. `ttl-security hops` specifies how many hops away the neighbor is. For example, in a Clos topology, every peer is at most 1 hop away.



See Caveats and Errata below for information regarding `ttl-security hops`.

Here is an example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

R7# configure terminal
R7(config)# interface swp1
R7(config-if)# link-detect
R7(config-if)# exit
R7(config)# router bgp 65000
R7(config-router)# neighbor 10.0.0.2 ttl-security hops 1
```

### Converging Quickly On Soft Failures

It is possible that the link is up, but the neighboring BGP process is hung or has crashed. If a BGP process crashes, Quagga's `watchquagga` daemon, which monitors the various `quagga` daemons, will attempt to restart it. If the process is also hung, `watchquagga` will attempt to restart the process. BGP itself has a `keepalive` timer that is exchanged between neighbors. By default, this `keepalive` timer is set to 3 seconds. This time can be increased to a higher number, which decreases CPU load, especially in the presence of a lot of neighbors. `keepalive-time` is the periodicity with which the `keepalive` message is sent. `hold-time` specifies how many `keepalive` messages can be lost before the connection is considered invalid. It is usually set to 3 times the `keepalive` time, so it defaults to 9 seconds. Here is an example of changing these timers:

```
R7(config-router)# neighbor 10.0.0.2 timers 10 30
```

You can make these the default for all BGP neighbors using a different command:

```
R7(config-router)# timers bgp 10 30
```

The following display snippet shows that the default values have been modified for this neighbor:

```
R7(config-router)# do show ip bgp neighbor 10.0.0.2
BGP neighbor is 10.0.0.2, remote AS 65000, local AS 65000, internal
link
  BGP version 4, remote router ID 0.0.0.5
  BGP state = Established, up for 05:53:59
  Last read 14:53:25, hold time is 18, keepalive interval is 3 seconds
  Configured hold time is 9, keepalive interval is 3 seconds
  ....
```

-  When you're in a configuration mode, such as when you're configuring BGP parameters, you can run any show command by adding `do` to the original command. For example, `do show ip bgp neighbor` was shown above. Under a non-configuration mode, you'd simply run:

```
R7# show ip bgp neighbor 10.0.0.2
```

## Reconnecting Quickly

A BGP process attempts to connect to a peer after a failure (or on startup) every `connect-time` seconds. By default, this is 10 seconds. To modify this value, use:

```
R7(config-router)# neighbor 10.0.0.2 timers connect 30
```

This command has to be specified per each neighbor, peer-group doesn't support this option in quagga.

## Advertisement Interval

BGP by default chooses stability over fast convergence. This is very useful when routing for the Internet. For example, unlike link-state protocols, BGP typically waits for a duration of `advertisement-interval` seconds between sending consecutive updates to a neighbor. This ensures that an unstable neighbor flapping routes won't be propagated throughout the network. By default, this is set to 0 seconds for both eBGP and iBGP sessions, which allows for very fast convergence. You can modify this as follows:

```
R7(config-router)# neighbor 10.0.0.2 advertisement-interval 5
```

The following output shows the modified value:

```
R7(config-router)# do show ip bgp neighbor 10.0.0.2
BGP neighbor is 10.0.0.2, remote AS 65000, local AS 65000, internal
link
  BGP version 4, remote router ID 0.0.0.5
  BGP state = Established, up for 06:01:49
  Last read 14:53:15, hold time is 18, keepalive interval is 6 seconds
```

```

Configured hold time is 9, keepalive interval is 3 seconds
Neighbor capabilities:
  4 Byte AS: advertised and received
  Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
  Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
Message statistics:
  Inq depth is 0
  Outq depth is 0
      Sent          Rcvd
  Opens:           1            1
  Notifications:  0            0
  Updates:        1            3
  Keepalives:     363          362
  Route Refresh:  0            0
  Capability:    0            0
  Total:          365          366
Minimum time between advertisement runs is 5 seconds
....
```

 This command is not supported with peer-groups.

See this [IETF draft](#) for more details on the use of this value.

## Configuration Files

- /etc/quagga/bgpd.conf

## Useful Links

- Bidirectional forwarding detection (see page 502) (BFD) and BGP
- Wikipedia entry for BGP (includes list of useful RFCs)
- Quagga online documentation for BGP (may not be up to date)
- IETF draft discussing BGP use within data centers

## Caveats and Errata

### ttl-security Issue

Enabling `ttl-security` does not cause the hardware to be programmed with the relevant information. This means that frames will come up to the CPU and be dropped there. It is recommended that you use the `cl-acltool` command to explicitly add the relevant entry to hardware.

For example, you can configure a file, like `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/01control_plane_bgp.rules`, with a rule like this for TTL:

```

INGRESS_INTF = swp1
INGRESS_CHAIN = INPUT, FORWARD
```

```
[iptables]
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport bgp
-m ttl --ttl 255 POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 100
0
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport bgp DROP
```



For more information about ACLs and `c1-acltool`, see [Netfilter \(ACLs\)](#) (see page 98).

## Bidirectional Forwarding Detection - BFD

*Bidirectional Forwarding Detection* (BFD) provides low overhead and rapid detection of failures in the paths between two network devices. It provides a unified mechanism for link detection over all media and protocol layers. Use BFD to detect failures for IPv4 and IPv6 single or multihop paths between any two network devices, including unidirectional path failure detection.



Cumulus Linux does not support demand mode in BFD.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Using BFD Multihop Routed Paths (see page 502)
- BFD Parameters (see page 503)
- Configuring BFD (see page 503)
  - BFD in BGP (see page 503)
  - BFD in OSPF (see page 505)
  - OSPF Show Commands (see page 505)
  - Scripts (see page 507)
- Troubleshooting BFD (see page 507)

### Using BFD Multihop Routed Paths

BFD multihop sessions are built over arbitrary paths between two systems, which results in some complexity that does not exist for single hop sessions. Here are some best practices for using multihop paths:

- **Spoofing:** To avoid spoofing with multihop paths, configure `max_hop_cnt` (maximum hop count) for each peer, which limits the number of hops for a BFD session. All BFD packets exceeding the max hop count will be dropped.
- **Demultiplexing:** Since multihop BFD sessions can take arbitrary paths, demultiplex the initial BFD packet based on the source/destination IP address pair. Use Quagga, which monitors connectivity to the peer, to determine the source/destination IP address pairs.

Multihop BFD sessions are supported for both IPv4 and IPv6 peers. See below for more details.

## BFD Parameters

You can configure the following BFD parameters for both IPv4 and IPv6 sessions:

- The required minimum interval between the received BFD control packets.
- The minimum interval for transmitting BFD control packets.
- The detection time multiplier.

## Configuring BFD

You configure BFD one of two ways: by specifying the configuration in the [PTM topology.dot file \(see page 229\)](#), or using [Quagga \(see page 436\)](#).

The Quagga CLI can track IPv4 and IPv6 peer connectivity — both single hop and multihop, and both link-local IPv6 peers and global IPv6 peers — using BFD sessions without needing the `topology.dot` file. Use Quagga to register multihop peers with PTM and BFD as well as for monitoring the connectivity to the remote BGP multihop peer. Quagga can dynamically register and unregister both IPv4 and IPv6 peers with BFD when the BFD-enabled peer connectivity is established or de-established, respectively. Also, you can configure BFD parameters for each BGP or OSPF peer using Quagga.



The BFD parameter configured in the topology file is given higher precedence over the client-configured BFD parameters for a BFD session that has been created by both topology file and client (Quagga).

## BFD in BGP

For Quagga when using **BGP**, neighbors are registered and de-registered with PTM (see page 229) dynamically when you enable BFD in BGP:

```
quagga(config)# router bgp X
quagga(config-router)# neighbor <neighbor ip> bfd
```

You can configure BFD parameters for each BGP neighbor. For example:

### BFD in BGP

```
quagga(config-router)# neighbor <neighbor ip> bfd
<2-255> Detect Multiplier
<cr>
quagga(config-router)# neighbor <neighbor ip> bfd 4
<50-60000> Required min receive interval
quagga(config-router)# neighbor <neighbor ip> bfd 4 400
<50-60000> Desired min transmit interval
quagga(config-router)# neighbor <neighbor ip> bfd 4 400 400
<cr>
quagga(config-router)# neighbor <neighbor ip> bfd 4 400 400
```

To see neighbor information in BGP, including BFD status, run `show bgp neighbors <IP address>`.

### Show BGP Neighbor

```

quagga# show bgp neighbors 12.12.12.1
BGP neighbor is 12.12.12.1, remote AS 65001, local AS 65000, external
link
Hostname: r1
  BGP version 4, remote router ID 0.0.0.1
  BGP state = Established, up for 00:01:39
  Last read 00:00:39, Last write 00:01:09
  Hold time is 180, keepalive interval is 60 seconds
  Neighbor capabilities:
    4 Byte AS: advertised and received
    AddPath:
      IPv4 Unicast: RX advertised and received
      Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
      Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
      Hostname Capability: advertised and received
      Graceful Restart Capabilty: advertised and received
        Remote Restart timer is 120 seconds
      Address families by peer:
        none
    Graceful restart informations:
      End-of-RIB send: IPv4 Unicast
      End-of-RIB received: IPv4 Unicast
    Message statistics:
      Inq depth is 0
      Outq depth is 0
          Sent          Rcvd
      Opens:           1           1
      Notifications:  0           0
      Updates:         2           2
      Keepalives:      2           1
      Route Refresh:   0           0
      Capability:     0           0
      Total:          5           4
    Minimum time between advertisement runs is 30 seconds
    Update source is 12.12.12.7

    For address family: IPv4 Unicast
      Update group 1, subgroup 1
      Packet Queue length 0
      NEXT_HOP is always this router
      Community attribute sent to this neighbor(both)
      1 accepted prefixes
      Connections established 1; dropped 0
      Last reset never
      External BGP neighbor may be up to 2 hops away.
    Local host: 12.12.12.7, Local port: 34274
    Foreign host: 12.12.12.1, Foreign port: 179
  
```

```

Nexthop: 12.12.12.7
Nexthop global: ::

Nexthop local: ::

BGP connection: non shared network
Read thread: on Write thread: off
BFD: Type: multi hop
    Detect Mul: 3, Min Rx interval: 300, Min Tx interval: 300
    Status: Down, Last update: 0:00:00:13

```

## BFD in OSPF

For Quagga using **OSPF**, neighbors are registered and de-registered dynamically with [PTM \(see page 229\)](#) when you enable or disable BFD in OSPF. A neighbor is registered with BFD when two-way adjacency is established and deregistered when adjacency goes down if the BFD is enabled on the interface. The BFD configuration is per interface and any IPv4 and IPv6 neighbors discovered on that interface inherit the configuration.

### BFD in OSPF

```

quagga(config)# interface X
quagga(config-if)# ipv6 ospf6 bfd
    <2-255> Detect Multiplier
    <cr>
quagga(config-if)# ipv6 ospf6 bfd 5
    <50-60000> Required min receive interval
quagga(config-if)# ipv6 ospf6 bfd 5 500
    <50-60000> Desired min transmit interval
quagga(config-if)# ipv6 ospf6 bfd 5 500 500
    <cr>
quagga(config-if)# ipv6 ospf6 bfd 5 500 500

```

## OSPF Show Commands

The BFD lines at the end of each code block shows the corresponding IPv6 or IPv4 OSPF interface or neighbor information.

### Show IPv6 OSPF Interface

```

quagga# show ipv6 ospf6 interface swp2s0
swp2s0 is up, type BROADCAST
    Interface ID: 4
    Internet Address:
        inet : 11.0.0.21/30
        inet6: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:6c8e/64
    Instance ID 0, Interface MTU 1500 (autodetect: 1500)
    MTU mismatch detection: enabled
    Area ID 0.0.0.0, Cost 10
    State PointToPoint, Transmit Delay 1 sec, Priority 1

```

```

Timer intervals configured:
Hello 10, Dead 40, Retransmit 5
DR: 0.0.0.0 BDR: 0.0.0.0
Number of I/F scoped LSAs is 2
  0 Pending LSAs for LSUpdate in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]
  0 Pending LSAs for LSAck in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]
BFD: Detect Mul: 3, Min Rx interval: 300, Min Tx interval: 300
  
```

### Show IPv6 OSPF Neighbor

```

quagga# show ipv6 ospf6 neighbor detail
Neighbor 0.0.0.4%swp2s0
  Area 0.0.0.0 via interface swp2s0 (ifindex 4)
  His IfIndex: 3 Link-local address: fe80::202:ff:fe00:a
  State Full for a duration of 02:32:33
  His choice of DR/BDR 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0, Priority 1
  DbDesc status: Slave SeqNum: 0x76000000
  Summary-List: 0 LSAs
  Request-List: 0 LSAs
  Retrans-List: 0 LSAs
  0 Pending LSAs for DbDesc in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]
  0 Pending LSAs for LSReq in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]
  0 Pending LSAs for LSUpdate in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]
  0 Pending LSAs for LSAck in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]
  BFD: Type: single hop
    Detect Mul: 3, Min Rx interval: 300, Min Tx interval: 300
    Status: Up, Last update: 0:00:00:20
  
```

### Show IPv4 OSPF Interface

```

quagga# show ip ospf interface swp2s0
swp2s0 is up
  ifindex 4, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,
MULTICAST>
  Internet Address 11.0.0.21/30, Area 0.0.0.0
  MTU mismatch detection:enabled
  Router ID 0.0.0.3, Network Type POINTOPOINT, Cost: 10
  Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State Point-To-Point, Priority 1
  No designated router on this network
  No backup designated router on this network
  Multicast group memberships: OSPFAllRouters
  Timer intervals configured, Hello 10s, Dead 40s, Wait 40s,
Retransmit 5
  Hello due in 7.056s
  Neighbor Count is 1, Adjacent neighbor count is 1
  BFD: Detect Mul: 5, Min Rx interval: 500, Min Tx interval: 500
  
```

### Show IPv4 OSPF Neighbor

```

quagga# show ip ospf neighbor detail
Neighbor 0.0.0.4, interface address 11.0.0.22
  In the area 0.0.0.0 via interface swp2s0
  Neighbor priority is 1, State is Full, 5 state changes
  Most recent state change statistics:
    Progressive change 3h59m04s ago
  DR is 0.0.0.0, BDR is 0.0.0.0
  Options 2 *|-|-|-|-|E|*
  Dead timer due in 38.501s
  Database Summary List 0
  Link State Request List 0
  Link State Retransmission List 0
  Thread Inactivity Timer on
  Thread Database Description Retransmission off
  Thread Link State Request Retransmission on
  Thread Link State Update Retransmission on
  BFD: Type: single hop
    Detect Mul: 5, Min Rx interval: 500, Min Tx interval: 500
    Status: Down, Last update: 0:00:01:29

```

## Scripts

`ptmd` executes scripts at `/etc/ptm.d/bfd-sess-down` and `/etc/ptm.d/bfd-sess-up` for when BFD sessions go down or up, running `bfd-sess-down` when a BFD session goes down and running `bfd-sess-up` when a BFD session goes up.

You should modify these default scripts as needed.

## Troubleshooting BFD

To troubleshoot BFD, use `ptmctl -b`. For more information, see [Prescriptive Topology Manager - PTM](#) (see page 229).

## Equal Cost Multipath Load Sharing - Hardware ECMP

Cumulus Linux supports hardware-based [equal cost multipath](#) (ECMP) load sharing. ECMP is enabled by default in Cumulus Linux. Load sharing occurs automatically for all routes with multiple next hops installed. ECMP load sharing supports both IPv4 and IPv6 routes.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Understanding Equal Cost Routing (see page 508)
- Understanding ECMP Hashing (see page 508)
  - Using `cl-ecmpcalc` to Determine the Hash Result (see page 509)
  - `cl-ecmpcalc` Limitations (see page 510)

- ECMP Hash Buckets (see page 510)
- Resilient Hashing (see page 511)
  - Resilient Hash Buckets (see page 512)
  - Removing Next Hops (see page 512)
  - Adding Next Hops (see page 514)
  - Configuring Resilient Hashing (see page 514)
- Caveats (see page 515)

## ***Understanding Equal Cost Routing***

ECMP operates only on equal cost routes in the Linux routing table.

In this example, the 10.1.1.0/24 route has two possible next hops that have been installed in the routing table:

```
$ ip route show 10.1.1.0/24
10.1.1.0/24 proto zebra metric 20
nexthop via 192.168.1.1 dev swp1 weight 1 onlink
nexthop via 192.168.2.1 dev swp2 weight 1 onlink
```

For routes to be considered equal they must:

- Originate from the same routing protocol. Routes from different sources are not considered equal. For example, a static route and an OSPF route are not considered for ECMP load sharing.
- Have equal cost. If two routes from the same protocol are unequal, only the best route is installed in the routing table.



As of Cumulus Linux 3.0, the BGP `maximum-paths` setting is enabled, so multiple routes are installed by default. See the [ECMP section \(see page 472\)](#) of the BGP chapter for more information.

## ***Understanding ECMP Hashing***

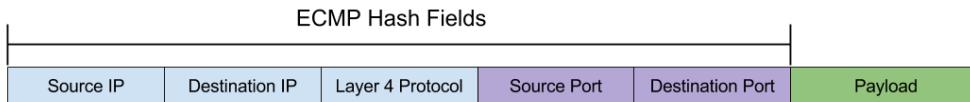
Once multiple routes are installed in the routing table, a hash is used to determine which path a packet follows.

Cumulus Linux hashes on the following fields:

- IP protocol
- Ingress interface
- Source IPv4 or IPv6 address
- Destination IPv4 or IPv6 address

For TCP/UDP frames, Cumulus Linux also hashes on:

- Source port
- Destination port



To prevent out of order packets, ECMP hashing is done on a per-flow basis, which means that all packets with the same source and destination IP addresses and the same source and destination ports always hash to the same next hop. ECMP hashing does not keep a record of flow states.

ECMP hashing does not keep a record of packets that have hashed to each next hop and does not guarantee that traffic sent to each next hop is equal.

## ***Using cl-ecmpcalc to Determine the Hash Result***

Since the hash is deterministic and always provides the same result for the same input, you can query the hardware and determine the hash result of a given input. This is useful when determining exactly which path a flow takes through a network.

On Cumulus Linux, use the `cl-ecmpcalc` command to determine a hardware hash result.

In order to use `cl-ecmpcalc`, all fields that are used in the hash must be provided. This includes ingress interface, layer 3 source IP, layer 3 destination IP, layer 4 source port and layer 4 destination port.

```
$ sudo cl-ecmpcalc -i swp1 -s 10.0.0.1 -d 10.0.0.1 -p tcp --sport 2000
0 --dport 80
ecmpcalc: will query hardware
swp3
```

If any field is omitted, `cl-ecmpcalc` fails.

```
$ sudo cl-ecmpcalc -i swp1 -s 10.0.0.1 -d 10.0.0.1 -p tcp
ecmpcalc: will query hardware
usage: cl-ecmpcalc [-h] [-v] [-p PROTOCOL] [-s SRC] [--sport SPORT] [-d DST]
                  [--dport DPORT] [--vid VID] [-i IN_INTERFACE]
                  [--sportid SPORTID] [--smoid SMODID] [-o
OUT_INTERFACE]
                  [--dportid DPORTID] [--dmodid DMODID] [--hardware]
                  [--nohardware] [-hs HASHSEED]
                  [-hf HASHFIELDS [HASHFIELDS ...]]
                  [--hashfunction {crc16-ccitt,crc16-bisync}] [-e
EGRESS]
                  [-c MCOUNT]
cl-ecmpcalc: error: --sport and --dport required for TCP and UDP
frames
```

## cl-ecmpcalc Limitations

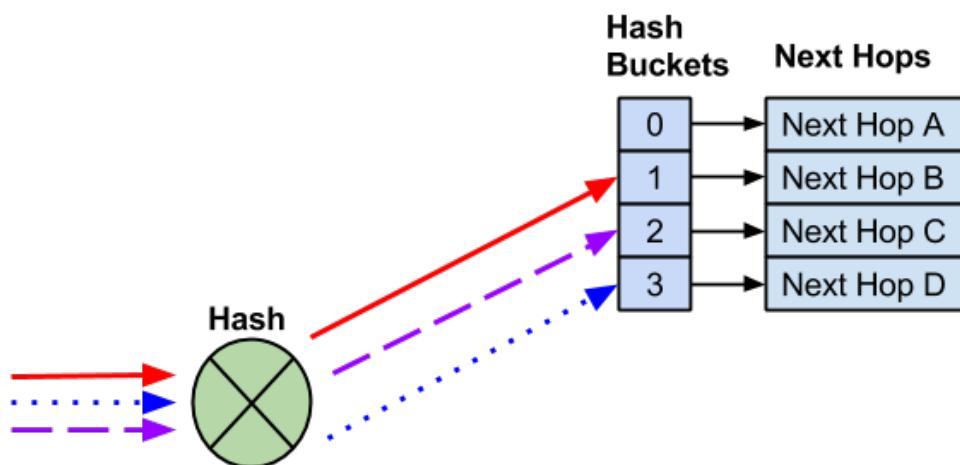
`cl-ecmpcalc` can only take input interfaces that can be converted to a single physical port in the port tab file, like the physical switch ports (swp). Virtual interfaces like bridges, bonds, and subinterfaces are not supported.

`cl-ecmpcalc` is supported only on switches with the Spectrum, Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II chipsets.

## ECMP Hash Buckets

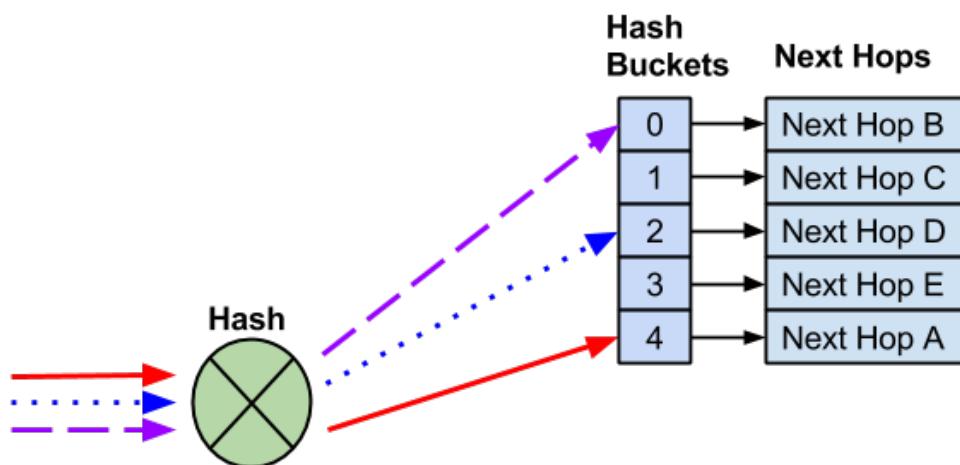
When multiple routes are installed in the routing table, each route is assigned to an ECMP *bucket*. When the ECMP hash is executed the result of the hash determines which bucket gets used.

In the following example, 4 next hops exist. Three different flows are hashed to different hash buckets. Each next hop is assigned to a unique hash bucket.



## Adding a Next Hop

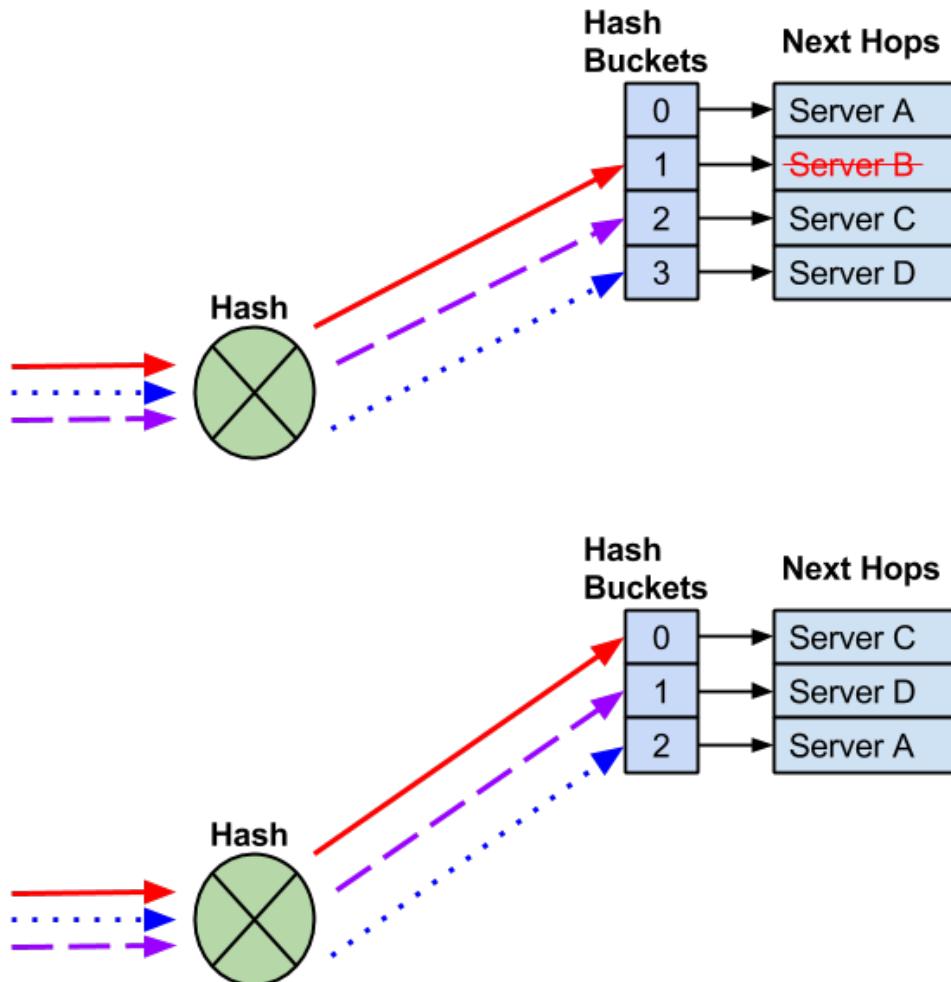
When a next hop is added, a new hash bucket is created. The assignment of next hops to hash buckets, as well as the hash result, may change when additional next hops are added.



A new next hop is added and a new hash bucket is created. As a result, the hash and hash bucket assignment changed, causing the existing flows to be sent to different next hops.

## Removing a Next Hop

When a next hop is removed, the remaining hash bucket assignments may change, again, potentially changing the next hop selected for an existing flow.



A next hop fails and the next hop and hash bucket are removed. The remaining next hops may be reassigned.

In most cases, the modification of hash buckets has no impact on traffic flows as traffic is being forward to a single end host. In deployments where multiple end hosts are using the same IP address (anycast), *resilient hashing* must be used.

## Resilient Hashing

In Cumulus Linux when a next hop fails or is removed from an ECMP pool, the hashing or hash bucket assignment can change. For deployments where there is a need for flows to always use the same next hop, like TCP anycast deployments, this can create session failures.

The ECMP hash performed with resilient hashing is exactly the same as the default hashing mode. Only the method in which next hops are assigned to hash buckets differs.

Resilient hashing supports both IPv4 and IPv6 routes.

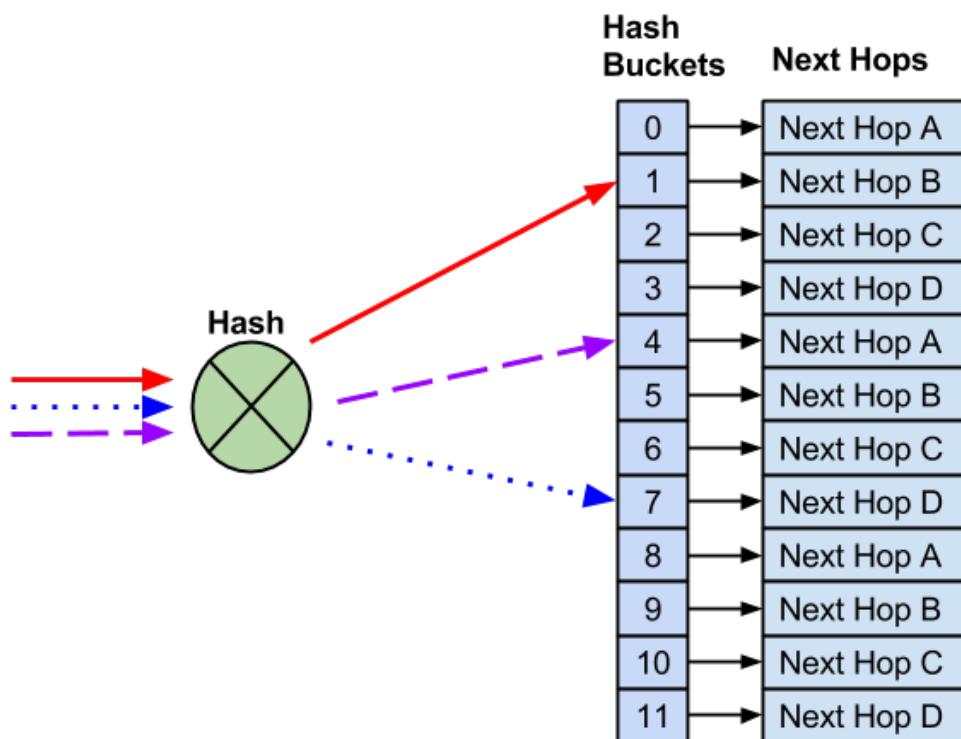
Resilient hashing is not enabled by default. See below for steps on configuring it.



Resilient hashing prevents disruptions when new next hops are removed. It does not prevent disruption when next hops are added.

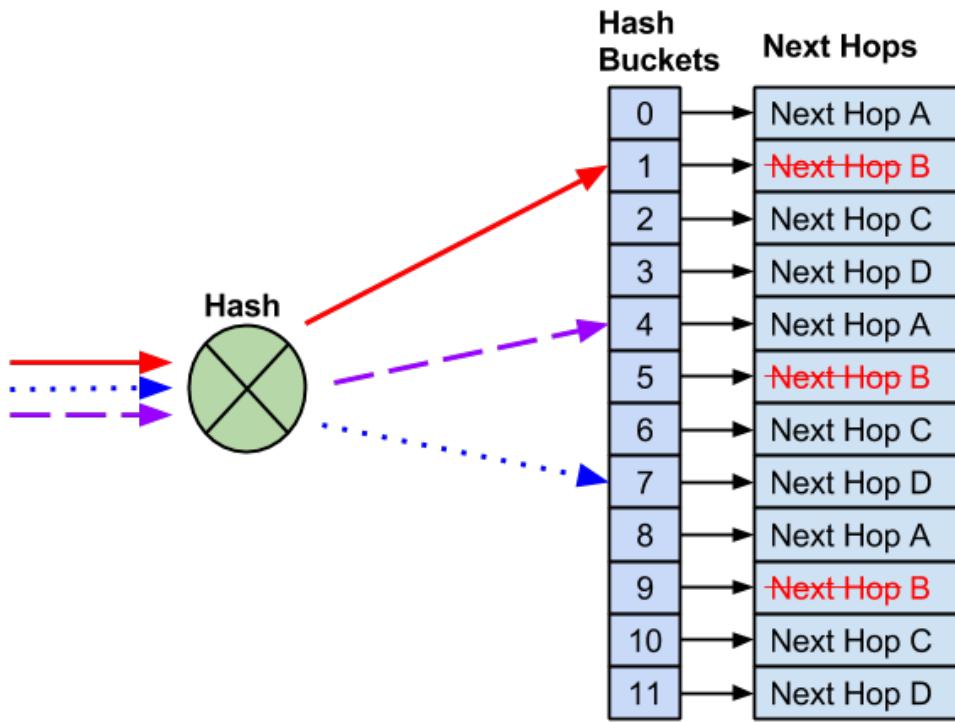
## Resilient Hash Buckets

When resilient hashing is configured, a fixed number of buckets are defined. Next hops are then assigned in round robin fashion to each of those buckets. In this example, 12 buckets are created and four next hops are assigned.

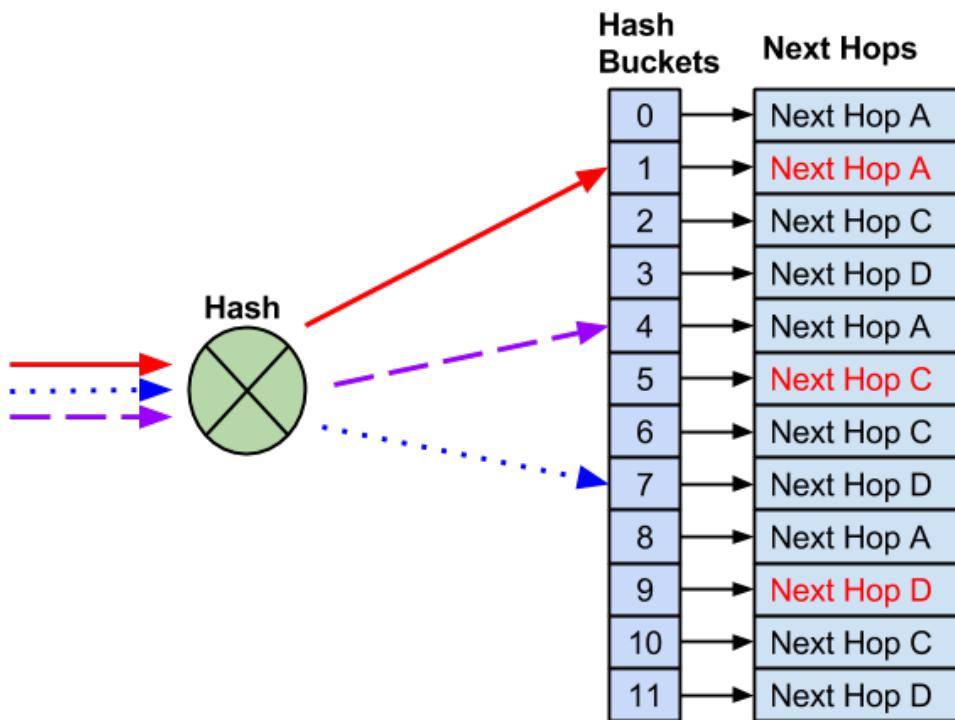


## Removing Next Hops

Unlike default ECMP hashing, when a next hop needs to be removed, the number of hash buckets does not change.



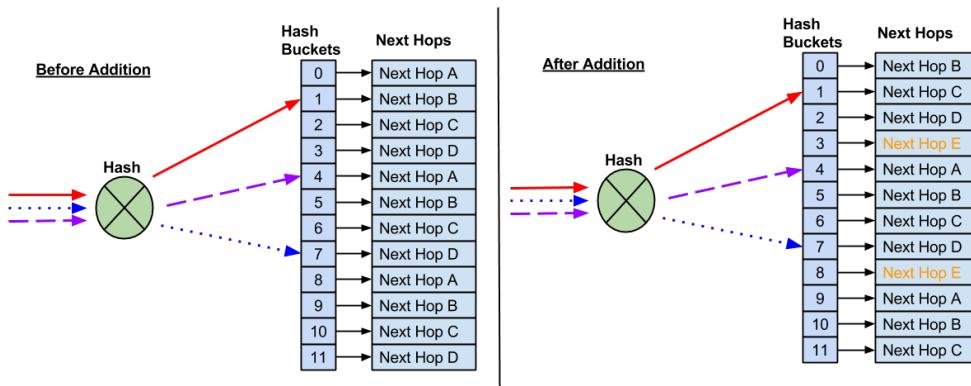
With 12 buckets assigned and four next hops, instead of reducing the number of buckets — which would impact flows to known good hosts — the remaining next hops replace the failed next hop.



After the failed next hop is removed, the remaining next hops are installed as replacements. This prevents impact to any flows that hash to working next hops.

## Adding Next Hops

Resilient hashing does not prevent possible impact to existing flows when new next hops are added. Due to the fact there are a fixed number of buckets, a new next hop requires reassigning next hops to buckets.



As a result, some flows may hash to new next hops, which can impact anycast deployments.

## Configuring Resilient Hashing

Resilient hashing is not enabled by default. When resilient hashing is enabled, 65,536 buckets are created to be shared among all ECMP groups. An ECMP group is a list of unique next hops that are referenced by multiple ECMP routes.



An ECMP route counts as a single route with multiple next hops. The following example is considered to be a single ECMP route:

```
$ ip route show 10.1.1.0/24
10.1.1.0/24 proto zebra metric 20
nexthop via 192.168.1.1 dev swp1 weight 1 onlink
nexthop via 192.168.2.1 dev swp2 weight 1 onlink
```

All ECMP routes must use the same number of buckets (the number of buckets cannot be configured per ECMP route).

The number of buckets can be configured as 64, 128, 256, 512 or 1024; the default is 128:

Number of Hash Buckets	Number of Supported ECMP Groups
64	1024
<b>128</b>	<b>512</b>

Number of Hash Buckets	Number of Supported ECMP Groups
256	256
512	128
1024	64

A larger number of ECMP buckets reduces the impact on adding new next hops to an ECMP route. However, the system supports fewer ECMP routes. If the maximum number of ECMP routes have been installed, new ECMP routes log an error and are not installed.

To enable resilient hashing, edit `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`:

1. Enable resilient hashing:

```
# Enable resilient hashing
resilient_hash_enable = TRUE
```

2. **(Optional)** Edit the number of hash buckets:

```
# Resilient hashing flowset entries per ECMP group
# Valid values - 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024
resilient_hash_entries_ecmp = 256
```

3. Restart (see page 141) the `switchd` service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Caveats

Resilient hashing is supported only on switches with the [Spectrum](#), [Tomahawk](#), [Trident II+](#) and [Trident II](#) chipsets. You can run `netshow system` to determine the chipset.

## Redistribute Neighbor

*Redistribute neighbor* provides a mechanism for IP subnets to span racks without forcing the end hosts to run a routing protocol.

The fundamental premise behind redistribute neighbor is to announce individual host /32 routes in the routed fabric. Other hosts on the fabric can then use this new path to access the hosts in the fabric. If multiple equal-cost paths (ECMP) are available, traffic can load balance across the available paths natively.

The challenge is to accurately compile and update this list of reachable hosts or neighbors. Luckily, existing commonly-deployed protocols are available to solve this problem. Hosts use [ARP](#) to resolve MAC addresses when sending to an IPv4 address. A host then builds an ARP cache table of known MAC addresses: IPv4 tuples as they receive or respond to ARP requests.

In the case of a leaf switch, where the default gateway is deployed for hosts within the rack, the ARP cache table contains a list of all hosts that have ARP'd for their default gateway. In many scenarios, this table contains all the layer 3 information that's needed. This is where redistribute neighbor comes in, as it is a mechanism of formatting and syncing this table into the routing protocol.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Availability (see page 516)
- Target Use Cases and Best Practices (see page 516)
- How It Works (see page 517)
- Configuration Steps (see page 517)
  - Configuring the Leaf(s) (see page 517)
  - Configuring the Host(s) (see page 520)
- Known Limitations (see page 521)
  - TCAM Route Scale (see page 521)
  - Possible Uneven Traffic Distribution (see page 521)
  - Silent Hosts Never Receive Traffic (see page 522)
  - Support for IPv4 Only (see page 522)
  - VRFs Are not Supported (see page 522)
- Troubleshooting (see page 522)
  - Verification (see page 524)

## Availability

Redistribute neighbor is distributed as `python-rdnbrd`.

## Target Use Cases and Best Practices

Redistribute neighbor was created with these use cases in mind:

- Virtualized clusters
- Hosts with service IP addresses that migrate between racks
- Hosts that are dual connected to two leaf nodes without using proprietary protocols such as MLAG (see page 273)
- Anycast services needing dynamic advertisement from multiple hosts

Cumulus Networks recommends following these guidelines with redistribute neighbor:

- Use a single logical connection from each host to each leaf.
- A host can connect to one or more leafs. Each leaf advertises the /32 it sees in its neighbor table.
- A host-bound bridge/VLAN should be local to each switch only.
- Leaf switches with redistribute neighbor enabled should be directly connected to the hosts.
- IP addressing must be non-overlapping, as the host IPs are directly advertised into the routed fabric.

- Run redistribute neighbor on Linux-based hosts primarily; other host operating systems may work, but Cumulus Networks has not actively tested any at this stage.

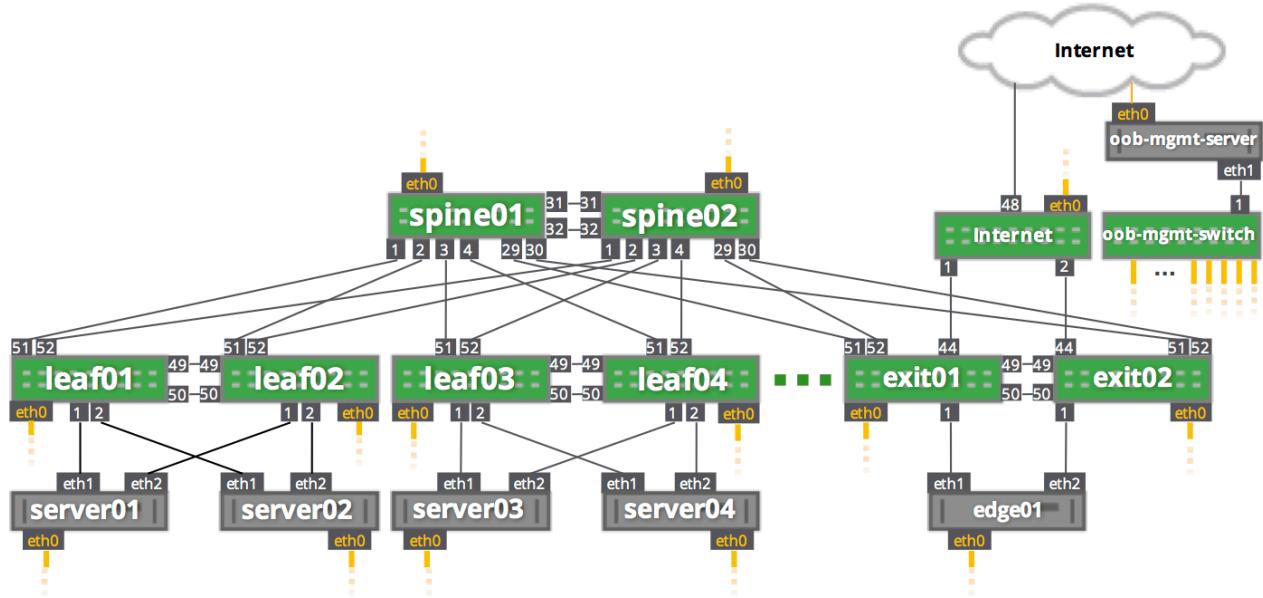
## How It Works

Redistribute neighbor works as follows:

- The leaf/ToR switches learn about connected hosts when the host sends an ARP request or ARP reply.
- An entry for the host is added to the kernel neighbor table of each leaf switch.
- The redistribute neighbor daemon, `rdnbd`, monitors the kernel neighbor table and creates a /32 route for each neighbor entry. This /32 route is created in kernel table 10.
- Quagga is configured to import routes from kernel table 10.
- A route-map is used to control which routes from table 10 are imported.
- In Quagga these routes are imported as *table* routes.
- BGP, OSPF and so forth are then configured to redistribute the table 10 routes.

## Configuration Steps

The following configuration steps are based on the [reference topology](#) set forth by Cumulus Networks. Here is a diagram of the topology:



## Configuring the Leaf(s)

The following steps demonstrate how to configure `leaf01`, but the same steps can be applied to any of the leafs.

- Configure the host facing ports in `/etc/network/interfaces`. Note that you should configure the same IP address on both host-facing interfaces and you should use a /32. In this case, `swp1` and `swp2` are configured as they are the ports facing `server01` and `server02`:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.11/32

auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 10.0.0.11/32

auto swp2
iface swp2
    address 10.0.0.11/32
```

2. Install the python-rdnbrd package:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo apt-get update
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo apt-get install python-rdnbrd
```

3. Enable the daemon so it starts at bootup:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl enable rdnbrd.service
```

4. Start the daemon:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl restart rdnbrd.service
```

5. Configure Quagga:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo vtysh
Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.
leaf01# conf t
leaf01(config)#
```

- a. Add the table as routes into the local routing table:

```
leaf01(config)# ip import-table 10
```

- b. Define a route-map that matches on the host-facing interface:

```
leaf01(config)# route-map REDIST_NEIGHBOR permit 10
leaf01(config-route-map)# match interface swp1
leaf01(config-route-map)# route-map REDIST_NEIGHBOR permit 20
leaf01(config-route-map)# match interface swp2
```

- c. Apply that route-map to routes imported into *table*:

```
leaf01(config)# ip protocol table route-map REDIST_NEIGHBOR
```

- d. Redistribute the imported *table* routes in into the appropriate routing protocol.

**BGP:**

```
leaf01(config)# router bgp 65001
leaf01(config-router)# address-family ipv4 unicast
leaf01(config-router-af)# redistribute table 10
leaf01(config-router-af)# end
```

**OSPF:**

```
leaf01(config)# router ospf
leaf01(config-router)# redistribute table 10
```

Here are the contents of /etc/quagga/Quagga.conf from the reference topology:

```
cumulus@leaf01$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
!
interface swp51
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp52
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
ip import-table 10 distance 19
route-map rdarp permit 1
match interface swp2
route-map rdarp permit 2
match interface swp1
!
ip protocol table route-map rdarp
router bgp 65011
bgp router-id 10.0.0.11
network 10.0.0.11/32
bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
bgp bestpath compare-routerid
neighbor fabric peer-group
neighbor fabric description Internal Fabric Network
neighbor fabric capability extended-nexthop
neighbor fabric advertisement-interval 0
neighbor fabric timers 1 3
```

```

neighbor fabric timers connect 3
neighbor fabric remote-as external
neighbor swp51 interface v6only
neighbor swp51 peer-group fabric
neighbor swp52 interface v6only
neighbor swp52 peer-group fabric
redistribute table 10
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  neighbor fabric activate
  neighbor swp51 activate
  neighbor swp52 activate
exit-address-family
!
!
```

## Configuring the Host(s)

There are a few possible host configurations that range in complexity. This document only covers the basic use case: dual-connected Linux hosts with static IP addresses assigned.

Additional host configurations will be covered in future separate knowledge base articles.

## Configuring a Dual-connected Host

Configure a host with the same /32 IP address on its loopback (lo) and uplinks (in this example, eth1 and eth2). This is done so both leaf switches advertise the same /32 regardless of the interface. Cumulus Linux relies on [ECMP \(see page 507\)](#) to load balance across the interfaces southbound, and an equal cost static route (see the configuration below) for load balancing northbound.

The loopback hosts the primary service IP address(es) and to which you can bind services.

Configure the loopback and physical interfaces. Referring back to the topology diagram, server01 is connected to leaf01 via eth1 and to leaf02 via eth2. You should note:

- The loopback IP is assigned to lo, eth1 and eth2.
- The post-up ARPing is used to force the host to ARP as soon as its interface comes up. This allows the leaf to learn about the host as soon as possible.
- The post-up ip route replace is used to install a default route via one or both leaf nodes if both swp1 and swp2 are up.

```

cumulus@server01$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
auto lo:1
iface lo:1
  address 10.1.0.101/32
auto eth1
iface eth1
  address 10.1.0.101/32
```

```

post-up for i in {1..3}; do arping -q -c 1 -w 0 -i eth1 10.0.0.11; sleep 1; done
post-up ip route add 0.0.0.0/0 nexthop via 10.0.0.11 dev eth1 onlink nexthop via 10.0.0.12 dev eth2 onlink || true

auto eth2
iface eth2
    address 10.1.0.101/32
    post-up for i in {1..3}; do arping -q -c 1 -w 0 -i eth2 10.0.0.12; sleep 1; done
    post-up ip route add 0.0.0.0/0 nexthop via 10.0.0.11 dev eth1 onlink nexthop via 10.0.0.12 dev eth2 onlink || true

```

## ***Installing ifplugd***

Additionally, install and use **ifplugd**. **ifplugd** modifies the behavior of the Linux routing table when an interface undergoes a link transition (carrier up/down). The Linux kernel by default leaves routes up even when the physical interface is unavailable (NO-CARRIER).

Install **ifplugd** on the host and modify the settings in **/etc/default/ifplugd**:

```

cumulus@server01:~$ sudo apt-get update
cumulus@server01:~$ sudo apt-get install ifplugd

```

Edit **/etc/default/ifplugd** as follows, where **eth1** and **eth2** are the interface names that your host uses to connect to the leaves.

```

cumulus@server01$ cat /etc/default/ifplugd
INTERFACES="eth1 eth2"
HOTPLUG_INTERFACES=""
ARGS="-q -f -u10 -d10 -w -I"
SUSPEND_ACTION="stop"

```

For full instructions on installing **ifplugd** on Ubuntu, [follow this guide](#).

## ***Known Limitations***

### ***TCAM Route Scale***

This feature adds each ARP entry as a /32 host route into the routing table of all switches within a summarization domain. Take care to keep the number of hosts minus fabric routes under the TCAM size of the switch. Review the [Cumulus Networks datasheets](#) for up to date scalability limits of your chosen hardware platforms. If in doubt, contact Cumulus Networks support or your Cumulus Networks CSE; they will be happy to help.

### ***Possible Uneven Traffic Distribution***

Linux uses source L3 addresses only to do load balancing on most older distributions.

## Silent Hosts Never Receive Traffic

Freshly provisioned hosts that have never sent traffic may not ARP for their default gateways. The post-up ARPing in /etc/network/interfaces on the host should take care of this. If the host does not ARP, then rdnbrd on the leaf cannot learn about the host.

## Support for IPv4 Only

This release of redistribute neighbor supports IPv4 only.

## VRFs Are not Supported

This release of redistribute neighbor does not support VRFs (see page 525).

## Troubleshooting

- How do I determine if rdnbrd (the redistribute neighbor daemon) is running?

Use systemctl to check:

```
cumulus@leaf01$ systemctl status rdnbrd.service
* rdnbrd.service - Cumulus Linux Redistribute Neighbor Service
  Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/rdnbrd.service; enabled)
  Active: active (running) since Wed 2016-05-04 18:29:03 UTC; 1h
13min ago
    Main PID: 1501 (python)
      CGroup: /system.slice/rdnbrd.service
         `-1501 /usr/bin/python /usr/sbin/rdnbrd -d
```

- How do I change rdnbrd's default configuration?

By editing /etc/rdnbrd.conf then running systemctl restart rdnbrd.service:

```
cumulus@leaf01$ cat /etc/rdnbrd.conf
# syslog logging level CRITICAL, ERROR, WARNING, INFO, or DEBUG
loglevel = INFO

# TX an ARP request to known hosts every keepalive seconds
keepalive = 1

# If a host does not send an ARP reply for holdtime consider the
host down
holdtime = 3

# Install /32 routes for each host into this table
route_table = 10

# Uncomment to enable ARP debugs on specific interfaces.
# Note that ARP debugs can be very chatty.
```

```
# debug_arp = swp1 swp2 swp3 br1
# If we already know the MAC for a host, unicast the ARP
request. This is
# unusual for ARP (why ARP if you know the destination MAC) but
we will be
# using ARP as a keepalive mechanism and do not want to
broadcast so many ARPs
# if we do not have to. If a host cannot handle a unicasted ARP
request, set
# the following option to False.
#
# Unicasting ARP requests is common practice (in some scenarios)
for other
# networking operating systems so it is unlikely that you will
need to set
# this to False.
unicast_arp_requests = True
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl restart rdnbrd.service
```

- **What is table 10? Why was table 10 chosen?**

The Linux kernel supports multiple routing tables and has the ability to utilize 0 through 255 as table IDs. However, tables 0, 253, 254 and 255 are reserved, and 1 is usually the first one utilized, so rdnbrd only allows you to specify 2-252. The number 10 was chosen for no particular reason. Feel free to set it to any value between 2-252. You can see all the tables specified here:

```
cumulus@switch$ cat /etc/iproute2/rt_tables
#
# reserved values
#
255 local
254 main
253 default
0 unspec
#
# local
#
#1 inr.ruhep
```

Read more information on [Linux route tables](#), or you can read the [Ubuntu man pages for ip route](#).

- **How do I determine that the /32 redistribute neighbor routes are being advertised to my neighbor?**

For BGP, check the advertised routes to the neighbor.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo vtysh
Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.
leaf01# show ip bgp neighbor swp51 advertised-routes
BGP table version is 5, local router ID is 10.0.0.11
```

```

Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, >
best, = multipath,
          i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

      Network          Next Hop            Metric LocPrf Weight Path
*-> 10.0.0.11/32    0.0.0.0                  0        32768  i
*-> 10.0.0.12/32    ::                      0       6502
0 65012 i
*-> 10.0.0.21/32    ::                      0       6502
0 i
*-> 10.0.0.22/32    ::                      0       6502
0 i

Total number of prefixes 4

```

## Verification

The following workflow can be used to verify that the kernel routing table is being correctly populated, and that routes are being correctly imported/advertised:

1. Verify that ARP neighbour entries are being populated into the Kernel routing table 10.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route show table 10
10.0.1.101 dev swp1 scope link
```

If these routes are not being generated, verify the following:

- That the `rdnbrd` daemon is running
- Check `/etc/rdnbrd.conf` to verify the correct table number is used

2. Verify that routes are being imported into Quagga from the kernel routing table 10.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

switch# show ip route table
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, A - Babel, T - Table,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
T[10]>* 10.0.1.101/32 [19/0] is directly connected, swp1, 01:25:
29
```

Both the `>` and `*` should be present so that table 10 routes are installed as preferred into the routing table. If the routes are not being installed, verify the following:

- The imported distance of the locally imported kernel routes using the `ip import 10 distance X` command, where X is **not** less than the administrative distance of the routing protocol. If the distance is too low, routes learned from the protocol may overwrite the locally imported routes.
  - The routes are in the kernel routing table.
3. Confirm that routes are in the BGP/OSPF database and being advertised.

```
switch# show ip bgp
```

## Virtual Routing and Forwarding - VRF

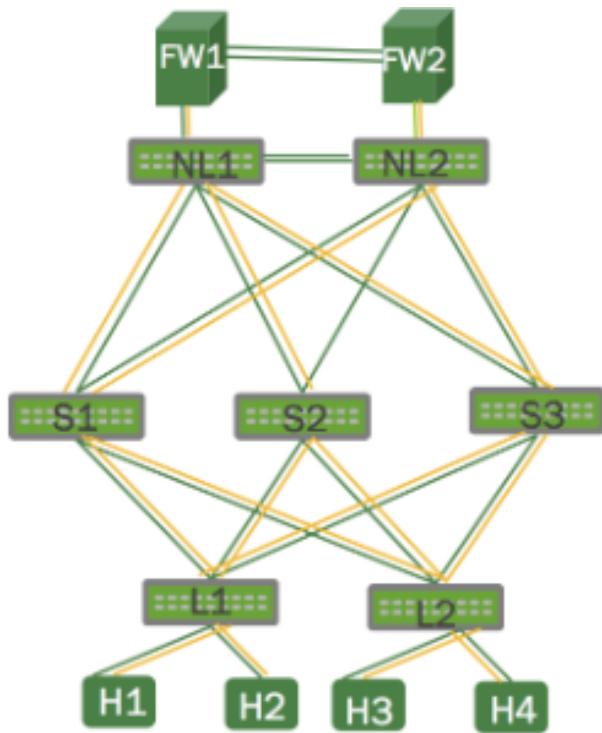
Cumulus Linux provides *virtual routing and forwarding* (VRF) to allow for the presence of multiple independent routing tables working simultaneously on the same router or switch. This permits multiple network paths without the need for multiple switches. Think of this feature as VLAN for layer 3, but unlike VLANs, there is no field in the IP header carrying it. Other implementations call this feature *VRF-Lite*.

The primary use cases for VRF in a data center are similar to VLANs at layer 2: using common physical infrastructure to carry multiple isolated traffic streams for multi-tenant environments, where these streams are allowed to cross over only at configured boundary points, typically firewalls or IDS. You can also use it to burst traffic from private clouds to enterprise networks where the burst point is at layer 3. Or you can use it in an OpenStack deployment.

VRF is fully supported in the Linux kernel, so it has the following characteristics:

- The VRF is presented as a layer 3 master network device with its own associated routing table.
- The layer 3 interfaces (VLAN interfaces, bonds, switch virtual interfaces/SVIs) associated with the VRF are enslaved to that VRF; IP rules direct FIB (forwarding information base) lookups to the routing table for the VRF device.
- The VRF device can have its own IP address, known as a *VRF-local loopback*.
- Applications can use existing interfaces to operate in a VRF context — by binding sockets to the VRF device or passing the `ifindex` using `cmsg`.
- Listen sockets used by services are VRF-global by default unless the application is configured to use a more limited scope. Connected sockets (like TCP) are then bound to the VRF domain in which the connection originates.
- Connected and local routes are placed in appropriate VRF tables.
- Neighbor entries continue to be per-interface, and you can view all entries associated with the VRF device.
- A VRF does not map to its own network namespace; however, you can nest VRFs in a network namespace.
- You can use existing Linux tools to interact with it, such as `tcpdump`.

You configure VRF by associating each subset of interfaces to a VRF routing table, and configuring an instance of the routing protocol — BGP — for each routing table.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring VRF (see page 526)
  - Specifying a Table ID (see page 527)
  - Bringing a VRF Up after Downing It with ifdown (see page 527)
  - Using the vrf Command (see page 528)
- Quagga Operation in a VRF (see page 530)
  - Example Configuration (see page 530)
- Example Quagga Commands (see page 531)
  - Showing VRF Data with vtysh (see page 531)
  - Showing VRF Data Using ip Commands (see page 535)
- Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces with VRF (see page 537)
- Using DHCP with VRF (see page 539)
  - Caveats for DHCP with VRF (see page 539)
  - Example Configuration (see page 539)
- Using ping or traceroute (see page 543)
- Caveats (see page 543)

## Configuring VRF

Each routing table is called a *VRF table*, and has its own table ID. You configure VRF using `ifupdown2` or the `vrf` command.

You create the VRF in `/etc/network/interfaces`, then place the layer 3 interface in the VRF. You can have a maximum of 64 VRFs on a switch.

When you configure VRF with `ifupdown2`, you follow a similar process to other network interfaces. Keep in the mind the following for a VRF table:

- It can have an IP address, a loopback interface for the VRF
- Associated rules are added automatically
- You can also add a default route to avoid skipping across tables when the kernel forwards the packet
- Names for VRF tables can be up to 15 characters. However, you **cannot** use the name `mgmt`, as this name can **only** be used for **management VRF** (see page 544).

Here is a sample VRF configuration in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto <vrf-name>
iface <vrf-name>
    vrf-table auto

auto swp#
iface swp#
    address <IP address>
    ...
vrf <vrf-name>
```

## Specifying a Table ID

Instead of having Cumulus Linux assign a table ID for the VRF table, you can specify your own table ID in the configuration. The table ID to name mapping is saved in `/etc/iproute2/rt_tables.d/` for name-based references. So instead of using the `auto` option above, specify the table ID like this:

```
auto <vrf-name>
iface <vrf-name>
    vrf-table <table-id>
```

Note that if you do specify a table ID, it **must** be in the range of 1001 to 1255.

## Bringing a VRF Up after Downing It with `ifdown`

If you take down a VRF using `ifdown`, to bring it back up you need to do one of two things:

- Use `ifup --with-dependents <vrf>`
- Use `ifreload -a`

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown red
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup --with-dependents red
```

## Using the vrf Command

The `vrf` command returns information about VRF tables. You can also use it to execute non-VRF-specific commands and perform other tasks related to VRF tables.

To get a list of VRF tables, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf list

VRF          Table
-----
red          1010
blue         1020
mgmt        1001
```

To see a list of links associated with a particular VRF table, run `vrf link list <vrf-name>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf link list red

VRF: red
-----
swp1.10@swp1      UP            6c:64:1a:00:5a:0c <BROADCAST,
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP>
swp2.10@swp2      UP            6c:64:1a:00:5a:0d <BROADCAST,
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP>
```

To see a list of routes associated with a particular VRF table, run `vrf route list <vrf-name>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf route list red

VRF: red
-----
unreachable default metric 8192
10.1.1.0/24 via 10.10.1.2 dev swp2.10
10.1.2.0/24 via 10.99.1.2 dev swp1.10
broadcast 10.10.1.0 dev swp2.10 proto kernel scope link src 10.10.1.1
10.10.1.0/28 dev swp2.10 proto kernel scope link src 10.10.1.1
local 10.10.1.1 dev swp2.10 proto kernel scope host src 10.10.1.1
broadcast 10.10.1.15 dev swp2.10 proto kernel scope link src 10.10.1.1
broadcast 10.99.1.0 dev swp1.10 proto kernel scope link src 10.99.1.1
10.99.1.0/30 dev swp1.10 proto kernel scope link src 10.99.1.1
local 10.99.1.1 dev swp1.10 proto kernel scope host src 10.99.1.1
```

```
broadcast 10.99.1.3 dev swp1.10 proto kernel scope link src 10.99.1
.1

local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::6e64:laff:fe00:5a0c dev lo proto none metric 0 pref
medium
local fe80::6e64:laff:fe00:5a0d dev lo proto none metric 0 pref
medium
fe80::/64 dev swp1.10 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
fe80::/64 dev swp2.10 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp1.10 metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp2.10 metric 256 pref medium
unreachable default dev lo metric 8192 error -101 pref medium
```

You can execute non-VRF-specific Linux commands and perform other tasks against a given VRF table. They affect only AF\_INET and AF\_INET6 sockets opened by the command that gets executed; it has no impact on netlink sockets, associated with the `ip` command. To execute such a command against a VRF table, run `vrf task exec <vrf-name> <command>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vrf task exec red cl-resource-query
IPv4/IPv6 host entries:      4,    0% of maximum value  8192
IPv4 neighbors:              4
IPv6 neighbors:              0
IPv4 route entries:          23,   0% of maximum value 32668
IPv6 route entries:          20,   0% of maximum value 16384
IPv4 Routes:                 23
IPv6 Routes:                 20
Total Routes:                43,   0% of maximum value 32768
ECMP nexthops:               0,    0% of maximum value 16327
MAC entries:                  0,    0% of maximum value 32768
Ingress ACL entries:         61,   4% of maximum value 1280
Ingress ACL counters:        82,   6% of maximum value 1280
Ingress ACL meters:          21,   0% of maximum value 4096
Ingress ACL slices:          2,    50% of maximum value 4
Egress ACL entries:          25,   9% of maximum value 256
Egress ACL counters:         50,   4% of maximum value 1024
Egress ACL meters:           25,   9% of maximum value 256
Egress ACL slices:           1,   100% of maximum value 1
```

To return a list of processes and PIDs associated with a specific VRF table, run `vrf task list <vrf-name>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf task list red

VRF: red
-----
dhclient          2508
sshd             2659
```

<code>bash</code>	<code>2681</code>
<code>su</code>	<code>2702</code>
<code>bash</code>	<code>2720</code>
<code>vrf</code>	<code>2829</code>

To determine which VRF table is associated with a particular PID, run `vrf task identify <pid>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf task identify 2829
red
```

## Quagga Operation in a VRF

In Cumulus Linux 3.0 and later, BGP and static routing (IPv4 and IPv6) are supported within a VRF context. Various Quagga routing constructs, such as routing tables, nexthops, router-id, and related processing are also VRF-aware. However, OSPFv2 and OSPFv3 are not VRF-aware and can only operate in the default VRF.

Quagga (see page 436) learns of VRFs provisioned on the system as well as interface attachment to a VRF through notifications from the kernel.

You can assign switch ports to each VRF table with an interface-level configuration, and BGP instances can be assigned to the table with a BGP router-level command. Note that OSPFv2 and OSPFv3 are **not** VRF-aware.

Because BGP is VRF-aware, it supports per-VRF neighbors, both iBGP and eBGP as well as numbered and unnumbered interfaces. Non-interface-based VRF neighbors are bound to the VRF, which is how you can have overlapping address spaces in different VRFs. Each VRF can have its own parameters, such as address families and redistribution. Incoming connections rely on the Linux kernel for VRF-global sockets. BGP neighbors can be tracked using BFD (see page 502), both for single and multiple hops. You can configure multiple BGP (see page 469) instances, associating each with a VRF.

As mentioned above, VRFs are provisioned through `/etc/network/interfaces`. VRFs can be pre-provisioned in Quagga too, but they become active only when configured through `/etc/network/interfaces`.

- A VRF can be pre-provisioned in Quagga by running the command `vrf vrf-name`.
- A BGP instance corresponding to a VRF can be pre-provisioned by configuring `router bgp asn vrf vrf-name`. Under this context, all existing BGP parameters can be configured - neighbors, peer-groups, address-family configuration, redistribution etc.
- Static routes (IPv4 and IPv6) can be provisioned in a VRF by specifying the VRF along with the static route configuration. For example, `ip route prefix nexthop vrf vrf-name`. The VRF has to exist for this configuration to be accepted - either already defined through `/etc/network/interfaces` or pre-provisioned in Quagga.

## Example Configuration

Here's an example VRF configuration in BGP:

```
router bgp 64900 vrf vrf1012
  bgp router-id 6.0.2.7
```

```

no bgp default ipv4-unicast
neighbor ISL peer-group
neighbor ISLv6 peer-group
neighbor swp1.2 interface v6only peer-group ISLv6
neighbor swp1.2 remote-as external
neighbor swp3.2 interface v6only peer-group ISLv6
neighbor swp3.2 remote-as external
neighbor 169.254.2.18 remote-as external
neighbor 169.254.2.18 peer-group ISL
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
    network 20.7.2.0/24
    neighbor ISL activate
    neighbor ISL route-map ALLOW_BR2 out
exit-address-family
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
    network 2003:7:2::/125
    neighbor ISLv6 activate
    neighbor ISLv6 route-map ALLOW_BR2_v6 out
exit-address-family
!
```

## Example Quagga Commands

You can view VRF data either directly in Cumulus Linux with `ip` commands or with the `vtysh` shell.

### Showing VRF Data with vtysh

You run the following Quagga commands are run in the `vtysh` terminal.

Show all VRFs learned by Quagga from the kernel. The table ID shows the corresponding routing table in the kernel either automatically assigned or manually defined in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```

switch# show vrf
vrf vrf1012 id 14 table 1012
vrf vrf1013 id 21 table 1013
vrf vrf1014 id 28 table 1014
```

Show VRFs configured in BGP, including the default. A non-zero ID is a VRF that has also been actually provisioned — that is, defined in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

Type	Id	RouterId	#PeersCfg	#PeersEstb	Name
DFLT	0	6.0.0.7	0	0	Default

VRF	14	6.0.2.7	6	vrf1012
VRF	21	6.0.3.7	6	vrf1013
VRF	28	6.0.4.7	6	vrf1014

Total number of VRFs (including **default**): 4

Display interfaces known to Quagga and attached to this VRF:

```
switch# show interface vrf vrf1012
Interface br2 is up, line protocol is down
  PTM status: disabled
  vrf: vrf1012
  index 13 metric 0 mtu 1500
  flags: <UP,BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
  inet 20.7.2.1/24

    inet6 fe80::202:ff:fe00:a/64
    ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
    ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
    ND router advertisements are sent every 600 seconds
    ND router advertisements lifetime tracks ra-interval
    ND router advertisement default router preference is medium
    Hosts use stateless autoconfig for addresses.
```

To see more interfaces, click [here](#).

```
Interface swp1.2 is up, line protocol is up
  PTM status: disabled
  vrf: vrf1012
  index 8 metric 0 mtu 1500
  flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  HWaddr: 00:02:00:00:00:07
  inet 169.254.2.9/30
    inet6 fe80::202:ff:fe00:7/64
    ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
    ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
    ND router advertisements are sent every 1 seconds
    ND router advertisements lifetime tracks ra-interval
    ND router advertisement default router preference is medium
    Hosts use stateless autoconfig for addresses.
  Neighbor address(s):
    inet6 fe80::202:ff:fe00:1b/128
Interface swp2.2 is up, line protocol is up
  PTM status: disabled
  vrf: vrf1012
  index 9 metric 0 mtu 1500
  flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  HWaddr: 00:02:00:00:00:08
  inet 169.254.2.13/30
```

```

inet6 fe80::202:ff:fe00:8/64
ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
ND router advertisements are sent every 1 seconds
ND router advertisements lifetime tracks ra-interval
ND router advertisement default router preference is medium
Hosts use stateless autoconfig for addresses.

Neighbor address(s):
inet6 fe80::202:ff:fe00:1f/128
Interface swp3.2 is up, line protocol is up
PTM status: disabled
vrf: vrf1012
index 10 metric 0 mtu 1500
flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
HWaddr: 00:02:00:00:00:09
inet 169.254.2.17/30
inet6 fe80::202:ff:fe00:9/64
ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
ND router advertisements are sent every 1 seconds
ND router advertisements lifetime tracks ra-interval
ND router advertisement default router preference is medium
Hosts use stateless autoconfig for addresses.

Neighbor address(s):
inet6 fe80::202:ff:fe00:23/128
Interface swp4.2 is up, line protocol is up
PTM status: disabled
vrf: vrf1012
index 11 metric 0 mtu 1500
flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
HWaddr: 00:02:00:00:00:0a
Interface swp5.2 is up, line protocol is up
PTM status: disabled
vrf: vrf1012
index 12 metric 0 mtu 1500
flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
HWaddr: 00:02:00:00:00:0b
Interface vrf1012 is up, line protocol is up
PTM status: disabled
vrf: vrf1012
index 14 metric 0 mtu 1500
flags: <UP,RUNNING,NOARP>
HWaddr: 46:96:c7:64:4d:fa

```

To show the routes in the VRF:

```

switch# show ip route vrf vrf1012
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
      O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, T - Table,
      > - selected route, * - FIB route

```

```
C>* 169.254.2.8/30 is directly connected, swp1.2
C>* 169.254.2.12/30 is directly connected, swp2.2
C>* 169.254.2.16/30 is directly connected, swp3.2
```

To show the BGP summary for the VRF:

```
switch# show ip bgp vrf vrf1012 summary
BGP router identifier 6.0.2.7, local AS number 64900 vrf-id 14
BGP table version 0
RIB entries 1, using 120 bytes of memory
Peers 6, using 97 KiB of memory
Peer groups 2, using 112 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V     AS MsgRcvd MsgSent      TblVer  InQ OutQ Up/Down
State/PfxRcd
s3(169.254.2.18)
                  4 65000  102039  102040          0       0       0
3d13h03m          0
s1(169.254.2.10)
                  4 65000  102039  102040          0       0       0
3d13h03m          0
s2(169.254.2.14)
                  4 65000  102039  102040          0       0       0
3d13h03m          0

Total number of neighbors 3
```

To show BGP (IPv4) routes in the VRF:

```
switch# show ip bgp vrf vrf1012
BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 6.0.2.7
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =
multipath,
              i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

Network          Next Hop            Metric LocPrf Weight Path
20.7.2.0/24      0.0.0.0           0        32768 i

Total number of prefixes 1
```

BGP IPv6 routes in the VRF:

```
switch# show bgp vrf vrf1012
BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 6.0.2.7
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =
multipath,
```

```

        i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path
2003:7:2::/125    ::                 0           32768 i

Total number of prefixes 1
switch#
switch#
switch# exit
cumulus@switch:/home/cumulus$
```

## Showing VRF Data Using ip Commands

To list all VRFs provisioned, showing the VRF ID (14, 21, 28 below) as well as the table ID:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ ip -d link show type vrf
14: vrf1012: <NOARP,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000
    link/ether 46:96:c7:64:4d:fa brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
    vrf table 1012 addrgenmode eui64
21: vrf1013: <NOARP,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000
    link/ether 7a:8a:29:0f:5e:52 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
    vrf table 1013 addrgenmode eui64
28: vrf1014: <NOARP,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000
    link/ether e6:8c:4d:fc:eb:b1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
    vrf table 1014 addrgenmode eui64
```

To list the interfaces attached to a specific VRF:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ ip -d link show master vrf1012
8: swp1.2@swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc
noqueue master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
    link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:07 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
    vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
    vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
9: swp2.2@swp2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc
noqueue master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
    link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:08 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
    vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
    vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
10: swp3.2@swp3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc
noqueue master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
    link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:09 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
    vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
    vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
```

```

11: swp4.2@swp4: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
      link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:0a brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
      vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
      vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
12: swp5.2@swp5: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
      link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:0b brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
      vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
      vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
13: br2: <NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master vrf1012 state DOWN mode DEFAULT group default
      link/ether 00:00:00:00:00:00 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
      bridge forward_delay 100 hello_time 200 max_age 2000 ageing_time 3
      0000 stp_state 0 priority 32768
      vlan_filtering 0 vlan_protocol 802.1Q bridge_id 8000.0:0:0:0:0:0
      designated_root 8000.0:0:0:0:0:0
      root_port 0 root_path_cost 0 topology_change 0
      topology_change_detected 0 hello_timer 0.00
      tcn_timer 0.00 topology_change_timer 0.00 gc_timer 202.23
      vlan_default_pvid 1 group_fwd_mask 0
      group_address 01:80:c2:00:00:00 mcast_snooping 1 mcast_router 1
      mcast_query_use_ifaddr 0 mcast_querier 0
      mcast_hash_elasticity 4096 mcast_hash_max 4096
      mcast_last_member_count 2 mcast_startup_query_count 2
      mcast_last_member_interval 100 mcast_membership_interval 26000
      mcast_querier_interval 25500
      mcast_query_interval 12500 mcast_query_response_interval 1000
      mcast_startup_query_interval 3125
      nf_call_iptables 0 nf_call_ip6tables 0 nf_call_arptables 0
      vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
cumulus@switch:~$
```

To show IPv4 routes in a VRF:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ ip route show table vrf1012
unreachable default metric 240
broadcast 20.7.2.0 dev br2 proto kernel scope link src 20.7.2.1
dead linkdown
20.7.2.0/24 dev br2 proto kernel scope link src 20.7.2.1 dead
linkdown
local 20.7.2.1 dev br2 proto kernel scope host src 20.7.2.1
broadcast 20.7.2.255 dev br2 proto kernel scope link src 20.7.2.1
dead linkdown
broadcast 169.254.2.8 dev swp1.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.25
4.2.9
169.254.2.8/30 dev swp1.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.254.2.9
local 169.254.2.9 dev swp1.2 proto kernel scope host src 169.254.2.
9
```

```

broadcast 169.254.2.11 dev swp1.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.2
54.2.9
broadcast 169.254.2.12 dev swp2.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.2
54.2.13
169.254.2.12/30 dev swp2.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.254.2.13

local 169.254.2.13 dev swp2.2 proto kernel scope host src 169.254.2
.13
broadcast 169.254.2.15 dev swp2.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.2
54.2.13
broadcast 169.254.2.16 dev swp3.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.2
54.2.17
169.254.2.16/30 dev swp3.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.254.2.17

local 169.254.2.17 dev swp3.2 proto kernel scope host src 169.254.2
.17
broadcast 169.254.2.19 dev swp3.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.2
54.2.17
cumulus@switch:~$
```

To show IPv6 routes in a VRF:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ ip -6 route show table vrf1012
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::202:ff:fe00:7 dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::202:ff:fe00:8 dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::202:ff:fe00:9 dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::202:ff:fe00:a dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
fe80::/64 dev br2 proto kernel metric 256 dead linkdown pref medium
fe80::/64 dev swp1.2 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
fe80::/64 dev swp2.2 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
fe80::/64 dev swp3.2 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev br2 metric 256 dead linkdown pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp1.2 metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp2.2 metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp3.2 metric 256 pref medium
unreachable default dev lo metric 240 error -101 pref medium
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## **Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces with VRF**

BGP unnumbered interface configurations (see page 469) are supported with VRF. In BGP unnumbered, there are no addresses on any interface. However, debugging tools like traceroute need at least a single IP address per node as the node's source IP address. Typically, this address was assigned to the loopback device. With VRF, you need a loopback device for each VRF table since VRF is based on interfaces, not IP addresses. While Linux does not support multiple loopback devices, it does support the concept of a dummy interface, which is used to achieve the same goal.

An IP address can be associated with the VRF device, which will then act as the dummy (loopback-like) interface for that VRF.

1. Open the `/etc/network/interfaces` file in a text editor.
2. Configure the BGP unnumbered configuration and save the file. The BGP unnumbered configuration is the same for a non-VRF, applied under the VRF context (`router bgp asn vrf vrf-name`).

```
auto vrf1
iface vrf1
    vrf-table auto
    address 6.1.0.6/32
    address 2001:6:1::6/128

auto swp1.101
iface swp1.101
    link-speed 10000
    link-duplex full
    link-autoneg off
    vrf vrf1

auto br101
iface br101
    address 20.1.6.1/24
    address 2001:20:1:6::1/80
    bridge-ports swp3.101 swp4.101
    vrf vrf1
```

Quagga BGP configuration:

```
!
router bgp 65001 vrf vrf1
no bgp default ipv4-unicast
bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
bgp bestpath compare-routerid
neighbor LEAF peer-group
neighbor LEAF remote-as external
neighbor LEAF capability extended-nexthop
neighbor swp1.101 interface peer-group LEAF
neighbor swp2.101 interface peer-group LEAF
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
    redistribute connected
    neighbor LEAF activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
    redistribute connected
    neighbor LEAF activate
```

```
exit-address-family
!
```

## Using DHCP with VRF

Since you can use VRF to bind IPv4 and IPv6 sockets to non-default VRF tables, you have the ability to start DHCP servers and relays in any non-default VRF table using the `dhcpd` and `dhcrelay` services, respectively. These services must be managed by `systemd` in order to run in a VRF context; in addition, the services must be listed in `/etc/vrf/systemd.conf`. By default, this file already lists these two services, as well as others like `ntp` and `snmpd`. You can add more services as needed, such as `dhcpd6` and `dhcrelay6` for IPv6.

If you edit `/etc/vrf/systemd.conf`, run `sudo systemctl daemon-reload` to generate the `systemd` instance files for the newly added service(s). Then you can start the service in the VRF using `systemctl start <service>@<vrf-name>.service`, where `<service>` is the name of the service — such as `dhcpd` or `dhcrelay` — and `<vrf-name>` is the name of the VRF.

For example, to start the `dhcrelay` service after you configured a VRF named `blue`, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start dhcrelay@blue.service
```

To enable the service at boot time you should also run `systemctl enable <service>@<vrf-name>`. To continue with the previous example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay@blue.service
```

In addition, you need to create a separate default file in `/etc/default` for every instance of a DHCP server and/or relay in a non-default VRF; this is where you set the server and relay options. To run multiple instances of any of these services, you need a separate file for each instance. The files must be named as follows:

- `isc-dhcp-server-<vrf-name>`
- `isc-dhcp-server6-<vrf-name>`
- `isc-dhcp-relay-<vrf-name>`
- `isc-dhcp-relay6-<vrf-name>`

See the example configuration below for more details.

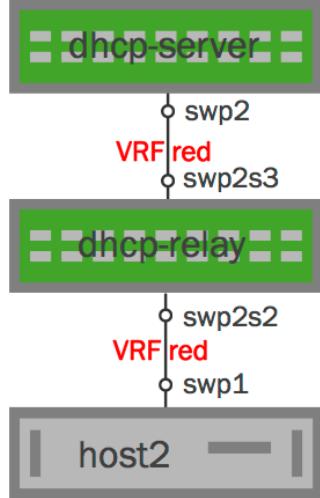
## Caveats for DHCP with VRF

- Cumulus Linux does **not** support DHCP server and relay across VRFs, so the server and host cannot be in different VRF tables. In addition, the server and relay cannot be in different VRF tables.
- Typically a service running in the default VRF owns a port across all VRFs. If the VRF local instance is preferred, the global one may need to be disabled and stopped first.
- VRF is a layer 3 routing feature. It only makes sense to run programs that use AF\_INET and AF\_INET6 sockets in a VRF. VRF context does not affect any other aspects of the operation of a program.
- This method only works with `systemd`-based services.

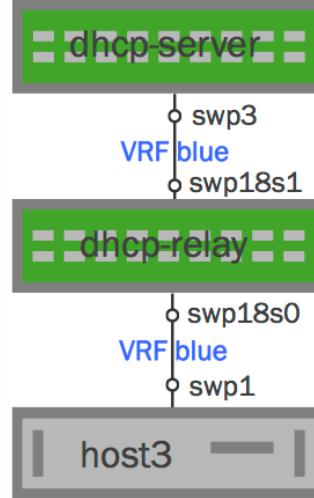
## Example Configuration

In the following example, there is one IPv4 network with a VRF named *red* and one IPv6 network with a VRF named *blue*.

The IPv4 DHCP server/relay network looks like this:



The IPv6 DHCP server/relay network looks like this:



Configure each DHCP server and relay as follows:

### Sample DHCP Server Configuration

1. Create the file `isc-dhcp-server-red` in `/etc/default/`. Here is sample content:

```

# Defaults for isc-dhcp-
server initscript
# sourced by /etc/init.d
/etc/dhcp-server
# installed at /etc/default
/etc/dhcp-server by the
maintainer scripts
#
# This is a POSIX shell
fragment
#
# Path to dhcpcd's config
file (default: /etc/dhcp
/dhcpcd.conf).
DHCPD_CONF="-cf /etc/dhcp
/dhcpcd-red.conf"
# Path to dhcpcd's PID file
(default: /var/run/dhcpcd.
pid).
DHCPD_PID="-pf /var/run
/dhcpcd-red.pid"
  
```

### Sample DHCP6 Server Configuration

1. Create the file `isc-dhcp-server6-blue` in `/etc/default/`. Here is sample content:

```

# Defaults for isc-dhcp-
server initscript
# sourced by /etc/init.d
/etc/dhcp-server
# installed at /etc/default
/etc/dhcp-server by the
maintainer scripts
#
# This is a POSIX shell
fragment
#
# Path to dhcpcd's config
file (default: /etc/dhcp
/dhcpcd.conf).
DHCPD_CONF="-cf /etc/dhcp
/dhcpcd6-blue.conf"
# Path to dhcpcd's PID file
(default: /var/run/dhcpcd.
pid).
DHCPD_PID="-pf /var/run
/dhcpcd6-blue.pid"
  
```

```
# Additional options to
start dhcpcd with.
# Don't use options -cf or
-pf here; use DHCPD_CONF/
DHCPD_PID instead
#OPTIONS=""
# On what interfaces
should the DHCP server
(dhcpcd) serve DHCP
requests?
# Separate multiple
interfaces with spaces, e.
g. "eth0 eth1".
INTERFACES="swp2"
```

2. Enable the DHCP server:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcpcd@red.service`
3. Start the DHCP server:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start dhcpcd@red.service`  
 or  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart dhcpcd@red.service`
4. Check status:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl status dhcpcd@red.service`

✓ You can create this configuration using the `vrf` command ([see above \(see page \)](#) for more details):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo
vrf task exec red /usr
/sbin/dhcpcd -f -q -cf /
/etc/dhcp/dhcpd-red.
conf -pf /var/run/dhcpd-
red.pid swp2
```

```
# Additional options to
start dhcpcd with.
# Don't use options -cf or
-pf here; use DHCPD_CONF/
DHCPD_PID instead
#OPTIONS=""
# On what interfaces
should the DHCP server
(dhcpcd) serve DHCP
requests?
# Separate multiple
interfaces with spaces, e.
g. "eth0 eth1".
INTERFACES="swp3"
```

2. Enable the DHCP server:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcpcd6@blue.service`
3. Start the DHCP server:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start dhcpcd6@blue.service`  
 or  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart dhcpcd6@blue.service`
4. Check status:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl status dhcpcd6@blue.service`

✓ You can create this configuration using the `vrf` command ([see above \(see page \)](#) for more details):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo
vrf task exec blue dhcpcd
-6 -q -cf /
/etc/dhcp/dhcpd6-
blue.conf -pf /var/run
/dhcpd6-blue.pid swp3
```

## Sample DHCP Relay Configuration

1. Create the file `isc-dhcp-relay-red` in `/etc/default/`. Here is sample content:

## Sample DHCP6 Relay Configuration

1. Create the file `isc-dhcp-relay6-blue` in `/etc/default/`. Here is sample content:

```

# Defaults for isc-dhcp-
relay initscript
# sourced by /etc/init.d
/isc-dhcp-relay
# installed at /etc/default
/isc-dhcp-relay by the
maintainer scripts
#
# This is a POSIX shell
fragment
#
# What servers should the
DHCP relay forward
requests to?
SERVERS="102.0.0.2"
# On what interfaces
should the DHCP relay
(dhrelay) serve DHCP
requests?
# Always include the interface
towards the DHCP
server.
# This variable requires a
-i for each interface
configured above.
# This will be used in the
actual dhcrelay command
# For example, "-i eth0 -i
eth1"
INTF_CMD="-i swp2s2 -i
swp2s3"
# Additional options that
are passed to the DHCP
relay daemon?
OPTIONS=""

```

2. Enable the DHCP relay:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay@red.service`
3. Start the DHCP relay:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start dhcrelay@red.service`  
 or  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart dhcrelay@red.service`
4. Check status:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl status dhcrelay@red.service`

```

# Defaults for isc-dhcp-
relay initscript
# sourced by /etc/init.d
/isc-dhcp-relay
# installed at /etc/default
/isc-dhcp-relay by the
maintainer scripts
#
# This is a POSIX shell
fragment
#
# What servers should the
DHCP relay forward
requests to?
#SERVERS="103.0.0.2"
# On what interfaces
should the DHCP relay
(dhrelay) serve DHCP
requests?
# Always include the interface
towards the DHCP
server.
# This variable requires a
-i for each interface
configured above.
# This will be used in the
actual dhcrelay command
# For example, "-i eth0 -i
eth1"
INTF_CMD="-l swp18s0 -u
swp18s1"
# Additional options that
are passed to the DHCP
relay daemon?
OPTIONS="-pf /var/run
/dhcrelay6@blue.pid"

```

2. Enable the DHCP relay:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay@blue.service`
3. Start the DHCP relay:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start dhcrelay6@blue.service`  
 or  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart dhcrelay6@blue.service`
4. Check status:  
`cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl status dhcrelay6@blue.service`

You can create this configuration using the `vrf` command ([see above \(see page \)](#) for more details):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo
vrf task exec red /usr
/sbin/dhcrelay -d -q -i /
    swp2s2 -i swp2s3 102.
0.0.2
```

 You can create this configuration using the `vrf` command ([see above \(see page \)](#) for more details):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo
vrf task exec blue /usr
/sbin/dhcrelay -d -q -6 -
l /
    swp18s0 -u swp18s1 -
pf /var/run/dhcrelay6@blu
e.pid
```

## Using ping or traceroute

If you wish to use `ping` or `traceroute` on a VRF, use the `-I <vrf>` flag for `ping` and `-i <vrf>` for `traceroute`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ping -I blue
```

Or:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo traceroute -i blue
```

## Caveats

- The Penguin Computing Arctica 4804IP switch does not support VRFs.
- While there is a fixed limit of 64 VRF devices, Cumulus Networks has validated up to 20 VRF devices on a switch at one time.
- Table selection based on the incoming interface only; currently, packet attributes or output-interface-based selection are not available.
- BGP (IPv4/IPv6) is the only routing protocol supported currently. There is no support for OSPF (IPv4/IPv6) at this time.
- Setting the router ID outside of BGP via the `router-id` option causes all BGP instances to get the same router ID. If you want each BGP instance to have its own router ID, specify the `router-id` under the BGP instance using `bgp router-id`. If both are specified, the one under the BGP instance overrides the one provided outside BGP.
- It is not possible to leak routes across VRFs within Quagga.

## Management VRF

*Management VRF* — a subset of [VRF \(see page 525\)](#) (virtual routing tables and forwarding) — provides a separation between the out-of-band management network and the in-band data plane network. For all VRFs, the *main* routing table is the default table for all of the data plane switch ports. With management VRF, a second table, *mgmt*, is used for routing through eth0.

Cumulus Linux only supports eth0 as the management interface. VLAN subinterfaces, bonds, bridges and the front panel switch ports are not supported as management interfaces.

When management VRF is enabled, logins to the switch are set into the management VRF context. IPv4 and IPv6 networking applications run by an administrator communicate out the management network by default. This default context does not impact services run through `systemd` and the `systemctl` command, and does not impact commands examining the state of the switch; for example, using the `ip` command to list links, neighbors or routes.



The management VRF configurations in this chapter contain a localhost loopback IP address (127.0.0.1/8). Putting the loopback address in the management VRF's L3 domain prevents issues with applications that expect the loopback IP address to exist in the VRF, such as NTP.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Enabling Management VRF (see page 544)
  - Bringing the Management VRF Up after Downing It with ifdown (see page 545)
  - Enabling NTP (see page 545)
  - Enabling snmpd (see page 546)
  - Enabling hsflood (see page 547)
  - Using ping or traceroute (see page 548)
- OSPF and BGP (see page 549)
  - Redistributing Routes in Management VRF (see page 549)
- SNMP Traps Use eth0 Only (see page 549)
- Using SSH within a Management VRF Context (see page 549)
- Viewing the Routing Tables (see page 550)
  - Viewing a Single Route (see page 550)
- Using the mgmt Interface Class (see page 551)
- Management VRF and DNS (see page 551)
- Incompatibility with cl-ns-mgmt (see page 552)

### Enabling Management VRF

To enable management VRF on eth0, complete the following steps:

1. Open `/etc/network/interfaces` in a text editor.

- Configure the following, and save the file. Remember you must name the VRF *mgmt* to distinguish the mgmt VRF from a data plane VRF.

```

auto mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt

```

- Reboot the switch to activate the mgmt VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo reboot
```

## ***Bringing the Management VRF Up after Downing It with ifdown***

If you take down the management VRF using `ifdown`, to bring it back up you need to do one of two things:

- Use `ifup --with-dependents <vrif>`
- Use `ifreload -a`

For example:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown mgmt
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup --with-dependents mgmt

```

## ***Enabling NTP***

To enable NTP to run in the mgmt VRF:

- Configure the *mgmt* VRF in `/etc/networking/interfaces`. In this example, `eth0` is assigned an IP address and default route via DHCP.

```

auto mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt

```

- Reboot the switch to activate the mgmt VRF.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo reboot
```

3. By default, NTP is running in the default VRF. Stop NTP if it is currently running.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop ntp.service
```

4. By default, NTP is configured to automatically start in the default VRF when the system boots. Disable NTP from automatically starting in the default VRF.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl disable ntp.service
```

5. Start NTP in the mgmt VRF.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start ntp@mgmt
```

6. Verify that NTP peers are active.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ntpq -pn
      remote                  refid      st t when poll reach  delay
offset jitter
=====
=====
*38.229.71.1        204.9.54.119    2 u   42    64   377   31.275  -
0.625   3.105
-104.131.53.252    209.51.161.238    2 u   47    64   377   16.381  -
5.251   0.681
+45.79.10.228      200.98.196.212    2 u   44    64   377   42.998
0.115   0.585
+74.207.240.206    127.67.113.92     2 u   43    64   377   73.240  -
1.623   0.320
```

7. Enable ntp@mgmt so it starts when the switch boots:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable ntp@mgmt
```

## Enabling snmpd

To enable `snmpd` to run in the mgmt VRF:

1. Configure the mgmt VRF in `/etc/networking/interfaces`. In this example, eth0 is assigned an IP address and default route via DHCP.

```

auto mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt

```

2. Reboot the switch to activate the mgmt VRF.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo reboot
```

3. Stop snmpd if it is running.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop snmpd.service
```

4. Make sure snmpd does not try to start in the default VRF if the system is rebooted.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl disable snmpd.service
```

5. Start snmpd in the mgmt VRF.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start snmpd@mgmt
```

6. Enable snmpd@mgmt so it starts when the switch boots.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable snmpd@mgmt
```

## ***Enabling hsflowd***

If you're using sFlow (see page 619) to monitor traffic in the mgmt VRF, you need to complete the following steps to enable it.

1. Add the hsflowd process to the systemd configuration file in /etc/vrf. Edit /etc/vrf/systemd.conf in a text editor.

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/vrf/systemd.conf
# Systemd-based services that are expected to be run in a VRF
context.
#
# If changes are made to this file run systemctl daemon-reload
# to re-generate systemd files.

```

```
chef-client
collectd
dhcpd
dhcrelay
hsflowd <<< Add this line
ntp
puppet
snmpd
snmptrapd
ssh
zabbix-agent
```

2. Stop, disable, reload, reenable and restart the hsflowd service.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop hsflowd.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl disable hsflowd.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl daemon-reload
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable hsflowd@mgmt.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start hsflowd@mgmt.service
```

3. Verify that the hsflowd service is running in the mgmt VRF.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ps aux | grep flow
root      7294  0.0  0.4  81320  2108 ?          Ssl  22:22   0:00
/usr/sbin/hsflowd
cumulus    7906  0.0  0.4  12728   2056 pts/0      S+   22:34   0:00
grep flow
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf task identify 7294
mgmt
```

## Using ping or traceroute

By default, issuing a `ping` or `traceroute` assumes the packet should be sent to the dataplane network (the main routing table). If you wish to use `ping` or `traceroute` on the management network, use the `-I` flag for `ping` and `-i` for `traceroute`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ping -I mgmt
```

Or:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo traceroute -i mgmt
```

## OSPF and BGP

In general, no changes are required for either BGP or OSPF. Quagga was updated in Cumulus Linux 3.0 to be VRF-aware and automatically sends packets based on the switch port routing table. This includes BGP peering via loopback interfaces. BGP does routing lookups in the default table. However, one modification you may consider has to do with how your routes get redistributed.

## Redistributing Routes in Management VRF

Management VRF uses the mgmt table, including local routes. It does not affect how the routes are redistributed when using routing protocols such as OSPF and BGP.

To redistribute the routes in your network, use the `redistribute connected` command under BGP or OSPF. This enables the directly connected network out of eth0 to be advertised to its neighbor.



This also creates a route on the neighbor device to the management network through the data plane, which may not be desired.

Cumulus Networks recommends you always use route maps to control the advertised networks redistributed by the `redistribute connected` command. For example, you can specify a route map to redistribute routes in this way (for both BGP and OSPF):

```
<routing protocol>
redistribute connected route-map redistribute-connected

route-map redistribute-connected deny 100
  match interface eth0
!
route-map redistribute-connected permit 1000
```

## SNMP Traps Use eth0 Only

SNMP cannot use a switch port to send data. For any SNMP traps, this traffic gets sent out to eth0. Cumulus Networks plans to support switch ports in the future.



For SNMP, this restriction only applies to traps. SNMP polling is not affected.

## Using SSH within a Management VRF Context

If you SSH to the switch through a switch port, it works as expected. If you need to SSH from the device out a switch port, use `vrf exec default ssh <ip_address_of_swp_port>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip addr show swp17
```

```
19: swp17: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UP qlen 500
    link/ether ec:f4:bb:fc:19:23 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    inet 10.23.23.2/24 scope global swp17
        inet6 fe80::eef4:bbff:fe:1923/64 scope link
            valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vrf exec default ssh 10.23.23.2 10.3.3.3
```

## Viewing the Routing Tables

When you look at the routing table with `ip route show`, you are looking at the switch port (*main*) table. You can also see the dataplane routing table with `ip route show table main`.

To look at information about eth0 (the management routing table), use `ip route show table mgmt`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route show table mgmt
default via 192.168.0.1 dev eth0

cumulus@switch:~$ ip route show
default via 10.23.23.3 dev swp17 proto zebra metric 20
10.3.3.3 via 10.23.23.3 dev swp17
10.23.23.0/24 dev swp17 proto kernel scope link src 10.23.23.2
192.168.0.0/24 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 192.168.0.11
```

## Viewing a Single Route

Note that if you use `ip route get` to return information about a single route, the command resolves over the *mgmt* table by default. To get information about the route in the switching silicon, use:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route get <addr>
```

Or:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-rctl ip route show <addr>
```

To get the route for any VRF, use `ip route get <addr> oif <vrf name>`. So to get the route for the *mgmt* VRF, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route get <addr> oif mgmt
```

## Using the mgmt Interface Class

In `ifupdown2` interface classes (see page 155) are used to create a user-defined grouping for interfaces. The special class `mgmt` is available to separate the switch's management interfaces from the data interfaces. This allows you to manage the data interfaces by default using `ifupdown2` commands. Performing operations on the `mgmt` interfaces requires specifying the `--allow-mgmt` option, which prevents inadvertent outages on the management interfaces. Cumulus Linux by default brings up all interfaces in both the `auto` (default) class and the `mgmt` interface class when the switch boots.

You configure the management interface in `/etc/network/interfaces`. In the example below, the management interface, `eth0`, and the `mgmt` VRF stanzas are added to the `mgmt` interface class:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

allow-mgmt eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt

allow-mgmt mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto
```

When you run `ifupdown2` commands against the interfaces in the `mgmt` class, include `--allow=mgmt` with the commands. For example, to see which interfaces are in the `mgmt` interface class, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ifquery l --allow=mgmt
eth0
mgmt
```

To reload the configurations for interfaces in the `mgmt` class, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload --allow=mgmt
```

However, you can still bring the management interface up and down using `ifup eth0` and `ifdown eth0`.

## Management VRF and DNS

Cumulus Linux supports both DHCP and static DNS entries over management VRF through IP FIB rules. These rules are added to direct lookups to the DNS addresses out of the management VRF. However, nameservers configured through DHCP are automatically updated, while statically configured nameservers (configured in `/etc/resolv.conf`) only get updated when you run `ifreload -a`.

Because DNS lookups are forced out of the management interface using FIB rules, this could affect data plane ports if there are overlapping addresses.

## Incompatibility with `cl-ns-mgmt`

- ⚠ Management VRF has replaced the management namespace functionality in Cumulus Linux. The management namespace feature (via the `cl-ns-mgmt` utility) has been deprecated, and the `cl-ns-mgmt` command has been removed.

## Protocol Independent Multicast - PIM

### ⚠ Early Access Feature

PIM Sparse Mode is an [early access feature](#) Cumulus Linux 3.1. Before you can install PIM, you must enable the Early Access repository. For more information about the Cumulus Linux repository, read [this knowledge base article](#).

Protocol Independent Multicast, or PIM, is a collection of multicast routing protocols implemented to reduce network traffic. The two main PIM modes are PIM Sparse Mode and PIM Dense Mode.

⚠ Cumulus Linux 3.1 supports PIM Sparse Mode.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Installing and Configuring PIM Sparse Mode (see page 552)
- Limitations (see page 554)

## Installing and Configuring PIM Sparse Mode

PIM Sparse Mode builds explicit multicasts trees rooted at a Rendezvous Point (RP) for each group. Each RP keeps track of all multicast sources and receivers for a multicast group range within the PIM domain, allowing PIM Sparse Mode configurations to scale effectively.

To install the `cumulus-pim` package, follow the instructions in the [Cumulus Linux 3.1 release notes](#).

To configure PIM on a switch:

1. Open `/etc/quagga/daemons` in a text editor.
2. Enable the PIM daemon and save the file:

```
pimd=yes
```



As with other routing protocols, the `zebra` daemon must always be enabled, so set it to `yes` as well.

- Run the `sudo systemctl restart` command to restart Quagga:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart quagga
```

To enable IP Multicast on a switch:

- Open `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf` in a text editor.
- Uncomment the `ipmulticast.enable` variable, set the value to `TRUE`, and save the file:

```
ipmulticast.enable = TRUE
```

- Restart `switchd` to implement the changes:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd
```

To enable PIM on an interface:

- In a terminal, run the `vtysh` command to start the Quagga CLI on the switch.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh  
cumulus#
```

- Run the following command to enable multicast routing:

```
cumulus# configure terminal  
cumulus(config)# ip multicast-routing
```

- Run the following commands to configure the PIM interfaces:

```
cumulus# configure terminal  
cumulus(config)# int swp1  
cumulus(config-if)# ip pim sm
```

- Run the following command to enable IGMP on the interfaces with hosts attached:

```
cumulus# configure terminal  
cumulus(config)# int swp1
```

```
cumulus(config-if)# ip igmp
```

5. Run the following command to configure a group mapping for a static RP:

```
cumulus# configure terminal  
cumulus(config)# ip pim rp 192.168.0.1 224.0.0.0/4
```



Each PIM-SM enabled device must configure a static RP to a group mapping, and all PIM-SM enabled devices must have the same RP to group mapping configuration.

Two examples are shown below:

```
cumulus# ip pim rp 192.168.0.1 224.0.0.0/4  
cumulus# ip pim rp 192.168.0.1 228.0.0.0/8  
cumulus# ip pim rp 192.168.0.2 229.0.0.0/8
```

## ***Limitations***

- Only PIM Sparse Mode is available in Cumulus Linux 3.1
- ECMP with multicast traffic is not utilized
- Interfaces must use IPv4 addresses. Unnumbered interfaces are not supported for PIM-SM
- CLOS configuration is recommended when using PIM-SM
- SPT switchover is not currently supported
- Non-native forwarding (register decapsulation) is not currently supported

# Monitoring and Troubleshooting

This chapter introduces monitoring and troubleshooting Cumulus Linux.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 555)
- Using the Serial Console (see page 555)
  - Configuring the Serial Console on ARM Switches (see page 555)
  - Configuring the Serial Console on x86 Switches (see page 556)
- Diagnostics Using cl-support (see page 557)
- Sending Log Files to a syslog Server (see page 558)
  - Harmless syslog Error: Failed to reset devices.list (see page 560)
- Next Steps (see page 561)

## Commands

- cl-support
- fw\_setenv (ARM switches only)

## Using the Serial Console

The serial console can be a useful tool for debugging issues, especially when you find yourself rebooting the switch often or if you don't have a reliable network connection.

The default serial console baud rate is 115200, which is the baud rate ONIE uses.

### ***Configuring the Serial Console on ARM Switches***

On ARM switches, the U-Boot environment variable `baudrate` identifies the baud rate of the serial console. To change the `baudrate` variable, use the `fw_setenv` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo fw_setenv baudrate 9600
Updating environment variable: `baudrate'
Proceed with update [N/y]? y
```

You must reboot the switch for the `baudrate` change to take effect.

The valid values for `baudrate` are:

- 300
- 600

- 1200
- 2400
- 4800
- 9600
- 19200
- 38400
- 115200

## Configuring the Serial Console on x86 Switches

On x86 switches, you configure serial console baud rate by editing `grub`.



Incorrect configuration settings in `grub` can cause the switch to be inaccessible via the console. Grub changes should be carefully reviewed before implementation.

The valid values for the baud rate are:

- 300
- 600
- 1200
- 2400
- 4800
- 9600
- 19200
- 38400
- 115200

To change the serial console baud rate:

1. Edit `/etc/default/grub`. The two relevant lines in `/etc/default/grub` are as follows; replace the `115200` value with a valid value specified above in the `--speed` variable in the first line and in the `console` variable in the second line:

```
GRUB_SERIAL_COMMAND="serial --port=0x2f8 --speed=115200 --word=8  
--parity=no --stop=1"  
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX="console=ttyS1,115200n8  
cl_platform=accton_as5712_54x"
```

2. After you save your changes to the grub configuration, type the following at the command prompt:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ update-grub
```

3. If you plan on accessing your switch's BIOS over the serial console, you need to update the baud rate in the switch BIOS. For more information, see [this knowledge base article](#).

4. Reboot the switch.

## Diagnostics Using cl-support

You can use `cl-support` to generate a single export file that contains various details and the configuration from a switch. This is useful for remote debugging and troubleshooting.

You should run `cl-support` before you submit a support request to Cumulus Networks as this file helps in the investigation of issues:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-support -h
Usage: cl-support [-h] [-s] [-t] [-v] [reason]...
Args:
[reason]: Optional reason to give for invoking cl-support.
          Saved into tarball's cmdline.args file.
Options:
-h: Print this usage statement
-s: Security sensitive collection
-t: User filename tag
-v: Verbose
-e MODULES: Enable modules. Comma separated module list (run with -e
help for module names)
-d MODULES: Disable modules. Comma separated module list (run with -d
help for module names)
```

Example output:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ls /var/support
cl_support_20130806_032720.tar.xz
```

The directory structure is compressed using LZMA2 compression and can be extracted using the `tar` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cd /var/support
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tar xf cl_support_20160527_140040.tar
cumulus@switch:~$ ls -l cl_support_20160529_140040/
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 7724 May 27 14:00 cl-support
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 52 May 27 14:00 cmdline.args
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 4096 May 27 14:00 core
drwxr-xr-x 64 root root 4096 May 27 13:51 etc
drwxr-xr-x 4 root root 4096 May 27 14:00 proc
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 4096 May 27 14:01 support
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 4096 May 27 14:00 sys
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 4096 Mar 8 15:22 var
```

The directory contains the following elements:

Directory	Description
core	Contains the core files on the switch, including those generated from <code>switchd</code> .
etc	Is a replica of the switch's <code>/etc</code> directory. <code>/etc</code> contains all the general Linux configuration files, as well as configurations for the system's network interfaces, <code>quagga</code> and other packages.
log	Is a replica of the switch's <code>/var/log</code> directory. Most Cumulus Linux log files are located in this directory. Notable log files include <code>switchd.log</code> , <code>daemon.log</code> , <code>quagga</code> log files, and <code>syslog</code> . For more information, read this <a href="#">knowledge base article</a> .
proc	Is a replica of the switch's <code>/proc</code> directory. In Linux, <code>/proc</code> contains runtime system information (like system memory, devices mounted, and hardware configuration). These files are not actual files but the current state of the system.
support	Is a set of files containing further system information, which is obtained by <code>cl-support</code> running commands such as <code>ps -aux</code> , <code>netstat -i</code> , and so forth — even the routing tables.

`cl-support`, when untarred, contains a `cmdline.args` file. This file indicates what reason triggered it. When contacting Cumulus Networks technical support, please attach the `cl-support` file if possible. For more information about `cl-support`, read [Understanding and Decoding the cl-support Output File](#) (see page 574).



If you have issues extracting the script with the `tar` command, like an error saying the file does not look like tar archive, try using the `unxz` command first:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo unxz cl_support_20130729_140040.tar.xz
```

You can save a lot of disk space and perhaps some time if you do not run `unxz` on the tar file.

## Sending Log Files to a syslog Server

All logging on Cumulus Linux is done with `rsyslog`. `rsyslog` provides both local logging to the `syslog` file as well as the ability to export logs to an external `syslog` server. High precision timestamps are enabled for all `rsyslog` log files; here's an example:

```
2015-08-14T18:21:43.337804+00:00 cumulus switchd[3629]:  
switchd.c:1409 switchd version 1.0-cl2.5+5
```

**Local logging:** Most logs within Cumulus Linux are sent to files in the `/var/log` directory. Most relevant information is placed within the `/var/log/syslog` file. For more information on specific log files, see [Troubleshooting Log Files \(see page 576\)](#).

**Export logging:** To send `syslog` files to an external `syslog` server, add a rule specifying to copy all messages `(*.*)` to the IP address and switch port of your `syslog` server in the `rsyslog` configuration files as described below.

In the following example, `192.168.1.2` is the remote `syslog` server and `514` is the port number. For UDP-based `syslog`, use a single `@` before the IP address: `@192.168.1.2:514`. For TCP-based `syslog`, use two `@@` before the IP address: `@@192.168.1.2:514`.

1. Create a file called something like `/etc/rsyslog.d/90-remotesyslog.conf`. Make sure it starts with a number lower than `99` so that it executes before `99-syslog.conf`. Add content like the following:

```
## Copy all messages to the remote syslog server at 192.168.1.2
port 514
*.*                                         @192.168.1.2:514
```

2. Restart `rsyslog`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart rsyslog.service
```



All Cumulus Linux rules are stored in separate files in `/etc/rsyslog.d/`, which are called at the end of the `GLOBAL DIRECTIVES` section of `/etc/rsyslog.conf`. As a result, the `RULES` section at the end of `rsyslog.conf` is ignored because the messages have to be processed by the rules in `/etc/rsyslog.d` and then dropped by the last line in `/etc/rsyslog.d/99-syslog.conf`.



In the case of the `switchd` rules file, the file must be numbered lower than `25`. For example, `13-switchd-remote.conf`.

If you need to send other log files (e.g. `switchd` logs) to a `syslog` server, configure a new file in `/etc/rsyslog.d`, as described above, and add lines similar to the following lines:

```
## Logging switchd messages to remote syslog server
$ModLoad imfile
$InputFileName /var/log/switchd.log
$InputFileStateFile logfile-log
$InputFileTag switchd:
$InputFileSeverity info
$InputFileFacility local7
$InputFilePollInterval 5
$InputRunFileMonitor
```

```
if $programname == 'switchd' then @192.168.1.2:514
```

Then restart `syslog`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart rsyslog.service
```

In the above configuration, each setting is defined as follows:

Setting	Description
\$ModLoad <i>imfile</i>	Enables the <code>rsyslog</code> module to watch file contents.
\$InputFileName	The file to be sent to the <code>syslog</code> server. In this example, you are going to send changes made to <code>/var/log/switchd.log</code> to the <code>syslog</code> server.
\$InputFileStateFile	This is used by <code>rsyslog</code> to track state of the file being monitored. This must be unique for each file being monitored.
\$InputFileTag	Defines the <code>syslog</code> tag that will precede the <code>syslog</code> messages. In this example, all logs are prefaced with <code>switchd</code> .
\$InputFileSeverity	Defines the logging severity level sent to the <code>syslog</code> server.
\$InputFileFacility	Defines the logging format. <code>local7</code> is common.
\$InputFilePollInterval	Defines how frequently in seconds <code>rsyslog</code> looks for new information in the file. Lower values provide faster updates but create slightly more load on the CPU.
\$InputRunFileMonitor	Enables the file monitor module with the configured settings.

In most cases, the settings to customize include:

Setting	Description
\$InputFileName	The file to stream to the <code>syslog</code> server.
\$InputFileStateFile	A unique name for each file being watched.
\$InputFileTag	A prefix to the log message on the server.

Finally, the `if $programname` line is what sends the log files to the `syslog` server. It follows the same syntax as the `/var/log/syslog` file, where `@` indicates UDP, `192.168.1.2` is the IP address of the `syslog` server, and `514` is the UDP port. The value `switchd` must match the value in `$InputFileTag`.

## Harmless syslog Error: Failed to reset devices.list

The following message gets logged to `/var/log/syslog` when you run `systemctl daemon-reload` and during system boot:

```
systemd[1]: Failed to reset devices.list on /system.slice: Invalid argument
```

This message is harmless, and can be ignored. It is logged when `systemd` attempts to change cgroup attributes that are read only. The upstream version of `systemd` has been modified to not log this message by default.

The `systemctl daemon-reload` command is often issued when Debian packages are installed, so the message may be seen multiple times when upgrading packages.

## Next Steps

The links below discuss more specific monitoring topics.

## Single User Mode - Boot Recovery

Use single user mode to assist in troubleshooting system boot issues or for password recovery. Entering single user mode is [platform-specific](#), so follow the appropriate steps for your x86 or ARM switch.

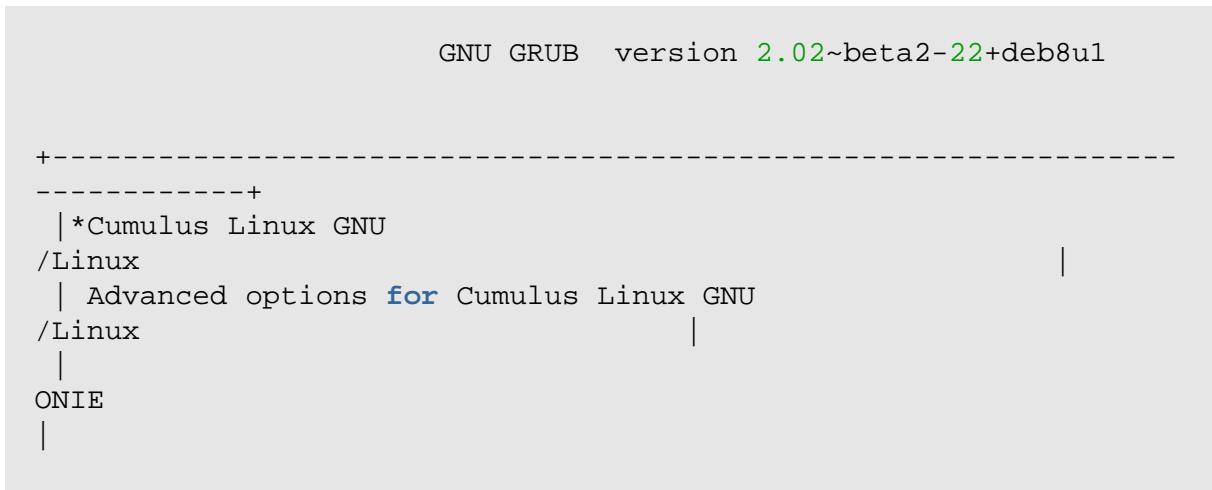
## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Entering Single User Mode on an x86 Switch (see page 561)
- Entering Single User Mode on an ARM Switch (see page 563)

## Entering Single User Mode on an x86 Switch

1. Boot the switch, as soon as you see the GRUB menu.



2. Use the ^ and v arrow keys to select **Advanced options for Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux**. A menu similar to the following should appear:

```
GNU GRUB  version 2.02~beta2-22+deb8u1

+-----+
-----+
| Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux, with Linux 4.1.0-cl-1-
amd64           |
| Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux, with Linux 4.1.0-cl-1-amd64
(sysvinit)       |
| *Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux, with Linux 4.1.0-cl-1-amd64
(recovery mode)  |
|               |
+-----+
-----+
```

3. Select **Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux, with Linux 4.1.0-cl-1-amd64 (recovery mode)**.  
4. Press ctrl-x to reboot.  
5. After the system reboots, set a new password.

```
# passwd
Enter new UNIX password:
Retype new UNIX password:
passwd: password updated successfully
```

6. Reboot the system:

```
# sync
# reboot -f
Restarting the system.
```

## Entering Single User Mode on an ARM Switch

- From the console, boot the switch, interrupting the U-Boot countdown to enter the U-Boot prompt. Enter the following:

```
=> run cl_bootrecover
```

- After the system boots, the shell command prompt appears. In this mode, you can change the root password or test a boot service that is hanging the boot process.

```
Welcome to rescu
root@switch:~# passwd
Enter new UNIX password:
Retype new UNIX password:
passwd: password updated successfully
```

- Reboot the system.

```
root@switch:~# reboot
Restarting the system.
```

## Resource Diagnostics Using cl-resource-query

You can use `cl-resource-query` to retrieve information about host entries, MAC entries, L2 and L3 routes, and ECMPs (equal-cost multi-path routes, see [Load Balancing \(see page 436\)](#)) that are in use. This is especially useful because Cumulus Linux syncs routes between the kernel and the switching silicon. If the required resource pools in hardware fill up, new kernel routes can cause existing routes to move from being fully allocated to being partially allocated.

In order to avoid this, routes in the hardware should be monitored and kept below the ASIC limits. For example, on systems with a Broadcom Trident II chipset, the limits are as follows:

```
routes: 8092 <<< if all routes are IPv6, or 16384 if all routes are
IPv4
long mask routes 2048 <<< these are routes with a mask longer than
the route mask limit
route mask limit 64
host_routes: 8192
ecmp_nhs: 16346
ecmp_nhs_per_route: 52
```

This translates to about 314 routes with ECMP next hops, if every route has the maximum ECMP NHs.

You can monitor this in Cumulus Linux with the `cl-resource-query` command. Results vary between switches running on different chipsets.

`cl-resource-query` results for a Mellanox Spectrum switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-resource-query
Host entries:          2,  0% of maximum value  5120
IPv4 neighbors:        2
IPv6 neighbors:        0
IPv4 entries:          33,  0% of maximum value 39936
IPv6 entries:          13,  0% of maximum value 15360
IPv4 Routes:           33
IPv6 Routes:           13
Total Routes:          46,  0% of maximum value 32768
ECMP nexthops:         0,  0% of maximum value 209664
MAC entries:           25,  0% of maximum value 409600
```

`cl-resource-query` results for a Broadcom Tomahawk switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-resource-query
Host entries:          1,  0% of maximum value  20480 <<< 2
IPv4 neighbors can use one entry
IPv4 neighbors:         1
IPv6 neighbors:         0
IPv4 entries:           5,  0% of maximum value 32668 <<< switc
h overrides the SDK max limits
IPv6 entries:           4,  0% of maximum value 16384 <<<
IPv4 Routes:            5
IPv6 Routes:            4
Total Routes:           9,  0% of maximum value 32768
ECMP nexthops:          0,  0% of maximum value 16350
MAC entries:            2,  0% of maximum value 40960
```

`cl-resource-query` results for a Broadcom Trident II switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-resource-query
Host entries:          1,  0% of maximum value  8192 <<< this
is the default software-imposed limit, 50% of the hardware limit
IPv4 neighbors:         1           <<< these are counts of the
number of valid entries in the table
IPv6 neighbors:         0
IPv4 entries:           13,  0% of maximum value 32668
IPv6 entries:           18,  0% of maximum value 16384
IPv4 Routes:            13
IPv6 Routes:            18
Total Routes:           31,  0% of maximum value 32768
ECMP nexthops:          0,  0% of maximum value 16346
MAC entries:            12,  0% of maximum value 32768
```

# Monitoring System Hardware

You monitor system hardware in these ways, using:

- decode-syseeprom
- sensors
- smond
- Net-SNMP (see page 630)
- watchdog

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 565)
- Monitoring Hardware Using decode-syseeprom (see page 565)
  - Command Options (see page 566)
  - Related Commands (see page 567)
- Monitoring Hardware Using sensors (see page 567)
  - Command Options (see page 567)
- Monitoring Switch Hardware Using SNMP (see page 568)
- Monitoring System Units Using smond (see page 568)
  - Command Options (see page 569)
- Keeping the Switch Alive Using the Hardware Watchdog (see page 569)
- Configuration Files (see page 569)
- Useful Links (see page 570)

## Commands

- decode-syseeprom
- dmidecode
- lshw
- sensors
- smond

## Monitoring Hardware Using decode-syseeprom

The decode-syseeprom command enables you to retrieve information about the switch's EEPROM. If the EEPROM is writable, you can set values on the EEPROM.

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ decode-syseeprom
TlvInfo Header:
  Id String:    TlvInfo
  Version:      1
  Total Length: 114
TLV Name          Code Len Value
-----
Product Name      0x21  4  4804
Part Number       0x22  14 R0596-F0009-00
Device Version    0x26  1  2
Serial Number     0x23  19 D1012023918PE000012
Manufacture Date  0x25  19 10/09/2013 20:39:02
Base MAC Address  0x24  6  00:E0:EC:25:7B:D0
MAC Addresses     0x2A  2  53
Vendor Name       0x2D  17 Penguin Computing
Label Revision    0x27  4  4804
Manufacture Country 0x2C  2  CN
CRC-32            0xFE  4  0x96543BC5
(checksum valid)
```

## Command Options

Usage: /usr/cumulus/bin/decode-syseeprom [-a][-r][-s [args]][-t]

Option	Description
-h, --help	Displays the help message and exits.
-a	Prints the base MAC address for switch interfaces.
-r	Prints the number of MACs allocated for switch interfaces.
-s	Sets the EEPROM content if the EEPROM is writable. args can be supplied in command line in a comma separated list of the form '<field>=<value>, ...'. '.', '=' and '!' are illegal characters in field names and values. Fields that are not specified will default to their current values. If args are supplied in the command line, they will be written without confirmation. If args is empty, the values will be prompted interactively.
-t TARGET	Selects the target EEPROM (board, psu2, psu1) for the read or write operation; default is board.
-e, --serial	Prints the device serial number.

## Related Commands

You can also use the `dmidecode` command to retrieve hardware configuration information that's been populated in the BIOS.

You can use `apt-get` to install the `lshw` program on the switch, which also retrieves hardware configuration information.

## Monitoring Hardware Using sensors

The `sensors` command provides a method for monitoring the health of your switch hardware, such as power, temperature and fan speeds. This command executes `lm-sensors`.

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sensors
tmp75-i2c-6-48
Adapter: i2c-1-mux (chan_id 0)
temp1:      +39.0°C (high = +75.0°C, hyst = +25.0°C)

tmp75-i2c-6-49
Adapter: i2c-1-mux (chan_id 0)
temp1:      +35.5°C (high = +75.0°C, hyst = +25.0°C)

ltc4215-i2c-7-40
Adapter: i2c-1-mux (chan_id 1)
in1:      +11.87V
in2:      +11.98V
power1:    12.98W
curr1:    +1.09A

max6651-i2c-8-48
Adapter: i2c-1-mux (chan_id 2)
fan1:     13320 RPM (div = 1)
fan2:     13560 RPM
```



Output from the `sensors` command varies depending upon the switch hardware you use, as each platform ships with a different type and number of sensors.

## Command Options

Usage: `sensors [OPTION]... [CHIP]...`

Option	Description
<code>-C, --config-file</code>	

Option	Description
	Specify a config file; use - after -c to read the config file from <code>stdin</code> ; by default, <code>sensors</code> references the configuration file in <code>/etc/sensors.d/</code> .
<code>-s, --set</code>	Executes set statements in the config file (root only); <code>sensors -s</code> is run once at boot time and applies all the settings to the boot drivers.
<code>-f, --fahrenheits</code>	Show temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit.
<code>-A, --no-adapter</code>	Do not show the adapter for each chip.
<code>--bus-list</code>	Generate bus statements for <code>sensors.conf</code> .

If [CHIP] is not specified in the command, all chip info will be printed. Example chip names include:

- lm78-i2c-0-2d \*-i2c-0-2d
- lm78-i2c-0-\* \*-i2c-0-\*
- lm78-i2c-\*-\* \*-i2c-\*-\*
- lm78-i2c-\*-\* \*-i2c-\*-\*
- lm78-isa-0290 \*-isa-0290
- lm78-isa-\* \*-isa-\*
- lm78-\*

## Monitoring Switch Hardware Using SNMP

The Net-SNMP documentation is discussed here (see page 630).

## Monitoring System Units Using smond

The `smond` daemon monitors system units like power supply and fan, updates their corresponding LEDs, and logs the change in the state. Changes in system unit state are detected via the `cp1d` registers. `smond` utilizes these registers to read all sources, which impacts the health of the system unit, determines the unit's health, and updates the system LEDs.

Use `smonctl` to display sensor information for the various system units:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ smonctl
Board : OK
Fan   : OK
PSU1  : OK
PSU2  : BAD
Temp1 (Networking ASIC Die Temp Sensor ) : OK
Temp10 (Right side of the board ) : OK
Temp2 (Near the CPU (Right) ) : OK
```

Temp3	(Top right corner	) :	OK
Temp4	(Right side of Networking ASIC	) :	OK
Temp5	(Middle of the board	) :	OK
Temp6	(P2020 CPU die sensor	) :	OK
Temp7	(Left side of the board	) :	OK
Temp8	(Left side of the board	) :	OK
Temp9	(Right side of the board	) :	OK

## Command Options

Usage: `smonctl [OPTION]... [CHIP]...`

Option	Description
<code>-s SENSOR, --sensor SENSOR</code>	Displays data for the specified sensor.
<code>-v, --verbose</code>	Displays detailed hardware sensors data.

For more information, read `man smond` and `man smonctl`.

## Keeping the Switch Alive Using the Hardware Watchdog

Cumulus Linux includes a simplified version of the `wd_keepalive(8)` daemon from the standard `watchdog` Debian package. `wd_keepalive` writes to a file called `/dev/watchdog` periodically to keep the switch from resetting, at least once per minute. Each write delays the reboot time by another minute. After one minute of inactivity where `wd_keepalive` doesn't write to `/dev/watchdog`, the switch resets itself. The watchdog is enabled by default on all supported switches, and starts when you boot the switch, before `switchd` starts.

To enable the hardware watchdog, edit the `/etc/watchdog.d/<your_platform>` file and set `run_watchdog` to 1:

```
run_watchdog=1
```

To disable the watchdog, edit the `/etc/watchdog.d/<your_platform>` file and set `run_watchdog` to 0 :

```
run_watchdog=0
```

Then stop the daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop wd_keepalive.service
```

You can modify the settings for the watchdog — like the timeout setting and scheduler priority — in its configuration file, `/etc/watchdog.conf`.

## Configuration Files

- /etc/cumulus/switchd.conf
- /etc/cumulus/sysledcontrol.conf
- /etc/sensors.d/<switch>.conf - sensor configuration file (do **not** edit it!)
- /etc/watchdog.conf

## Useful Links

- [packages.debian.org/search?keywords=lshw](http://packages.debian.org/search?keywords=lshw)
- [lm-sensors.org](http://lm-sensors.org)
- Net-SNMP tutorials

# Monitoring Virtual Device Counters

Cumulus Linux gathers statistics for VXLANS and VLANs using virtual device counters. These counters are supported on Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II-based platforms only; see the [Cumulus Networks HCL](#) for a list of supported platforms.

You can retrieve the data from these counters using tools like `ip -s link show`, `ifconfig`, `/proc/net/dev`, or `netstat -i`.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Sample VXLAN Statistics (see page 570)
- Sample VLAN Statistics (see page 572)
  - For VLANs Using the non-VLAN-aware Bridge Driver (see page 572)
  - For VLANs Using the VLAN-aware Bridge Driver (see page 572)
- Configuring the Counters in switchd (see page 573)
  - Configuring the Poll Interval (see page 573)
  - Configuring Internal VLAN Statistics (see page 573)
  - Clearing Statistics (see page 573)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 574)

## Sample VXLAN Statistics

VXLAN statistics are available as follows:

- Aggregate statistics are available per VNI; this includes access and network statistics.
- Network statistics are available for each VNI and displayed against the VXLAN device. This is independent of the VTEP used, so this is a summary of the VNI statistics across all tunnels.
- Access statistics are available per VLAN subinterface.

First, get interface information regarding the VXLAN bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl show br-vxln16757104
bridge name          bridge id      STP enabled    interfaces
-vxln16757104       8000.443839006988    no           swp2s0.6
                                         swp2s1.6
                                         swp2s2.6
                                         swp2s3.6
                                         vxln16757104
```

To get VNI statistics, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -s link show br-vxln16757104
62: br-vxln16757104: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc
noqueue state UP mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:69:88 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
        10848     158       0        0        0        0
    TX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped carrier collsns
        27816     541       0        0        0        0
```

To get access statistics, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -s link show swp2s0.6
63: swp2s0.6@swp2s0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc
noqueue master br-vxln16757104 state UP mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:69:88 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
        2680      39       0        0        0        0
    TX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped carrier collsns
        7558     140       0        0        0        0
```

To get network statistics, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -s link show vxln16757104
61: vxln16757104: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc
noqueue master br-vxln16757104 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
    link/ether e2:37:47:db:f1:94 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
        0         0       0        0        0        0
    TX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped carrier collsns
        0         0       0        9        0        0
```

## Sample VLAN Statistics

### For VLANs Using the non-VLAN-aware Bridge Driver

In this case, each bridge is a single L2 broadcast domain and is associated with an internal VLAN. This internal VLAN's counters are displayed as bridge netdev stats.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl show br0
bridge name      bridge id          STP enabled    interfaces
br0              8000.443839006989    yes           bond0.100
                                         swp2s2.100
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -s link show br0
42: br0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
state UP mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:69:89 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
        23201498    227514      0       0       0       0
    TX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped carrier collsns
        18198262    178443      0       0       0       0
```

### For VLANs Using the VLAN-aware Bridge Driver

For a bridge using the VLAN-aware driver (see page 264), the bridge is a just a container and each VLAN (VID /PVID) in the bridge is an independent L2 broadcast domain. As there is no netdev available to display these VLAN statistics, the `switchd` nodes are used instead:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ifquery bridge
auto bridge
iface bridge inet static
  bridge-vlan-aware yes
  bridge-ports swp2s0 swp2s1
  bridge-stp on
  bridge-vids 2000-2002 4094
cumulus@switch:~$ ls /cumulus/switchd/run/stats/vlan/
2 2000 2001 2002 all
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /cumulus/switchd/run/stats/vlan/2000/aggregate
Vlan id          : 2000
L3 Routed In Octets      : -
L3 Routed In Packets      : -
L3 Routed Out Octets      : -
L3 Routed Out Packets      : -
Total In Octets          : 375
Total In Packets          : 3
Total Out Octets          : 387
Total Out Packets          : 3
```

## Configuring the Counters in switchd

These counters are enabled by default. To configure them, use `c1-cfg` and configure them as you would any other `switchd` parameter (see page 139). The `switchd` parameters are as follows:

- `stats.vlan.aggregate`, which controls the statistics available for each VLAN. Its value defaults to *BRIEF*.
- `stats.vxlan.aggregate`, which controls the statistics available for each VNI (access and network). Its value defaults to *DETAIL*.
- `stats.vxlan.member`, which controls the statistics available for each local/access port in a VXLAN bridge. Its value defaults to *BRIEF*.

The values for each parameter can be one of the following:

- `NONE`: This disables the counter.
- `BRIEF`: This provides tx/rx packet/byte counters for the associated parameter.
- `DETAIL`: This provides additional feature-specific counters. In the case of `stats.vxlan.aggregate`, `DETAIL` provides access vs. network statistics. For the other types, `DETAIL` has the same effect as `BRIEF`.



If you change one of these settings on the fly, the new configuration applies only to those VNIs or VLANs set up after the configuration changed; previously allocated counters remain as is.

## Configuring the Poll Interval

The virtual device counters are polled periodically. This can be CPU intensive, so the interval is configurable in `switchd`, with a default of 2 seconds.

```
# Virtual devices hw-stat poll interval (in seconds)
#stats.vdev_hw_poll_interval = 2
```

## Configuring Internal VLAN Statistics

For debugging purposes, you may need to access packet statistics associated with internal VLAN IDs. These statistics are hidden by default, but can be configured in `switchd`:

```
#stats.vlan.show_internal_vlans = FALSE
```

## Clearing Statistics

Since `ethtool` is not supported for virtual devices, you cannot clear the statistics cache maintained by the kernel. You can clear the hardware statistics via `switchd`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo echo 1 > /cumulus/switchd/clear/stats/vlan
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo echo 1 > /cumulus/switchd/clear/stats/vxlan
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## Caveats and Errata

- Currently the CPU port is internally added as a member of all VLANs. Because of this, packets sent to the CPU are counted against the corresponding VLAN's tx packets/bytes. There is no workaround.
- When checking the virtual counters for the bridge, the TX count is the number of packets destined to the CPU before any hardware policers take effect. For example, if 500 broadcast packets are sent into the bridge, the CPU is also sent 500 packets. These 500 packets are policed by the default ACLs in Cumulus Linux, so the CPU might receive fewer than the 500 packets if the incoming packet rate is too high. The TX counter for the bridge should be equal to  $500 * (\text{number of ports in the bridge} - \text{incoming port} + \text{CPU port})$  or just  $500 * \text{number of ports in the bridge}$ .
- You cannot use `ethtool -s` for virtual devices. This is because the counters available via `netdev` are sufficient to display the `vlan/vxlan` counters currently supported in the hardware (only rx/tx packets/bytes are supported currently).

## Understanding and Decoding the cl-support Output File

The `cl-support` command generates a tar archive of useful information for troubleshooting that can be auto-generated or manually created. To manually create it, run the `cl-support` command. The `cl-support` file is automatically generated when:

- There is a **core file dump** of any application (not specific to Cumulus Linux, but something all Linux distributions support)
- Memory usage surpasses 90% of the total system memory (memory usage > 90% for 1 cycle)
- The `loadavg` over 15 minutes has on average greater than 2 (`loadavg (15min) > 2`)

The Cumulus Networks support team may request you submit the output from `cl-support` to help with the investigation of issues you might experience with Cumulus Linux.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-support -h
Usage: cl-support [-h] [reason]...
Args:
[reason]: Optional reason to give for invoking cl-support.
          Saved into tarball's reason.txt file.
Options:
-h: Print this usage statement

Example output:
cumulus@switch:~$ ls /var/support
cl_support__switch_20141204_203833
```

This chapter covers ...

- Understanding the File Naming Scheme (see page 574)
- Decoding the Output (see page 575)

## ***Understanding the File Naming Scheme***

The `cl-support` command generates a file under `/var/support` with the following naming scheme. The following example describes the file called `cl_support__switch_20141204_203833.tar.xz`.

<code>cl_support</code>	<code>switch</code>	<code>20141204</code>	<code>203833</code>
This is always prepended to the <code>.tar.gz</code> output.	This is the hostname of the switch where <code>cl-support</code> was executed.	The date in year, month, day; so <code>20141204</code> is December, 4th, 2014.	The time in hours, minutes, seconds; so <code>203833</code> is 20, 38, 33 (20:38:33) or the equivalent to 8:38:33 PM.

## ***Decoding the Output***

Decoding a `cl_support` file is a simple process performed using the `tar` command. The following example illustrates extracting the `cl_support` file:

```
tar -xf cl_support__switch_20141204_203834.tar.xz
```

The `-xf` options are defined here:

Option	Description
<code>-x</code>	Extracts to disk from the archive.
<code>-f</code>	Reads the archive from the specified file.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ls -l cl_support__switch_20141204_203834/
-rwxr-xr-x  1 root root  7724 Jul 29 14:00 cl-support
-rw-r--r--  1 root root    52 Jul 29 14:00 cmdline.args
drwxr-xr-x  2 root root  4096 Jul 29 14:00 core
drwxr-xr-x  64 root root  4096 Jul 29 13:51 etc
drwxr-xr-x   4 root root  4096 Jul 29 14:00 proc
drwxr-xr-x   2 root root  4096 Jul 29 14:01 support
drwxr-xr-x   3 root root  4096 Jul 29 14:00 sys
drwxr-xr-x   3 root root  4096 Aug  8 15:22 var
```

The `cl_support` file, when untarred, contains a `reason.txt` file. This file indicates what reason triggered the event. When contacting Cumulus Networks technical support, please attach the `cl-support` file if possible.

The directory contains the following elements:

Directory	Description
<code>cl-support</code>	

Directory	Description
	This is a copy of the <code>c1-support</code> script that generated the <code>c1_support</code> file. It is copied so Cumulus Networks knows exactly which files were included and which weren't. This helps to fix future <code>c1-support</code> requests in the future.
core	Contains the core files generated from the Cumulus Linux HAL (hardware abstraction layer) process, <code>switchd</code> .
etc	<code>etc</code> is the core system configuration directory. <code>c1-support</code> replicates the switch's <code>/etc</code> directory. <code>/etc</code> contains all the general Linux configuration files, as well as configurations for the system's network interfaces, <code>quagga</code> , and other packages.
var/log	<code>/var</code> is the "variable" subdirectory, where programs record runtime information. System logging, user tracking, caches and other files that system programs create and monitor go into <code>/var</code> . <code>c1-support</code> includes only the <code>log</code> subdirectory of the <code>var</code> system-level directory and replicates the switch's <code>/var/log</code> directory. Most Cumulus Linux log files are located in this directory. Notable log files include <code>switchd.log</code> , <code>daemon.log</code> , <code>quagga</code> log files, and <code>syslog</code> . For more information, read this <a href="#">knowledge base article</a> .
proc	<code>proc</code> (short for processes) provides system statistics through a directory-and-file interface. In Linux, <code>/proc</code> contains runtime system information (like system memory, devices mounted, and hardware configuration). <code>c1-support</code> simply replicates the switch's <code>/proc</code> directory to determine the current state of the system.
support	<code>support</code> is <b>not</b> a replica of the Linux file system like the other folders listed above. Instead, it is a set of files containing the output of commands from the command line. Examples include the output of <code>ps -aux</code> , <code>netstat -i</code> , and so forth — even the routing tables are included.

Here is more information on the file structure:

- [Troubleshooting the etc Directory \(see page 579\)](#) — In terms of sheer numbers of files, `/etc` contains the largest number of files to send to Cumulus Networks by far. However, log files could be significantly larger in file size.
- [Troubleshooting Log Files \(see page 576\)](#) — This guide highlights the most important log files to look at. Keep in mind, `c1-support` includes all of the log files.
- [Troubleshooting the support Directory \(see page 590\)](#) — This is an explanation of the `support` directory included in the `c1-support` output.

## Troubleshooting Log Files

The only real unique entity for logging on Cumulus Linux compared to any other Linux distribution is `switchd.log`, which logs the HAL (hardware abstraction layer) from hardware like the Broadcom or Mellanox ASIC.

This guide on [NixCraft](#) is amazing for understanding how `/var/log` works. The green highlighted rows below are the most important logs and usually looked at first when debugging.

Log	Description	Why is this important?
/var/log/alternatives.log	Information from the update-alternatives are logged into this log file.	
/var/log/apt	Information the apt utility can send logs here; for example, from apt-get install and apt-get remove.	
/var/log/audit/*	Contains log information stored by the Linux audit daemon, auditd.	
/var/log/auth.log	<p>Authentication logs.</p> <p>Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.</p>	
/var/log/autoprovision	Logs output generated by running the <a href="#">zero touch provisioning (see page 54)</a> script.	
/var/log/boot.log	Contains information that is logged when the system boots.	
/var/log/btmp	<p>This file contains information about failed login attempts. Use the last command to view the btmp file. For example:</p> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ last -f /var/log/btmp   more</pre>	
/var/log/clagd.log	Logs status of the <a href="#">clagd service (see page 273)</a> .	
/var/log/cron.log	<p>Log file for cron jobs.</p> <p>Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.</p>	
/var/log/daemon.log	<p>Contains information logged by the various background daemons that run on the system.</p> <p>Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.</p>	
/var/log/debug	<p>Debugging information.</p> <p>Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.</p>	

Log	Description	Why is this important?
/var/log/dmesg	<p>Contains kernel ring buffer information. When the system boots up, it prints number of messages on the screen that display information about the hardware devices that the kernel detects during boot process. These messages are available in the kernel ring buffer and whenever a new message arrives, the old message gets overwritten. You can also view the content of this file using the <code>dmesg</code> command.</p>	<code>dmesg</code> is one of the few places to determine hardware errors.
/var/log/dpkg.log	<p>Contains information that is logged when a package is installed or removed using the <code>dpkg</code> command.</p>	
/var/log/faillog	<p>Contains failed user login attempts. Use the <code>faillog</code> command to display the contents of this file.</p>	
/var/log/fsck/*	<p>The <code>fsck</code> utility is used to check and optionally repair one or more Linux filesystems.</p>	
/var/log/kern.log	<p>Logs produced by the kernel and handled by <code>syslog</code>. Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.</p>	
/var/log/lastlog	<p>Formats and prints the contents of the last login log file.</p>	
/var/log/lpr.log	<p>Printer logs. Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.</p>	
/var/log/mail.log	<p>Mail server logs. Also includes <code>mail.err</code>, <code>mail.info</code> and <code>mail.warn</code>. Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.</p>	
/var/log/messages	<p>General messages and system-related information. Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.</p>	
/var/log/news/*	<p>The <code>news</code> command keeps you informed of news concerning the system. Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.</p>	
/var/log/ntpstats	<p>Logs for network configuration protocol.</p>	

Log	Description	Why is this important?
/var/log /openvswitch /*	ovsdb-server logs.	
/var/log /quagga/*	Where Quagga logs to once enabled.	This is how Cumulus Networks troubleshoots routing. For example an md5 or mtu mismatch with OSPF.
/var/log /switchd.log	The HAL log for Cumulus Linux.	This is specific to Cumulus Linux. Any switchd crashes are logged here.
/var/log/syslog	The main system log, which logs everything except auth-related messages.	The primary log; it's easiest to grep this file to see what occurred during a problem.
/var/log/user.log	Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.	
/var/log /watchdog	Hardware watchdog (see page 569) log files.	
/var/log/wtmp	Login records file.	

## Troubleshooting the etc Directory

The [c1-support](#) (see page 574) script replicates the /etc directory.

Files that c1-support deliberately excludes are:

File	Description
/etc/nologin	nologin prevents unprivileged users from logging into the system.

File	Description
/etc/alternatives	update-alternatives creates, removes, maintains and displays information about the symbolic links comprising the Debian alternatives system.

This is the alphabetical of the output from running `ls -l` on the `/etc` directory structure created by `c1-support`. The green highlighted rows are the ones Cumulus Networks finds most important when troubleshooting problems.

File	Description	Why is this important?
adduser.conf	The file <code>/etc/adduser.conf</code> contains defaults for the programs <code>adduser</code> , <code>addgroup</code> , <code>deluser</code> , and <code>delgroup</code> .	
adjtime	Corrects the time to synchronize the <code>system clock</code> .	
apt	<code>apt</code> (Advanced Package Tool) is the command-line <b>tool for handling packages</b> . This folder contains all the configurations.	<code>apt</code> interactions or unsupported apps can affect machine performance.
audisp	The directory that contains <code>audisp-remote.conf</code> , which is the file that controls the <b>configuration of the audit remote logging subsystem</b> .	
audit	The directory that contains the <code>/etc/audit/auditd.conf</code> , which contains configuration information specific to the <code>audit daemon</code> .	
bash.bashrc	<b>Bash is an sh-compatible command language interpreter</b> that executes commands read from standard input or from a file.	
bash_completion	This points to <code>/usr/share/bash-completion/bash_completion</code> .	
bash_completion.d	This folder contains app-specific code for Bash completion on Cumulus Linux, such as <code>mstptcl</code> .	
bcm.d	Broadcom-specific ASIC file structure (hardware interaction). If there are questions, <b>contact the Cumulus Networks Support team</b> . This is unique to Cumulus Linux.	
mlx		

File	Description	Why is this important?
	Mellanox-specific ASIC file structure (hardware interaction). If there are questions, <a href="#">contact the Cumulus Networks Support team</a> . This is unique to Cumulus Linux.	
bindresvport.blacklist	This file contains a list of port numbers between 600 and 1024, which should not be used by <code>bindresvport</code> .	
ca-certificates	The folder for <code>ca-certificates</code> . It is empty by default on Cumulus Linux; see below for more information.	
ca-certificates.conf	Each lines list the pathname of activated CA certificates under <code>/usr/share/ca-certificates</code> .	
calendar	The system-wide <a href="#">default calendar file</a> .	
chef	This is an example of something that is not included by default. In this instance, <code>c1-support</code> included the <code>chef</code> folder for some reason.	This is not installed by default, but this tool could have been installed or configured incorrectly, which is why it's included in the <code>c1-support</code> output.
cron.d	<code>cron</code> is a daemon that <a href="#">executes scheduled commands</a> .	
cron.daily	See above.	
cron.hourly	See above.	
cron.monthly	See above.	
cron.weekly	See above.	
crontab	See above.	
cumulus	<p>This directory contains the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ACL information, stored in the <code>acl</code> directory.</li> <li>• <code>switchd</code> configuration file, <code>switchd.conf</code>.</li> <li>• <code>qos</code>, which is under the <code>datapath</code> directory.</li> <li>• The routing protocol process priority, <code>nice.conf</code>.</li> </ul>	This folder is specific to Cumulus Linux and does not exist on other Linux platforms. For example, while you can configure <code>iptables</code> , to hardware accelerate rules into the hardware you need to use

File	Description	Why is this important?
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The breakout cable configuration, under <code>ports.conf</code>.</li> </ul>	<code>cl-acltool</code> and have the rules under the <code>/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/&lt;filename.rules</code> )
debconf.conf	Debconf is a <a href="#">configuration system for Debian packages</a> .	
debian_version	The complete <a href="#">Debian version string</a> .	
debsums-ignore	<code>debsums</code> <a href="#">verifies installed package files</a> against their MD5 checksums. This file identifies the packages to ignore.	
default	This folder contains files with configurable flags for many different applications (most installed by default or added manually). For example, <code>/etc/default/networking</code> has a flag for <code>EXCLUDE_INTERFACES=</code> , which is set to nothing by default, but a user could change it to something like <code>swp3</code> .	
deluser.conf	The file <code>/etc/deluser.conf</code> contains defaults for the programs <code>deluser</code> and <code>delgroup</code> .	
dhcp	This directory contains <a href="#">DHCP-specific information</a> .	
dpkg	The <a href="#">package manager</a> for Debian.	
e2fsck.conf	The <a href="#">configuration file for e2fsck</a> . It controls the default behavior of <code>e2fsck</code> while it checks ext2, ext3 or ext4 filesystems.	
environment	Utilized by <code>pam_env</code> for setting and unsetting environment variables.	
ethertypes	This file can be used to <a href="#">show readable characters</a> instead of hexadecimal numbers for the protocols. For example, <code>0x0800</code> will be represented by IPv4.	
fstab	Static information about the <a href="#">filesystems</a> .	
fstab.d	The directory that can contain additional <code>fstab</code> information; it is empty by default.	
fw_env.config	Configuration file utilized by <a href="#">U-Boot</a> .	
gai.conf		

File	Description	Why is this important?
	Configuration file for sorting the return information from <a href="#">getaddrinfo</a> .	
groff	The directory containing information for <code>groffer</code> , an application used for displaying <a href="#">Unix man pages</a> .	
group	The <code>/etc/group</code> file is a text file that <a href="#">defines the groups</a> on the system.	
group-	Backup for the <code>/etc/group</code> file.	
gshadow	<code>/etc/gshadow</code> contains the <a href="#">shadowed information for group accounts</a> .	
gshadow-	Backup for the <code>/etc/gshadow</code> file.	
host.conf	<a href="#">Resolver configuration file</a> , which contains options like <code>multi</code> that determines whether <code>/etc/hosts</code> will respond with multiple entries for DNS names.	
hostname	The <a href="#">system host name</a> , such as <code>leaf1</code> , <code>spine1</code> , <code>sw1</code> .	
hosts	The <a href="#">static table lookup</a> for hostnames.	
hosts.allow	The part of the <a href="#">host_access</a> program for controlling a simple access control language. <code>hosts</code> . <code>allow=Access</code> is granted when a daemon/client pair matches an entry.	
hosts.deny	See <code>hosts.allow</code> above, except that access is denied when a daemon/client pair matches an entry.	
init	Default location of the <a href="#">system job configuration files</a> .	
init.d	In order for a service to start when the switch boots, you should add the <a href="#">necessary script</a> to the director here. The differences between <code>init</code> and <code>init.d</code> are explained well <a href="#">here</a> .	
inittab	The format of the <a href="#">inittab file</a> used by the sysv-compatible <code>init</code> process.	
inputrc	The initialization file utilized by <code>readline</code> .	

File	Description	Why is this important?
insserv	This application <a href="#">enables</a> installed system init scripts; this directory is empty by default.	
insserv.conf	Configuration file for <a href="#">insserv</a> .	
insserv.conf.d	Additional directory for <a href="#">insserv configurations</a> .	
iproute2	Directory containing values for the Linux command line tool <a href="#">ip</a> .	
issue	<a href="#">/etc/issue</a> is a text file that contains a <a href="#">message or system identification</a> to be printed before the login prompt.	
issue.net	Identification file for <a href="#">telnet sessions</a> .	
ld.so.cache	Contains a <a href="#">compiled list of candidate libraries</a> previously found in the augmented library path.	
ld.so.conf	Used by the <a href="#">ldconfig</a> tool, which <a href="#">configures dynamic linker run-time bindings</a> .	
ld.so.conf.d	The directory that contains additional <a href="#">ld.so.conf</a> configuration (see above).	
ldap	The directory containing the <a href="#">ldap.conf configuration file</a> used to set the system-wide default to be applied when running LDAP clients.	
libaudit.conf	Configuration file utilized by <a href="#">get_auditfail_action</a> .	
libnl-3	Directory for the configuration relating to the <a href="#">libnl library</a> , which is the core library for implementing the fundamentals required to use the netlink protocol such as socket handling, message construction and parsing, and sending and receiving of data.	
lldpd.d	Directory containing configuration files whose commands are executed by <a href="#">lldpccli</a> at startup.	
localtime	Copy of the original data file for <a href="#">/etc/timezone</a> .	
logcheck	Directory containing <a href="#">logcheck.conf</a> and logfiles utilized by the <a href="#">log check</a> program, which scans system logs for interesting lines.	

File	Description	Why is this important?
login.defs	Shadow password suite configuration.	
logrotate.conf	Rotates, compresses and mails system logs.	
logrotate.d	Directory containing additional log rotate configurations.	
lsb-release	Shows the current version of Linux on the system. Run <code>cat /etc/lsb-release</code> for output.	This shows you the version of the operating system you are running; also compare this to the output of <code>onie-select</code> .
magic	Used by the <code>file</code> command to determine file type. <code>magic</code> tests check for files with data in particular fixed formats.	
magic.mime	The <code>magic</code> MIME type causes the <code>file</code> command to output MIME type strings rather than the more traditional human readable ones.	
mailcap	The <code>mailcap</code> file is read by the metamail program to determine how to <code>display non-text at the local site</code> .	
mailcap.order	The <code>order of entries</code> in the <code>/etc/mailcap</code> file can be altered by editing the <code>/etc/mailcap.order</code> file.	
manpath.config	The <code>manpath configuration file</code> is used by the manual page utilities to assess users' manpaths at run time, to indicate which manual page hierarchies (manpaths) are to be treated as system hierarchies and to assign them directories to be used for storing cat files.	
mime.types	MIME type description file for <code>cups</code> .	
mke2fs.conf	Configuration file for <code>mke2fs</code> , which is a program that <code>creates an ext, ext3 or ext4 filesystem</code> .	
mlx	Mellanox-specific ASIC file structure (hardware interaction). If there are questions, <a href="#">contact the Cumulus Networks Support team</a> . This is unique to Cumulus Linux.	
modprobe.d	Configuration directory for <code>modprobe</code> , which is a utility that can <code>add and remove modules from the Linux kernel</code> .	

File	Description	Why is this important?
modules	The kernel modules to load at boot time.	
motd	The contents of <code>/etc/motd</code> ("message of the day") are displayed by <code>pam_motd</code> after a successful login but just before it executes the login shell.	
mtab	The programs <code>mount</code> and <code>umount</code> maintain a list of <b>currently mounted filesystems</b> in the <code>/etc/mtab</code> file. If no arguments are given to <code>mount</code> , this list is printed.	
nanorc	The GNU nano rconfig file.	
network	Contains the <b>network interface configuration</b> for <code>ifup</code> and <code>ifdown</code> .	The main configuration file is under <code>/etc/network/interfaces</code> . This is where you configure L2 and L3 information for all of your front panel ports (swp interfaces). Settings like MTU, link speed, IP address information, VLANs are all done here.
networks	Network name information.	
nsswitch.conf	System databases and name service switch configuration file.	
ntp.conf	NTP (network time protocol) server configuration file.	
openvswitch	The directory containing the <code>conf.db</code> file, which is used by <code>ovsdb-server</code> .	
openvswitch-vtep	Configuration files used for the VTEP daemon and <code>ovsdb-server</code> .	
opt	Host-specific configuration files for <b>add-on applications</b> installed in <code>/opt</code> .	
os-release	Operating system identification.	
pam.conf		

File	Description	Why is this important?
	The <b>PAM (pluggable authentication module)</b> configuration file. When a PAM-aware privilege granting application is started, it activates its attachment to the PAM-API. This activation performs a number of tasks, the most important being the reading of the configuration file(s).	
pam.d	Alternate directory to configure PAM (see above).	
passwd	<b>User account information.</b>	
passwd-	Backup file for /etc/passwd.	
perl	<b>Perl</b> is an available scripting language. /etc/perl contains configuration files specific to Perl.	
profile	/etc/profile is utilized by sysprofile, a modular centralized shell configuration.	
profile.d	The directory version of the above, which contains configuration files.	
protocols	The <b>protocols definition file</b> , a plain ASCII file that describes the various DARPA net protocols that are available from the TCP/IP subsystem.	
ptm.d	The directory containing scripts that are run if <b>PTM</b> (see page 229) passes or fails.	Cumulus Linux-specific folder for PTM (prescriptive topology manager).
python	<b>Python</b> is an available scripting language.	
python2.6	The 2.6 version of python.	
python2.7	The 2.7 version of python.	
quagga	Contains the configuration files for the <b>Quagga routing suite</b> (see page 438), the preferred Cumulus Linux routing engine.	
rc.local	The /etc/rc.local script is used by the system administrator to <b>execute after all the normal system services are started</b> , at the end of the process of switching to a multiuser runlevel. You can use it to	

File	Description	Why is this important?
	start a custom service, for example, a server that's installed in <code>/usr/local</code> . Most installations don't need <code>/etc/rc.local</code> ; it's provided for the minority of cases <a href="#">where it's needed</a> .	
<code>rc0.d</code>	Like <code>rc.local</code> , these scripts are booted by default, but the number of the folder represents the <a href="#">Linux runlevel</a> . This folder 0 represents runlevel 0 (halt the system).	
<code>rc1.d</code>	This is run level 1, which is single-user/minimal mode.	
<code>rc2.d</code>	Runlevels 2 through 5 are multiuser modes. Debian systems (such as Cumulus Linux) come with <code>id=2</code> , which indicates that the <a href="#">default runlevel will be 2 when the multi-user state is entered</a> , and the scripts in <code>/etc/rc2.d/</code> will be run.	
<code>rc3.d</code>	See above.	
<code>rc4.d</code>	See above.	
<code>rc5.d</code>	See above.	
<code>rc6.d</code>	Runlevel 6 is reboot the system.	
<code>rcS.d</code>	S stands for <i>single</i> and is equivalent to <code>rc1</code> .	
<code>resolv.conf</code>	<a href="#">Resolver configuration file</a> , which is where DNS is set (domain, nameserver and search).	You need DNS to reach the Cumulus Linux repository.
<code>rmt</code>	This is not a mistake. The <a href="#">shell script</a> <code>/etc/rmt</code> is provided for compatibility with other Unix-like systems, some of which have utilities that expect to find (and execute) <code>rmt</code> in the <code>/etc</code> directory on remote systems.	
<code>rpc</code>	The <code>rpc</code> file contains <a href="#">human-readable names</a> that can be used in place of RPC program numbers.	
<code>rsyslog.conf</code>	The <code>rsyslog.conf</code> file is the main configuration file for <code>rsyslogd</code> , which logs system messages on *nix systems.	
<code>rsyslog.d</code>	The directory containing additional configuration for <code>rsyslog.conf</code> (see above).	

File	Description	Why is this important?
securetty	This file lists terminals into which the <a href="#">root user can log in</a> .	
security	The <code>/etc/security</code> directory contains <a href="#">security-related configurations files</a> . Whereas PAM concerns itself with the methods used to authenticate any given user, the files under <code>/etc/security</code> are concerned with just what a user can or cannot do. For example, the <code>/etc/security/access.conf</code> file contains a list of which users are allowed to log in and from what host (for example, using telnet). The <code>/etc/security/limits.conf</code> file contains various system limits, such as maximum number of processes.	
selinux	NSA <a href="#">Security-Enhanced Linux</a> .	
sensors.d	The directory from which the <a href="#">sensors</a> program loads its configuration; this is unique for each hardware platform. See also <a href="#">Monitoring System Hardware</a> (see <a href="#">page 565</a> ).	
sensors3.conf	The <a href="#">sensors.conf file</a> describes how <code>libsensors</code> , and thus all programs using it, should translate the raw readings from the kernel modules to real-world values.	
services	<code>services</code> is a plain ASCII file providing a mapping between human-readable textual names for internet services and their underlying assigned port numbers and protocol types.	
shadow	shadow is a file that <a href="#">contains the password information</a> for the system's accounts and optional aging information.	
shadow-	The backup for the <code>/etc/shadow</code> file.	
shells	The pathnames of <a href="#">valid login shells</a> .	
skel	The skeleton directory (usually <code>/etc/skel</code> ) is used to copy default files and also sets a umask for the creation used by <code>pam_mkhomedir</code> .	
snmp	Interface functions to the <a href="#">SNMP</a> (simple network management protocol) toolkit.	

File	Description	Why is this important?
ssh	The <code>ssh</code> configuration.	
ssl	The OpenSSL <code>ssl</code> library implements the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL v2/v3) and Transport Layer Security (TLS v1) protocols. This directory holds certificates and configuration.	
staff-group-for-usr-local	Use <code>cat</code> or <code>more</code> on this file to learn more information, see <a href="http://bugs.debian.org/299007">http://bugs.debian.org/299007</a> .	
sudoers	The <code>sudoers</code> policy plugin determines a user's <code>sudo</code> privileges.	
sudoers.d	The directory file containing additional <code>sudoers</code> configuration (see above).	
sysctl.conf	Configures kernel parameters at boot.	
sysctl.d	The directory file containing additional configuration (see above).	
systemd	<code>systemd</code> system and service manager.	
terminfo	Terminal capability database.	
timezone	If this file exists, it is read and its contents are used as the time zone name.	
ucf.conf	The update configuration file preserves user changes in configuration files.	
udev	Dynamic device management.	
ufw	Provides both a command line interface and a framework for managing a netfilter firewall.	
vim	Configuration file for command line tool vim.	
wgetrc	Configuration file for command line tool wget.	

## Troubleshooting the support Directory

The `support` directory is unique in the fact that it is not a copy of the switch's filesystem. Actually, it is the output from various commands. For example:

File	Equivalent Command	Description
support /ip addr	cumulus@switch:~\$ ip addr show	This shows you all the interfaces (including swp front panel ports), IP address information, admin state and physical state.

## Troubleshooting Network Interfaces

The following sections describe various ways you can troubleshoot `ifupdown2`.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Enabling Logging for Networking (see page 591)
- Using ifquery to Validate and Debug Interface Configurations (see page 592)
- Debugging Mako Template Errors (see page 593)
- ifdown Cannot Find an Interface that Exists (see page 594)
- Removing All References to a Child Interface (see page 594)
- MTU Set on a Logical Interface Fails with Error: "Numerical result out of range" (see page 595)
- Interpreting iproute2 batch Command Failures (see page 595)
- Understanding the "RTNETLINK answers: Invalid argument" Error when Adding a Port to a Bridge (see page 595)

### Enabling Logging for Networking

The `/etc/default/networking` file contains two settings for logging:

- To get `ifupdown2` logs when the switch boots (stored in `syslog`)
- To enable logging when you run `systemctl [start|stop|reload] networking.service`

This file also contains an option for excluding interfaces when you boot the switch or run `systemctl start|stop|reload networking.service`. You can exclude any interface specified in `/etc/network/interfaces`. These interfaces do not come up when you boot the switch or start/stop/reload the networking service.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/default/networking
#
#
# Parameters for the /etc/init.d/networking script
#
#
# Change the below to yes if you want verbose logging to be enabled
```

```

VERBOSE="no"

# Change the below to yes if you want debug logging to be enabled
DEBUG="no"

# Change the below to yes if you want logging to go to syslog
SYSLOG="no"

# Exclude interfaces
EXCLUDE_INTERFACES=

```

## **Using ifquery to Validate and Debug Interface Configurations**

You use ifquery to print parsed interfaces file entries.

To use ifquery to pretty print iface entries from the interfaces file, run:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery bond0
auto bond0
iface bond0
  address 14.0.0.9/30
  address 2001:ded:beef:2::1/64
  bond-slaves swp25 swp26

```

Use ifquery --check to check the current running state of an interface within the interfaces file. It will return exit code 0 or 1 if the configuration does not match. The line bond-xmit-hash-policy layer3+7 below fails because it should read bond-xmit-hash-policy layer3+4.

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --check bond0
iface bond0
  bond-xmit-hash-policy layer3+7  [fail]
  bond-slaves swp25 swp26        [pass]
  address 14.0.0.9/30           [pass]
  address 2001:ded:beef:2::1/64 [pass]

```



ifquery --check is an experimental feature.

Use ifquery --running to print the running state of interfaces in the interfaces file format:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --running bond0
auto bond0
iface bond0
  bond-slaves swp25 swp26
  address 14.0.0.9/30
  address 2001:ded:beef:2::1/64

```

`ifquery --syntax-help` provides help on all possible attributes supported in the `interfaces` file. For complete syntax on the `interfaces` file, see `man interfaces` and `man ifupdown-addons-interfaces`.

You can use `ifquery --print-savedstate` to check the `ifupdown2` state database. `ifdown` works only on interfaces present in this state database.

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo ifquery --print-savedstate eth0
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
```

## Debugging Mako Template Errors

An easy way to debug and get details about template errors is to use the `mako-render` command on your `interfaces` template file or on `/etc/network/interfaces` itself.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mako-render /etc/network/interfaces
# This file describes the network interfaces available on your system
# and how to activate them. For more information, see interfaces(5).

# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
#auto eth1
#iface eth1 inet dhcp

# Include any platform-specific interface configuration
source /etc/network/interfaces.d/*.if

# ssim2 added
auto swp45
iface swp45

auto swp46
iface swp46

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mako-render /etc/network/interfaces.d
/<interfaces_stub_file>
```

## ***ifdown Cannot Find an Interface that Exists***

If you are trying to bring down an interface that you know exists, use `ifdown` with the `--use-current-config` option to force `ifdown` to check the current `/etc/network/interfaces` file to find the interface. This can solve issues where the `ifup` command issues for that interface was interrupted before it updated the state database. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown br0
error: cannot find interfaces: br0 (interface was probably never up ?)

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl show
bridge name      bridge id      STP enabled     interfaces
br0              8000.44383900279f    yes           downlink
                           peerlink

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown br0 --use-current-config
```

## ***Removing All References to a Child Interface***

If you have a configuration with a child interface, whether it's a VLAN, bond or another physical interface, and you remove that interface from a running configuration, you must remove every reference to it in the configuration. Otherwise, the interface continues to be used by the parent interface.

For example, consider the following configuration:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto bond1
iface bond1
    bond-slaves swp2 swp1

auto bond3
iface bond3
    bond-slaves swp8 swp6 swp7

auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports swp3 swp5 bond1 swp4 bond3
    bridge-pathcosts swp3=4 swp5=4 swp4=4
    address 11.0.0.10/24
    address 2001::10/64
```

Notice that bond1 is a member of br0. If you comment out or simply delete bond1 from `/etc/network/interfaces`, you must remove the reference to it from the br0 configuration. Otherwise, if you reload the configuration with `ifreload -a`, bond1 is still part of br0.

## ***MTU Set on a Logical Interface Fails with Error: "Numerical result out of range"***

This error occurs when the [MTU](#) (see page 171) you are trying to set on an interface is higher than the MTU of the lower interface or dependent interface. Linux expects the upper interface to have an MTU less than or equal to the MTU on the lower interface.

In the example below, the swp1.100 VLAN interface is an upper interface to physical interface swp1. If you want to change the MTU to 9000 on the VLAN interface, you must include the new MTU on the lower interface swp1 as well.

```
auto swp1.100
iface swp1.100
    mtu 9000

auto swp1
iface swp1
    mtu 9000
```

## ***Interpreting iproute2 batch Command Failures***

`ifupdown2` batches `iproute2` commands for performance reasons. A batch command contains `ip -force -batch` – in the error message. The command number that failed is at the end of this line: `Command failed -:1.`

Below is a sample error for the command `1: link set dev host2 master bridge`. There was an error adding the bond `host2` to the bridge named `bridge` because `host2` did not have a valid address.

```
error: failed to execute cmd 'ip -force -batch - [link set dev host2
master bridge
addr flush dev host2
link set dev host1 master bridge
addr flush dev host1
]' (RTNETLINK answers: Invalid argument
Command failed -:1)
warning: bridge configuration failed (missing ports)
```

## ***Understanding the "RTNETLINK answers: Invalid argument" Error when Adding a Port to a Bridge***

This error can occur when the bridge port does not have a valid hardware address.

This can typically occur when the interface being added to the bridge is an incomplete bond; a bond without slaves is incomplete and does not have a valid hardware address.

## ***Monitoring Interfaces and Transceivers Using ethtool***

The `ethtool` command enables you to query or control the network driver and hardware settings. It takes the device name (like `swp1`) as an argument. When the device name is the only argument to `ethtool`, it prints the current settings of the network device. See `man ethtool(8)` for details. Not all options are currently supported on switch port interfaces.

### **Contents**

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 596)
- Monitoring Interface Status Using ethtool (see page 596)
  - Viewing and Clearing Interface Counters (see page 597)
- Monitoring Switch Port SFP/QSFP Hardware Information Using ethtool (see page 598)

### **Commands**

- `cl-netstat`
- `ethtool`

### ***Monitoring Interface Status Using ethtool***

To check the status of an interface using `ethtool`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ethtool swp1
Settings for swp1:
  Supported ports: [ FIBRE ]
  Supported link modes:  1000baseT/Full
                         10000baseT/Full
  Supported pause frame use: No
  Supports auto-negotiation: No
  Advertised link modes:  1000baseT/Full
  Advertised pause frame use: No
  Advertised auto-negotiation: No
  Speed: 10000Mb/s
  Duplex: Full
  Port: FIBRE
  PHYAD: 0
  Transceiver: external
  Auto-negotiation: off
  Current message level: 0x00000000 (0)

  Link detected: yes
```

To query interface statistics:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -S swp1
```

```
NIC statistics:
    HwIfInOctets: 1435339
    HwIfInUcastPkts: 11795
    HwIfInBcastPkts: 3
    HwIfInMcastPkts: 4578
    HwIfOutOctets: 14866246
    HwIfOutUcastPkts: 11791
    HwIfOutMcastPkts: 136493
    HwIfOutBcastPkts: 0
    HwIfInDiscards: 0
    HwIfInL3Drops: 0
    HwIfInBufferDrops: 0
    HwIfInAclDrops: 28
    HwIfInDot3LengthErrors: 0
    HwIfInErrors: 0
    SoftInErrors: 0
    SoftInDrops: 0
    SoftInFrameErrors: 0
    HwIfOutDiscards: 0
    HwIfOutErrors: 0
    HwIfOutQDrops: 0
    HwIfOutNonQDrops: 0
    SoftOutErrors: 0
    SoftOutDrops: 0
    SoftOutTxFifoFull: 0
    HwIfOutQLen: 0
```

## ***Viewing and Clearing Interface Counters***

Interface counters contain information about an interface. You can view this information when you run `cl-netstat`, `ifconfig`, or `cat /proc/net/dev`. You can also use `cl-netstat` to save or clear this information:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-netstat
Kernel Interface table
Iface      MTU Met            RX_OK RX_ERR RX_DRP RX_OVR          TX_OK TX_ERR
TX_DRP TX_OVR Flg
-----
eth0      1500 0              611   0     0     0             487   0
0          0     BMRU
lo       16436 0              0     0     0     0             0     0
0          0     LRU
swp1     1500 0              0     0     0     0             0     0
0          0     BMU

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-netstat -c
Cleared counters
```

Option	Description
-c	Copies and clears statistics. It does not clear counters in the kernel or hardware.
-d	Deletes saved statistics, either the uid or the specified tag.
-D	Deletes all saved statistics.
-l	Lists saved tags.
-r	Displays raw statistics (unmodified output of cl-netstat).
-t <tag name>	Saves statistics with <tag name>.
-v	Prints cl-netstat version and exits.

## Monitoring Switch Port SFP/QSFP Hardware Information Using ethtool

To see hardware capabilities and measurement information on the SFP or QSFP module installed in a particular port, use the `ethtool -m` command. If the SFP/QSFP supports Digital Optical Monitoring (that is, the `optical diagnostics support` field in the output below is set to Yes), the optical power levels and thresholds are also printed below the standard hardware details.

In the sample output below, you can see that this module is a 1000BASE-SX short-range optical module, manufactured by JDSU, part number PLRXPL-VI-S24-22. The second half of the output displays the current readings of the Tx power levels (Laser output power) and Rx power (Receiver signal average optical power), temperature, voltage and alarm threshold settings.

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo ethtool -m swp3
      Identifier                      : 0x03 (SFP)
      Extended identifier              : 0x04 (GBIC/SFP
defined by 2-wire interface ID)
      Connector                       : 0x07 (LC)
      Transceiver codes              : 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x0
1 0x20 0x40 0x0c 0x05
      Transceiver type               : Ethernet:
1000BASE-SX
      Transceiver type               : FC: intermediate
distance (I)
      Transceiver type               : FC: Shortwave
laser w/o OFC (SN)
      Transceiver type              : FC: Multimode, 62.
5um (M6)
      Transceiver type              : FC: Multimode,
50um (M5)
      Transceiver type              : FC: 200 MBytes/sec
```

Transceiver type	:	FC: 100 MBytes/sec
Encoding	:	0x01 (8B/10B)
BR, Nominal	:	2100MBd
Rate identifier	:	0x00 (unspecified)
Length (SMF,km)	:	0km
Length (SMF)	:	0m
Length (50um)	:	300m
Length (62.5um)	:	150m
Length (Copper)	:	0m
Length (OM3)	:	0m
Laser wavelength	:	850nm
Vendor name	:	JDSU
Vendor OUI	:	00:01:9c
Vendor PN	:	PLRXPL-VI-S24-22
Vendor rev	:	1
Optical diagnostics support	:	Yes
Laser bias current	:	21.348 mA
Laser output power	:	0.3186 mW / -4.97
dBm		
Receiver signal average optical power	:	0.3195 mW / -4.96
dBm		
Module temperature	:	41.70 degrees C /
107.05 degrees F		
Module voltage	:	3.2947 V
Alarm/warning flags implemented	:	Yes
Laser bias current high alarm	:	Off
Laser bias current low alarm	:	Off
Laser bias current high warning	:	Off
Laser bias current low warning	:	Off
Laser output power high alarm	:	Off
Laser output power low alarm	:	Off
Laser output power high warning	:	Off
Laser output power low warning	:	Off
Module temperature high alarm	:	Off
Module temperature low alarm	:	Off
Module temperature high warning	:	Off
Module temperature low warning	:	Off
Module voltage high alarm	:	Off
Module voltage low alarm	:	Off
Module voltage high warning	:	Off
Module voltage low warning	:	Off
Laser rx power high alarm	:	Off
Laser rx power low alarm	:	Off
Laser rx power high warning	:	Off
Laser rx power low warning	:	Off
Laser bias current high alarm threshold	:	10.000 mA
Laser bias current low alarm threshold	:	1.000 mA
Laser bias current high warning threshold	:	9.000 mA
Laser bias current low warning threshold	:	2.000 mA
Laser output power high alarm threshold	:	0.8000 mW / -0.97
dBm		

```

dBm      Laser output power low alarm threshold      : 0.1000 mW / -10.00
dBm      Laser output power high warning threshold : 0.6000 mW / -2.22
dBm      Laser output power low warning threshold  : 0.2000 mW / -6.99
194.00   Module temperature high alarm threshold  : 90.00 degrees C /
degrees F
        Module temperature low alarm threshold    : -40.00 degrees C
/ -40.00 degrees F
        Module temperature high warning threshold : 85.00 degrees C /
185.00   degrees F
        Module temperature low warning threshold : -40.00 degrees C
/ -40.00 degrees F
        Module voltage high alarm threshold       : 4.0000 V
        Module voltage low alarm threshold        : 0.0000 V
        Module voltage high warning threshold    : 3.6450 V
        Module voltage low warning threshold     : 2.9550 V
dBm      Laser rx power high alarm threshold      : 1.6000 mW / 2.04
dBm      Laser rx power low alarm threshold       : 0.0100 mW / -20.00
dBm      Laser rx power high warning threshold  : 1.0000 mW / 0.00
dBm      Laser rx power low warning threshold   : 0.0200 mW / -16.99

```

## Network Troubleshooting

Cumulus Linux contains a number of command line and analytical tools to help you troubleshoot issues with your network.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Commands (see page 601)
- Checking Reachability Using ping (see page 601)
- Printing Route Trace Using traceroute (see page 601)
- Manipulating the System ARP Cache (see page 602)
- Generating Traffic Using mz (see page 602)
- Creating Counter ACL Rules (see page 603)
- Configuring SPAN and ERSPAN (see page 604)
  - Configuring SPAN for Switch Ports (see page 605)
  - Configuring SPAN for Bonds (see page 608)
  - Configuring ERSPAN (see page 609)
  - Selective Spanning (see page 609)

- Removing SPAN Rules (see page 611)
- Monitoring Control Plane Traffic with tcpdump (see page 612)
- Configuration Files (see page 613)
- Useful Links (see page 613)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 613)

## Commands

- arp
- cl-acltool
- ip
- mz
- ping
- tcpdump
- traceroute

## Checking Reachability Using ping

`ping` is used to check reachability of a host. `ping` also calculates the time it takes for packets to travel the round trip. See `man ping` for details.

To test the connection to an IPv4 host:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ping 192.0.2.45
PING 192.0.2.45 (192.0.2.45) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 192.0.2.45: icmp_req=1 ttl=53 time=40.4 ms
64 bytes from 192.0.2.45: icmp_req=2 ttl=53 time=39.6 ms
...
...
```

To test the connection to an IPv6 host:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ping6 -I swp1 2001::db8:ff:fe00:2
PING 2001::db8:ff:fe00:2(2001::db8:ff:fe00:2) from 2001::db8:ff:fe00:1
swp1: 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2001::db8:ff:fe00:2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.43 ms
64 bytes from 2001::db8:ff:fe00:2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.927 ms
```

## Printing Route Trace Using traceroute

`traceroute` tracks the route that packets take from an IP network on their way to a given host. See `man traceroute` for details.

To track the route to an IPv4 host:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ traceroute www.google.com
traceroute to www.google.com (74.125.239.49), 30 hops max, 60 byte
packets
1 cumulusnetworks.com (192.168.1.1) 0.614 ms 0.863 ms 0.932 ms
...
5 core2-1-1-0.pao.net.google.com (198.32.176.31) 22.347 ms 22.584
ms 24.328 ms
6 216.239.49.250 (216.239.49.250) 24.371 ms 25.757 ms 25.987 ms
7 72.14.232.35 (72.14.232.35) 27.505 ms 22.925 ms 22.323 ms
8 nuq04s19-in-f17.1e100.net (74.125.239.49) 23.544 ms 21.851 ms 22
.604 ms
```

## **Manipulating the System ARP Cache**

`arp` manipulates or displays the kernel's IPv4 network neighbor cache. See `man arp` for details.

To display the ARP cache:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -a
? (11.0.2.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:10 [ether] on swp3
? (11.0.3.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:01 [ether] on swp4
? (11.0.0.2) at 44:38:39:00:01:c1 [ether] on swp1
```

To delete an ARP cache entry:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -d 11.0.2.2
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -a
? (11.0.2.2) at <incomplete> on swp3
? (11.0.3.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:01 [ether] on swp4
? (11.0.0.2) at 44:38:39:00:01:c1 [ether] on swp1
```

To add a static ARP cache entry:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -s 11.0.2.2 00:02:00:00:00:10
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -a
? (11.0.2.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:10 [ether] PERM on swp3
? (11.0.3.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:01 [ether] on swp4
? (11.0.0.2) at 44:38:39:00:01:c1 [ether] on swp1
```

## **Generating Traffic Using mz**

`mz` is a fast traffic generator. It can generate a large variety of packet types at high speed. See `man mz` for details.

For example, to send two sets of packets to TCP port 23 and 24, with source IP 11.0.0.1 and destination 11.0.0.2, do the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mz swp1 -A 11.0.0.1 -B 11.0.0.2 -c 2 -v -t tcp
"dp=23-24"

Mausezahn 0.40 - (C) 2007-2010 by Herbert Haas - http://www.perihel.at
/sec/mz/
Use at your own risk and responsibility!
-- Verbose mode --

This system supports a high resolution clock.
The clock resolution is 4000250 nanoseconds.
Mausezahn will send 4 frames...
IP: ver=4, len=40, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0, SA=
11.0.0.1, DA=11.0.0.2,
payload=[see next layer]
TCP: sp=0, dp=23, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,
payload=

IP: ver=4, len=40, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0, SA=
11.0.0.1, DA=11.0.0.2,
payload=[see next layer]
TCP: sp=0, dp=24, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,
payload=

IP: ver=4, len=40, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0, SA=
11.0.0.1, DA=11.0.0.2,
payload=[see next layer]
TCP: sp=0, dp=23, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,
payload=

IP: ver=4, len=40, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0, SA=
11.0.0.1, DA=11.0.0.2,
payload=[see next layer]
TCP: sp=0, dp=24, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,
payload=
```

## **Creating Counter ACL Rules**

In Linux, all ACL rules are always counted. To create an ACL rule for counting purposes only, set the rule action to ACCEPT. See the [Netfilter \(see page 98\)](#) chapter for details on how to use cl-acltool to set up iptables-/ip6tables-/ebtables-based ACLs.



Always place your rules files under /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/.

To count all packets going to a Web server:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat sample_count.rules
[iptables]
```

```
-A FORWARD -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i -p sample_count.rules
Using user provided rule file sample_count.rules
Reading rule file sample_count.rules ...
Processing rules in file sample_count.rules ...
Installing acl policy... done.

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L -v
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 16 packets, 2224 bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination

Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
    2   156 ACCEPT      tcp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp  dpt:http

Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 44 packets, 8624 bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
```

! The `-p` option clears out all other rules, and the `-i` option is used to reinstall all the rules.

## Configuring SPAN and ERSPAN

SPAN (Switched Port Analyzer) provides for the mirroring of all packets coming in from or going out of an interface (the *SPAN source*), and being copied and transmitted out of a local port (the *SPAN destination*) for monitoring. The SPAN destination port is also referred to as a mirror-to-port (MTP). The original packet is still switched, while a mirrored copy of the packet is sent out of the MTP.

ERSPAN (Encapsulated Remote SPAN) enables the mirrored packets to be sent to a monitoring node located anywhere across the routed network. The switch finds the outgoing port of the mirrored packets by doing a lookup of the destination IP address in its routing table. The original L2 packet is encapsulated with GRE for IP delivery. The encapsulated packets have the following format:

-----	MAC_HEADER	IP_HEADER	GRE_HEADER	L2_Mirrored_Packet	-----
-------	------------	-----------	------------	--------------------	-------

! Mirrored traffic is not guaranteed. If the MTP is congested, mirrored packets may be discarded.

SPAN and ERSPAN are configured via `c1-acltool`, the [same utility for security ACL configuration \(see page 98\)](#). The match criteria for SPAN and ERSPAN is usually an interface; for more granular match terms, use [selective spanning \(see page 609\)](#). The SPAN source interface can be a port, a subinterface or a bond interface. Both ingress and egress traffic on interfaces can be matched.

Cumulus Linux supports a maximum of 2 SPAN destinations. Multiple rules (SPAN sources) can point to the same SPAN destination, although a given SPAN source cannot specify 2 SPAN destinations. The SPAN destination (MTP) interface can be a physical port, a subinterface, or a bond interface. The SPAN/ERSPAN action is independent of security ACL actions. If packets match both a security ACL rule and a SPAN rule, both actions will be carried out.



Always place your rules files under `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`.

## Configuring SPAN for Switch Ports

This section describes how to set up, install, verify and uninstall SPAN rules. In the examples that follow, you will span (mirror) switch port `swp4` input traffic and `swp4` output traffic to destination switch port `swp19`.

First, create a rules file in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bash -c 'cat <<EOF > /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span.rules
[iptables]
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp4 -j SPAN --dport swp19
-A FORWARD --out-interface swp4 -j SPAN --dport swp19
EOF'
```



Using `c1-acltool` with the `--out-interface` rule applies to transit traffic only; it does not apply to traffic sourced from the switch.

Next, verify all the rules that are currently installed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L -v
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
      0     0  DROP       all   --  swp+    any     240.0.0.0/5
anywhere
      0     0  DROP       all   --  swp+    any     loopback/8
anywhere
      0     0  DROP       all   --  swp+    any     base-address.mcast.net/
8 anywhere
      0     0  DROP       all   --  swp+    any     255.255.255.255
anywhere
      0     0  SETCLASS   ospf  --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere           SETCLASS  class:7
```

```

      0      0 POLICE      ospf -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp dpt:bgp SETCLASS class:7
      0      0 POLICE      tcp   -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp dpt:bgp POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp spt:bgp SETCLASS class:7
      0      0 POLICE      tcp   -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp spt:bgp POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp dpt:5342 SETCLASS class:7
      0      0 POLICE      tcp   -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp dpt:5342 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp spt:5342 SETCLASS class:7
      0      0 POLICE      tcp   -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp spt:5342 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:200
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    icmp  -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  SETCLASS class:2
      0      0 POLICE      icmp  -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:40
      15     5205 SETCLASS  udp   -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  udp dpts:bootps:bootpc SETCLASS class:2
      11     3865 POLICE   udp   -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  udp dpt:bootps POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:10
0
      0      0 POLICE      udp   -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  udp dpt:bootpc POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:10
0
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp   -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp dpts:bootps:bootpc SETCLASS class:2
      0      0 POLICE      tcp   -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp dpt:bootps POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:10
0
      0      0 POLICE      tcp   -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  tcp dpt:bootpc POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:10
0
      17     1088 SETCLASS  igmp  -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  SETCLASS class:6
      17     1156 POLICE   igmp  -- any    any    anywhere
anywhere                  POLICE mode:pkt rate:300 burst:100
      394    41060 POLICE  all   -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  ADDRTYPE match dst-type LOCAL POLICE mode:pkt
rate:1000 burst:1000 class:0
      0      0 POLICE      all   -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  ADDRTYPE match dst-type IPROUTER POLICE mode:
pkt rate:400 burst:100 class:0
      988   279K SETCLASS  all   -- swp+  any    anywhere
anywhere                  SETCLASS class:0

```

```

Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
    0    0 DROP        all   --  swp+    any     240.0.0.0/5
anywhere
    0    0 DROP        all   --  swp+    any     loopback/8
anywhere
    0    0 DROP        all   --  swp+    any     base-address.mcast.net/
8 anywhere
    0    0 DROP        all   --  swp+    any     255.255.255.255
anywhere
26864 4672K SPAN      all   --  swp4    any     anywhere
anywhere          dport:swp19 <---- input packets on swp4

40722  47M SPAN      all   --  any     swp4    anywhere
anywhere          dport:swp19 <---- output packets on swp4

Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 67398 packets, 5757K bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination

```

Install the rules:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.
rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.
rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span.rules ...
Installing acl policy
done.

```



Running the following command is incorrect and will remove **all** existing control-plane rules or other installed rules and only install the rules defined in `span.rules`:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i -P /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d
/span.rules

```

Verify that the SPAN rules were installed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L all | grep SPAN
38025 7034K SPAN      all -- swp4    any     anywhere
anywhere          dport:swp19
50832 55M SPAN      all -- any     swp4    anywhere
anywhere          dport:swp19
```

## Configuring SPAN for Bonds

This section describes how to configure SPAN for all packets going out of `bond0` locally to `bond1`.

First, create a rules file in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bash -c 'cat <<EOF > /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/
/span_bond.rules
[iptables]
-A FORWARD --out-interface bond0 -j SPAN --dport bond1
EOF'
```



Using `cl-acltool` with the `--out-interface` rule applies to transit traffic only; it does not apply to traffic sourced from the switch.

Install the rules:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.
rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.
rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span_bond.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span_bond.rules ...
Installing acl policy
done.
```

Verify that the SPAN rules were installed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L -v | grep SPAN
 19  1938 SPAN      all -- any    bond0   anywhere
anywhere          dport:bond1
```

## Configuring ERSPAN

This section describes how to configure ERSPAN for all packets coming in from `swp1` to 12.0.0.2:

First, create a rules file in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bash -c 'cat <<EOF > /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/erspan.rules
[iptables]
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -j ERSPAN --src-ip 12.0.0.1 --dst-ip 12.0.0.2 --ttl 64
EOF'
```

Install the rules:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/erspan.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/erspan.rules ...
Installing acl policy
done.
```

Verify that the ERSPAN rules were installed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L -v | grep SPAN
 69  6804 ERSPAN      all  --  swp1    any     anywhere
                                         ERSPAN src-ip:12.0.0.1 dst-ip:12.0.0.2
```

The `src-ip` option can be any IP address, whether it exists in the routing table or not. The `dst-ip` option must be an IP address reachable via the routing table. The destination IP address must be reachable from a front-panel port, and not the management port. Use `ping` or `ip route get <ip>` to verify that the destination IP address is reachable. Setting the `--ttl` option is recommended.



When using [Wireshark](#) to review the ERSPAN output, Wireshark may report the message "Unknown version, please report or test to use fake ERSPAN preference", and the trace is unreadable. To resolve this, go into the General preferences for Wireshark, then go to **Protocols** > **ERSPAN** and check the **Force to decode fake ERSPAN frame** option.

## Selective Spanning

SPAN/ERSPAN traffic rules can be configured to limit the traffic that is spanned, to reduce the volume of copied data.



Cumulus Linux 3.1 supports selective spanning for `iptables` only. `ip6tables` and `ebtables` are not supported.

The following matching fields are supported:

- IPv4 SIP/DIP
- IP protocol
- L4 (TCP/UDP) src/dst port
- TCP flags
- An ingress port/wildcard (swp+) can be specified in addition



With ERSPAN, a maximum of two `--src-ip` `--dst-ip` pairs are supported. Exceeding this limit produces an error when you install the rules with `c1-acltool`.

## SPAN Examples

- To mirror forwarded packets from all ports matching SIP 20.0.1.0 and DIP 20.0.1.2 to port swp1s1:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -s 20.0.0.2 -d 20.0.1.2 -j SPAN --  
dport swp1s2
```

- To mirror icmp packets from all ports to swp1s2:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -s 20.0.0.2 -p icmp -j SPAN --  
dport swp1s2
```

- To mirror forwarded UDP packets received from port swp1s0, towards DIP 20.0.1.2 and destination port 53:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1s0 -d 20.0.1.2 -p udp --dport 53 -  
j SPAN --dport swp1s2
```

- To mirror all forwarded TCP packets with only SYN set:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --tcp-flags ALL SYN -j  
SPAN --dport swp1s2
```

- To mirror all forwarded TCP packets with only FIN set:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --tcp-flags ALL FIN -j
SPAN --dport swp1s2
```

## ERSPAN Examples

- To mirror forwarded packets from all ports matching SIP 20.0.1.0 and DIP 20.0.1.2:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -s 20.0.0.2 -d 20.0.1.2 -j ERSPAN
--src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```

- To mirror ICMP packets from all ports:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -s 20.0.0.2 -p icmp -j ERSPAN --
src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```

- To mirror forwarded UDP packets received from port swp1s0, towards DIP 20.0.1.2 and destination port 53:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1s0 -d 20.0.1.2 -p udp --dport 53 -
j ERSPAN --src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```

- To mirror all forwarded TCP packets with only SYN set:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --tcp-flags ALL SYN -j
ERSPAN --src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```

- To mirror all forwarded TCP packets with only FIN set:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --tcp-flags ALL FIN -j
ERSPAN --src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```

## Removing SPAN Rules

To remove your SPAN rules, run:

```
#Remove rules file:
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo rm /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span.rules
#Reload the default rules
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$
```

To verify that the SPAN rules were removed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L all | grep SPAN
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## ***Monitoring Control Plane Traffic with tcpdump***

You can use `tcpdump` to monitor control plane traffic — traffic sent to and coming from the switch CPUs. `tcpdump` does **not** monitor data plane traffic; use `cl-acltool` instead (see above).

For more information on `tcpdump`, read [the `tcpdump` documentation](#) and the [`tcpdump` man page](#).

The following example incorporates a few `tcpdump` options:

- `-i bond0`, which captures packets from bond0 to the CPU and from the CPU to bond0
- `host 169.254.0.2`, which filters for this IP address
- `-c 10`, which captures 10 packets then stops

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tcpdump -i bond0 host 169.254.0.2 -c 10
tcpdump: WARNING: bond0: no IPv4 address assigned
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full protocol
decode
listening on bond0, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size 65535
bytes
16:24:42.532473 IP 169.254.0.2 > 169.254.0.1: ICMP echo request, id 27
785, seq 6, length 64
16:24:42.532534 IP 169.254.0.1 > 169.254.0.2: ICMP echo reply, id 2778
5, seq 6, length 64
16:24:42.804155 IP 169.254.0.2.40210 > 169.254.0.1.5342: Flags [.],
seq 266275591:266277039, ack 3813627681, win 58, options [nop,nop,TS
val 590400681 ecr 530346691], length 1448
16:24:42.804228 IP 169.254.0.1.5342 > 169.254.0.2.40210: Flags [.],
ack 1448, win 166, options [nop,nop,TS val 530348721 ecr 590400681],
length 0
16:24:42.804267 IP 169.254.0.2.40210 > 169.254.0.1.5342: Flags [P.],
seq 1448:1836, ack 1, win 58, options [nop,nop,TS val 590400681 ecr 53
0346691], length 388
16:24:42.804293 IP 169.254.0.1.5342 > 169.254.0.2.40210: Flags [.],
ack 1836, win 165, options [nop,nop,TS val 530348721 ecr 590400681],
length 0
16:24:43.532389 IP 169.254.0.2 > 169.254.0.1: ICMP echo request, id 27
785, seq 7, length 64
16:24:43.532447 IP 169.254.0.1 > 169.254.0.2: ICMP echo reply, id 2778
5, seq 7, length 64
16:24:43.838652 IP 169.254.0.1.59951 > 169.254.0.2.5342: Flags [.],
seq 2555144343:2555145791, ack 2067274882, win 58, options [nop,nop,
TS val 530349755 ecr 590399688], length 1448
```

```
16:24:43.838692 IP 169.254.0.1.59951 > 169.254.0.2.5342: Flags [P.],  
seq 1448:1838, ack 1, win 58, options [nop,nop,TS val 530349755 ecr 59  
0399688], length 390  
10 packets captured  
12 packets received by filter  
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

## Configuration Files

- /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf

## Useful Links

- [www.perihel.at/sec/mz/mzguide.html](http://www.perihel.at/sec/mz/mzguide.html)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ping](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ping)
- [www.tcpdump.org](http://www.tcpdump.org)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Traceroute](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Traceroute)

## Caveats and Errata

- SPAN rules cannot match outgoing subinterfaces.
- ERSPAN rules must include `ttl` for versions 1.5.1 and earlier.

## Using netshow to Troubleshoot Your Network Configuration

netshow is a tool in Cumulus Linux that quickly returns a lot of information about your network configuration. It's a tool designed by network operators for network troubleshooters since existing command line tools have too many options. `netshow` addresses this by leveraging the network troubleshooting experience from a wide group of troubleshooters and boiling it down to just a few important options. `netshow` quickly aggregates basic network information on Linux devices with numerous interfaces. `netshow` intelligently informs the administrator what network type an interface belongs to, and shows the most relevant information to a network administrator.

`netshow` can be used on any distribution of Linux, not just Cumulus Linux.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Installing netshow (see page 613)
  - Installing netshow on a Linux Server or in OpenStack (see page 614)
- Using netshow (see page 614)
- Showing Interfaces (see page 615)
- Troubleshooting Example: OpenStack (see page 617)
- Other Useful netshow Features (see page 619)
- Contributions Welcome! (see page 619)

## Installing netshow

netshow is installed by default in Cumulus Linux.

## Installing netshow on a Linux Server or in OpenStack

To install netshow on a Linux server, run:

```
root@host:~# pip install netshow-linux-lib
```



Debian and Red Hat packages will be available in the near future.

## Using netshow

Running `netshow` with no arguments displays all available command line arguments usable by `netshow`. (Running `netshow --help` gives you the same information.) The output looks like this:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netshow
Usage:
    netshow system [--json | -j ]
    netshow counters [errors] [all] [--json | -j | -l | --legend ]
    netshow lldp [--json | -j | -l | --legend ]
    netshow interface [<iface>] [all] [--mac | -m ] [--oneline | -1 |
--json | -j | -l | --legend ]
    netshow access [all] [--mac | -m ] [--oneline | -1 | --json | -j
| -l | --legend ]
    netshow bridges [all] [--mac | -m ] [--oneline | -1 | --json | -
j | -l | --legend ]
    netshow bonds [all] [--mac | -m ] [--oneline | -1 | --json | -j
| -l | --legend ]
    netshow bondmems [all] [--mac | -m ] [--oneline | -1 | --json | -
j | -l | --legend ]
    netshow mgmt [all] [--mac | -m ] [--oneline | -1 | --json | -j |
-l | --legend ]
    netshow l2 [all] [--mac | -m ] [--oneline | -1 | --json | -j | -
l | --legend ]
    netshow l3 [all] [--mac | -m ] [--oneline | -1 | --json | -j | -
l | --legend ]
    netshow trunks [all] [--mac | -m ] [--oneline | -1 | --json | -j
| -l | --legend ]
    netshow (--version | -V)

Help:
    * default is to show interfaces only in the UP state.
    counters                               summary of physical port counters.
    interface                             summary info of all interfaces
```

```

access                                summary of physical ports with 12 or 13
config
  bonds                               summary of bonds
  bondmems                            summary of bond members
  bridges                             summary of ports with bridge members
  mgmt                                summary of mgmt ports
  13                                  summary of ports with an IP.
  12                                  summary of access, trunk and bridge
interfaces
  phy                                 summary of physical ports
  trunks                             summary of trunk interfaces
  lldp                               physical device neighbor information
  interface <iface>                list summary of a single interface
  system                             system information

Options:
  all       show all ports include those are down or admin down
  --mac     show interface MAC in output
  --version netshow software version
  --oneline output each entry on one line
  -1        alias for --oneline
  --json    print output in json
  -l        alias for --legend
  --legend  print legend key explaining abbreviations

```

A Linux administrator can quickly see the few options available with the tool. One core tenet of `netshow` is for it to have a small number of command options. `netshow` is not designed to solve your network problem, but to help answer this simple question: "What is the basic network setup of my Linux device?" By helping to answer that question, a Linux administrator can spend more time troubleshooting the specific network problem instead of spending most of their time understanding the basic network state.

Originally developed for Cumulus Linux, `netshow` works on Debian-based servers and switches and Red Hat-based Linux systems.

`netshow` is designed by network operators, which has rarely occurred in the networking industry, where most command troubleshooting tools are designed by developers and are most useful in the network application development process.

## Showing Interfaces

To show all available interfaces that are physically UP, run `netshow interface`:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ netshow interface
-----
To view the legend, rerun "netshow" cmd with the "--legend" option
-----
      Name   Speed     MTU  Mode   Summary
---  -----  -----  -----  -----
UP   eth0    1G      1500  Mgmt  IP: 192.168.0.12/24(DHCP)
UP   lo      N/A     16436  Mgmt  IP: 127.0.0.1/8, ::1/128

```

Whereas `netshow interface all` displays every interface regardless of state:

	Name	Speed	Mtu	Mode	Summary
UP	lo	N/A	16436	Loopback	IP: 127.0.0.1/8, ::1/128
UP	eth0	1G	1500	Mgmt	IP: 192.168.0.11/24 (DHCP)
ADMDN	swp1s0	10G(4x10)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp1s1	10G(4x10)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp1s2	10G(4x10)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp1s3	10G(4x10)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp2	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp3	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp4	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp5	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp6	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp7	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp8	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp9	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp10	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp11	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp12	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp13	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp14	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp15	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp16	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp17	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp18	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp19	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp20	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp21	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp22	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp23	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp24	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp25	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp26	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp27	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp28	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp29	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp30	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp31	40G(QSFP)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp32s0	10G(4x10)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp32s1	10G(4x10)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp32s2	10G(4x10)	1500	Unknwn	
ADMDN	swp32s3	10G(4x10)	1500	Unknwn	

You can get information about the switch itself by running `netshow system`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netshow system
```

```
Dell S6000-ON
Cumulus Version 3.0.0~1462473422.02602ac
Build: Cumulus Linux 3.0.0~1462473422.02602ac

Chipset: Broadcom Trident2 BCM56850

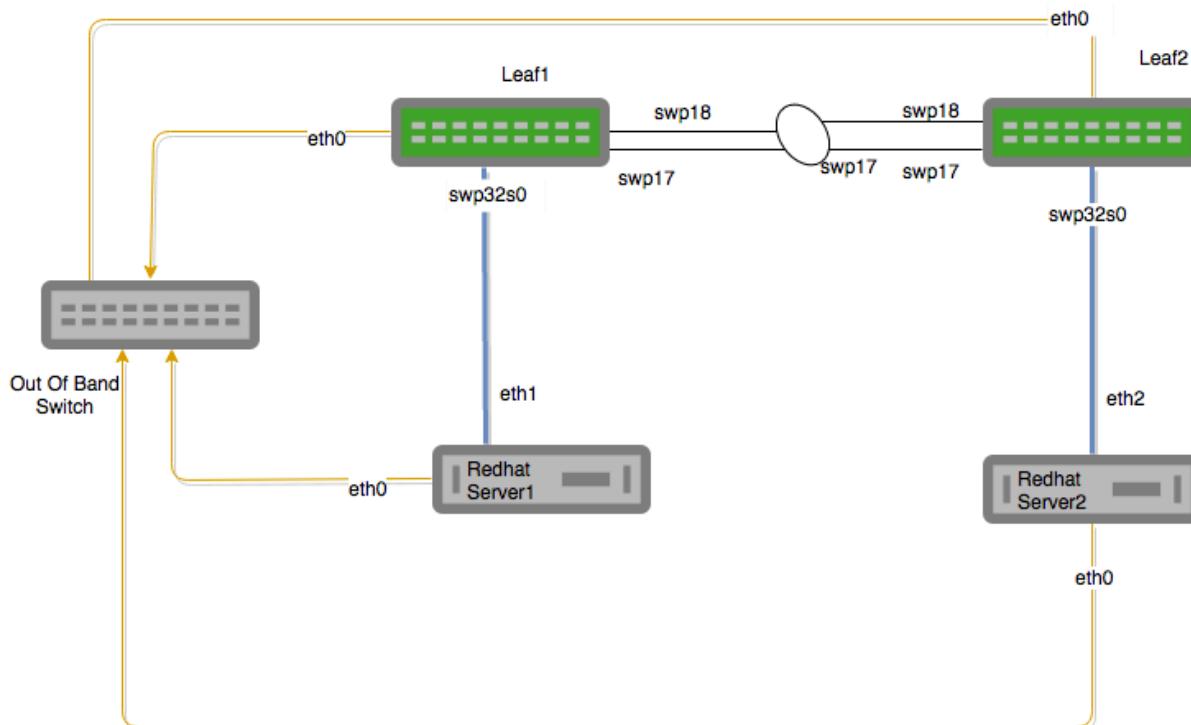
Port Config: 32 x 40G-QSFP+

CPU: (x86_64) Intel Atom S1220 1.60GHz

Uptime: 3 days, 6:29:44
```

## Troubleshooting Example: OpenStack

Looking at an OpenStack Environment, here is the physical diagram:



For server2, netshow can help us see the OpenStack network configuration. The netshow output below shows an summary of a Kilo-based OpenStack server running 3 tenants.

```
[root@host ~]# netshow int
-----
To view the legend, rerun "netshow" cmd with the "--legend" option
-----
      Name          Speed     MTU     Mode       Summary
-----
```

---	---	---	---	---	---	---
UP	brq0b6f10c7-42	N/A	1500	Bridge/L2	802.1q Tag: 141 STP: Disabled Untagged Members:	
	tap079cf993-c7				Tagged Members:	
	eth1.141					
UP	brq8cdc0589-9b	N/A	1500	Bridge/L2	802.1q Tag: 155 STP: Disabled Untagged Members:	
	tap5353b20a-68				Tagged Members:	
	eth1.155					
UP	brq8ff99102-29	N/A	1500	Bridge/L2	802.1q Tag: 168 STP: Disabled Untagged Members:	
	tapfc2203e4-5b				Tagged Members:	
	eth1.168					
UP	eth0	N/A	1500	Interface/L3	IP: 192.168.0.105/	24
UP	eth1	N/A	1500	IntTypeUnknown		
UP	eth1	N/A	1500	Trunk/L2	Bridge Membership: Tagged:	
	brq0b6f10c7-42(141), brq8cdc0589-9b(155), brq8ff99102-29(168)					
UP	lo	N/A	65536	Loopback	IP: 127.0.0.1/8,	::1/128
UP	tap079cf993-c7	10M	1500	Access/L2	Untagged:	brq0b6f10c7-42
UP	tap5353b20a-68	10M	1500	Access/L2	Untagged:	brq8cdc0589-9b
UP	tapfc2203e4-5b	10M	1500	Access/L2	Untagged:	brq8ff99102-29

OpenStack interface numbering is not the easiest read, but here `netshow` can quickly show you:

- A list of all the interfaces in admin UP state and carrier UP state
- 3 bridges
- That STP is disabled for all the bridges
- An uplink trunk interface with 3 VLANs configured on it
- Many tap interfaces, most likely the virtual machines

This output took about 5 seconds to get and another 1 minute to analyze. To get this same level of understanding using traditional tools such as:

- `ip link show`
- `brctl show`
- `ip addr show`

... could take about 10 minutes. This is a significant improvement in productivity!

`netshow` uses a plugin architecture and can be easily expanded. An OpenStack interface discovery module is currently in development. If `netshow` is run on a hypervisor with OpenStack Keystone login environment variables like `os_TENANT_NAME`, `netshow` should show the above output with a better interface discovery state, where `netshow` collects from OpenStack information from `libvirt`, `nova` and `neutron` to overlay the virtual machine and tenant subnet information over the interface kernel state information.

Interface discovery is one of the most powerful features of `netshow`. The ability to expand its interface discovery capabilities further simplifies understanding basic network troubleshooting, making the Linux administrator more productive and improving time to resolution while investigating network problems.

## ***Other Useful netshow Features***

`netshow` uses the [python network-docopt](#) package. This is inspired by `docopt` and provides the ability to specify partial commands, without tab completion and running the complete option. For example:

```
netshow int runs netshow interface  
netshow sys runs netshow system
```

`netshow` will eventually support interface name autocompletion. In the near future, if you run `netshow int tap123` and there is only one interface starting with `tap123`, `netshow` will autocomplete the command option with the full interface.

## ***Contributions Welcome!***

`netshow` is an open source project licensed under GPLv2. To contribute please contact Cumulus Networks through the [Cumulus Community Forum](#) or the [Netshow Linux Provider Github Repository Home](#). You can find developer documentation at [netshow.readthedocs.org](#). The documentation is still under development.

## ***Monitoring System Statistics and Network Traffic with sFlow***

[sFlow](#) is a monitoring protocol that samples network packets, application operations, and system counters. [sFlow](#) collects both interface counters and sampled 5-tuple packet information, enabling you to monitor your network traffic as well as your switch state and performance metrics. An outside server, known as an [sFlow collector](#), is required to collect and analyze this data.

`hsflowd` is the daemon that samples and sends sFlow data to configured collectors. `hsflowd` is not included in the base Cumulus Linux installation. After installation, `hsflowd` will automatically start when the switch boots up.

## ***Contents***

This chapter covers ...

- Installing `hsflowd` (see page 619)
- Configuring sFlow (see page 620)
  - Configuring sFlow via DNS-SD (see page 620)
  - Manually Configuring `/etc/hsflowd.conf` (see page 621)
- Configuring sFlow Visualization Tools (see page 621)
- Configuration Files (see page 622)
- Useful Links (see page 622)

## Installing hsflowd

To download and install the `hsflowd` package, use `apt-get`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get update  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install -y hsflowd
```

## Configuring sFlow

You can configure `hsflowd` to send to the designated collectors via two methods:

- DNS service discovery (DNS-SD)
- Manually configuring `/etc/hsflowd.conf`

### Configuring sFlow via DNS-SD

With this method, you need to configure your DNS zone to advertise the collectors and polling information to all interested clients. Add the following content to the zone file on your DNS server:

```
_sflow._udp SRV 0 0 6343 collector1  
_sflow._udp SRV 0 0 6344 collector2  
_sflow._udp TXT (   
"txtvers=1"  
"sampling.1G=2048"  
"sampling.10G=4096"  
"sampling.40G=8192"  
"polling=20"  
)
```

The above snippet instructs `hsflowd` to send sFlow data to `collector1` on port 6343 and to `collector2` on port 6344. `hsflowd` will poll counters every 20 seconds and sample 1 out of every 2048 packets.



From Cumulus Linux 2.5.3 onwards, the maximum samples/second delivered from the hardware is limited to 16K. This can be configured by editing the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file, as shown below:

```
# Set sflow/sample ingress cpu packet rate and burst in packets  
/sec  
# Values: {0..16384}  
#sflow.rate = 16384  
#sflow.burst = 16384
```

After the initial configuration is ready, bring up the sFlow daemon by running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start hsflowd.service
```

No additional configuration is required in /etc/hsflowd.conf.

## Manually Configuring /etc/hsflowd.conf

With this method you will set up the collectors and variables on each switch.

Edit /etc/hsflowd.conf and change *DNSSD = on* to *DNSSD = off*:

```
DNSSD = off
```

Then set up your collectors and sampling rates in /etc/hsflowd.conf:

```
# Manual Configuration (requires DNSSD=off above)
#####
#
# Typical configuration is to send every 30 seconds
polling = 20

sampling.1G=2048
sampling.10G=4096
sampling.40G=8192

collector {
    ip = 192.0.2.100
    udpport = 6343
}

collector {
    ip = 192.0.2.200
    udpport = 6344
}
```

This configuration polls the counters every 20 seconds, samples 1 of every 2048 packets and sends this information to a collector at 192.0.2.100 on port 6343 and to another collector at 192.0.2.200 on port 6344.



Some collectors require each source to transmit on a different port, others may listen on only one port. Please refer to the documentation for your collector for more information.

## Configuring sFlow Visualization Tools

For information on configuring various sFlow visualization tools, read this [Help Center article](#).

## Configuration Files

- /etc/hsflowd.conf

## Useful Links

- sFlow Collectors
- sFlow Wikipedia page

## Using netq to Troubleshoot the Network

### ➊ Early Access Feature

`netq` is an [early access feature](#) in Cumulus Linux 3.1. Before you can install `netq`, you must enable the Early Access repository. For more information about the Cumulus Linux repository, read [this knowledge base article](#).

`netq` is a tool for troubleshooting the whole network fabric. Instead of using other tools to troubleshoot node by node, `netq` aggregates data from across all the nodes in a network, so you can query and diagnose issues affecting the whole network, analyze outages or discover why two or more switches cannot communicate. `netq` can return a wealth of data about your network for both layer 2 and the layer 3 IP fabric, including:

- Interface history
- MLAG checks
- Anycast IP validation
- Interface address history
- IP neighbor history
- MTU validation of traceroutes
- Route history
- Route origin validation

`netq` provides the ability to see the output of commands on other switches, even if a switch is currently unavailable. You can even see the command history so you can go back in time before the issue arose to debug it.

Because `netq` is a Linux application, it's easy to automate with tools like Ansible, Puppet or Chef.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

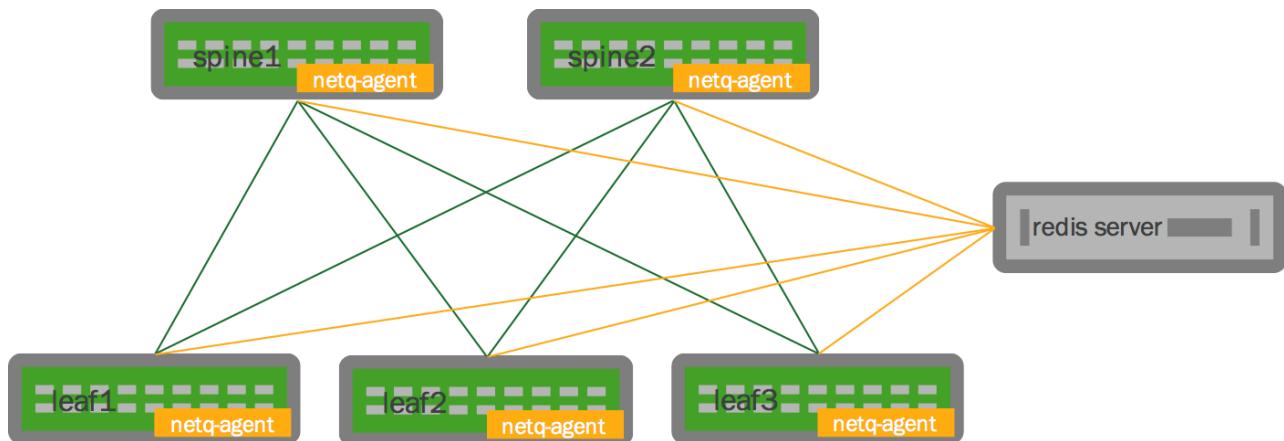
- Components (see page 623)
- Early Access Feature Limitations (see page 623)
- Installing netq (see page 624)
  - Installing redis Server (see page 624)
- Configuring the redis Server (see page 625)

- Configuring netq (see page 625)
- Using netq (see page 626)
  - Checking the Health of the Network (see page 626)
  - Using netq show (see page 627)
  - Using netq view (see page 629)
- Monitoring the redis Server (see page 630)
  - Specifying a Different redis Server (see page 630)
- Troubleshooting netq (see page 630)

## **Components**

netq has three primary components:

- **netq-agent**: The back end Python agent installed on every Cumulus Linux switch in the network; the agent pushes out data to a central server (a `redis` server, see below) periodically and when specific `netlink` events occur. The `redis` server processes the queries and sends back a response to the switch. The agent listens for these events:
  - address (IPv4 and IPv6)
  - route (IPv4 and IPv6)
  - link
  - bridge fdb
  - IP neighbor
- **netq**: The command line interface to the `netq-agent`. You can use the `netq` CLI on every Cumulus Linux switch as well as the `redis` server.
- **redis server**: The database/key-value store where all network information sent from `netq-agents` running on Cumulus Linux switches is collected and aggregated. The server runs `redis` version 2.8.17-1.



## **Early Access Feature Limitations**

netq is an early access feature. As such, the following features are limited or unavailable at this time, and should be available in a future release of Cumulus Linux:

- You can check BGP health only at this time; reporting OSPF health should follow in the near future.

- You cannot determine the origin of static routes.
- Interoperability with [management VRF \(see page 544\)](#) is not supported.
- Clustering the `redis` server for high availability has not been tested.
- `netq` has been tested with up to 20 nodes in a fabric, with 8k routes and MAC addresses per node.

If you are interested in trying out this or any other early access feature, contact your Cumulus Networks account representative to let us know you are testing it.

## Installing netq

To install the `netq` package — `cumulus-netq` — on a switch, follow the instructions in the [Cumulus Linux 3.1 release notes](#). The `cumulus-netq` package contains `netq` and the `netq-agent`. Cumulus Networks recommends you install the `netq-agent` on every Cumulus Linux switch in the network; you can also install it on the `redis` server.

## Installing redis Server

Cumulus Networks recommends you install the `redis` server on its own server or VM. Ideally, you should run the `redis` server on a separate, powerful server for maximum usability and performance — Cumulus Networks recommends a system with a quad core CPU, 16GB of RAM (with 8GB for `redis` itself) and 512GB of storage.

You need to download and install two packages:

- The [redis-server](#) package, version 2.8.17-1.
- The [redis-tools](#) package, version 2.8.17-1.

Use `apt-get` to install the packages:

```
root@redis-server:~# apt-get update
root@redis-server:~# apt-get install redis-server redis-tools
root@redis-server:~# apt-get upgrade
```

After you install these packages, connect the server over the management network to ensure network connectivity even if the in-band network is unavailable. Note its IP address, as you need to specify it when you configure `netq`.



If you want to run the `netq` CLI on the `redis` server, you need to install the `cumulus-netq` package on the server. You'll need to update your `sources.list` file to include the [Cumulus Linux repository](#). Then install the package, following the instructions in the [Cumulus Linux 3.1 release notes](#). The `cumulus-netq` package contains the `netq` client, which contains the CLI.



You cannot specify a port number for the `redis` server at this time.

Once you install the `redis` server, you must configure it before you can configure `netq` on the switch.

## Configuring the redis Server

Depending upon the operating system of the redis server host, you may need to modify its configuration before it can start monitoring the network. Check the `/etc/redis/redis.conf` file and verify that the server is listening to external-facing ports, and not the localhost.

1. Edit `/etc/redis/redis.conf`:

```
root@redis-server:~# vi /etc/redis/redis.conf
```

2. If the bind line links to localhost (127.0.0.1), change it to the IP address of one or more external ports, such as eth0:

```
bind 192.0.2.240
```

3. Restart the `redis-server` service. For example, on a Debian host, run:

```
root@redis-server:~# systemctl restart redis-server
```

## Configuring netq

Once you install the `netq` packages and configure the redis server, you need to configure `netq` to monitor your network.

1. To ensure useful output, ensure that [NTP \(see page 66\)](#) is running.
2. Specify the IP address of the `redis` server. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netq add server 198.51.100.1
```

3. Start the `netq` agent.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netq agent start
```



If you see the following error, it means you haven't added the redis server or the server wasn't configured:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netq agent start
Error: Please specify IP address of DB server
```

The `netq` configuration is stored in the following files:

- `/etc/netq/netq-agent.conf`: Contains basic agent configuration, including the `redis` server IP address.
- `/etc/netq/netq-agent-commands.json`: Contains key-value pairs of commands whose outputs are pushed along with the key to be associated, periodicity of push and so forth.
- `/etc/netq/netq-agent-running.json`: Log of the actual commands that are being pushed to the agent, as determined when the agent starts, as well as the `redis` server IP address and more.

## Using netq

`netq` has a number of options to use with the command to return various kinds of data about your network — press the `Tab` key at any time to reveal the options available to a given part of the command. Running `netq` on its own reveals all the options, with a brief explanation for each one:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netq <TAB>
add : Update configuration
agent : Netq agent
health : Show liveness and status of agent/bgp/mlag in fabric
help : Show usage info
resolve : Annotate input with names and interesting info
server : IP address of DB server
show : Show fabric-wide info
view : Show output of pre-defined commands on specific node
```

## Checking the Health of the Network

It's best to start with `netq health agents` to see the status of every network node, based on the whether the agent missed receiving any heartbeats sent from the node. A node's status can be one of the following:

- **Fresh:** The agent is running fine, no heartbeats were missed.
- **Stale:** The agent missed one heartbeat, which is not unusual.
- **Rotten:** The agent missed five consecutive heartbeats.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netq health agents
```

Node	Name	Connect Time	Time Since Connect	Status
leaf-1		2016-08-23	03:59:00 15 seconds ago	Fresh
leaf-2		2016-08-23	03:59:00 14 seconds ago	Fresh
leaf-3		2016-08-23	03:58:59 16 seconds ago	Fresh
leaf-4		2016-08-23	03:58:55 20 seconds ago	Fresh
leaf-5		2016-08-23	03:58:59 16 seconds ago	Fresh
leaf-6		2016-08-23	03:58:59 15 seconds ago	Fresh
leaf-7		2016-08-23	03:58:59 16 seconds ago	Fresh
leaf-8		2016-08-23	03:58:58 16 seconds ago	Fresh

leaf-9	2016-08-23	03:58:56 19 seconds ago	Fresh
spine-1	2016-08-23	03:58:59 16 seconds ago	Fresh
spine-2	2016-08-23	03:58:58 17 seconds ago	Fresh
spine-3	2016-08-23	03:58:55 19 seconds ago	Fresh
spine-4	2016-08-23	03:58:56 19 seconds ago	Fresh

You can also check the health of BGP and MLAG in the network:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netq health bgp
No BGP sessions in failed state
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netq health clag
Failed Node          Reason
-----
-----
leaf-9              Peer Connectivity failed
None
```

## Using `netq show`

The `netq show` command can return information regarding the network fabric overall, including:

- Interface IP and MAC addresses across all nodes in the fabric.
- Interfaces across all nodes in the fabric.
- IPv4 and IPv6-related information.
- LLDP-based neighbor information.
- MAC address information, with VLANs if present, across the fabric.

The `netq show` command takes the following options:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netq show [addresses | info | interfaces | ip
| ipv6 | lldp | macs]
```

To see MAC address information for switch leaf-1, you would run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netq show macs leaf-1
List of nodes containing MAC *
MAC          VLAN  Node Name   Egress Port    Update Time
-----
00:00:5e:00:01:01  0    leaf-1     bridge      33 minutes ago
00:00:5e:00:01:01  0    leaf-1     bridge.20    33 minutes ago
00:00:5e:00:01:01  20   leaf-1     bridge      33 minutes ago
08:00:27:51:3f:c2  0    leaf-1     bond-swp6   33 minutes ago
08:00:27:51:3f:c2  20   leaf-1     bridge      33 minutes ago
08:00:27:7f:06:83  0    leaf-1     peer-link   33 minutes ago
08:00:27:9d:9d:2d  0    leaf-1     bond-swp5   33 minutes ago
```

You can filter the output to a given interface on a switch, in this case a bridge on leaf-1 named *bridge*:

```
vagrant@spine-1:~$ netq show macs leaf-1 bridge
List of nodes containing MAC *
MAC          VLAN  Node Name  Egress Port  Update Time
-----  -----
00:00:5e:00:01:01  0    leaf-1    bridge      33 minutes ago
00:00:5e:00:01:01  20   leaf-1    bridge      33 minutes ago
08:00:27:51:3f:c2  20   leaf-1    bridge      33 minutes ago
```

To see the route information, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netq show ip routes 10.1.20.1
Route info about prefix 10.1.20.1 on host *
Origin Table IP          Node
Nexthops                Update Time
-----  -----
-----  -----
0       254   10.1.20.0/24     leaf-3      169.254.0.1:
swp4,           38 minutes ago
                                         169.254.0.1: swp1,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp2,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp3
0       254   10.1.20.0/24     leaf-4      169.254.0.1:
swp4,           38 minutes ago
                                         169.254.0.1: swp1,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp3,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp2
0       254   10.1.20.0/24     leaf-5      169.254.0.1:
swp4,           38 minutes ago
                                         169.254.0.1: swp3,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp1,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp2
0       254   10.1.20.0/24     leaf-6      169.254.0.1:
swp4,           38 minutes ago
                                         169.254.0.1: swp3,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp2,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp1
0       254   10.1.20.0/24     leaf-7      169.254.0.1:
swp4,           38 minutes ago
                                         169.254.0.1: swp1,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp3,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp2
0       254   10.1.20.0/24     leaf-8      169.254.0.1:
swp4,           38 minutes ago
                                         169.254.0.1: swp1,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp3,
                                         169.254.0.1: swp2
```

0	254	10.1.20.0/24	leaf-9	169.254.0.1:
swp4,		38 minutes ago		169.254.0.1: swp3, 169.254.0.1: swp1, 169.254.0.1: swp2
0	254	10.1.20.0/24	spine-1	169.254.0.1:
swp2,		38 minutes ago		169.254.0.1: swp1
0	254	10.1.20.0/24	spine-2	169.254.0.1:
swp1,		38 minutes ago		169.254.0.1: swp2
0	254	10.1.20.0/24	spine-3	169.254.0.1:
swp1,		38 minutes ago		169.254.0.1: swp2
0	254	10.1.20.0/24	spine-4	169.254.0.1:
swp1,		38 minutes ago		169.254.0.1: swp2
1	254	10.1.20.0/24	leaf-2	
Local		38 minutes ago		
1	255	10.1.20.1/32	leaf-1	
Local		38 minutes ago		

## Using netq view

The `netq view` command provides information about a specific node in the network. The available options are:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netq view leaf-1 <TAB>
addr : addr
bgp : bgp
clagctl : clagctl
config : config
counters : counters
ifquery : ifquery
link : link
lldp : lldp
meminfo : meminfo
mstpctl : mstpctl
uptime : uptime
```

For example, to see the BGP summary for switch leaf-5, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netq view leaf-5 bgp summary
Output retrieved from 6 seconds ago
BGP router identifier 192.0.2.10, local AS number 64517 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 27
RIB entries 33, using 3960 bytes of memory
Peers 4, using 65 KiB of memory
```

```
Peer groups 1, using 56 bytes of memory

Neighbor V AS MsgRcvd MsgSent TblVer InQ OutQ Up/Down State/PfxRcd
spine-1(swp1) 4 65000 169503 169504 0 0 0 5d21h17m 12
spine-2(swp2) 4 65000 169505 169508 0 0 0 5d21h17m 12
spine-3(swp3) 4 65000 169505 169508 0 0 0 5d21h17m 12
spine-4(swp4) 4 65000 169504 169512 0 0 0 5d21h17m 12

Total number of neighbors 4
```

## ***Monitoring the redis Server***

You can use the `redis-cli info` command to determine how much memory is consumed by the `redis` server, how many connections there are, and so forth.

Two recommended commands to use are `redis-cli info` and `redis-cli ping`.



To use the `redis` CLI, you need to [install](#) `redis-tools`.

## ***Specifying a Different redis Server***

If you need to change the IP address of the `redis` server, run `netq add server` again, specifying the IP address of the new server, then restart the `netq` agent. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netq add 198.51.100.10
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netq agent restart
```

Note that you need to specify this for every switch that you're monitoring with `netq`. Cumulus Networks recommends you use an automation tool like Ansible or Puppet to quickly update the server across all switches.

## ***Troubleshooting netq***

`netq` agent logs to `/var/log/netq-agent.log`. The logs are logrotated.

To ensure that the `netq` agent is running, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netq agent status
Running...
```

## ***SNMP Monitoring***

Cumulus Linux utilizes the open source Net-SNMP agent `snmpd`, v5.7.3, which provides support for most of the common industry-wide MIBs, including interface counters and TCP/UDP IP stack data.



Cumulus Linux does not prevent customers from extending SNMP features. However, Cumulus Networks encourages the use of higher performance monitoring environments, rather than SNMP.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Introduction to SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) (see page 631)
- Configuring Ports for SNMP to Listen for Requests (see page 631)
- Starting the SNMP Daemon (see page 632)
- Configuring SNMP (see page 632)
  - Setting up the Custom Cumulus Networks MIBs (see page 633)
  - Enabling the .1.3.6.1.2.1 Range (see page 633)
  - Enabling Public Community (see page 634)
  - Configuring SNMPv3 (see page 634)
- snmpwalk a Switch from Another Linux Device (see page 637)
  - Troubleshooting Tips Table for snmpwalks (see page 638)
- SNMP Traps (see page 638)
  - snmptrapd.conf (see page 638)
  - Generating Event Notification Traps (see page 639)
- Supported MIBs (see page 643)

### ***Introduction to SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)***

SNMP is an IETF standards-based network management architecture and protocol that traces its roots back to Carnegie-Mellon University in 1982. Since then, it's been modified by programmers at the University of California. In 1995, this code was also made publicly available as the UCD project. After that, `ucd-snmp` was extended by work done at the University of Liverpool as well as later in Denmark. In late 2000, the project name changed to `net-snmp` and became a fully-fledged collaborative open source project. The version used by Cumulus Networks is base on the latest `net-snmp` 5.7.3 branch with added custom MIBs and pass through and pass persist scripts.

### ***Configuring Ports for SNMP to Listen for Requests***

For security reasons, the default port binding for `snmpd` is the loopback local address; consequently by default, the SNMP service does not listen for SNMP requests from outside the switch. In order to listen to requests from outside the switch, you need to change this binding to a specific IP address (or all interfaces) after configuring security access (community strings, users, and so forth). This is a change from older versions of Cumulus Linux (before version 3.0), which listened to incoming requests on all interfaces by default. The `snmpd` configuration file is `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` and should be modified before enabling and starting `snmpd`. The default configuration has no access community strings defined so `snmpd` will not respond to any SNMP requests until this is added.

## Starting the SNMP Daemon

The following procedure is the recommended process to start `snmpd` and monitor it using `systemctl`.

To start the SNMP daemon:

1. Start the `snmpd` daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start snmpd.service
```

2. Configure the `snmpd` daemon to start automatically after reboot:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable snmpd.service
```

3. To enable `snmpd` to restart automatically after failure:

- a. Create a file called `/etc/systemd/system/snmpd.service.d/restart.conf`.
- b. Add the following lines:

```
[Service]
Restart=always
RestartSec=60
```

- c. Run `sudo systemctl daemon-reload`.

Once the service is started, SNMP can be used to manage various components on the Cumulus Linux switch.

## Configuring SNMP

Cumulus Linux ships with a production usable default `snmpd.conf` file included. This section covers a few basic configuration options in `snmpd.conf`. For more information regarding further configuring this file, refer to the `snmpd.conf` man page.



The default `snmpd.conf` file does not include all supported MIBs or OIDs that can be exposed.



Customers must at least change the default community string for v1 or v2c environments or the `snmpd` daemon will not respond to any requests.

## ***Setting up the Custom Cumulus Networks MIBs***



No changes are required in the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file on the switch, in order to support the custom Cumulus Networks MIBs. The following lines are already included by default:

```
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.1
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.2
sysObjectID 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310
pass_persist .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.1 /usr/share/snmp/resq_pp.py
pass_persist .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.2 /usr/share/snmp
/cl_drop_cntrs_pp.py
```

However, several files need to be copied to the server, in order for the custom Cumulus MIB to be recognized on the destination NMS server.

- `/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Snmp-MIB.txt`
- `/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Counters-MIB.txt`
- `/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Resource-Query-MIB.txt`

### ***Enabling the .1.3.6.1.2.1 Range***

Some MIBs, including storage information, are not included by default in `snmpd.conf` in Cumulus Linux. This results in some default views on common network tools (like `librenms`) to return less than optimal data. More MIBs can be included, by enabling all the `.1.3.6.1.2.1` range. This simplifies the configuration file, removing concern that any required MIBs will be missed by the monitoring system. Various MIBs were added to version 3.0 and include the following: ENTITY and ENTITY-SENSOR MIB and parts of the BRIDGE-MIB and Q-BRIDGE-MIBs. These are included in the default configuration.



The view of the BRIDGE-MIB and Q-BRIDGE-MIB are commented out.



This configuration grants access to a large number of MIBs, including all MIB2 MIBs, which could reveal more data than expected. In addition to being a security vulnerability, it could consume more CPU resources.

To enable the `.1.3.6.1.2.1` range:

1. Open `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` in a text editor.
2. Make sure the following lines are included in the configuration:

```
#####
#####
```

```

#
# ACCESS CONTROL
#
# system
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1
# quagga ospf6
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.3.102
# lldpd (Note: lldpd must be restarted with the -x option
# configured in order to send info to snmpd via Agent X
view systemonly included .1.0.8802.1.1.2
# Cumulus specific
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.1
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.2

```

3. Restart snmpd:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start snmpd.service
```

## Enabling Public Community

The snmpd authentication for versions 1 and 2 is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux. This password (called a community string) can be enabled by setting **rocommunity** (for read-only access) or **rwcommunity** (for read-write access). To enable read-only querying by a client:

1. Open /etc/snmp/snmpd.conf in a text editor.
2. To allow read-only access using a password *public* from any client IP address (*default*) for the view you defined before with *systemonly*, add the following line to the end of the file, then save it:

```
rocommunity public default -V systemonly
```

3. Restart snmpd:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
```

## Configuring SNMPv3

Since community strings in versions 1 and 2c are sent in the clear, SNMPv3 is often used to enable authentication and encryption. SNMPv3 was first released around 2000. A minimal example is shown here for /etc/snmp/snmpd.conf that defines three users, each with a different combination of authentication and encryption. Please change these usernames and passwords before using this in a network:



Make sure you change the usernames and passwords in the sample code below, as the ones used here are for explanatory purposes only.

```

# simple no auth user
createUser user1
# user with MD5 authentication
createUser user2 MD5 user2password
# user with MD5 for auth and DES for encryption
createUser user3 MD5 user3password DES user3encryption
# user999 with MD5 for authentication and DES for encryption

createUser user666 SHA user666password AES user666encryption
createUser user999 MD5 user999password DES user999encryption

# restrict users to certain OIDs
# (Note: creating rouser or rwuser will give
# access regardless of the createUser command above. However,
# createUser without rouser or rwuser will not provide any access).
rouser user1 noauth 1.3.6.1.2.1.1
rouser user2 auth 1.3.6.1.2.1
rwuser user3 priv 1.3.6.1.2.1
rwuser user666
rwuser user999

```

Once you make this configuration and restart the `snmpd` daemon, the user access can be checked with a client — the Debian package called `snmp` contains `snmpget` and `snmpwalk`, as well as other programs that are useful for checking daemon functionality from the switch itself or from another workstation. The following commands check the access for each user defined above from the localhost (the switch itself):

```

# check user1 which has no authentication or encryption (NoauthNoPriv)
snmpget -v 3 -u user1 -l NoauthNoPriv localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user1 -l NoauthNoPriv localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1

# check user2 which has authentication but no encryption (authNoPriv)
snmpget -v 3 -u user2 -l authNoPriv -a MD5 -A user2password localhost
1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0
snmpget -v 3 -u user2 -l authNoPriv -a MD5 -A user2password localhost
1.3.6.1.2.1.2.1.0
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user2 -l authNoPriv -a MD5 -A user2password
localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1

# check user3 which has both authentication and encryption (authPriv)
snmpget -v 3 -u user3 -l authPriv -a MD5 -A user3password -x DES -X
user3encryption localhost .1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user3 -l authPriv -a MD5 -A user3password -x DES -X
user3encryption localhost .1.3.6.1.2.1
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user666 -l authPriv -a SHA -x AES -A user666password
-X user666encryption localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user999 -l authPriv -a MD5 -x DES -A user999password
-X user999encryption localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1

```

A slightly more secure method of configuring SNMPv3 users without creating cleartext passwords is the following:

1. Install the `net-snmp-config` script that is in `libsnmp-dev` package:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get update  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install libsnmp-dev
```

2. Stop the daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop snmpd.service
```

3. Use the `net-snmp-config` command to create two users, one with MD5 and DES, and the next with SHA and AES.



The minimum password length is 8 characters and the arguments `-a` and `-x` to `net-snmp-config` have different meanings than they do for `snmpwalk`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo net-snmp-config --create-snmpv3-user -a  
md5authpass -x desprivpass -A MD5 -X DES userMD5withDES  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo net-snmp-config --create-snmpv3-user -a  
shaauthpass -x aesprivpass -A SHA -X AES userSHAwithAES  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start snmpd.service
```

This adds a `createUser` command in `/var/lib/snmp/snmpd.conf`. Do **not** edit this file by hand, unless you are removing usernames. It also adds the `rwuser` in `/usr/share/snmp/snmpd.conf`. You may want to edit this file and restrict access to certain parts of the MIB by adding `noauth`, `auth` or `priv` to allow unauthenticated access, require authentication or to enforce use of encryption, respectively.

The `snmpd` daemon reads the information from the `/var/lib/snmp/snmpd.conf` file and then the line is removed (eliminating the storage of the master password for that user) and replaced with the key that is derived from it (using the EngineID). This key is a localized key, so that if it is stolen it cannot be used to access other agents. To remove the two users `userMD5withDES` and `userSHAwithAES`, you need simply stop the `snmpd` daemon and edit the files `/var/lib/snmp/snmpd.conf` and `/usr/share/snmp/snmpd.conf`. Simply remove the lines containing the username. Then restart the `snmpd` daemon as in step 3 above.

From a client, you would access the MIB with the correct credentials. (Again, note that the roles of `-x`, `-a` and `-x` and `-A` are reversed on the client side as compared with the `net-snmp-config` command used above.)

```
snmpwalk -v 3 -u userMD5withDES -l authPriv -a MD5 -x DES -A  
md5authpass -X desprivpass localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1  
snmpwalk -v 3 -u userSHAwithAES -l authPriv -a SHA -x AES -A  
shaauthpass -X aesprivpass localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1
```

## **snmpwalk a Switch from Another Linux Device**

One of the most important ways to troubleshoot is to `snmpwalk` the switch from another Linux device that can reach the Cumulus Linux switch. For this demonstration, another switch running Cumulus Linux within the network is used.

1. Open `/etc/apt/sources.list` in an editor.
2. Add the following line, and save the file:

```
deb http://ftp.us.debian.org/debian/ jessie main non-free
```

3. Update the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get update
```

4. Install the `snmp` and `snmp-mibs-downloader` packages:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install snmp snmp-mibs-downloader
```

5. Verify that the "mibs :" line is commented out in `/etc/snmp/snmp.conf`:

```
#  
# As the snmp packages come without MIB files due to license  
# reasons, loading  
# of MIBs is disabled by default. If you added the MIBs you can  
# reenable  
# loading them by commenting out the following line.  
#mibs :
```

6. Perform an `snmpwalk` on the switch. The switch running `snmpd` in the demonstration is using IP address 192.168.0.111. It is possible to `snmpwalk` the switch from itself, following these instructions, ruling out an `snmp` problem vs networking problem.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ snmpwalk -c public -v2c 192.168.0.111
```

## **Output Examples**

```
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.2 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:80
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.3 = STRING: 0:e0:ec:25:b8:54
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.4 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:81
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.5 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:82
```

```

IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.6 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:83
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.7 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:84
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.8 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:85
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.9 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:86
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.10 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:87
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.11 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:88
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.12 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:89
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.13 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8a
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.14 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8b
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.15 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8c
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.16 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8d
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.17 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8e
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.18 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8f
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.19 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:90
  
```

Any information gathered here should verify that snmpd is running correctly on the Cumulus Linux side, reducing locations where a problem may reside.

## Troubleshooting Tips Table for snmpwalks

Run snmpwalk from	If it works	If it does not work
<b>switch</b> (switch to be monitored)	snmpd is serving information correctly Problem resides somewhere else (e.g. network connectivity, Prism misconfiguration)	Is snmpd misconfigured or installed incorrectly?
<b>switch2</b> (another Cumulus Linux switch in the network)	snmpd is serving information correctly and network reachability works between <b>switch</b> and <b>switch2</b> Problems resides somewhere else (e.g. can Prism reach <b>switch</b> , Prism misconfiguration)	Network connectivity is not able to grab information? Is there an iptables rule blocking? Is the snmp walk being run correctly?
<b>Nutanix Prism CLI</b> (ssh to the cluster IP address)	snmpd is serving information correctly and network reachability works between <b>switch</b> and the <b>Nutanix Appliance</b> Problems resides somewhere else (e.g. The GUI might be misconfigured)	Is the right community name being used in the GUI? Is snmp v2c being used?

## SNMP Traps

### snmptrapd.conf

The Net-SNMP trap daemon configuration file, `/etc/snmptrapd.conf`, is used to configure how incoming traps should be processed. For more information about specific configuration options within the file, run the following command in a terminal:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ man 5 snmptrapd.conf

#####
#####

#
# EXAMPLE-trap.conf:
# An example configuration file for configuring the Net-SNMP
snmptrapd agent.
#
#####
#####
#
# This file is intended to only be an example. If, however, you want
# to use it, it should be placed in /etc/snmp/snmptrapd.conf.
# When the snmptrapd agent starts up, this is where it will look for
it.
#
# All lines beginning with a '#' are comments and are intended for you
# to read. All other lines are configuration commands for the agent.

#
# PLEASE: read the snmptrapd.conf(5) manual page as well!
#
snmpTrapdAddr localhost
forward default {{global['snmp_server']}}}
```

## Generating Event Notification Traps

The Net-SNMP agent provides a method to generate SNMP trap events, via the Distributed Management (DisMan) Event MIB, for various system events, including linkup/down, exceeding the temperature sensor threshold, CPU load, or memory threshold, or other SNMP MIBs.

## Monitoring Fans, Power Supplies, or Transformers

SNMP can be configured to monitor the operational status of an Entity MIB or Entity-Sensor MIB. The operational status, given as a value of ok(1), unavailable(2), or nonoperational(3), can be determined by adding the following example configuration to `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf`, and adjusting the values:

- Using the `entPhySensorOperStatus` integer:

```
# without installing extra MIBS we can check the check Fan1
status
# if the Fan1 index is 100011001
monitor -I -r 10 -o 1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.7.100011001 "Fan1
Not OK" 1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.5.100011001 > 1
# Any Entity Status non OK (greater than 1)
```

```
monitor -r 10 -o 1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7 "Sensor Status Failure" 1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.5 > 1
```



The `entPhySensorOperStatus` integer can be found by walking the `entPhysicalName` table.

- Using the OID name:

```
# for a specific fan called Fan1 with an index 100011001
monitor -I -r 10 -o entPhysicalName.100011001 "Fan1 Not OK"
entPhySensorOperStatus.100011001 > 1
# for any Entity Status not OK ( greater than 1 )
monitor -r 10 -o entPhysicalName "Sensor Status Failure"
entPhySensorOperStatus > 1
```



The OID name can be used if the `snmp-mibs-download` package is installed.

## ***Enabling MIB to OID Translation***

MIB names can be used instead of OIDs, by installing the `snmp-mibs-downloader`, to download SNMP MIBs to the switch prior to enabling traps. This greatly improves the readability of the `snmpd.conf` file.

- Open `/etc/apt/sources.list` in a text editor.
- Add the `non-free` repository, and save the file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo deb http://ftp.us.debian.org/debian/
jessie main non-free
```

- Update the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get update
```

- Install the `snmp-mibs-downloader`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get snmp-mibs-downloader
```

- Open the `/etc/snmp/snmp.conf` file to verify that the `mibs : line` is commented out:

```

#
# As the snmp packages come without MIB files due to license
reasons, loading
# of MIBs is disabled by default. If you added the MIBs you can
reenable
# loading them by commenting out the following line.
#mibs :

```

6. Open the /etc/default/snmpd file to verify that the `export MIBS=` line is commented out:

```

# This file controls the activity of snmpd and snmptrapd

# Don't load any MIBs by default.
# You might comment this lines once you have the MIBs Downloaded.
#export MIBS=

```

7. Once the configuration has been confirmed, remove or comment out the non-free repository in /etc/apt/sources.list.

```
#deb http://ftp.us.debian.org/debian/ jessie main non-free
```

## Configuring Trap Events

The following configurations should be made in /etc/snmp/snmp.conf, in order to enable specific types of traps. Once configured, restart the `snmpd` service to apply the changes.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
```

### Defining Access Credentials

An SNMPv3 username is required to authorize the DisMan service. The example code below uses `cumulusUser` as the username.

```

createUser cumulusUser
iquerySecName cumulusUser
rouser cumulusUser

```

### Defining Trap Receivers

The example code below creates a trap receiver that is capable of receiving SNMPv2 traps.

```
trap2sink 192.168.1.1 public
```



Although the traps are sent to an SNMPV2 receiver, the SNMPv3 user is still required.



It is possible to define multiple trap receivers, and to use the domain name instead of IP address in the `trap2sink` directive.

## Configuring LinkUp/Down Notifications

The `linkUpDownNotifications` directive is used to configure linkup/down notifications when the operational status of the link changes.

```
linkUpDownNotifications yes
```



The default frequency for checking link up/down is 60 seconds. The default frequency can be changed using the `monitor` directive directly instead of the `linkUpDownNotifications` directive. See `man snmpd.conf` for details.

## Configuring Temperature Notifications

Temperature sensor information for each available sensor is maintained in the the `ImSensors` MIB. Each platform may contain a different number of temperature sensors. The example below generates a trap event when any temperature sensors exceeds a threshold of 68 degrees (centigrade). It monitors each `1mTempSensorsValue`. When the threshold value is checked and exceeds the `1mTempSensorsValue`, a trap is generated. The `-o 1mTempSenesorsDevice` option is used to instruct SNMP to also include the `ImTempSensorsDevice` MIB in the generated trap. The default frequency for the `monitor` directive is 600 seconds. The default frequency may be changed using the `-r` option.:.

```
monitor lmTemSensor -o lmTempSensorsDevice lmTempSensorsValue > 68000
```

Alternatively, temperature sensors may be monitored individually. To monitor the sensors individually, first use the `sensors` command to determine which sensors are available to be monitored on the platform.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo sensors

CY8C3245-i2c-4-2e
Adapter: i2c-0-mux (chan_id 2)
fan5: 7006 RPM (min = 2500 RPM, max = 23000 RPM)
fan6: 6955 RPM (min = 2500 RPM, max = 23000 RPM)
fan7: 6799 RPM (min = 2500 RPM, max = 23000 RPM)
fan8: 6750 RPM (min = 2500 RPM, max = 23000 RPM)
temp1: +34.0 C (high = +68.0 C)
temp2: +28.0 C (high = +68.0 C)
temp3: +33.0 C (high = +68.0 C)
temp4: +31.0 C (high = +68.0 C)
temp5: +23.0 C (high = +68.0 C)
```

Configure a `monitor` command for the specific sensor using the `-I` option. The `-I` option indicates that the monitored expression is applied to a single instance. In this example, there are five temperature sensors available. The following monitor directive can be used to monitor only temperature sensor three at five minute intervals.

```
monitor -I -r 300 lmTemSensor3 -o lmTempSensorsDevice.3  
lmTempSensorsValue.3 > 68000
```

### Configuring Free Memory Notifications

You can monitor free memory using the following directives. The example below generates a trap when free memory drops below 1,000,000KB. The free memory trap also includes the amount of total real memory:

```
monitor MemFreeTotal -o memTotalReal memTotalFree < 1000000
```

### Configuring Processor Load Notifications

To monitor CPU load for 1, 5 or 15 minute intervals, use the `load` directive in conjunction with the `monitor` directive. The following example will generate a trap when the 1 minute interval reaches 12%, the 5 minute interval reaches 10% or the 15 minute interval reaches 5%.

```
load 12 10 5  
monitor -r 60 -o laNames -o laErrMsg "laTable" laErrorFlag !=0
```

### Configuring Disk Utilization Notifications

To monitor disk utilization for all disks, use the `includeAllDisks` directive in conjunction with the `monitor` directive. The example code below generates a trap when a disk is 99% full:

```
includeAllDisks 1%  
monitor -r 60 -o dskPath -o DiskErrMsg "dskTable" diskErrorFlag !=0
```

### Configuring Authentication Notifications

To generate authentication failure traps, use the `authtrapenable` directive:

```
authtrapenable 1
```

## Supported MIBs

Below are the MIBs supported by Cumulus Linux, as well as suggested uses for them. The overall Cumulus Linux MIB is defined in `/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Snmp-MIB.txt`.

MIB Name	Suggested Uses
BRIDGE and Q-BRIDGE	The dot1dBasePortEntry and dot1dBasePortIfIndex tables in the BRIDGE-MIB and dot1qBase, dot1qFdbEntry, dot1qTpFdbEntry, dot1qTpFdbStatus, and the dot1qVlanStaticName tables in the Q-BRIDGE-MIB tables. You must uncomment the <code>bridge_pp.py pass_persist</code> script in <code>/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf</code> .
BGP4	Implementation of the BGP4 MIB (RFC 4273) which includes bgpPeerTable and bgp4PathAttrTable. By default, the <code>bgp4_pp.py</code> script does not show the bgp4PathAttrTable since this can be very large and result in a periodic CPU spike. To enable this table, add <code>--include-paths</code> to the end of the line (as an option) after uncommenting it in the <code>/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf</code> configuration file.
	<code>#pass_persist .1.3.6.1.2.1.15 /usr/share/snmp/bgp4_pp.py</code>
CUMULUS-COUNTERS-MIB	Discard counters: Cumulus Linux also includes its own counters MIB, defined in <code>/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Counters-MIB.txt</code> . It has the OID <code>.1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.2</code>
CUMULUS-RESOURCE-QUERY-MIB	Cumulus Linux includes its own resource utilization MIB, which is similar to using <code>cl-resource-query</code> . It monitors L3 entries by host, route, nexthops, ECMP groups and L2 MAC/BPDU entries. The MIB is defined in <code>/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Resource-Query-MIB.txt</code> , and has the OID <code>.1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.1</code> .
CUMULUS-POE-MIB	The Cumulus Networks custom <a href="#">Power over Ethernet (see page 142)</a> PoE MIB defined in <code>/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-POE-MIB.txt</code> . For devices that provide PoE, this provides users with the system wide power information in <code>poeSystemValues</code> as well as per interface <code>PoeObjectsEntry</code> values for the <code>poeObjectsTable</code> . Most of this information comes from the <code>poectl</code> command. This MIB is enabled by uncommenting the following line in <code>/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf</code> :
	<code>#pass_persist .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.3 /usr/share/snmp/cl_poe_pp.py</code>
DISMAN-EVENT	Trap monitoring
ENTITY	From RFC 4133, the temperature sensors, fan sensors, power sensors, and ports are covered.
ENTITY-SENSOR	Physical sensor information (temperature, fan, and power supply) from RFC 3433.
	Users, storage, interfaces, process info, run parameters

MIB Name	Suggested Uses
HOST-RESOURCES	
IF-MIB	Interface description, type, MTU, speed, MAC, admin, operation status, counters
IP (includes ICMP)	IPv4, IPv4 addresses, counters, netmasks
IPv6	IPv6 counters
IP-FORWARD	IP routing table
LLDP	L2 neighbor info from <code>lldpd</code> (note, you need to <a href="#">enable the SNMP subagent (see page 228)</a> in LLDP). <code>lldpd</code> needs to be started with the <code>-x</code> option to enable connectivity to <code>snmpd</code> (AgentX).
LM-SENSORS MIB	Fan speed, temperature sensor values, voltages. This is deprecated since the ENTITY-SENSOR MIB has been added.
NET-SNMP-AGENT	Agent timers, user, group config
NET-SNMP-EXTEND	Agent timers, user, group config
NET-SNMP-EXTEND-MIB	(See also <a href="#">this knowledge base article</a> on extending NET-SNMP in Cumulus Linux to include data from power supplies, fans and temperature sensors.)
NET-SNMP-VACM	Agent timers, user, group config
NOTIFICATION-LOG	Local logging
SNMP-FRAMEWORK	Users, access
SNMP-MPD	Users, access
SNMP-TARGET	
SNMP-USER-BASED-SM	Users, access
	Users, access

MIB Name	Suggested Uses
SNMP-VIEW-BASED-ACM	
SNMPv2	SNMP counters (For information on exposing CPU and memory information via SNMP, see this <a href="#">knowledge base article</a> .)
TCP	TCP related information
UCD-SNMP	System memory, load, CPU, disk IO
UDP	UDP related information



Due to licensing restrictions, SNMP support within Quagga has been disabled and not included in Cumulus Linux.

However, Cumulus Linux does support the BGP4 MIB (RFC 4273), which includes `bgpPeerTable` and `bgp4PathAttrTable`. By default, the `pass persist` script `bgp4_pp.py` does not show the `bgp4PathAttrTable` since it can be very large and result in a periodic CPU spike.

To enable this table, [see above](#) (see page 644).



The ENTITY MIB does not currently show the chassis information in Cumulus Linux 3.1.

## Using Nutanix Prism as a Monitoring Tool

Nutanix Prism is a graphical user interface (GUI) for managing infrastructure and virtual environments. In order to use it, you need to take special steps within Cumulus Linux before you can configure Prism.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring Cumulus Linux (see page 647)
- Configuring Nutanix (see page 648)
- Switch Information Displayed on Nutanix Prism (see page 651)
- Troubleshooting a Nutanix Node (see page 652)
- Enabling LLDP/CDP on VMware ESXi (Hypervisor on Nutanix) (see page 652)
  - Enabling LLDP/CDP on Nutanix Acropolis (Hypervisor on Nutanix Acropolis) (see page 654)
- Troubleshooting Connections without LLDP or CDP (see page 654)

## Configuring Cumulus Linux

1. SSH to the Cumulus Linux switch that needs to be configured, replacing [switch] below as appropriate:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ssh cumulus@[switch]
```

2. Confirm the switch is running Cumulus Linux 2.5.5 or newer:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/lsb-release
DISTRIB_ID="Cumulus Linux"
DISTRIB_RELEASE=2.5.5
DISTRIB_DESCRIPTION=2.5.5-4cd66d9-201512071809-build
```

3. Open the /etc/snmp/snmpd.conf file in an editor.
4. Uncomment the following 3 lines in the /etc/snmp/snmpd.conf file, and save the file:

- bridge\_pp.py

```
pass_persist .1.3.6.1.2.1.17 /usr/share/snmp/bridge_pp.py
```

- Community

```
rocommunity public default -V systemonly
```

- Line directly below the Q-BRIDGE-MIB (.1.3.6.1.2.1.17)

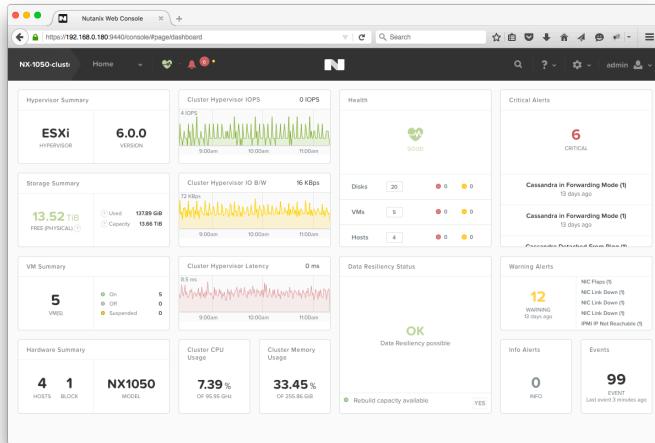
```
# BRIDGE-MIB and Q-BRIDGE-MIB tables
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.17
```

5. Restart snmpd:

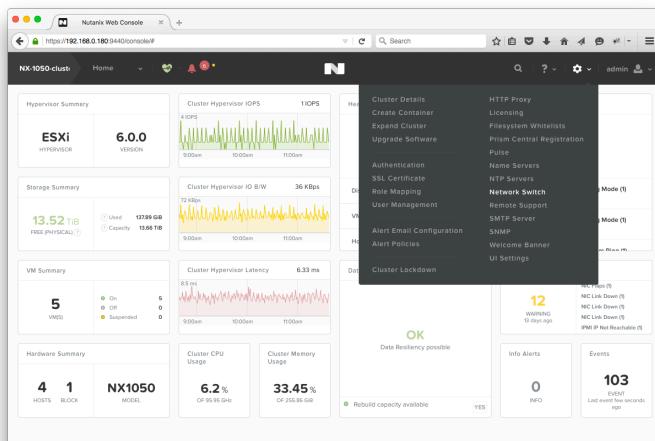
```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
Restarting network management services: snmpd.
```

## Configuring Nutanix

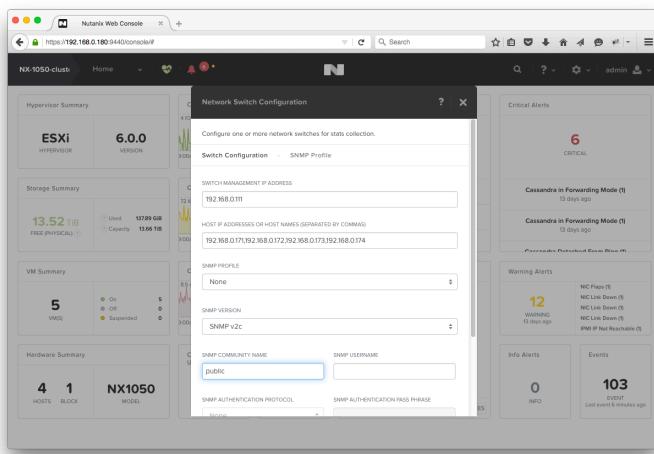
1. Log into the Nutanix Prism. Nutanix defaults to the Home menu, referred to as the Dashboard:



2. Click on the gear icon  in the top right corner of the dashboard, and select NetworkSwitch:



3. Click the **+Add Switch Configuration** button in the **Network Switch Configuration** pop up window.
4. Fill out the **Network Switch Configuration** for the Top of Rack (ToR) switch configured for snmpd in the previous section:



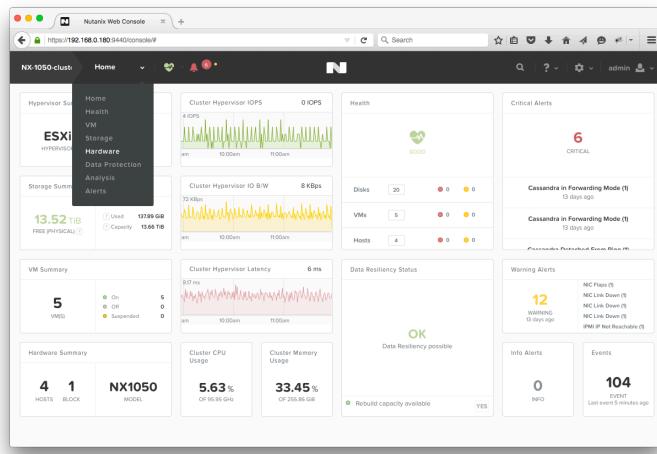
Configuration Parameter	Description	Value Used in Example
Switch Management IP Address	This can be any IP address on the box. In the screenshot above, the eth0 management IP is used.	192.168.0.111
Host IP Addresses or Host Names	IP addresses of Nutanix hosts connected to that particular ToR switch.	192.168.0.171, 192.168.0.172, 192.168.0.173, 192.168.0.174
SNMP Profile	Saved profiles, for easy configuration when hooking up to multiple switches.	None
SNMP Version	SNMP v2c or SNMP v3. Cumulus Linux has only been tested with SNMP v2c for Nutanix integration.	SNMP v2c
SNMP Community Name		public

Configuration Parameter	Description	Value Used in Example
	SNMP v2c uses communities to share MIBs. The default community for snmpd is 'public'.	



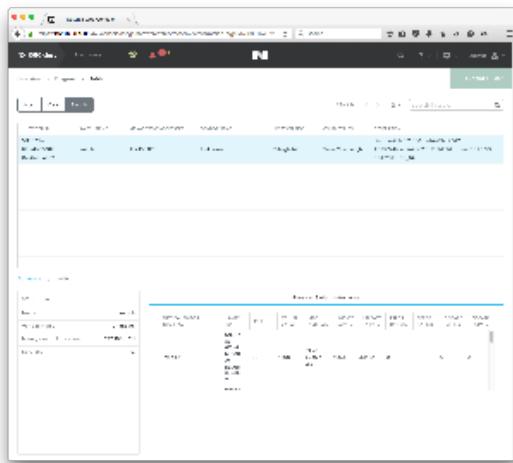
The rest of the values were not touched for this demonstration. They are usually used with SNMP v3.

- Save the configuration. The switch will now be present in the **Network Switch Configuration** menu now.
- Close the pop up window to return to the dashboard.
- Open the **Hardware** option from the **Home** dropdown menu:



- Click the **Table** button.

- Click the **Switch** button. Configured switches are shown in the table, as indicated in the screenshot below, and can be selected in order to view interface statistics:



The switch has been added correctly, when interfaces hooked up to the Nutanix hosts are visible.

## Switch Information Displayed on Nutanix Prism

- Physical Interface (e.g. swp1, swp2). This will only display swp interfaces connected to Nutanix hosts by default.
- Switch ID - Unique identifier that Nutanix keeps track of each port ID (see below)
- Index - interface index, in the above demonstration swp49 maps to Index 52 because there is a loopback and two ethernet interface before the swp starts.
- MTU of interface
- MAC Address of Interface
- Unicast RX Packets (Received)
- Unicast TX Packets (Transmitted)
- Error RX Packets (Received)
- Error TX Packets (Transmitted)
- Discard RX Packets (Received)
- Discard TX Packets (Transmitted)

The Nutanix appliance will use Switch IDs that can also be viewed on the Prism CLI (by SSHing to the box). To view information from the Nutanix CLI, login using the default username **nutanix**, and the password **nutanix/4u**.

```
nutanix@NTNX-14SM15270093-D-CVM:192.168.0.184:~$ ncli network list-switch
      Switch ID          : 00051a76-f711-89b6-0000-000000003bac:::
5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982
      Name          : switch
```

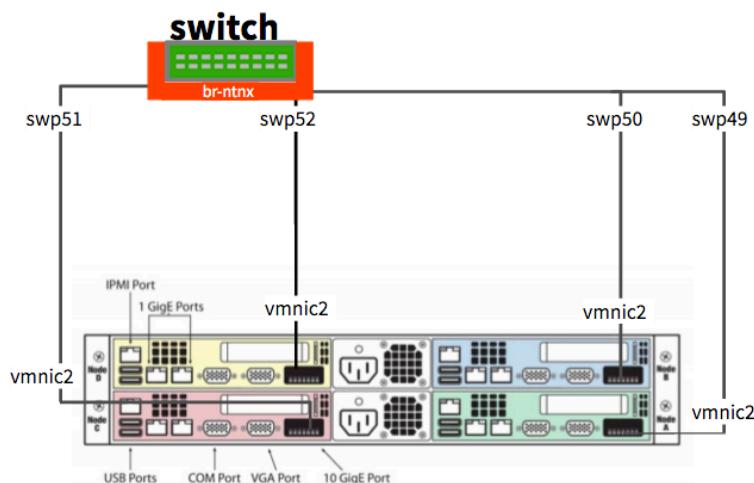
```

Switch Management Address : 192.168.0.111
Description : Linux switch 3.2.65-1+deb7u2+c12.5+2 #
3.2.65-1+deb7u2+c12.5+2 SMP Mon Jun 1 18:26:59 PDT 2015 x86_64
Object ID : enterprises.40310
Contact Information : Admin <admin@company.com>
Location Information : Raleigh, NC
Services : 72
Switch Vendor Name : Unknown
Port Ids : 00051a76-f711-89b6-0000-00000003bac:::
5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982:52, 00051a76-f711-89b6-0000-00000
003bac:::5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982:53, 00051a76-f711-89b6-0
000-000000003bac:::5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982:54, 00051a76-
f711-89b6-0000-00000003bac:::5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982:55

```

## Troubleshooting a Nutanix Node

To help visualize the following diagram is provided:



Nutanix Node	Physical Port	Cumulus Linux Port
Node A (Green)	vmnic2	swp49
Node B (Blue)	vmnic2	swp50
Node C (Red)	vmnic2	swp51
Node D (Yellow)	vmnic2	swp52

## Enabling LLDP/CDP on VMware ESXi (Hypervisor on Nutanix)

- Follow the directions on one of the following websites to enable CDP:
  - [kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?  
language=en\\_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1003885](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1003885)

- [wahnetwork.com/2012/07/17/utilizing-cdp-and-lldp-with-vsphere-networking/](http://wahnetwork.com/2012/07/17/utilizing-cdp-and-lldp-with-vsphere-networking/)

For example, switch CDP on:

```
root@NX-1050-A:~] esxcli network vswitch standard set -c
both -v vSwitch0
```

Then confirm it is running:

```
root@NX-1050-A:~] esxcli network vswitch standard list -v
vSwitch0
vSwitch0
  Name: vSwitch0
  Class: etherswitch
  Num Ports: 4082
  Used Ports: 12
  Configured Ports: 128
  MTU: 1500
  CDP Status: both
  Beacon Enabled: false
  Beacon Interval: 1
  Beacon Threshold: 3
  Beacon Required By:
  Uplinks: vmnic3, vmnic2, vmnic1, vmnic0
  Portgroups: VM Network, Management Network
```

The **both** means CDP is now running, and the lldp dameon on Cumulus Linux is capable of 'seeing' CDP devices.

2. After the next CDP interval, the Cumulus Linux box will pick up the interface via the lldp daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ lldpctl show neighbor swp49
-----
-----
LLDP neighbors:
-----
-----
Interface:      swp49, via: CDPv2, RID: 6, Time: 0 day, 00:34:58
  Chassis:
    ChassisID:      local NX-1050-A
    SysName:        NX-1050-A
    SysDescr:       Releasebuild-2494585 running on VMware ESX
    MgmtIP:         0.0.0.0
    Capability:    Bridge, on
  Port:
    PortID:        ifname vmnic2
    PortDescr:     vmnic2
-----
```

3. Use `netshow` to look at lldp information:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ netshow lldp
-----
-- To view the legend, rerun "netshow" cmd with the "--legend" option
-----
Local Port      Speed      Mode          Remote Port
Remote Host    Summary
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----
eth0           1G        Mgmt        ====
vsokt.local   IP: 192.168.0.111/24(DHCP)
               10G(SFP+)  Access/L2  ====
0-A            Untagged: br-ntnx
               10G(SFP+)  Access/L2  ====
0-B            Untagged: br-ntnx
               10G(SFP+)  Access/L2  ====
0-C            Untagged: br-ntnx
               10G(SFP+)  Access/L2  ====
0-D            Untagged: br-ntnx
               10G(SFP+)  Access/L2  ====
NX-105
NX-105
NX-105
NX-105
NX-105
NX-105
NX-105
```

## ***Enabling LLDP/CDP on Nutanix Acropolis (Hypervisor on Nutanix Acropolis)***

Nutanix Acropolis is an alternate hypervisor that Nutanix supports. Acropolis Hypervisor uses the yum packaging system and is capable of installing normal Linux lldp daemons to operating just like Cumulus Linux. LLDP should be enabled for each interface on the host. Refer to <https://community.mellanox.com/docs/DOC-1522> for setup instructions.

## ***Troubleshooting Connections without LLDP or CDP***

1. Find the MAC address information in the Prism GUI, located in: **Hardware > Table > Host > Host NICs**
2. Select a MAC address to troubleshoot (e.g. 0c:c4:7a:09:a2:43 represents vmnic0 which is tied to NX-1050-A).
3. List out all the MAC addresses associated to the bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl showmacs br-ntnx
port name mac addr      vlan  is local?  ageing timer
swp9   00:02:00:00:00:06  0     no       66.94
swp52  00:0c:29:3e:32:12  0     no       2.73
swp49  00:0c:29:5a:f4:7f  0     no       2.73
swp51  00:0c:29:6f:e1:e4  0     no       2.73
swp49  00:0c:29:74:0c:ee  0     no       2.73
swp50  00:0c:29:a9:36:91  0     no       2.73
```

swp9	08:9e:01:f8:8f:0c	0	no	13.56
swp9	08:9e:01:f8:8f:35	0	no	2.73
swp4	0c:c4:7a:09:9e:d4	0	no	24.05
swp1	0c:c4:7a:09:9f:8e	0	no	13.56
swp3	0c:c4:7a:09:9f:93	0	no	13.56
swp2	0c:c4:7a:09:9f:95	0	no	24.05
swp52	0c:c4:7a:09:a0:c1	0	no	2.73
swp51	0c:c4:7a:09:a2:35	0	no	2.73
swp49	0c:c4:7a:09:a2:43	0	no	2.73
swp9	44:38:39:00:82:04	0	no	2.73
swp9	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:80	0	no	2.73
swp1	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:81	0	yes	0.00
swp2	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:82	0	yes	0.00
swp3	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:83	0	yes	0.00
swp4	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:84	0	yes	0.00
swp5	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:85	0	yes	0.00
swp6	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:86	0	yes	0.00
swp7	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:87	0	yes	0.00
swp8	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:88	0	yes	0.00
swp9	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:89	0	yes	0.00
swp10	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8a	0	yes	0.00
swp49	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:b1	0	yes	0.00
swp50	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:b2	0	yes	0.00
swp51	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:b3	0	yes	0.00
swp52	74:e6:e2:f5:a2:b4	0	yes	0.00
swp9	8e:0f:73:1b:f8:24	0	no	2.73
swp9	c8:1f:66:ba:60:cf	0	no	66.94

Alternatively, you can use grep:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl showmacs br-ntnx | grep 0c:c4:7a:09:a2:43
swp49      0c:c4:7a:09:a2:43      0      no          4.58
```

vmnic1 is now hooked up to swp49. This matches what is seen in lldp:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ lldpctl show neighbor swp49
-----
-----
LLDP neighbors:
-----
Interface:      swp49, via: CDPv2, RID: 6, Time: 0 day, 01:11:12
  Chassis:
    ChassisID:      local NX-1050-A
    SysName:        NX-1050-A
    SysDescr:       Releasebuild-2494585 running on VMware ESX
    MgmtIP:         0.0.0.0
    Capability:    Bridge, on
  Port:
```

```
PortID:      ifname vmnic2
PortDescr:   vmnic2
```

---

---

## Monitoring Best Practices

The following monitoring processes are considered best practices for reviewing and troubleshooting potential issues with Cumulus Linux environments. In addition, several of the more common issues have been listed, with potential solutions included.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Overview (see page 656)
  - Trend Analysis via Metrics (see page 657)
  - Alerting via Triggered Logging (see page 657)
- Hardware (see page 657)
- System Data (see page 659)
  - CPU Idle Time (see page 659)
  - Memory Usage (see page 661)
  - Disk Usage (see page 661)
- Process Restart (see page 661)
- Layer 1 Protocols and Interfaces (see page 662)
- Layer 2 Protocols (see page 670)
- Layer 3 Protocols (see page 672)
  - BGP (see page 672)
  - OSPF (see page 673)
  - Route and Host Entries (see page 673)
  - Routing Logs (see page 674)
- Logging (see page 674)
- Protocols and Services (see page 676)
  - NTP (see page 676)
- Device Management (see page 676)
  - Device Access Logs (see page 676)
  - Device Super User Command Logs (see page 676)

### Overview

This document aims to provide two sets of outputs:

1. Metrics that can be polled from Cumulus Linux and used in trend analysis

2. Critical log messages that can be monitored for triggered alerts

## Trend Analysis via Metrics

A metric is a quantifiable measure that is used to track and assess the status of a specific infrastructure component. It is a check collected over time. Examples of metrics include bytes on an interface, CPU utilization and total number of routes.

Metrics are more valuable when used for trend analysis.

## Alerting via Triggered Logging

Triggered issues are normally sent to syslog, but could go to another log file depending on the feature. On Cumulus Linux rsyslog handles all logging including local and remote logging. Logs are the best method to use for generating alerts when the system transitions from a stable steady state.

Sending logs to a centralized collector, then creating an alerts based on critical logs is optimal solution for alerting.

## Hardware

The smond process provides monitoring functionality for various switch hardware elements. Minimum /maximum values are output, depending on the flags applied to the basic command. The hardware elements and applicable commands/flags are listed in the table below:

Hardware Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Temperature	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s TEMP[X]</pre>	600 seconds
Fan	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s FAN[X]</pre>	600 seconds
PSU	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s PSU[X]</pre>	600 seconds
PSU Fan	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s PSU[X]Fan[X]</pre>	600 seconds

Hardware Element	Monitoring Commands	Interval Poll
PSU Temperature	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s PSU[X]Temp [X]</pre>	600 seconds
Voltage	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s Volt[X]</pre>	600 seconds
Front Panel LED	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ ledmgrd -d cumulus@switch:~\$ ledmgrd -j</pre>	600 seconds

Hardware Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
High temperature	<pre>/var   r   /log     /sys       log         g</pre>	<pre>/usr/sbin/smond : : Temp2(Near the CPU (Right)) : Temperature(51 C) is HIGH for last 71240 secs /usr/sbin/smond : : Temp3(Top right corner): Temperature(43 C) is HIGH for last 71240 secs /usr/sbin/smond : : Temp4: Avg state is CRITICAL for last 60 secs. Last 10 values: [85.0, 85.5, 86.125, 86.625, 87.0, 87.625, 88.0, 88.625, 88.875, 89.25]. Generating cl-support and shutting down system...</pre>
Fan speed issues	<pre>/var   r   /log     /sys       log         g</pre>	<pre>/usr/sbin/smond : : Fan5(Fan Tray 3): state changed from OK to HIGH /usr/sbin/smond : : Fan5(Fan Tray 3): Fan speed 28912 RPM greater than 19000 RPM /usr/sbin/smond : : Fan5(Fan Tray 3): state changed</pre>

Hardware Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
	slo g	from HIGH to OK ... /usr/sbin/smond : : Fan1: state changed from OK to ABSENT /usr/sbin/smond : : Fan1: Fan speed is at 0 RPM (not working or absent)
PSU failure	/var/lo/g/syslog	/usr/sbin/smond : : PSU1: state changed from UNKNOWN to BAD

## System Data

Cumulus Linux includes a number of ways to monitor various aspects of system data. In addition, alerts are issued in high risk situations.

### CPU Idle Time

When a CPU reports five high CPU alerts within a span of 5 minutes, an alert is logged.

#### ⚠ Short High CPU Bursts

Short bursts of high CPU can occur during switchd churn or routing protocol startup. Do not set alerts for these short bursts.

System Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
CPU utilization	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /proc/stat cumulus@switch:~\$ top -b -n 1</pre>	30 seconds

CPU Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
High CPU	/var/log /syslog	<pre>sysmonitor: High CPU use: 91% sysmonitor: CPU use no longer high: 58%</pre> <pre>sysmonitor: Critically high load average: 1.31 (1.31) sysmonitor: High load average: 1.24 (1.24) sysmonitor: Load Average no longer high: 0.88 (0.88)</pre>

Cumulus Linux 3.0 and later monitors CPU, memory and disk space via sysmonitor. The configurations for the thresholds are stored in **/etc/cumulus/sysmonitor.conf**. More information is available via **man sysmonitor**.

CPU measure	Thresholds
Use	Alert: 90% Crit: 95%
Process Load	Alarm: 95% Crit: 125%

[Click here to see differences between Cumulus Linux 2.5 ESR and 3.0 and later...](#)

CPU Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
High CPU	/var /log /syslog	<pre>jdoo[2803]: 'localhost' cpu system usage of 41.1% matches resource limit [cpu system usage&gt;30.0%]</pre> <pre>jdoo[4727]: 'localhost' sysloadavg(15min) of 111.0 matches resource limit [sysloadavg(15min)&gt;110.0]</pre>

In Cumulus Linux 2.5, CPU logs are created with each unique threshold:

CPU measure	< 2.5 Threshold
User	70%
System	30%
Wait	20%

Cumulus Linux 2.5, CPU and Memory warnings are generated via jdo. The configuration for the thresholds are stored in **/etc/jdo/jdoorc.d/cl-utilities.rc**.

## Memory Usage

When the memory utilization exceeds 90% a warning is logged and a cl-support is generated.

System Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Memory utilization	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /proc/meminfo cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /usr/bin/free</pre>	30 seconds

## Disk Usage

When monitoring disk utilization **tmpfs** can be excluded from monitoring.

System Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Disk utilization	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ /bin/df -x tmpfs</pre>	300 seconds

## Process Restart

In Cumulus Linux 3.0 and later, systemd is responsible for monitoring and restarting processes.

Process Element	Monitoring Command/s
View processes monitored by systemd	

Process Element	Monitoring Command/s
	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ systemctl status</pre>

Click here to changes from Cumulus Linux 2.5 ESR to 3.0 and later...

Cumulus Linux 2.5.2 through 2.5 ESR uses a forked version of monit called jdoo to monitor processes. If the process ever fails, jdoo then invokes init.d to restart the process.

Process Element	Monitoring Command/s
View processes monitored by jdoo	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ jdoo summary</pre>
View process restarts	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo cat /var/log/ /syslog</pre>
View current process state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ ps -aux</pre>

## Layer 1 Protocols and Interfaces

Link and port state interface transitions are logged to **/var/log/syslog** and **/var/log/switchd.log**.

Interface Element	Monitoring Command/s
Link state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /sys/class/net/[iface] /operstate</pre> <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ netshow interfaces all -j</pre>
Link speed	

Interface Element	Monitoring Command/s
	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /sys/class/net/[iface]/speed cumulus@switch:~\$ netshow interfaces all -j</pre>
Port state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ ip link show  cumulus@switch:~\$ netshow interfaces all -j</pre>
Bond state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /proc/net/bonding/[bond]  cumulus@switch:~\$ netshow interfaces all -j</pre>

Interface counters are obtained from either querying the hardware or the Linux kernel. The two outputs should align, but the Linux kernel aggregates the output from the hardware.

Interface Counter Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Interface counters	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /sys/class/net/[iface] /statistics/[stat_name]  cumulus@switch:~\$ netshow counters -j cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-netstat -j cumulus@switch:~\$ ethtool -S [iface]</pre>	10 seconds

Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
Link failure/Link flap	<pre>/var /log /swi tchd .log</pre>	<pre>switchd[5692]: nic.c:213 nic_set_carrier: swp17: setting kernel carrier: down switchd[5692]: netlink.c:291 libnl: swp1, family 0, ifi 20, oper down ... switchd[5692]: nic.c:213 nic_set_carrier: swp1: setting kernel carrier: up switchd[5692]: netlink.c:291 libnl: swp17, family 0, ifi 20, oper up</pre>
Unidirectional link	<pre>/var /log /swi tchd .log /var /log /ptm .log</pre>	<pre>ptmd[7146]: ptm_bfd.c:2471 Created new session 0x1 with peer 10.255.255.11 port swp1 ptmd[7146]: ptm_bfd.c:2471 Created new session 0x2 with peer fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b port swp1 ... ptmd[7146]: ptm_bfd.c:2471 Session 0x1 down to peer 10.255.255.11, Reason 8 ptmd[7146]: ptm_bfd.c:2471 Detect timeout on session 0x1 with peer 10.255.255.11, in state 1</pre>
Bond Negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Working</li> </ul>	<pre>/var /log /sys log</pre>	<pre>kernel: [73946.052292] bonding: Bond1 is being created... kernel: [73946.062957] Bond1: Enslaving swp49 as a backup interface with an up link kernel: [73946.081609] Bond1: Enslaving swp50 as a backup interface with an up link kernel: [73946.090636] IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_UP): Bond1: link is not ready kernel: [74590.925353] IPv6: ADDRCONF (NETDEV_CHANGE): Bond1: link becomes ready</pre>

Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
Bond Negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Failing</li></ul>	/var /log /sys log	<pre>kernel: [73946.052292] bonding: Bond1 is being created... kernel: [73946.062957] Bond1: Enslaving swp49 as a backup interface with an up link kernel: [73946.081609] Bond1: Enslaving swp50 as a backup interface with an up link kernel: [73946.090636] IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_UP): Bond1: link is not ready</pre>
MLAG peerlink negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Working</li></ul>	/var /log /sys log	<pre>lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp50: Network is down lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp49: Network is down kernel: [76174.262893] peerlink: Setting ad_actor_system to 44:38:39:00:00:11 kernel: [76174.264205] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device peerlink mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) peer link: peerlink mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) clag state: up mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting system-mac 44:39:39:ff:40:94 mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting clag-role secondary</pre>
	/var /log /clagd. log	<pre>clagd[14003]: Cleanup is executing. clagd[14003]: Cannot open file "/tmp/pre-clagd. q7Xio clagd[14003]: Cleanup is finished clagd[14003]: Beginning execution of clagd version 1 clagd[14003]: Invoked with: /usr/sbin/clagd --daemon clagd[14003]: Role is now secondary</pre>

Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
		<pre> clagd[14003]: HealthCheck: role via backup is second clagd[14003]: HealthCheck: backup active clagd[14003]: Initial config loaded clagd[14003]: The peer switch is active. clagd[14003]: Initial data sync from peer done. clagd[14003]: Initial handshake done. clagd[14003]: Initial data sync to peer done. </pre>
MLAG peerlink negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Failing</li> </ul>	<pre>/var /log /sys log</pre>	<pre> lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp50: Network is down lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp49: Network is down kernel: [76174.262893] peerlink: Setting ad_actor_system to 44:38:39:00:00:11 kernel: [76174.264205] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device peerlink mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) peer link: peerlink mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) clag state: down mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting system-mac 44:39:39: ff:40:94 mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting clag-role secondary </pre>
	<pre>/var /log /cla gd. log</pre>	<pre> clagd[14291]: Cleanup is executing. clagd[14291]: Cannot open file "/tmp/pre-clagd. vXpX0cM8h9/brbatch" for reading: No such file or directory clagd[14291]: Cleanup is finished clagd[14291]: Beginning execution of clagd version 1.3.0 clagd[14291]: Invoked with: /usr/sbin/clagd -- daemon 169.254.255.2 peerlink.4094 44:39:39:FF:40: </pre>

Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
		<pre>94 --priority 32768 --backupIp 192.168.0.1 clagd[14291]: Role is now secondary clagd[14291]: Initial config loaded</pre>
MLAG port negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Working</li> </ul>	/var /log /sys log	<pre>kernel: [77419.112195] bonding: server01 is being created... lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp1: Network is down kernel: [77419.122707] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device swp1 kernel: [77419.126408] server01: Enslaving swp1 as a backup interface with a down link kernel: [77419.177175] server01: Setting ad_actor_system to 44:39:39:ff:40:94 kernel: [77419.190874] server01: Warning: No 802.3 ad response from the link partner for any adapters in the bond kernel: [77419.191448] IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_UP): server01: link is not ready kernel: [77419.191452] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device server01 kernel: [77419.192060] server01: link status definitely up for interface swp1, 1000 Mbps full duplex kernel: [77419.192065] server01: now running without any active interface! kernel: [77421.491811] IPv6: ADDRCONF (NETDEV_CHANGE): server01: link becomes ready mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) mac 44:38:39:00: 00:17 &lt;server01, None&gt;</pre>
	/var /log	<pre>clagd[14003]: server01 is now dual connected.</pre>

Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
	/cla gd. log	
MLAG port negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Failing</li> </ul>	/var /log /sys log	<pre> kernel: [79290.290999] bonding: server01 is being created... kernel: [79290.299645] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device swp1 kernel: [79290.301790] server01: Enslaving swp1 as a backup interface with a down link kernel: [79290.358294] server01: Setting ad_actor_system to 44:39:39:ff:40:94 kernel: [79290.373590] server01: Warning: No 802.3 ad response from the link partner for any adapters in the bond kernel: [79290.374024] IPv6: ADDRCONF(NETDEV_UP): server01: link is not ready kernel: [79290.374028] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device server01 kernel: [79290.375033] server01: link status definitely up for interface swp1, 1000 Mbps full duplex kernel: [79290.375037] server01: now running without any active interface! </pre>
	/var /log /cla gd. log	<pre> clagd[14291]: Conflict (server01): matching clag- id (1) not configured on peer ... clagd[14291]: Conflict cleared (server01): matching clag-id (1) detected on peer </pre>
MLAG port negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Flapping</li> </ul>		

Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
	/var /log /sys log	<pre>mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (0) mac 00:00:00:00: 00:00 &lt;server01, None&gt; mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) mac 44:38:39:00: 00:03 &lt;server01, None&gt;</pre>
	/var /log /cla gd. log	<pre>clagd[14291]: server01 is no longer dual connected clagd[14291]: server01 is now dual connected.</pre>

Prescriptive Topology Manager (PTM) uses LLDP information to compare against a topology.dot file that describes the network. It has built in alerting capabilities, so it is preferable to use PTM on box rather than polling LLDP information regularly. The PTM code is available on the Cumulus Networks [github repository](#). Additional PTM, BFD and associated logs are documented in the code.



Peering information should be tracked through PTM. For more information, refer to the [Prescriptive Topology Manager documentation](#) (see page 229).

Neighbor Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
LLDP Neighbor	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ lldpctl -f json</pre>	300 seconds
Prescriptive Topology Manager	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ ptmctl -j [-d]</pre>	Triggered

## Layer 2 Protocols

Spanning tree is a protocol that prevents loops in a layer 2 infrastructure. In a stable state, the spanning tree protocol should stably converge. Monitoring the Topology Change Notifications (TCN) in STP helps identify when new BPDUs were received.

Interface Counter Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
STP TCN Transitions	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ mstpcctl showbridge json cumulus@switch:~\$ mstpcctl showport json</pre>	60 seconds
MLAG/CLAG peer state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ clagctl status cumulus@switch:~\$ clagd -j cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /var/log/clagd.log</pre>	60 seconds
MLAG/CLAG peer MACs	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ clagctl dumppeermacs cumulus@switch:~\$ clagctl dumpourmacs</pre>	300 seconds

Layer 2 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
Spanning Tree Working	<pre>/var /log /syslog</pre>	<pre>kernel: [1653877.190724] device swp1 entered promiscuous mode kernel: [1653877.190796] device swp2 entered promiscuous mode mstpd: create_br: Add bridge bridge mstpd: clag_set_sys_mac_br: set bridge mac 00: 00:00:00:00:00 mstpd: create_if: Add iface swp1 as port#2 to bridge bridge mstpd: set_if_up: Port swp1 : up</pre>

Layer 2 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
		<pre>mstpd: create_if: Add iface swp2 as port#1 to bridge bridge mstpd: set_if_up: Port swp2 : up mstpd: set_br_up: Set bridge bridge up mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp1:0 entering blocking state(Disabled) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering blocking state(Disabled) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp1:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp1:0 entering learning state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering learning state(Designated) sudo: pam_unix(sudo:session): session closed for user root mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp1:0 entering forwarding state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering forwarding state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp1:0 Flushing forwarding database</pre>
Spanning Tree Blocking	<pre>/var /log /syslog</pre>	<pre>mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering blocking state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering learning state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering forwarding state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering blocking state(Alternate)</pre>

Layer 2 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
		<pre>mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0       Flushing forwarding database</pre>

## Layer 3 Protocols

When Quagga boots up for the first time, there will be a different log file for each daemon that has been activated. If the log file is ever edited (ie. through vtysh or Quagga.conf), the integrated configuration sends all logs to the same file.

In order to send Quagga logs to syslog, apply the configuration **log syslog** in **vtysh**.

## BGP

When monitoring BGP, check if BGP peers are operational. There is not much value in alerting on the current operational state of the peer as monitoring the transition is more valuable, and this is done by monitoring syslog.

Monitoring the routing table provides trending on the size of the infrastructure. This is especially useful when integrated with host based solutions (ie. RoH) when the routes track with the number of applications available.

BGP Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
BGP peer failure	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ vtysh -c "show ip bgp summary json" cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-bgp summary show json</pre>	60 seconds
BGP route table	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ vtysh -c "show ip bgp json" cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-bgp route show</pre>	600 seconds

BGP Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
BGP peer down	/var/log /syslog	<pre>bgp[3000]: %NOTIFICATION: sent to neighbor swp1 4/0 (Hold Timer Expired) 0 bytes</pre>

BGP Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
	/var/log /quagga/*. log	bgpd[3000]: %ADJCHANGE: neighbor swp1 Down BGP Notification send

## OSPF

When monitoring OSPF, check if OSPF peers are operational. There is not much value in alerting on the current operational state of the peer as monitoring the transition is more valuable, and this is done by monitoring syslog.

Monitoring the routing table provides trending on the size of the infrastructure. This is especially useful when integrated with host based solutions (ie. RoH) when the routes track with the number of applications available.

OSPF Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
OSPF protocol peer failure	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ vtysh -c "show ip ospf neighbor all json" cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-ospf summary show json</pre>	60 seconds
OSPF link state database	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ vtysh - c "show ip ospf database"</pre>	600 seconds

## Route and Host Entries

OSPF Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Host Entries	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-resource-query cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-resource-query - k</pre>	600 seconds

OSPF Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Route Entries	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-resource-query cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-resource-query -k</pre>	600 seconds

## Routing Logs

Layer 3 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
Routing protocol process crash	/var /log /sys log	<pre>watchquagga[3044]: bgpd state -&gt; down : read returned EOF cumulus-core: Running cl-support for core files bgpd.3030.1470341944.core.core_helper core_check.sh[4992]: Please send /var/support /cl_support_spine01_20160804_201905.tar.xz to Cumulus support. watchquagga[5241]: Forked background command [pid 6665]: /usr/sbin/service quagga restart bgpd watchquagga[7719]: watchquagga 0.99.24+c13u2 watching [zebra bgpd ospfd], mode [phased zebra restart] watchquagga[7719]: zebra state -&gt; up : connect succeeded watchquagga[7719]: bgpd state -&gt; up : connect succeeded watchquagga[7719]: ospfd state -&gt; up : connect succeeded</pre>

## Logging

The table below covers the various log files, and what they should be used for:

OSPF Element	Monitoring Command/s	Log Location
Syslog	Catch all log file. Identifies memory leaks and CPU spikes.	

OSPF Element	Monitoring Command/s	Log Location
		<pre>/var /log /syslog</pre>
Switchd functionality	Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL).	<pre>/var /log /swit chd. log</pre>
Routing daemons	Quagga zebra daemon details	<pre>/var /log /daem on. log</pre>
Routing protocol	<p>The log file is configurable in Quagga. When quagga first boots, it boots using the non-integrated config so each routing protocol has its own log file. After booting up, quagga switches over to using the integrated configuration which means that all logs go to a single place.</p> <p>To edit where log files go use the command <b>log file &lt;location&gt;</b>. By default, Quagga logs are not sent to syslog. This can be enabled using the command <b>log syslog &lt;level&gt;</b>. After this, logs go through rsyslog and into <b>/var/log/syslog</b>.</p>	<pre>/var /log /quag ga /zebr a.log /var /log /quag ga/ {prot ocol} .log /var /log</pre>

OSPF Element	Monitoring Command/s	Log Location
		<pre>/quag ga /Quag ga. log</pre>

## Protocols and Services

### NTP

Run the following command to confirm the NTP process is working correctly, and that the switch clock is synced with NTP:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ /usr/bin/ntpq -p
```

## Device Management

### Device Access Logs

Access Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
User Authentication and Remote Login	<pre>/va r /lo g /sy slo g</pre>	<pre>sshd[31830]: Accepted publickey for cumulus from 192.168.0.254 port 45582 ssh2: RSA 38:e6:3b:cc:04: ac:41:5e:c9:e3:93:9d:cc:9e:48:25 sshd[31830]: pam_unix(sshd:session): session opened for user cumulus by (uid=0)</pre>

### Device Super User Command Logs

Super User Command Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
Executing commands using sudo	<pre>/var /log /syslog</pre>	<pre>sudo:  cumulus : TTY=pts/2 ; PWD=/home /cumulus ; USER=root ; COMMAND=/bin/uname -a sudo: pam_unix(sudo:session): session opened for user root by cumulus(uid=0) sudo: pam_unix(sudo:session): session closed for user root</pre>

# Network Solutions

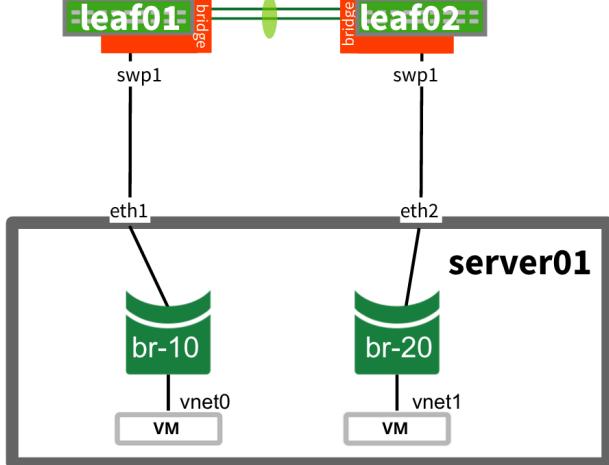
## Data Center Host to ToR Architecture

This chapter discusses the various architectures and strategies available from the top of rack (ToR) switches all the way down to the server hosts.

### Contents

- Contents (see page 678)
- Layer 2 - Architecture (see page 678)
- Layer 3 Architecture (see page 683)
- Network Virtualization (see page 692)

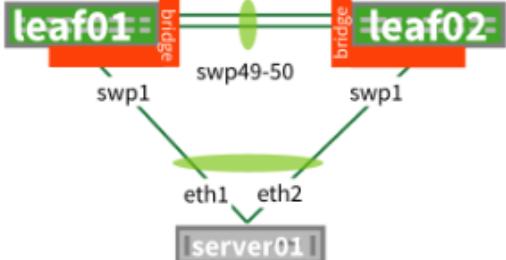
### Layer 2 - Architecture

Traditional Spanning Tree - Single Attached	Summary	More Information
	<p><b>Summary</b></p> <p>Bond (see page 241)  /Etherchannel is not configured on host to multiple switches (bonds can still occur but only to one switch at a time), so leaf01 and leaf02 see two different MAC addresses.</p> <p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p> <pre> auto bridge iface bridge  bridge- vlan- aware yes </pre>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Established technology</li> <li>• Interoperability with other vendors</li> <li>• Easy configuration for customer</li> <li>• Immense documentation from multiple vendors and industry</li> </ul> <p>• Ability to use spanning tree (see page 203) commands</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• mstptcld</li> <li>• portadmindg</li> <li>• BPDU guard (see page 208)</li> </ul> <p>• Layer 2 reachability to all VMs</p> <p><b>Caveats</b></p>

Traditional Spanning Tree - Single Attached	Summary	More Information
	<pre> bridge- ports swp1 peerlin k  bridge- vids 1- 2000</pre> <pre> bridge- stp on auto bridge. 10 iface bridge. 10</pre> <pre> address 10.1.10 .2/24</pre> <pre> auto peerlin k iface peerlin k</pre> <pre> bond- slaves glob swp49-5 0</pre> <pre> auto swp1 iface swp1</pre> <pre> mstptctl - portadm inedge yes</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The load balancing mechanism on the host can cause problems. If there is only host pinning to each NIC, there are no problems, but if you are doing a bond, you need to look at an MLAG solution.</li> <li>No active-active host links. Some operating systems allow HA (NIC failover), but this still does not utilize all the bandwidth. VMs are using one NIC, not two.</li> </ul>

Traditional Spanning Tree - Single Attached	Summary	More Information
	<pre>mstpctl - bpduua rd yes</pre> <p><b>Example Host Config (Ubuntu)</b></p> <pre>auto eth1 iface eth1 inet manual  auto eth1.10 iface eth1.10 inet manual  auto eth2 iface eth1 inet manual  auto eth2.20 iface eth2.20 inet manual  auto br-10 iface br-10 inet manual  bridge- ports</pre>	

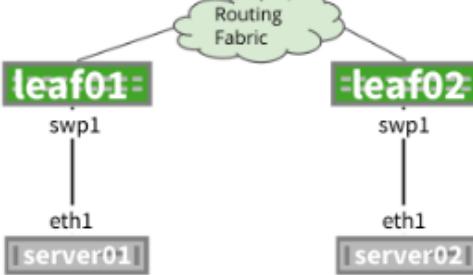
Traditional Spanning Tree - Single Attached	Summary	More Information
	<pre> eth1.10 vnet0  auto br-20 iface br-20 inet manual  bridge- ports eth2.20 vnet1 </pre>	
Active/Active	Active/Passive	L2 to L3 Demarcation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None (not possible with traditional spanning tree)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VRR (see page 295)</li> <li>vrrpd</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ToR layer (recommended)</li> <li>Spine layer</li> <li>Core/edge/exit</li> </ul> <p>More Info...</p> <p>VRR or vrrpd can be configured on a pair of switches at any level in the network. However, the higher up the network you configure it, the larger the L2 domain becomes. The benefit here is L2 reachability. The drawback is the L2 domain is more difficult to troubleshoot, does not scale as well, and the pair of switches running VRR/vrrp needs to carry the entire MAC address table of everything below it in the network. Minimizing the L2 domain as much as possible is recommended by Cumulus Professional Services. <a href="#">Please see this presentation for more information.</a></p>

MLAG	Summary	More Information
 <p>The diagram illustrates a MLAG setup. Two leaf switches, leaf01 and leaf02, are connected via a bridge port (swp49-50). Each leaf switch has a swp1 port connected to a server (server01) and an eth1/eth2 port connected to another interface.</p>	<p>MLAG (see page 273) (multi-chassis link aggregation) is when both uplinks are utilized at the same time. VRR gives the ability for both spines to act as gateways simultaneously for HA (high availability) and <b>active-active mode</b> (see page 358) (both are being used at the same time).</p> <p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p> <pre> auto bridge iface bridge   bridge-vlan-   aware yes   bridge-ports   host-01 peerlink   bridge-vids 1-200   0   bridge-stp on  auto bridge.10 iface bridge.10   address 172.16.1.   2/24   address-virtual 4   4:38:39:00:00:10 17   2.16.1.1/24  auto peerlink iface peerlink   bond-slaves   glob swp49-50  auto peerlink.4094 iface peerlink.4094   address 169.254   .1.2   clagd-enable   yes   clagd-peer-ip 1   69.254.1.2   clagd-system-   mac 44:38:39:FF:40:   94 </pre>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 100% of links utilized</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More complicated (more moving parts)</li> <li>• More configuration</li> <li>• No interoperability between vendors</li> <li>• ISL (inter-switch link) required</li> </ul> <p><b>Additional Comments</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Can be done with either the traditional (see page 244) or VLAN-aware (see page 264) bridge driver depending on overall STP needs</li> <li>• There are a few different solutions including Cisco VPC and Arista MLAG, but none of them interoperate and are very vendor specific</li> <li>• Cumulus Networks Layer 2 HA validated design guide</li> </ul>

MLAG	Summary	More Information
	<pre> auto host-01 iface host-01     bond-slaves swp1     clag-id 1     {bond-defaults removed <b>for</b> brevity} </pre> <p><b>Example Host Config (Ubuntu)</b></p> <pre> auto bond0 iface bond0 inet manual     bond-slaves eth0 eth1     {bond-defaults removed <b>for</b> brevity}  auto bond0.10 iface bond0.10 inet manual  auto vm-br10 iface vm-br10 inet manual     bridge-ports bond0.10 vnet0 </pre>	
Active-Active Mode	Active-Passive	L2->L3 Demarcation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VRR (see page 295)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• vrrpd</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ToR layer (recommended)</li> <li>• Spine layer</li> <li>• Core/edge/exit</li> </ul>

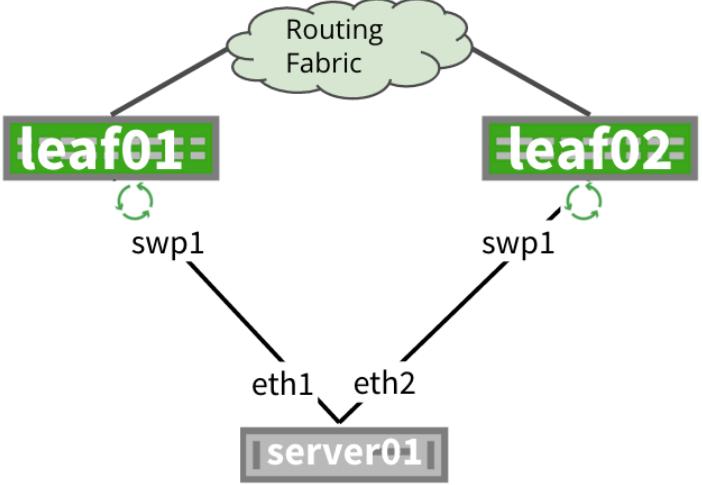
## Layer 3 Architecture

Single Attached Hosts	Summary	More Information
		Benefits

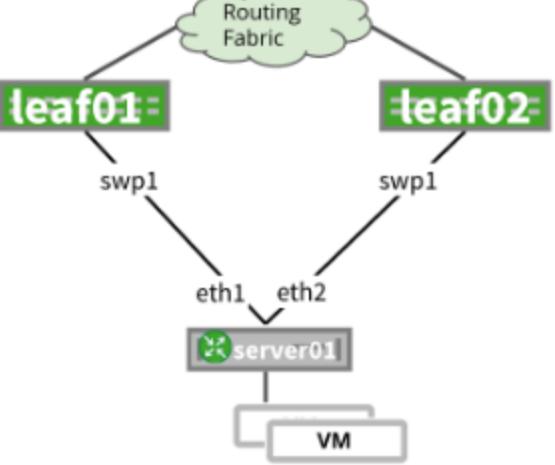
Single Attached Hosts	Summary	More Information
 <p>The server (physical host) has only has one link to one ToR switch.</p> <p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network /interfaces</pre> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     address 172     .16.1.1/30</pre> <p>/etc/quagga /Quagga.conf</p> <pre>router ospf     router-id 1     0.0.0.11     interface     swp1         ip ospf         area 0</pre> <p><b>leaf02 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network /interfaces</pre> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     address 172     .16.2.1/30</pre> <p>/etc/quagga /Quagga.conf</p> <pre>router ospf     router-id 1     0.0.0.12     interface     swp1</pre>	<p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network /interfaces</pre> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     address 172     .16.1.1/30</pre> <p>/etc/quagga /Quagga.conf</p> <pre>router ospf     router-id 1     0.0.0.11     interface     swp1         ip ospf         area 0</pre> <p><b>leaf02 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network /interfaces</pre> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     address 172     .16.2.1/30</pre> <p>/etc/quagga /Quagga.conf</p> <pre>router ospf     router-id 1     0.0.0.12     interface     swp1</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Relatively simple network configuration</li> <li>No STP</li> <li>No MLAG</li> <li>No L2 loops</li> <li>No crosslink between leafs</li> <li>Greater route scaling and flexibility</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No redundancy for ToR, upgrades would cause downtime</li> <li>Many customers do not have software to support application layer redundancy</li> </ul> <p><b>Additional Comments</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For additional bandwidth links between host and leaf may be bonded</li> </ul>

Single Attached Hosts	Summary	More Information
	<pre>ip ospf area 0</pre> <p><b>host1 Example Config (Ubuntu)</b></p> <pre>auto eth1 iface eth1 inet static     address 172     .16.1.2/30         up ip     route add 0.0     .0.0/0     nexthop via 1     72.16.1.1</pre> <p><b>host2 Example Config (Ubuntu)</b></p> <pre>auto eth1 iface eth1 inet static     address 172     .16.2.2/30         up ip     route add 0.0     .0.0/0     nexthop via 1     72.16.2.1</pre>	
<b>FHR (First Hop Redundancy)</b>		<b>Additional Information</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No redundancy, uses single ToR as gateway.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Big Data validated design guide uses single attached ToR</li> </ul>

Redistribute Neighbor	Summary	More Information
	Redistribute neighbor daemon grabs ARP entries	<b>Benefits</b>

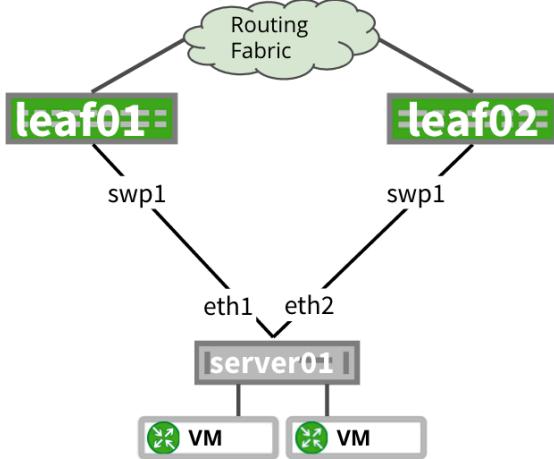
Redistribute Neighbor	Summary	More Information
 <pre> graph TD     RF((Routing Fabric)) --- leaf01[leaf01]     RF --- leaf02[leaf02]     leaf01 --- swp1_1[swp1]     leaf01 --- eth1[eth1]     leaf01 --- eth2[eth2]     leaf01 --- server01[server01]     leaf02 --- swp1_2[swp1]     leaf02 --- server01     style swp1_1 fill:#008000,color:#fff     style swp1_2 fill:#008000,color:#fff     style eth1 fill:#008000,color:#fff     style eth2 fill:#008000,color:#fff     style server01 fill:#008000,color:#fff   </pre>	<p>dynamically, utilizes redistribute table for Quagga to grab these dynamic entries and redistribute them into the fabric.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configuration in Quagga is simple (route-map + redist table)</li> <li>Supported by Cumulus Networks</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Silent hosts don't receive traffic (depending on ARP).</li> <li>IPv4 only.</li> <li>If two VMs are on same L2 domain, they could learn about each other directly rather than utilizing gateway, which causes problems (VM migration for example, or getting their network routed). Put hosts on /32 (no other L2 adjacency).</li> <li>VM move does not trigger route withdrawal from original leaf (4 hour timeout).</li> <li>Clearing ARP impacts routing. May not be obvious.</li> </ul>

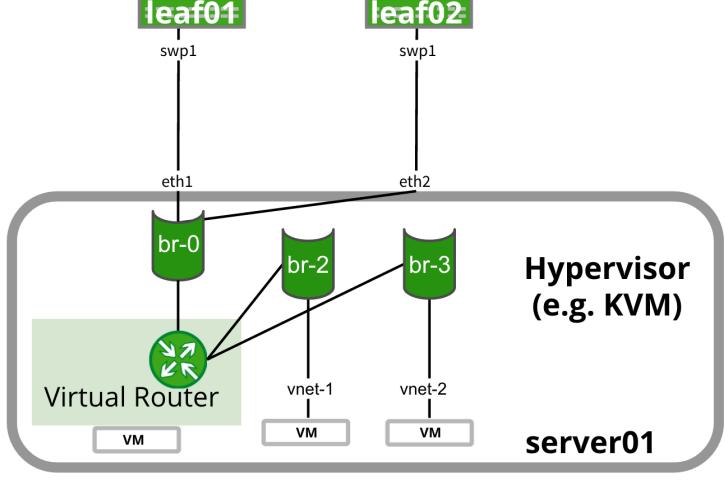
Redistribute Neighbor	Summary	More Information
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN.</li> </ul>
<b>FHR (First Hop Redundancy)</b>		<b>Additional Information</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Equal cost route installed on server/host/hypervisor to both ToRs to load balance evenly.</li> <li>For host/VM/container mobility, use the same default route on all hosts (such as x.x.x.1) but don't distribute or advertise the .1 on the ToR into the fabric. This allows the VM to use the same gateway no matter which pair of leafs it is cabled to.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cumulus Networks blog post introducing redistribute neighbor</li> </ul>

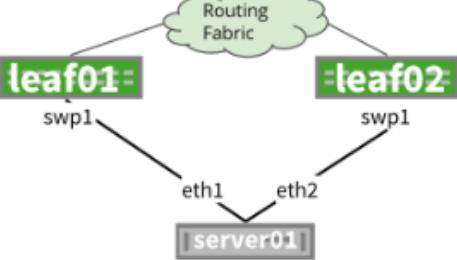
Routing on the Host	Summary	More Information
	<p>Routing on the host means there is a routing application (such as <a href="#">Cumulus Networks Quagga</a> (see page 436)) either on the bare metal host (no VMs/containers) or the hypervisor (for example, Ubuntu with KVM). This is highly recommended by the Cumulus Networks Professional Services team.</p>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No requirement for MLAG</li> <li>No spanning-tree or layer 2 domain</li> <li>No loops</li> <li>3 or more ToRs can be used instead of usual 2</li> <li>Host and VM mobility</li> <li>Traffic engineering can be used to migrate traffic from one ToR to another for upgrading</li> </ul>

Routing on the Host	Summary	More Information
		<p>both hardware and software</p> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Certain hypervisors or host OSes might not support a routing application like Quagga and will require a virtual router on the hypervisor</li> <li>• No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN</li> </ul>
<b>FHR (First Hop Redundancy)</b>		<b>Additional Information</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The first hop is still the ToR, just like redistribute neighbor</li> <li>• A default route can be advertised by all leaf/ToRs for dynamic ECMP paths</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Routing on the Host: An Introduction</li> <li>• Installing the Cumulus Linux Quagga Package on an Ubuntu Server</li> <li>• Configuring Quagga (see page 438)</li> </ul>

Routing on the VM	Summary	More Information
		<b>Benefits</b>

Routing on the VM	Summary	More Information
	<p>Instead of routing on the hypervisor, each virtual machine utilizes its own routing stack.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In addition to routing on host: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hypervisor /base OS does not need to be able to do routing</li> <li>VMs can be authenticated into routing fabric</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All VMs must be capable of routing</li> <li>Scale considerations might need to be taken into account — instead of one routing process, there are as many as there are VMs</li> <li>No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN</li> </ul>
<b>FHR (First Hop Redundancy)</b>		<b>Additional Information</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The first hop is still the ToR, just like redistribute neighbor</li> <li>Multiple ToRs (2+) can be used</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><a href="#">Routing on the host: An Introduction</a></li> <li><a href="#">Installing the Cumulus Linux Quagga Package on an Ubuntu Server</a></li> <li><a href="#">Configuring Quagga (see page 438)</a></li> </ul>
Virtual Router	Summary	More Information
	Virtual router (vRouter) runs as a VM on the hypervisor/host, sends routes to the ToR using	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> In addition to routing on a host:

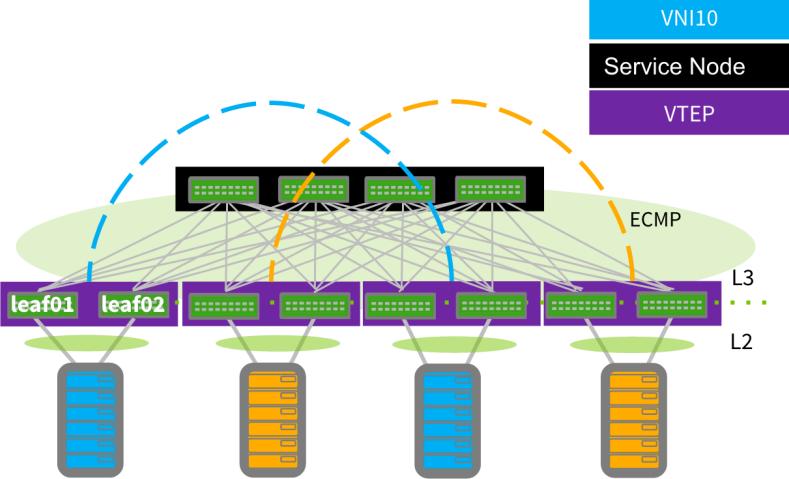
Virtual Router	Summary	More Information
	BGP (see page 678) or OSPF (see page 451).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Multi-tenancy can work (multiple customers sharing same racks)</li> <li>Base OS does not need to be routing capable</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ECMP (see page 507) might not work correctly (load balancing to multiple ToRs); Linux kernel in older versions is not capable of ECMP per flow (does it per packet)</li> <li>No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN</li> </ul>
<b>FHR (First Hop Redundancy)</b>		<b>Additional Information</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The gateway would be the vRouter, which has two routes out (two ToRs)</li> <li>Multiple vRouters could be used</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Routing on the Host: An Introduction</li> <li>Installing the Cumulus Linux Quagga Package on an Ubuntu Server</li> <li>Configuring Quagga (see page 438)</li> </ul>

Anycast with Manual Redistribution	Summary	More Information
 <p><b>leaf01:</b> swp1, eth1, eth2 <b>leaf02:</b> swp1, eth1, eth2 <b>server01:</b> eth1, eth2</p>	<p>In contrast to routing on the host (preferred), this method allows a user to route <b>to</b> the host. The ToRs are the gateway, as with redistribute neighbor, except because there is no daemon running, the networks must be manually configured under the routing process. There is a potential to black hole unless a script is run to remove the routes when the host no longer responds.</p> <p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network/interfaces</pre> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     address 172.16.1.1/3 0</pre> <p>/etc/quagga/Quagga.conf</p> <pre>router ospf     router-id 10.0.0.11     interface swp1         ip ospf area 0</pre> <p><b>leaf02 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network/interfaces</pre> <pre>auto swp2 iface swp2     address 172.16.1.1/3 0</pre> <p>/etc/quagga/Quagga.conf</p> <pre>router ospf     router-id 10.0.0.12     interface swp1         ip ospf area 0</pre>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Most benefits of routing <b>on</b> the host</li> <li>• No requirement for host to run routing</li> <li>• No requirement for redistribute neighbor</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removing a subnet from one ToR and re-adding it to another (hence, network statements from your router process) is a manual process</li> <li>• Network team and server team would have to be in sync, or server team controls the ToR, or automation is being used whenever VM migration happens</li> <li>• When using VMs /containers</li> </ul>

Anycast with Manual Redistribution	Summary	More Information
	<p><b>Example Host Config (Ubuntu)</b></p> <pre> auto lo iface lo inet loopback  auto lo:1 iface lo:1 inet static   address 172.16.1.2/3   2   up ip route add 0.0.0.0/0 nexthop via 172.16.1.1 dev eth0   onlink nexthop via 172.16.1.1 dev eth1   onlink  auto eth1 iface eth2 inet static   address 172.16.1.2/3   2  auto eth2 iface eth2 inet static   address 172.16.1.2/3   2 </pre>	<p>it is very easy to black hole traffic, as the leafs continue to advertise prefixes even when VM is down</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN</li> </ul>
FHR (First Hop Redundancy)		Additional Information
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The gateways would be the ToRs, exactly like redistribute neighbor with an equal cost route installed</li> </ul>		

## Network Virtualization

LNV with MLAG	Summary	More Inform
	<p>The host runs LACP (Etherchannel/bond) to the pair of ToRs.</p> <p><a href="#">LNV (see page 332)</a> (Lightweight Network</p>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Layer domain reduction</li> <li>the physical ToRs</li> </ul>

LNV with MLAG	Summary	More Information
	<p>Virtualization) then transports the L2 bridges across an L3 fabric.</p> <p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network/interfaces</pre> <pre>auto lo iface lo inet loopback     address 10     .0.0.11/32     vxrd-src- ip 10.0.0.11     vxrd-     svcnode-ip 1     0.10.10.10     clagd-     vxlan-     anycast-ip 3     6.0.0.11  auto vni-10 iface vni-10      vxlan-id 1     0     vxlan-     local-     tunnelip 10.     0.0.11  auto br-10 iface br-10     bridge-     ports swp1     vni-10</pre> <p><b>leaf02 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network/ interfaces</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregates layer i (VLAN 10) on spine switch</li> <li>Great scaling flexibility</li> <li>High availability</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Needs (with 1 caveats the M security page above spans (see p</li> </ul>

LNV with MLAG	Summary	More Information
	<pre> auto lo iface lo inet loopback   address 10     .0.0.12/32       Vxrd-src-         ip 10.0.0.12         vxrd-           svcnode-ip 1             0.10.10.10               clagd-                 vxlan-                   anycast-ip 3                     6.0.0.11  auto vni-10 iface vni-10    vxlan-id 1   0   vxlan-     local-       tunnelip 10.         0.0.12  auto br-10 iface br-10   bridge-     ports swp1     vni-10 </pre>	
Active/Active	Active/Passive	Demarcation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VRR (see page 295)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• vrrpd (not recommended, not tested, will be asymmetrical)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ToR leaf exit leaf</li> </ul>
		Additional Information
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cumulus Linux Lighty Network Virtua</li> </ul>

LNV with MLAG	Summary	More Information
		(LNV) documentation (see page 695)

## Cumulus Networks Services Demos

The Cumulus Networks Services team demos provide a virtual environment built using either VirtualBox or libvirt using Vagrant to manage the VMs. This environment utilizes the reference topology shown below. Vagrant and Cumulus VX can be used together to build virtual simulations of production networks to validate configurations, develop automation code and simulate failure scenarios.

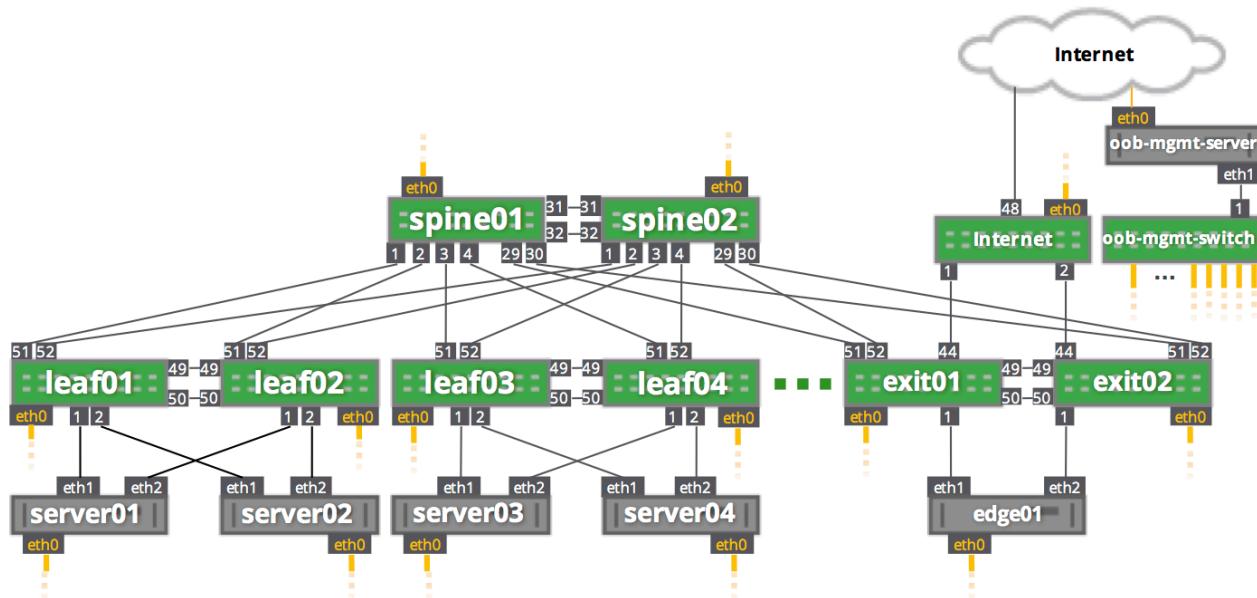
### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Reference Topology (see page 695)
  - IP and MAC Addressing (see page 695)
  - Building the Topology (see page 697)
    - Virtual Appliance (see page 697)
    - Hardware (see page 697)
  - Demos (see page 697)

### Reference Topology

The Cumulus Networks *reference topology* includes cabling (in DOT format for dual use with PTM (see page 229)), MAC addressing, IP addressing, switches and servers. This topology is blessed by the Professional Services Team at Cumulus Networks to fit a majority of designs seen in the field.



## IP and MAC Addressing

Hostname	eth0 IP	eth0 MAC	Interface Count
oob-mgmt-server	192.168.0.254	any	
oob-mgmt-switch	192.168.0.1	any	Cumulus RMP
leaf01	192.168.0.11	A0:00:00:00:00:11	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink
leaf02	192.168.0.12	A0:00:00:00:00:12	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink
leaf03	192.168.0.13	A0:00:00:00:00:13	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink
leaf04	192.168.0.14	A0:00:00:00:00:14	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink
spine01	192.168.0.21	A0:00:00:00:00:21	32x40g
spine02	192.168.0.22	A0:00:00:00:00:22	32x40g
server01	192.168.0.31	A0:00:00:00:00:31	10g NICs
server02	192.168.0.32	A0:00:00:00:00:32	10g NICs
server03	192.168.0.33	A0:00:00:00:00:33	10g NICs
server04	192.168.0.34	A0:00:00:00:00:34	10g NICs
exit01	192.168.0.41	A0:00:00:00:00:41	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink (exit leaf)
exit02	192.168.0.42	A0:00:00:00:00:42	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink (exit leaf)
edge01	192.168.0.51	A0:00:00:00:00:51	10g NICs (customer edge device, firewall, load balancer, etc.)

Hostname	eth0 IP	eth0 MAC	Interface Count
internet	192.168.0.253	any	(represents internet provider edge device)

## Building the Topology

### Virtual Appliance

You can build out the reference topology in hardware or using Cumulus VX (the free Cumulus Networks virtual appliance). The [Cumulus Reference Topology using Vagrant](#) is essentially the reference topology built out inside Vagrant with VirtualBox or KVM. The installation and setup instructions for bringing up the entire reference topology on a laptop or server are on the [cldemo-vagrant GitHub repo](#).

### Hardware

Any switch from the [hardware compatibility list](#) is compatible with the topology as long as you follow the interface count from the table above. Of course, in your own production environment, you don't have to use exactly the same devices and cabling as outlined above.

### Demos

You can find an up to date list of all the demos in the [cldemo-vagrant GitHub repository](#), which is available to anyone free of charge.

## Docker on Cumulus Linux

Cumulus Linux 3.1 is based on Linux kernel 4.1, which supports the [Docker](#) engine. This means you can install Docker directly on a Cumulus Linux switch and you can run Docker containers natively on the switch.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ uname -r
4.1.0-cl-1-amd64
```

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Installing Docker \(see page 697\)](#)
  - [Verifying the Docker Install \(see page 698\)](#)
- [Caveats when Using Docker with Cumulus Linux \(see page 698\)](#)
  - [iptables and Docker \(see page 698\)](#)
  - [Management VRF and Docker \(see page 699\)](#)

### Installing Docker

Before installing Docker, add the Debian Jessie apt repository to Cumulus Linux:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ echo "deb http://ftp.us.debian.org/debian/ jessie  
main contrib non-free" | sudo tee -a /etc/apt/sources.list
```

To install the Docker Engine, follow the [instructions](#) for installing it on Debian Linux, as they work for Cumulus Linux as is.



There's a community-supported Ansible playbook for installing Docker on Cumulus Linux on [GitHub](#).

## Verifying the Docker Install

Docker provides a "Hello World" testing application that can be run on Cumulus Linux to validate that Docker Engine was installed correctly.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ docker run ubuntu /bin/echo 'Hello world'  
Hello world
```

## Caveats when Using Docker with Cumulus Linux

### **iptables and Docker**

By default, Docker Engine creates `iptables` rules to manage Docker container connectivity and provide IP masquerade (NAT). Docker Engine adds NAT entries to the `nat` table. These ACL rules do not properly sync with the hardware of Cumulus Linux, so when you run `cl-acltool -i` to install new hardware based ACLs, the Docker Engine rules get removed.

When using Docker Engine on Cumulus Linux, you must disable the `iptables` functionality within Docker Engine. To do so, use the `--iptables=false` option when you start Docker Engine. To do this automatically, you can modify the `systemd` service startup parameters:

1. Create the directory `/etc/systemd/system/docker.service.d`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mkdir /etc/systemd/system/docker.service.d
```

2. Create the file `/etc/systemd/system/docker.service.d/noiptables.conf` and populate it with the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/systemd/system/docker.service.d/  
/noiptables.conf
```

```
[Service]  
ExecStart=  
ExecStart=/usr/bin/docker daemon -H fd:// --iptables=false
```

3. Reload the `systemd` configuration settings; this has no impact on currently running services.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl daemon-reload
```

4. If Docker Engine was already started, reset the nat table entries, then reset the software `iptables` rules:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -t nat -F
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i
```

5. Restart the Docker Engine:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart docker.service
```

To check if the Docker Engine `iptables` rules have been installed, run `iptables -L DOCKER` to print the current software `iptables` rules. If the Docker Engine `iptables` rules are installed, you will see output similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L DOCKER
Chain DOCKER (1 references)
target prot opt source destination
cumulus@switch:~$
```

If the Docker Engine `iptables` rules are not installed, an error gets returned:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L DOCKER
iptables: No chain/target/match by that name.
```

## **Management VRF and Docker**

If you have a management VRF configured on a Cumulus Linux 3.0.z switch, you cannot run Docker commands that go to another node (for example, `docker pull`) over the management VRF.

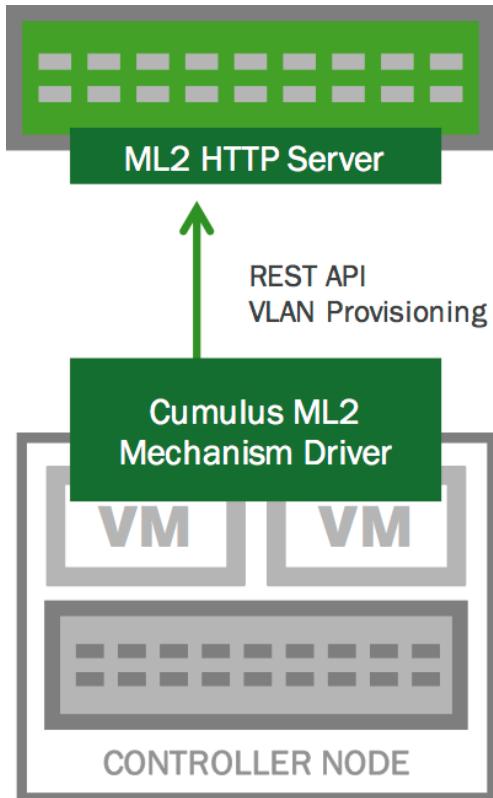
## **OpenStack Neutron ML2 and Cumulus Linux**

### **ⓘ Early Access Feature**

The REST API component is an [early access feature](#) in Cumulus Linux 3.1. Before you can install the API, you must enable the Early Access repository. For more information about the Cumulus Linux repository, read [this knowledge base article](#).

In order to deploy OpenStack ML2 in a network with Cumulus Linux switches, you need to install two packages:

- A REST API, which you install on your Cumulus Linux switches. It is in the Cumulus Linux [early access](#) repository.
- The Cumulus Networks Modular Layer 2 (ML2) mechanism driver for OpenStack, which you install on the OpenStack Neutron controller node. It's available as Debian DEB and Red Hat RPM packages in the Cumulus Networks [GitHub repository](#).



## Contents

- Installing and Configuring the REST API (see page 700)
- Installing and Configuring the Cumulus Networks Modular Layer 2 Mechanism Driver (see page 701)
- Demo (see page 702)

## ***Installing and Configuring the REST API***

To install the `python-falcon` and `python-cumulus-restapi` packages, follow the instructions in the Cumulus Linux 3.1 release notes.

Then configure the relevant settings in `/etc/restapi.conf`:

```

[ML2]
#local_bind = 10.40.10.122
#service_node = 10.40.10.1

# Add the list of inter switch links that
  
```

```
# need to have the vlan included on it by default
# Not needed if doing Hierarchical port binding
#trunk_interfaces = uplink

#For persistency across reboots use "net" command
#use_net = True
```

In order for the bridge configurations to persist across reboots on the Cumulus Linux switch, you need to uncomment the `use_net` setting in `restapi.conf` and install the `net` command line interface (see page 196).

Restart the REST API service for the configuration changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart restserver
```

## ***Installing and Configuring the Cumulus Networks Modular Layer 2 Mechanism Driver***

You need to install the Cumulus Networks ML2 mechanism driver on your Neutron host. Download the Debian .deb or Red Hat RPM image from the Cumulus Networks [GitHub repository](#).

- To install the Debian image, run

```
root@neutron:~# dpkg -i cumulus-ml2-driver_1.0.0-cl3ea1_all.deb
```

- To install the RPM image, run:

```
root@neutron:~# rpm -ivh cumulus-ml2-driver-1.0.0.dev8-1.noarch.rpm
```

Then configure the host to use the ML2 driver:

```
root@neutron:~# openstack-config --set /etc/neutron/plugins/ml2
/ml2_cumulus.ini mechanism_drivers linuxbridge,cumulus
```

Finally, list the Cumulus Linux switches to configure. Edit `/etc/neutron/plugins/ml2/ml2_cumulus.ini` in a text editor and add the IP addresses of the Cumulus Linux switches to the `switches` line. For example:

```
[ml2_cumulus]
switches="192.168.10.10,192.168.20.20"
```

## Demo

A demo involving OpenStack with Cumulus Linux is available in the [Cumulus Networks knowledge base](#). It demonstrates dynamic provisioning of VLANs using a virtual simulation of two Cumulus VX leaf switches and two CentOS 7 (RDO Project) servers; collectively they comprise an OpenStack environment.

# Index

## 4

40G ports 178  
logical limitations 178

## 8

802.1p 181  
    class of service 181  
802.3ad link aggregation 293

## A

ABRs 452  
    area border routers 452  
access control lists 98  
access ports 258  
ACL policy files 107  
ACL rules 185  
ACLs 98, 100, 114  
    chains 100  
    QoS 114  
active-active mode 298, 358  
    VRR 298  
    VXLAN 358  
active listener ports 136  
active-standby mode 298  
    VRR 298  
Algorithm Longest Prefix Match 429  
    routing 429  
ALPM mode 429  
    routing 429  
AOC cables 13  
apt-get 48  
area border routers 452  
    ABRs 452  
arp cache 602  
ARP requests 299  
    VRR 299  
ASN 470

autonomous system number 470  
auto-negotiation 171  
autonomous system number 470  
BGP 470  
autoprovisioning 54

## B

BFD 234, 235  
  Bidirectional Forwarding Detection 234  
  echo function 235  
BGP 469, 472, 525  
  Border Gateway Protocol 469  
  ECMP 472  
  virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) 525  
BGP peering relationships 485, 485  
  external 485  
  internal 485  
bonds 241, 293  
  LACP Bypass 293  
boot recovery 561  
bpdufilter 212  
  and STP 212  
BPDU guard 208  
  and STP 208  
brctl 15, 205, 246, 247  
  and STP 205  
bridge assurance 211  
  and STP 211  
bridges 244, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 248, 250, 253, 258, 258, 264, 273  
  access ports 258  
  adding interfaces 246, 247  
  adding IP addresses 250  
  IGMP snooping 273  
  MAC addresses 248  
  MTU 248  
  physical interfaces 245  
  trunk ports 258  
  untagged frames 253  
VLAN-aware 244, 264

## C

cable connectivity 13  
cabling 229  
    Prescriptive Topology Manager 229  
chain 100  
cl-acltool 98, 185, 603  
CLAG 298  
    and VRR 298  
clagctl 283  
class of service 181  
cl-bgp 448  
cl-cfg 141, 573  
cl-ecmpcalc 509  
cl-license 13  
cl-netstat 597  
cl-ospf 448, 453  
cl-ospf6 448, 467  
Clos topology 434  
cl-ra 448  
cl-rctl 448  
cl-resource-query 141, 563  
cl-route-check 465  
cl-support 557  
convergence 433  
    routing 433  
Cumulus Linux 9, 10, 19, 20, 23, 273, 398  
    installing 9, 23  
    reprovisioning 19  
    reserved VLAN ranges 273  
    uninstalling 20  
    upgrading 10  
    VXLAN 398  
cumulus user 72

## D

DAC cables 13  
daemons 134  
datapath 181, 186, 188  
    link pause 188  
    priority flow control 186  
datapath.conf 181  
date 67  
    setting 67  
deb 52

debugging 555  
decode-syseeprom 565  
differentiated services code point 181  
dmidecode 567  
dpkg 50  
dpkg-reconfigure 67  
DSCP 181  
    differentiated services code point 181  
DSCP marking 185  
dual-connected hosts 276  
duplex interfaces 170  
dynamic routing 237, 436  
    and PTM 237  
    quagga 436

## E

eBGP 471  
    external BGP 471  
ebtables 98, 104  
    memory spaces 104  
echo function 235, 235  
    BFD 235  
    PTM 235  
ECMP 436, 463, 472, 514, 1  
    BGP 472  
    equal cost multi-pathing 436  
    monitoring 1  
    OSPF 463  
    resilient hashing 514  
ECMP hashing 508, 512  
    resilient hashing 512  
EGP 437  
    Exterior Gateway Protocol 437  
equal cost multipath 508  
    ECMP hashing 508  
equal cost multi-pathing 436  
    ECMP 436  
ERSPAN 604  
    network troubleshooting 604  
Ethernet management port 11  
ethtool 180, 596  
    switch ports 180  
external BGP 471

eBGP [471](#)

## F

fast convergence [483](#)  
    BGP [483](#)  
First Hop Redundancy Protocol [298](#)  
    VRR [298](#)

## G

globs [165](#)  
Graphviz [229](#)

## H

hardware [565](#)  
    monitoring [565](#)  
hardware compatibility list [9](#)  
hash distribution [244](#)  
HCL [9](#)  
head end replication [334](#)  
    LNV [334](#)  
high availability [435](#)  
host entries [563](#)  
    monitoring [563](#)  
hostname [11](#)  
hsflowd [620](#)  
hwclock [68](#)

## I

iBGP [471](#)  
    internal BGP [471](#)  
ifdown [154](#)  
ifplugged [299](#)  
    VRR [299](#)  
ifquery [159, 592](#)  
ifup [154](#)  
ifupdown [153](#)  
ifupdown2 [164, 256, 591, 591, 591](#)  
    excluding interfaces [591](#)

- logging 591
- purging IP addresses 164
- troubleshooting 591
- VLAN tagging 256
- IGMP snooping 273, 288, 419
  - MLAG 288
  - VLAN-aware bridges 273
- IGP 437
  - Interior Gateway Protocol 437
- image contents 21
- installing 9
  - Cumulus Linux 9
- interface counters 597
- interface dependencies 158
- interfaces 168, 179
  - statistics 179
- internal BGP 471
  - iBGP 471
- ip6tables 98
- IP addresses 164
  - purging 164
- iproute2 595
  - failures 595
- iptables 98
- IPv4 routes 472
  - BGP 472
- IPv6 routes 472
  - BGP 472

## L

- LACP 241, 273
  - MLAG 273
- LACP Bypass 293
- layer 3 access ports 15
  - configuring 15
- LDAP 80
- leaf-spine topology 434
- license 12
  - installing 12
- lightweight network virtualization 332, 334, 334, 391
  - head end replication 334
  - service node replication 334
- link aggregation 241

Link Layer Discovery Protocol 223

link-local IPv6 addresses 495

BGP 495

link pause 188

  datapath 188

link-state advertisement 451

link state monitoring 299

  VRR 299

LLDP 223, 229

  SNMP 229

lldpcli 224

lldpd 223, 230

LNV 332, 332, 334, 334, 391, 391

  head end replication 334

  service node replication 334

  VXLAN 332, 391

load balancing 436

logging 558, 591, 591

  ifupdown2 591

  networking service 591

logging neighbor state changes 495

  BGP 495

logical switch 273

longest prefix match 429

  routing 429

loopback interface 16

  configuring 16

LSA 451

  link-state advertisement 451

LSDB 451

  link-state database 451

lshw 567

## M

MAC entries 563

  monitoring 563

Mako templates 166, 593

  debugging 593

mangle table 185

  ACL rules 185

memory spaces 104

  ebtables 104

MLAG 273, 284, 284, 284, 288, 290, 291

backup link 284  
IGMP snooping 288  
MTU 290  
peer link states 284  
protodown state 284  
STP 291  
MLD snooping 419  
monitoring 66, 555, 563, 569, 570, 596, 619, 630  
    hardware watchdog 569  
    Net-SNMP 630  
    network traffic 619  
mstpcctl 203, 260  
MTU 172, 248, 290, 595  
    bridges 248  
    failures 595  
    MLAG 290  
multi-Chassis Link Aggregation 273  
    MLAG 273  
multiple bridges 249  
mz 602  
    traffic generator 602

## N

name switch service 80  
Netfilter 98  
Net-SNMP 630  
networking service 591  
    logging 591  
network interfaces 153, 168  
    ifupdown 153  
network traffic 619  
    monitoring 619  
network troubleshooting 612  
    tcpdump 612  
network virtualization 300, 302, 398  
    VMware NSX 302  
nonatomic updates 104  
    switchd 104  
non-blocking networks 435  
NSS 80  
    name switch service 80  
NTP 68  
    time 68

ntp 68

## O

ONIE 9, 20

  rescue mode 20

onie-select 19

Open Network Install Environment 9

Open Shortest Path First Protocol 451, 466

  OSPFv2 451

  OSPFv3 466

open source contributions 8

OSPF 456, 462, 463, 463, 466

  ECMP 463

  reconvergence 463

  summary LSA 456

  supported RFCs 466

  unnumbered interfaces 462

ospf6d.conf 468

OSPFv2 451

OSPFv3 466, 468, 468

  supported RFCs 468

  unnumbered interfaces 468

over-subscribed networks 435

## P

packages 47

  managing 47

packet buffering 181

  datapath 181

packet queueing 181

  datapath 181

packet scheduling 181

  datapath 181

PAM 80

  pluggable authentication modules 80

parent interfaces 161

password 72

  default 72

passwords 10

peer groups 484

  BGP 484

Per VLAN Spanning Tree 204  
PVST 204  
ping 601  
pluggable authentication modules 80  
policy.conf 110  
port lists 165  
port speeds 170  
Prescriptive Topology Manager 229  
priority flow control 186  
    datapath 186  
priority groups 181  
    datapath 181  
privileged commands 74  
protocol tuning 433, 499  
    BGP 499  
    routing 433  
protodown state 284  
    MLAG 284  
PTM 229, 235  
    echo function 235  
    Prescriptive Topology Manager 229  
ptmctl 238  
ptmd 229  
PTM scripts 232  
PVRST 204  
    Rapid PVST 204  
PVST 204  
    Per VLAN Spanning Tree 204

## Q

QoS 114  
    ACLs 114  
QSFP 598  
Quagga 237, 237, 427, 436, 439  
    and PTM 237, 237  
    configuring 439  
    dynamic routing 436  
    static routing 427  
quality of service 189  
querier 420  
    IGMP/MLD snooping 420

## R

Rapid PVST [204](#)  
PVRST [204](#)  
read-only mode [498](#)  
    BGP [498](#)  
recommended configuration [39](#)  
reconvergence [463](#)  
    OSPF [463](#)  
repositories [52](#)  
    other packages [52](#)  
rescue mode [20](#)  
reserved VLAN ranges [273](#)  
resilient hashing [512](#), [514](#)  
    ECMP [514](#)  
restart [141](#)  
    switchd [141](#)  
root user [10](#), [72](#)  
route advertisements [471](#)  
    BGP [471](#)  
route maps [498](#)  
    BGP [498](#)  
route reflectors [471](#)  
    BGP [471](#)  
routes [563](#)  
    monitoring [563](#)  
routing protocols [433](#)  
RSTP [204](#)

## S

sensors command [567](#)  
serial console management [11](#)  
service node replication [334](#)  
    LNV [334](#)  
services [134](#)  
sFlow [619](#)  
sFlow visualization tools [621](#)  
SFP [180](#), [598](#)  
    switch ports [180](#)  
single user mode [561](#)  
smonctl [568](#)  
smond [568](#)  
snmpd [630](#)

sources.list 52  
SPAN 604  
    network troubleshooting 604  
spanning tree parameters 214  
Spanning Tree Protocol 203, 264  
    STP 203  
        VLAN-aware bridges 264  
static routing 426, 427  
    with ip route 426  
    with Quagga 427  
storm control 213  
    STP 213  
STP 203, 211, 213, 291  
    and bridge assurance 211  
    MLAG 291  
    Spanning Tree Protocol 203  
    storm control 213  
stub areas 457  
    OSPF 457  
sudo 72, 74  
sudoers 74, 75  
    examples 75  
summary LSA 456  
    OSPF 456  
SVI 278  
    switched virtual interface 278  
switchd 104, 139, 139, 141, 573  
    configuring 139  
    counters 573  
    file system 139  
    nonatomic updates 104  
    restarting 141  
switched virtual interface 278  
    SVI 278  
switch ports 14, 178  
    configuring 14  
    logical limitations 178  
syslog 558  
systemd 289  
system management 555

## T

tcpdump 612

network troubleshooting 612  
templates 166  
time 67  
    setting 67  
time zone 12, 66  
topology 229, 434  
    data center 229  
traceroute 601  
traffic.conf 181  
traffic distribution 244  
traffic generator 602  
    mz 602  
traffic marking 185  
    datapath 185  
troubleshooting 555, 561, 612  
    single user mode 561  
    tcpdump 612  
trunk ports 253, 258  
tzdata 67

## U

U-Boot 9, 555  
unnumbered interfaces 462, 468  
    OSPF 462  
    OSPFv3 468  
untagged frames 253  
    bridges 253  
upgrading 10  
    Cumulus Linux 10  
user accounts 72, 72  
    cumulus 72  
    root 72  
user authentication 80  
user commands 164  
    interfaces 164

## V

virtual device counters 570, 573, 573  
    monitoring 570  
    poll interval 573  
    VLAN statistics 573

virtual router redundancy 295  
virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) 525, 527  
    BGP 525  
    table ID 527  
visudo 74  
VLAN 278, 570  
    statistics 570  
    switched virtual interface 278  
VLAN-aware bridges 244, 264, 264, 265, 273  
    configuring 265  
    IGMP snooping 273  
    Spanning Tree Protocol 264  
VLAN tagging 256, 256, 257  
    advanced example 257  
    basic example 256  
VLAN translation 262  
VRR 295  
    virtual router redundancy 295  
VTEP 301, 304  
vtysh 441  
    quagga CLI 441  
VXLAN 300, 303, 332, 358, 391, 398, 570  
    active-active mode 358  
    LNV 332, 391  
    no controller 398  
    statistics 570  
    VMware NSX 303

## W

watchdog 569  
    monitoring 569

## Z

zebra 437  
    routing 437  
zero touch provisioning 54, 55  
    USB 55  
ZTP 54